



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

DE FIVAS  
—  
GRAMMAIRE  
DES  
GRAMMAIRES

—  
2/6

21518 92.395  
**M. DE FIVAS' FRENCH CLASS-BOOKS.**

"We have previously expressed a very favourable opinion of the works written for learners of French by Dr de Fivas, and need now only to call attention to the new Editions recently issued. There are many excellent French Grammars in the market, but we know of

red  
 m-  
 sor  
 the  
 the  
 res,



Harvard College Library

FROM

),  
 S;  
 iars  
 am-  
 irls.  
 'Dr  
 irls,  
 SCH

heir  
 7hly  
 hist  
 it is

d to  
 rds,  
 n.  
 the  
 it, if  
 ave

s.  
 fled  
 k."'  
 M.  
 ave

s.  
 und  
 R.  
 ood  
 n.  
 age.

To the pupil the effect is almost as if he looked into a map, so well defined is the course of study as explained by M. de Fivas."

LITERARY GAZETTE.

**A KEY TO THE ABOVE.** Containing, besides  
 A. Grammatical and Critical Remarks,  
 M. 6d. bound.

CRO...ners' Hall Court, Lon...C.



# DR DE FIVAS' FRENCH CLASS-BOOKS.

## *De Fivas' Elementary Grammar and Reader.*

Third Edition, Revised, fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d. cloth.

### AN ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR:

Based upon the Accidence of the "New Grammar of French Grammars." By Dr V. DE FIVAS, M.A., F.E.I.S. With numerous Exercises and Examples illustrative of every Rule. To which is added a FRENCH READER; or, Selections in Prose and Verse from Standard Authors, with a FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY of all the Words used.

*The attention of Heads of Schools and Professors, who already use Dr De Fivas' larger Grammar in their Senior Classes, is respectfully invited to the above ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR, which is intended to prepare the younger students and Junior Classes for the study of the more advanced work.*

#### \*.\* OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"Those who are engaged in teaching French to beginners could not base their teaching upon a more useful school book than Dr DE FIVAS' ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR. The elementary rules of the subject are explained in a clear and coherent system, and the main work is supplemented by a selection of extracts in prose and verse admirably well adapted for the study of junior classes."—SCOTSMAN.

"Based upon the well-known 'GRAMMAR OF GRAMMARS,' this book follows the old lines; it is well printed, well bound, and well arranged. The selection of prose and verse by which it is accompanied appears to us particularly happy."—JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

"One of the particularly good points in this little book is the full and clear manner in which the irregular verbs are conjugated. This is a most important matter, and one not always sufficiently attended to in text-books. Excellent extracts in prose and verse are given by way of easy reading lessons."—SCHOOLMASTER.

"This excellent little manual for the use of junior classes is so arranged as to be most helpful to young beginners. . . . As a thoroughly practical and workmanlike text-book we give it our warmest recommendation."—TEACHERS' AID.

## *De Fivas' Tourist's Guide to French.*

Thirty-first Edition, thoroughly Revised, 18mo. Price 2s. 6d. strongly half-bound, for pocket use.

### NEW GUIDE TO MODERN FRENCH CON-

VERSATION; or, The Student and Tourist's French Vade-Mecum. By Dr V. DE FIVAS, M.A., F.E.I.S. Containing a Comprehensive Vocabulary, and Phrases and Dialogues on every useful or interesting topic; together with Models of Letters, Notes, and Cards; and Comparative Tables of the British and French Coins, Weights, and Measures, etc., etc.

*This little work has been considerably extended, and carefully revised and adapted to the present requirements of the student and the traveller; whereby it is hoped that its repute may be not only maintained, but enhanced, as an efficient and trustworthy GUIDE TO MODERN FRENCH CONVERSATION.*

#### \*.\* OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"De Fivas has the advantage over other French conversation books of indicating the *Maisons* and giving other helps to pronunciation."—ACADEMY.

"Compiled with great labour and care, and modernised down to the latest changes in the custom of ordinary French speech."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

"It is absolutely impossible to overpraise this admirable little work. To students of the French language it is invaluable."—FIGARO.

"This is a new edition of the very best work of the kind with which we are acquainted. The work is valuable also as exhibiting, in a peculiarly distinct manner, the correct pronunciation of the French language."—EDINBURGH ADVERTISER.

CROSBY LOCKWOOD & SON, 7 Stationers' Hall Court, London.



3.50

W.M. x



3 2044 102 877 065

*Francis H. Cilley.*  
For the Use of Colleges, Schools, and Private Students.

---

NEW  
GRAMMAR OF FRENCH GRAMMARS:

COMPRISING THE SUBSTANCE OF  
ALL THE MOST APPROVED FRENCH GRAMMARS EXTANT,  
BUT MORE ESPECIALLY OF THE STANDARD WORK  
"GRAMMAIRE DES GRAMMAIRES,"  
SANCTIONED BY THE FRENCH ACADEMY AND THE UNIVERSITY OF PARIS,  
WITH NUMEROUS EXERCISES AND EXAMPLES  
ILLUSTRATIVE OF EVERY RULE.

BY DR. V. DE FIVAS, M.A., F.E.I.S.,  
MEMBER OF THE GRAMMATICAL SOCIETY OF PARIS, ETC.

WITH AN APPENDIX ON THE  
HISTORY AND ETYMOLOGY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.




LONDON: CROSBY LOCKWOOD AND SON,  
7 STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL.  
EDINBURGH: OLIVER & BOYD; JOHN MENZIES & CO.  
DUBLIN: M. H. GILL & SON.

---

FIFTY-SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED—1892.

Edy. 21510, 92, 275-

 The Copyright for Great Britain and Ireland, France,  
and Germany, is secured.

## P R E F A C E.

---

"Grammar, as the master-key of the human mind, is the first object in the cultivation of the understanding."—  
(*The Linguist.*)

Presque partout, deux hommes d'esprit, de nation diverse, qui se rencontrent, s'accordent à parler français."—  
(*Préf. du Dict. de l'Acad. franç.*)

---

WE read, in a recent London publication, that there are about one hundred French Grammars for the use of English students. But, *How many of these exhibit the orthography and rules of the language as they are fixed at the present day?* It is the impossibility of satisfactorily answering this question, that first suggested to me the idea of producing a work which, without being a mere compilation, should embody the substance of the latest decisions of the French Academy, with the most lucid and concise rules of the best modern French Grammarians. The single fact of the French Academy having lately published a new edition of their Dictionary, entirely revised and greatly enlarged, shows in an obvious point of view the call that is made for a new and improved French Grammar.

My plan, in this publication, has been to give everything useful, and nothing superfluous.\* I have studied to make the definitions at once clear and precise, that they may be readily

---

\* Some Grammarians devote fifty pages to the declensions of nouns and pronouns, while the French language has no declension.† Many encroach on the province of the Teacher, and encumber their pages by giving a repetition of all the conjugations interrogatively and negatively, when one, as a model, is quite sufficient. Others give elaborate treatises on pronunciation, which can never be properly learned from books, and are quite unnecessary, since a good French Teacher can now be found in every town and village of the United Kingdom, from whom more knowledge of pronunciation will be obtained in one lesson than in one year from all the books ever published on this subject.

† "La Langue française n'a point, et ne peut avoir, de déclinaisons; on doit purger nos Grammaires de tout ce fatras, de toutes ces superfluités qui sont plus propres à nuire qu'à servir à l'intelligence de la Langue."

(DEMANDRE, *Dict. de l'Élocution française.*)

understood and easily retained. When I judged it necessary, I have also presented the rules in a new light, in order to adapt them to the capacity of youthful students. I have further endeavoured to arrange and distribute the matter, so as to embrace, within a narrow compass, much more information than is usually found in grammatical class-books. Indeed, there is not a useful Rule or Observation in the largest grammar in print that is not to be found in this.

The *Exercises* illustrate everything that can be reduced to rules in the French language. This branch of the work has, for several years, engaged my special attention. The phraseology is all founded on the highest French classical authorities; and it has been my study throughout to introduce a moral precept, an historical or a geographical fact, or a conversational phrase; and thus to impart useful information along with grammatical rules.

LONDON, 1860.

---

#### PREFACE TO THE FORTY-FOURTH EDITION.

THE *Académie française* having, in 1877, issued a new Edition of their Dictionary, introducing many innovations, the opportunity has been taken to thoroughly revise this Grammar in accordance therewith.

It is believed that a careful perusal of the present Edition will show that, while giving the usual information afforded by the best French grammatical authorities, *the special wants of English students who have to turn idiomatic English into idiomatic French* have been, also, very carefully considered and made the object of additional Rules and Exercises.

Many other improvements and amplifications have at the same time been effected, with a view to maintaining the long-established reputation of the *New Grammar of French Grammars* as a thoroughly reliable modern class-book, acceptable to Teachers and Masters throughout the British Empire.

LONDON, 1879.

## PREFACE TO THE FORTY-FIFTH EDITION.

---

THE last elaborate revision of this work, following on the new Edition of the French Academy's Dictionary (1877), having placed it in the foremost rank amongst modern class-books, as a fully *descriptive* Grammar of the French Language, the publishers have decided to supplement the undoubted merits of the ACCIDENCE and SYNTAX by adding an APPENDIX on the History and Etymology of the Language by Professor Roubaud, —a work which in its separate form has obtained the highest approbation, its objects being to meet the fresh requirements which the enlargement of the scope of the Examinations of the various Universities has created for the student.

The APPENDIX contains—1st, the History of the Language, with the phonetical laws of its formation ; 2d, the Etymology of each of the various Parts of Speech, including the modern formation of nouns, adjectives, and verbs ; an account of the derivation of the nouns of double gender ; a list of the irregular verbs, together with the explanation of *all* their irregularities by their derivation, and the influence of the tonic accent ; the *raison d'être* of the complicated interrogative construction, and of reflective verbs being conjugated with *être* in their compound tenses. It is based on the following works of eminent writers, viz. :—

J. J. Ampère : *Histoire de la formation de la langue française*.  
E. Littré : *Histoire de la langue française*, and *Dictionnaire de la langue française*. J. Demogeot : *Histoire de la littérature française*. Bourguignon : *Grammaire de la langue d'Oïl*. F. G.

Eichhoff : *Grammaire générale indo-européenne*. A. Brachet : *Dictionnaire étymologique de la langue française*. Max Müller : *Lectures on Language*. W. D. Whitney : *Language and its Study, and Life and Growth of Language*. F. Diez : *Grammaire comparée des langues romanes*. Shuchardt : *Vocalism of Vulgar Latin*. Dr Boltz : *Language and its Life*.

Notwithstanding the smallness of its compass, it comprehends the whole of the subject, and students having mastered its contents will be able to pass successfully the Examinations of any of the Universities.

This Grammar will be found to differ from certain grammatical treatises which, though purporting to be prepared for the use of English schools, are simply translations of *French* works, published for the use of *French* students, but in which all the insuperable difficulties of idiomatic renderings experienced by English learners are necessarily ignored. The constant aim has been throughout the work to assist the English student in those very points wherein he generally finds a stumbling-block ; and, whilst preserving the lucidity of former editions, no care has been spared to embody in the present revised volume a thorough and sound exposition of the principles of the language, as laid down by the best modern French Grammarians.

In conclusion, the Publishers feel confident that this very complete French school-book will be favourably received by Head-Masters and Teachers, and prove more than ever worthy of its title of GRAMMAR OF FRENCH GRAMMARS.

LONDON, 1881.

# CONTENTS.

## INTRODUCTION.

	Page		Page
The Alphabet, . . . . .	7	Number and Cases, . . . . .	10
Vowels and Consonants, . . . . .	7	§ 1. Of Gender by the meaning, . . . . .	10
The three Accents, . . . . .	8	§ 2. „ by termination, . . . . .	11
The other signs and marks, . . . . .	8	Of Nouns derived from Latin, . . . . .	12

## PART I.

### ACCIDENCE.

#### CHAPTER I.—OF THE ARTICLE.

Definition of the Article, . . . . .	13	Contraction of the Article, . . . . .	14
The Definite Article, . . . . .	13	Agreement and repetition, . . . . .	16
The Indefinite Article, . . . . .	13	The Partitive Article, . . . . .	16

#### CHAPTER II.—OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

Definition of the Substantive, . . . . .	18	FORMATION OF THE FEMININE—	
The proper name—the common noun, . . . . .	18	General Rule, . . . . .	21
Collective, General, Partitive, . . . . .	18	Exceptions, . . . . .	21
FORMATION OF THE PLURAL—		Nouns of Common Gender, . . . . .	23
General Rule, 18; Exceptions, . . . . .	19	Nouns masculine for both sexes, . . . . .	23
		„ feminine for both sexes, . . . . .	24

#### CHAPTER III.—OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ I. ADJECTIVES OF QUALITY.		Use of the Cardinal for the Ordinal, . . . . .	39
FORMATION OF THE FEMININE—		Of the Days, Months, Seasons, and the Hour, . . . . .	40
General Rule, Exceptions, . . . . .	25	English words turned into French words, . . . . .	42
FORMATION OF THE PLURAL—		(2) POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES—	
General Rule, Exceptions, . . . . .	29	Their repetition, agreement, . . . . .	43
DEGREES OF COMPARISON—		Use of <i>mon</i> , <i>ton</i> , <i>son</i> , for <i>ma</i> , <i>ta</i> , <i>sa</i> , . . . . .	44
The Positive, . . . . .	30	(3) DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES—	
The Comparative of Superiority, . . . . .	30	Use of <i>cet</i> instead of <i>ce</i> , . . . . .	44
„ Inferiority, . . . . .	31	Use of <i>ci</i> and <i>là</i> , . . . . .	45
„ Equality, . . . . .	32	Repetition of Demonstrative Adjectives, . . . . .	45
The Superlative Relative, . . . . .	33	(4) INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES—	
„ Absolute, . . . . .	33	List of those most in use, . . . . .	46
<i>Bon</i> , <i>mauvais</i> , <i>petit</i> , . . . . .	34	<i>Chaque</i> , <i>nul</i> , <i>même</i> , . . . . .	46
<i>Bien</i> , <i>mal</i> , <i>peu</i> , . . . . .	34	<i>Plusieurs</i> , <i>tout</i> , . . . . .	47
§ II. DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.		<i>Quelconque</i> , <i>quel</i> , <i>quelque</i> , &c., . . . . .	48
(1) NUMERAL ADJECTIVES—		Remarks on some Indefinite Adjectives, . . . . .	50
Cardinal, Ordinal, . . . . .	35		
Table of Numeral Adjectives, . . . . .	36		
Substantives of Number, . . . . .	38		
Of <i>vingt</i> and <i>cent</i> , . . . . .	38		
Of <i>mille</i> , <i>mil</i> , &c., . . . . .	39		



## CHAPTER IV.—OF PRONOUNS.

The five kinds of Pronouns, . . . 51

## § I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Of the three Persons, . . . 51

Gender of 1st and 2nd Persons, . . . 51

Pronoun Subject, Pronoun Object, . . . 51

(1) List of Pronouns of 1st Pers., . . . 51

Place of Personal Pronouns, . . . 51

(2) List of Pronouns of 2nd Pers., . . . 52

Use of *vous* instead of *tu*, . . . 52

(3) List of Pronouns of 3rd Pers., . . . 53

The Pronouns *le, la, les*, . . . 53" *se, soi*, . . . 54

## § II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Agree with possessed object, . . . 54

List of Possessive Pronouns, . . . 55

## § III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Are all of the 3rd person, . . . 56

List of Demonstrative Pronouns, . . . 56

*Ce* Pronoun, and *ce* Adjective, . . . 56*Celui, celle, ceux, celles*, . . . 56*Ceci, cela*, . . . 57

## § IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Qui, que, quoi, lequel*, . . . 58*Dont, d'où*, . . . 59

Of Absolute Relative Pronouns, . . . 59

The Pronouns *où, en, y*, . . . 60, 61

## § V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

List of those most in use, . . . 62

Of *on* and *l'on*, . . . 62Of *quiconque, quelqu'un*, . . . 63Of *chacun, autrui, personne*, . . . 63Of *rien, personne* (as a noun), . . . 64Of *l'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre*, . . . 65

Of expressions used either as

Adjectives or as Pronouns, . . . 65

## CHAPTER V.—OF THE VERB.

The Auxiliary Verbs, . . . 67

The use of *avoir*; of *être*, . . . 67Conjugation of *avoir*, . . . 67

Remarks on the endings of Verbs, . . . 68

Conjugation of *être*, . . . 72

General observations on Verbs, . . . 74

Moods, Tenses, Root, endings, . . . 75

How to conjugate a Verb, . . . 75

Formation of the Tenses, . . . 76

## § I. REGULAR ACTIVE VERBS.

1. *Parler*, model for 1st Conj., . . . 772. *Finir*, " 2nd " . . . 803. *Recevoir*, " 3rd " . . . 844. *Vendre*, " 4th " . . . 87

IDIOMATIC TENSES OF VERBS, . . . 90

Of Negatives used with Verbs, . . . 92

Of *do, does, did*, . . . 92

Of Negative Conjugation, . . . 92

Remarks on Interrogation, . . . 95

Interrogative Conjugation, . . . 97

Model of Interrogative and Ne-

gative Conjugation, . . . 99

## § II. PASSIVE VERBS, . . . 101

*Être loué*, . . . 101

## § III. NEUTER VERBS, . . . 103

Conjugated with *avoir, être*, . . . 104

Used as Active Verbs, . . . 105

## § IV. PRONOMINAL VERBS.

Reflective, Reciprocal Verbs, . . . 105

How conjugated, . . . 105

Their Past Participle, . . . 105

Conj. of a Pronominal Verb, . . . 106

Negatively, . . . 109

Interrogatively, . . . 111

Interrogatively and negatively, . . . 112

IDIOMATIC USE OF *avoir*, . . . 118

## § V. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Why they are so called, . . . 114

Of their inflections, . . . 114

List of those most in use, . . . 114

*Pleuvoir, Il s'agit, Y avoir*, . . . 115*Il faut, Il s'en faut*, . . . 116

SLIGHT IRREGULARITIES OF VERBS.

1st Conjugation:—Verbs in

*ger, éer, cer*, 120, 121; with*e* mute in penult, *é* in pen-ult, 123; Verbs in *eler, eter*,*oyer, uyer, ayer, ier*, . . . 125-1282nd Conjugation:—*Bêtr, fleu-**rir, hair*, . . . 130

4th Conjugation:—Verbs in

*attre, ompre, cre*, . . . 131

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1st Conjugation:—*Aller, s'en**aller, s'en retourner*, . . . 1322nd Conjugation:—*Acquérir,**Querir, Assaillir, Bouillir,**Courir, Cueillir, Dormir,**Faillir, Fêtr, Fuir, Gêtr,**Issir, Mourir, Ouir, Ouvrir,**Partir, Repartir*, 136-143;difference between *re* and *ré*,144; *Saillir, Sentir, Servir,**Sortir, Ressortir, Tenir,**Venir, Vêtr*, . . . 144-1493rd Conjugation:—*Asseoir,**S'asseoir, Choir, Déchoir,**&c., Mouvoir, Pourvoir,**Pouvoir* (Remarks), *Savoir,*150-154; peculiar use of *sa-**voir*; difference between*savoir* and *connaître*, 155;*Seoir, Messseoir, Surseoir,**Valoir, Prévaloir, Voir, Vou-**loir* (Remarks), . . . 155-159

4th Conjugation :— *Absoudre*,  
*Attraire*, *Braire*, *Brutire*,  
*Boire*, *Conclure*, *Conduire*,  
*Nuire*, *Conjurer*, *Connaitre*,  
*Coudre*, *Craindre*, *Croire*,  
*Croître*, *Dire*, *Eclorre*, *Clorre*,  
&c., *Ecrire*, *Faire*, *Frûre*,  
*Lire*, *Luire*, *Mettre*, *Moudre*,

*Naître*, *Oindre*, *Paitre*, *Pein-*  
*dre*, *Plaire*, *Prendre*, *Résou-*  
*dre*, *Rire*, *Suivre*, *Taire*,  
*Truire*, *Tistre*, *Vivre*, . 160-184  
Irregular and Defective Verbs,  
either obsolete or seldom  
used, . . . . . 185

# CHAPTER VI.—OF THE ADVERB.

Definition of the Adverb, . . . . .	187	Adverbs of Comparison, Prefer-	
Place of the Adverb, . . . . .	187	ence, Scarcity, . . . . .	190
Adverbs of Affirmation, Denial, .		— Order, Rank, Place, . . . . .	191
&c., . . . . .	188	— Time, 192; Manner, Quality, .	193
— Interrogation, Quantity, . . .	189	Formation of Adverbs, . . . . .	193

# CHAPTER VII.—OF THE PREPOSITION.

Use of Prepositions, of Place, . . .	195	Prepositions of Opposition, End,	
— Order, Union, . . . . .	196	Cause, Means . . . . .	197
— Separation, Privation, . . . .	197	Uses of <i>à</i> , 198; of <i>de</i> , of <i>en</i> , &c., .	199

# CHAPTER VIII.—OF THE CONJUNCTION.

Use of Conjunctions, . . . . .	201	Simple and Compound, . . . . .	201
Table of those most in use, . . .	201		

# CHAPTER IX.—OF THE INTERJECTION.

Definition of the Interjection, . . .	203	List of Interjections most in use, . . .	203
Interjective Phrases, . . . . .	204		

## PART II.

## SYNTAX.

### CHAPTER I.—SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

Use of the Article, . . . . .	205	Omission of the Article, . . . . .	216
— with Nouns in a general sense, .	205	— before proper names, . . . . .	217
— in a particular sense, . . . . .	206	Exceptions and Remarks, . . . . .	218
— names of arts, sciences, &c., . .	207	The Article, with Numerals, . . . .	218
— with names of countries, . . . .		The other determinatives prevent	
provinces, &c., . . . . .	208	the use of the Article, . . . . .	219
— with Nouns in a partitive sense, .	211	Of the Indefinite Article <i>un</i> , <i>une</i> , .	220
In quoting prices, &c., . . . . .	212	Omission of the Article after Ad-	
Use of <i>par</i> in certain cases, . . .	213	verbs of quantity, . . . . .	221
Repetition and non-repetition of		Exceptions and Remarks, . . . . .	222
the Article and other determina-		— in certain idiomatic expres-	
tives, . . . . .	218	sions, . . . . .	222
— with two or more Adjectives, . .	214	— to give more strength to style, .	223

### CHAPTER II.—SYNTAX OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ I. As subject; as object, . . . . .	225	§ IV. Plural of Compound Nouns, .	230
§ II. Gender of certain Nouns, . .		Rules, Remarks, &c., . . . . .	231
with Lists and Meaning, . . . . .	225	The Genitive Case, . . . . .	232
<i>Amour</i> , <i>délice</i> , <i>orgue</i> , . . . . .	226	Use of <i>de</i> in compound words, . .	233
<i>Gens</i> , <i>chose</i> , <i>quelque chose</i> , . . .	227	Use of <i>à</i> , . . . . .	233
§ III. Plural of proper names, . . .	228	Peculiarities of certain Nouns :	
— of foreign Nouns and words, . .	228	Some always singular, . . . . .	235
— words naturally invariable, . . .	229	Others only plural, . . . . .	236



## CHAPTER V.—SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

## § I. AGREEMENT OF THE VERB.

— with its subject, . . .	287
— with more than one subject, . . .	287
— subjects joined by <i>ou</i> , . . .	288
<i>L'un et l'autre</i> as subject, . . .	288
<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre</i> as subject, . . .	288
The Collective General as subject, . . .	289
The Coll. Partitive as subject, . . .	289
Adverbs of quantity as subjects, . . .	290
<i>Peu, beaucoup, la plupart</i> , . . .	290
Agreement of the Verb with the last of several subjects, . . .	290
Cases in which the Verb is in the singular, although pre- ceded by plurals, . . .	291
Agreement with the first subject, . . .	291

## § II. PLACE OF THE SUBJECT.

## Rules, Remarks, and Exceptions, 292

### § III. GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

Definition of object or regimen, . . . . .	295
The direct and indirect objects, . . . . .	296
Place of the regimens, when two or more relate to same Verb, . . . . .	295
Passive Verbs require <i>de</i> or <i>par</i> , . . . . .	296
Sometimes rendered by <i>Pronominal</i> Verbs, . . . . .	296
Many French Verbs require different regimens from those required by the English corresponding Verbs, . . . . .	297
Verbs requiring <i>a</i> before the Inf., . . . . .	297
Verbs requiring <i>de</i> before the Inf., . . . . .	300
Of Verbs taking or not taking the same Preposition before a Noun as before the Infinitive, . . . . .	302
Of Verbs requiring a direct and an indirect object with or without a Preposition, . . . . .	302
Of Verbs requiring no Preposition before the Infinitive, . . . . .	303
When the latter of two Verbs is to be in the Infinitive, . . . . .	304
Construction with <i>pour</i> , <i>afin de</i> , &c., . . . . .	305
<i>Après</i> requires Past Infinitive, . . . . .	305
<i>En</i> before the Gerund or Present Participle employed or omitted, . . . . .	305
General rule for the use of <i>pour</i> , . . . . .	307
The English Present Part., preceded by <i>for</i> , is rendered by the Inf. Past preceded by <i>pour</i> , . . . . .	307

### MOODS AND TENSES:

The INDICATIVE Mood, .	. 308
The Present Tense, .	. 308
Sometimes used for the <i>past</i> , .	. 308
" " <i>future</i> , .	. 308
The Imperfect, .	. 309
Difference between the Imperfect and the Preterite Definite, .	. 309
The Preterite Definite, .	. 310
The Preterite Indefinite, .	. 312
The Preterite Anterior, .	. 312
The Pluperfect, Future Absolute, .	. 313
Future Anterior, .	. 318
Its use to express a surmise, .	. 314
The CONDITIONAL Mood, .	. 314
The Present Conditional, .	. 314
The Past Conditional, .	. 314
Remarks on <i>si</i> ( <i>if</i> ), <i>si</i> ( <i>whether</i> ), .	. 314
The IMPERATIVE Mood, .	. 315
The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, .	. 316
Remarks on the Indicative and Conditional, used in dependent clauses, .	. 316
Verbs requiring Subjunctive in dependent clause, .	. 316
Use of the Subjunctive :	
— after negative or interrogative sentences, .	. 316
— after Impersonal Verbs, .	. 317
— after <i>quæ</i> , <i>quæ</i> , <i>dont</i> , &c., in phrases implying doubt, .	. 318
Use of the Indicative after <i>quæ</i> , <i>quæ</i> , <i>dont</i> , &c., in phrases not implying doubt, .	. 319
CONCORD OF THE TENSES of the Subjunctive with those of the Indicative and Conditional, .	. 320
Rules and Exceptions, .	. 321

### THE PARTICIPLES :

## § I. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE, 323

**The Verbal Adjective, . . . . . 323**  
**English idiom. use of Gerund, 323**

## § II. THE PAST PARTICIPLE—

Used without an auxiliary, . . .	824
Used with <i>être</i> and <i>avoir</i> , . . .	824, 825
Of Neuter Verbs, . . .	827
— Pronominal Verbs, . . .	829
— Impersonal Verbs, . . .	831
The Past Participle followed by an Infinitive, . . .	881
— used with <i>l'</i> , . . .	884
— preceded by Pronoun <i>et</i> , . . .	885
— preceded by <i>le peu</i> , . . .	835

## CHAPTER VI.—SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

Place of the French Adverb, . . . . .	835	Remarks on some Adverbs, . . . . .	836
Remarks on Negatives, . . . . .	840		

## CHAPTER VII.—SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

Place of Preposition, repetition of	<i>Avant, devant (auparavant),</i>	348
Prep., 344; idiom. use of <i>de</i> , . . .	<i>Près de, prêt à,</i>	348
<i>En</i> and <i>dans</i> compared, . . .	Prepositions requiring <i>de</i> , . . .	349
<i>Autour</i> and <i>alentour</i> , . . .	<i>Quant</i> requires <i>à</i> , . . .	349
<i>Au travers</i> and <i>à travers</i> , . . .	Of <i>jusque</i> , and its use, . . .	349

## CHAPTER VIII.—SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION.

Conjunctions requiring the Indicative, . . . . .	Conjunctions requiring the Subj. Infinitive, . . . . .	352
	„ „	353

Promiscuous Exercises, . . . . .	355
Abbreviations, . . . . .	359
Table of French Coins, Measures, and Weights, . . . . .	360

## APPENDIX.

## HISTORY AND ETYMOLOGY OF THE LANGUAGE.

## CHAPTER I.—HISTORY.

§ I. Origin and History of the French language, . . . . .	to which French sprang from vulgar Latin, . . . . .	361-367
§ II. Geographical Distribution of the French language, . . . . .	Specimen of the <i>Langue d'Oïl</i> in the ninth century, . . . . .	368-371
§ III. Phonetical laws according		372

## CHAPTER II.—ETYMOLOGY.

The three accents,—the apostrophe, the diæresis, and the cedilla: their origin, and date of introduction, . . . . .	§ 4. Modern formation of Nouns, . . . . .	373
Observations on the letter <i>H</i> , . . . . .		373
ARTICLES.	ADJECTIVES.	
§ 1. Definite Article, . . . . .	§ 1. Adjectives of quality: their derivation, . . . . .	374
§ 2. Indefinite Article, . . . . .	§ 2. Formation of the feminine, . . . . .	374
§ 3. Partitive Article, . . . . .	§ 3. Irregularities in the formation of the feminine, . . . . .	374
NOUNS.	§ 4. Comparative and superlative, . . . . .	377, 378
§ 1. Derivation, . . . . .	§ 5. Modern formation of Adjectives of quality, . . . . .	375
§ 2. Number: formation of the plural, . . . . .	§ 6. Numerals—	376
§ 3. Gender, . . . . .	Cardinal Adjectives, . . . . .	377, 378
Nouns with double gender, . . . . .	Ordinal Adjectives, . . . . .	379-382
	Fractional expressions, . . . . .	
	Collective numbers, . . . . .	
	§ 7. Possessive Adjectives, . . . . .	389-390
		399
		400
		402
		402

§ 8. Demonstrative Adjectives, . . .	403
§ 9. Indefinite Adjectives, . . .	408

PRONOUNS.

§ 1. Personal Pronouns, . . .	404
§ 2. Possessive Pronouns, . . .	404
§ 3. Demonstrative Pronouns, . . .	404
§ 4. Relative Pronouns, . . .	405
§ 5. Indefinite Pronouns, . . .	405

VERBS.

§ 1. General observations, . . .	405
§ 2. Changes common to all the French Conjugations, . . .	406, 407
§ 3. Auxiliary Verbs— <i>avoir</i> (to have), . . .	408
<i>être</i> (to be), . . .	409, 410
§ 4. Derivation of the French Conjugations, . . .	411
§ 5. Modern formation of Verbs, 412-416	
The negative, . . .	416
Interrogative construction, . . .	416
Passive and reflexive voices, . . .	416
Why French reflexive Verbs are conjugated with <i>être</i> , . . .	416
Derivation and Etymology of a few irregular Verbs, . . .	417

Irregular Verbs: Derivation of the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th Conjugations, . . .	418-427
Etymology of a few rarely used Irregular Verbs, . . .	427, 428

ADVERBS.

§ 1. Of manner, . . .	428
§ 2. Of quantity, intensity, . . .	429
§ 3. Of affirmation, negation, . . .	430
§ 4. Of place, . . .	430
§ 5. Of time, . . .	431

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 1. Of place, . . .	432
§ 2. Of order, time, . . .	432
§ 3. Of union, . . .	433
§ 4. Of separation, opposition, . . .	433
§ 5. Of end, cause, means, destination, . . .	433

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 1. Simple, . . .	434
§ 2. Compound, . . .	434

INTERJECTIONS, . . .	434
----------------------	-----

ALPHABETICAL INDEX, . . . . .	435
-------------------------------	-----

# EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS AND MARKS USED IN THE EXERCISES.

m. <i>stands for</i> masculine.	ind-3 <i>stands for</i> preterite definite.
f. . . . . feminine.	ind-4 . . . . . preterite indefin- ite.
sing. or s. . . singular.	ind-5 . . . . . preterite anterior.
pl. . . . . plural.	ind-6 . . . . . pluperfect.
h m. . . . . h mute.	ind-7 . . . . . future absolute.
h asp. . . . . h aspirate.	ind-8 . . . . . future anterior.
art. . . . . article.	cond-1 . . . . . conditional pres- ent.
pr. or prep. . . preposition.	cond-2 . . . . . conditional past.
pron. . . . . pronoun.	imp. . . . . imperative.
inf-1 . . . . . present of the infini- tive.	subj-1 . . . . . present of the subjunctive.
inf-2 . . . . . infinitive past.	subj-2 . . . . . imperfect.
inf-3 . . . . . participle present.	subj-3 . . . . . preterite.
inf-4 . . . . . participle past.	subj-4 . . . . . pluperfect.
ind-1 . . . . . present of the indi- cative.	
ind-2 . . . . . imperfect.	

ACAD. for *Académie française* (French Academy), a learned Society, a literary Parliament, the highest authority on the French language.

The small figures 1, 2, 3, point out the order of the French construction when it differs from the English.—The larger figures 32, 47, &c., with or without italic letters (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), &c., refer to the rule with that number, and which the student will do well to consult in cases of doubt.

\* The asterisk, or little star, denotes that the English word under which it is placed is to be omitted in French.

— The line placed under an English word indicates that it is the same in French.

( ) When several English words are included within a parenthesis, they must be translated by the French word or words placed under them.

The English words printed in *italics* are those to which the rules prefixed must be applied.

The substantives are generally given in the singular, the adjectives in the masculine singular, and the verbs in the present of the infinitive, the student being expected to put them in their proper gender, number, tense, and person.

*N.B.*—The student should make himself well acquainted with the use of the *Apostrophe*, pages 8 and 9—with the *Contraction* of the article, pages 14 and 15—and with the *General rule* for the place of personal pronouns, page 257. The knowledge of these points will greatly facilitate his studies.

**OF**

**Bien écrire annonce de l'esprit.**

† The sound of *u* must be learned from the Teacher, unless you know how to pronounce *u* in the Scotch words *gude* (good), or *schule* (school).



## OF ACCENTS AND OTHER MARKS.†

4. The orthographical signs used in the French language are,—the *accents*, the *apostrophe*, the *hyphen*, the *diæresis*, the *cedilla*, the *parenthesis*, and the different marks of *punctuation*.

## OF THE ACCENTS.

5. *Accents* are small marks placed upon vowels, either to point out their true pronunciation, or to distinguish the meaning of one word from that of another which is spelt alike, but has a different meaning.—Ex. *pêche*, peach ; *péchê*, sin ; *pêcher*, to fish ; *pécher*, to sin.

6. There are three accents in French,—the *acute*, the *grave*, and the *circumflex*.

7. The *acute* accent ( ' ) is never used but over the vowel *e*, as in *vérité*, truth ; *été*, summer ; *café*, coffee.

8. The *grave* accent ( ` ) is used over the vowels *a*, *e*, *u*, as in *voilà*, there is ; *père*, father ; *règle*, rule ; *où*, where.

It is placed—Over the preposition *à*, to, in order to distinguish it from the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, *il a*, he has ;

Over the adverb *là*, there, to distinguish it from the article *la*, the, or the pronoun *la*, her, it ;

Over the adverb or pronoun *où* (where, in which, to which), to distinguish it from the conjunction *ou*, or ;

Over the preposition *des*, from, since, to distinguish it from the compound article, *des*, of the, some.

9. The *circumflex* accent ( ^ ) is used with any of the vowels, the sound of which it always lengthens ; as in *âge*, age ; *tête*, head ; *épître*, epistle ; *dôme*, cupola ; *flûte*, flute ; *apôtre*, apostle. It is placed—

Over the adjective *sûr*, sure, to distinguish it from the preposition *sur*, upon ;

Over the adjective *mûr*, ripe, to distinguish it from the substantive *mur*, wall ;

Over *dû*, participle past of *devoir*, to owe, to distinguish it from the compound article *du*, of the, some ; but the accent is only used in the sing. masculine of the participle, as there can be no mistake in the feminine sing., nor in the plural of either gender ;

Over *crû*, past participle of *croître*, to grow, to distinguish it from *cru*, past participle of *croire*, to believe.

## OF THE APOSTROPHE.

10. The *Apostrophe* is a small mark in the form of a comma ( ' ), which is placed over the line between two letters, to point out the elision or suppression of a vowel

† See *Appendix*, page 373.

at the end of a word before another word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, as in *l'âme*, the soul; *l'homme*, the man; *s'il*, if he; instead of *la âme*, *le homme*, *si il*.

*A, e, i*, are the only vowels liable to be thus cut off.

11. The *a* is suppressed only in *la*, article or pronoun.

12. The elision of the *e* occurs, not only in the masculine article and pronoun *le*, but also in the monosyllables *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *ce*, *de*, *ne*, *que*; and, moreover—

(1) In *jusque*, before *à*, *au*, *aux*, *ici*; as, *jusqu'à Rome*; *jusqu'au sénat*.

(2) In *lorsque*, *puisque*, and *quoique*, before *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *on*, *un*, *une*, or a word with which these conjunctions are immediately connected; as—*Lorsqu'ils viendront*.—*Puisqu'ainsi est*.—*Puisqu'il le veut*.—*Quoiqu'elle soit*.

(3) In *quelque*, before *un*, *une*; as, *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*; and also in *quel qu'il soit*, *quelle qu'elle soit*. But we write *quelque autre*; *quelque historien*.

(4) In *presque*, in the compound word *presqu'île*, peninsula; and likewise in *grande*, in the words *grand'mère* and *grand'tante*.

Also in *La grand'messe*.—*Avoir grand'faim*.—*Faire grand'chère*.—*C'est grand'pitié*.—*Il eut grand'peur*.—*Ce n'est pas grand'chose*.

13. The *i* is cut off only in the conjunction *si* (if) before the pronoun *il* and its plural *ils*, but never before *elle* or *elles*, nor any other word whatever.

14. But no elision of the *a* or *e* takes place in *le*, *la*, *de*, *ce*, *que*, before *oui*, *huit*, *huitaine*, *huitième*, *onze*, *onzième*, *ouate*, *yacht*, *yard*, *yatagan*, *yoga*, *yole*, *yucca*; neither in the pronouns *le* or *la*, after a verb in the imperative mood, nor in the adverb *là*: so we say, *le oui et le non*; *le huit ou le onze du mois*; *menez-le à Paris*; *ira-t-il là avec vous?* *il me faut de la ouate*; and also, consequently, *du huit*, *au onzième*, *ce yatagan*, *de la yole*, &c.

N.B.—The final letter of the article or other determinative is not carried forward to the initial vowel of these words: *les onze amis*; *ces trois yatagans*; *mes yachts*, &c.

15. The final *e* of the preposition *entre* is retained before the pronouns *eux*, *elles*, and before *autres*; and is only retrenched when *entre* forms a compound word with another word beginning with a vowel; as—*entr'acte*, *entr'ouvrir*, *s'entr'accuser*, *s'entr'aider*.

#### OF THE HYPHEN.

16. The *Hyphen* (in French, *tiret* or *trait d'union*) is a short horizontal line, thus —, which is used principally in connecting compound words, and between a verb and a

pronoun when a question is asked, as in *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow ; *chef-d'œuvre*, master-piece ; *parlez-vous ?* do you speak ? *avez-vous ?* have you ?

#### OF THE DIÆRESIS.

17. The *Diæresis* (in French, *tréma* or *diérèse*) is a mark of two points, thus ··, put over the vowels *e*, *i*, *u*, to intimate that they form a distinct syllable from the vowels that precede them, as in the words *ciguë*, hemlock ; *Moïse*, Moses ; *Saül*, Saul ; pronounced *Ci-gu-e*, *Mo-ise*, *Sa-ul*.

#### OF THE CEDILLA.

18. *C* sounds hard, *i.e.*, like *k*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, and has the soft sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, *y*. When it is to be sounded like *s* before *a*, *o*, *u*, a small sign, called *cedilla*, is placed under it, as in *Français*, French ; *garçon*, boy ; *maçon*, mason ; *reçu*, received.

The signs of punctuation, and all other marks and characters, are the same in French as in English.

#### OF NUMBER.

19. There are two numbers in French, the *singular* and the *plural*. The singular denotes one person or thing ; the plural denotes more than one.

#### OF CASES.

20. The French language has no *Cases*, properly so called, and consequently no declensions.† The French express by prepositions, and especially by *de* (of or from), and *à* (to or at), the relations which the Romans indicated by the change of the different terminations of their nouns.

#### OF GENDER.

The French language has only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

*N.B.*—It is not possible to give general and precise rules by means of which the gender of any noun may be ascertained at once from its mere aspect. We will therefore confine ourselves to a few leading principles, which, we think, will be found useful to the English student, for purposes of reference.

§ 1.—*To ascertain the Gender from the meaning of nouns.*

21. **FIRST GENERAL RULE.**—Nouns are **MASCULINE**, whatever may be their termination, when they are applied to—

(a) Men, or male animals : *père*, *neveu*, *roi*, *lion*, *chat*, *bélier*, *canard*, *tigre*.

(b) The days, months, and seasons : *lundi*, *dimanche* ; *janvier*, *mars* ; *le printemps*, *l'hiver*.

† See Appendix, pp. 367 and 375.

- (c) Trees, shrubs, metals, and colours: *prunier, chêne; rosier; l'or, l'argent; le rouge, le blanc.*  
 (d) Adjectives, verbs, and the invariable parts of speech when used as nouns: *le beau, le vrai; l'italien, le français; le boire, le manger, le oui et le non, le pourquoi, le comment.*  
 (e) The decimal weights and measures: *le mètre, le gramme, le litre, le sière.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(a) *Une sentinelle* (a sentry), *une vedette, une personne, une victime, une pratique* (a customer), *une dupe, une bête* (a fool), are always feminine.

(b) Amongst the seasons, *l'automne* is generally masculine in prose, but some poets have used it in the feminine: *la pâle automne, la féconde automne.*

(c) Amongst trees and shrubs, *aubépine, épine, bourdaine, flène, ronce, vigne, yeuse*, are feminine.—Amongst colours, *écarlate* is feminine.

## 22. SECOND GENERAL RULE.—Nouns are FEMININE when applied to—

(a) Women, or female animals: *mère, nièce, reine, lionne, chatte, brebis, cane, tigresse.*

(b) Any quality, action, state, &c., ending in—

ANCE, ENCE: *abondance; prudence.* Except *le silence*, m.

ESSE, ISE: *rudesse, sagesse, vieillesse; bêtise, surprise.*

EUR, URE, RIE: *chaleur, douleur; allure, conjecture; barbarie, furie.*

ADE, UDE: *aubade, bravade; solitude, étude.* Except *le pré-lude*, m.

SON, ION, TÉ: *raison, oraison; action, répétition, passion; bonté, liberté, vérité.*

(c) EXCEPTIONS.—The following, however, are masculine: *bonheur, malheur, honneur, déshonneur, cœur, cœur, labeur, pleurs, and équateur.* Also: *bastion, champion, croupion, lampion, million, scorpion, septentrion.* Also: *arrêt, comitè, comitè, côté, été, pâté, traité, and thé.* Also: *blason, peson, poison, poisson, tison, oison, and horizon.*

(d) REMARK.—There are French nouns which designate both the male and female of animals—

(e) Some are always masculine: *écureuil, léopard, saumon, hibou, éléphant, merle, &c.*

(f) Others are always feminine: *baleine, girafe, souris, panthère, alouette, &c.*

(g) ~~For~~ When we wish, in such cases, to distinguish the sex, we say: *un léopard femelle, or la femelle du léopard; une baleine mâle, or le mâle de la baleine, &c. &c.*

## § 2.—To ascertain the Gender from the termination of nouns.

23. (a) THIRD GENERAL RULE.—French nouns may end with any letter except J and V. Nouns are MASCULINE when ending with A, B, C, D, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, X, Y, Z: *un alinéa, du plomb, un banc, un nid, un cerf, un luth, &c.*

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—The following are *feminine*: (A) *aqua-tinta, camarilla, sépia, véranda, villa*; (F) *clef, nef, soif*; (I) *après-midi, foi, fourmi, loi, merci, paroi*; (M) *faim*; (N) *façon, fin, leçon, main, rançon* (also most of the nouns in *ion* and *son*); (O) *une virago*; (R) *chair, cour, cuiller, mer, tour (tower)*, and nouns of *qualities, actions, &c.*, in *eur*; (S) *brebis, fois, souris, vis*; (T) *dent, forêt, gent, hart, jument, mort (death), nuit, part, plupart, quote-part*; (U) *bru, eau, glu, peau, tribu, vertu*; (X) *chaut, croiz, fauz, noiz, paiz, perdriz, poiz, touz, voiz*.

24. Nouns ending in *é* accented are *masculine* unless the final syllable is *té*, in which case the substantive is *feminine* (see Second General Rule above). Ex.: *du café, un congé, un canapé*. Except *l'amitié, l'inimitié, la moitié*, and *la pitié* (fem.), and a few in *té* masculine, mentioned above.

(a) From the foregoing Rules the gender of substantives may be known, provided they do not end in *é* mute. But the nouns in *é* mute cannot be brought under specific rules to ascertain the gender. The fact is, that out of 10,000 nouns in *é* mute we have 3000 which are *masculine*. Among the latter a great many are known from their meaning (21), and others end in *age, isme, asme*.

EXAMPLES.—*Partage, ramage; despotisme, catéchisme; spasme, pléonasme, &c.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Cage, image, nage, page, plage, and rage* are feminine.

(b) With regard to geographical names, such as countries, or territorial divisions, provinces, towns, villages, rivers, &c., they cannot be subjected to any definite rule. However, such of those names as end in *é* mute are generally *feminine*, whilst those ending with a consonant are *masculine*.

EXAMPLES.—*La France, la Belgique, l'Italie, la Picardie, l'Angleterre, la Suisse; Toulouse, Marseille, Rome; la Seine, la Tamise, &c.*, are feminine; but *le Danemark, le Portugal, le Poitou, le Sussex, le Maryland; Lyon, Paris, Londres, Rouen, Amsterdam, &c.*, are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Le Bengale, le Hanovre, le Mexique, le Devonshire,† le Tibre, le Rhône, le Danube, le Gange (masculine)*.

*Jérusalem, Sion, Nancy, Naples (feminine)*.

(c) When in doubt concerning the gender of a town, the difficulty may be obviated by putting the word *ville* before the name of the town; thus, *la ville de Bruxelles, la ville de Lisbonne*.

N.B.—To the student who understands Latin, it may not be unimportant to know, that of nouns derived from that language, those from feminine nouns are mostly feminine, and those from masculine or neuter nouns, masculine; as, *foi* from *fides*, *loi* from *lex*, *fourmi* from *formica*, *génie* from *genius*, *collège* from *collegium*, *poème* from *poëma*, *incendie* from *incendium*, *fleuve* from *fluvius*, &c.

† The names of British counties are all masculine.

# PART I.

## ACCIDENCE.

25. There are, in French, as in English, nine sorts of words, usually called PARTS OF SPEECH—namely,

1. ARTICLE.	4. PRONOUN.	7. PREPOSITION.
2. SUBSTANTIVE or NOUN.	5. VERB.	8. CONJUNCTION.
3. ADJECTIVE.	6. ADVERB.	9. INTERJECTION.

### CHAPTER I.

#### OF THE ARTICLE.

26. The *Article* is a word placed before a noun, to point it out, and to show the extent of its meaning.

There are three *articles* in French—viz., the *definite*, the *indefinite*, and the *partitive* articles.

(1) The French *definite* article is *le, la, les*, the.

We use *le* before masculine words in the singular; *la* before feminine words in the singular; and *les* before words in the plural for both genders.

When *le* or *la* comes before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the *e* or *a* is cut off, and an apostrophe is put instead of the letter omitted. (See Rules 10, 11, 12, &c.)

(2) The French *indefinite* article is *un, une, a* or *an*.

We use *un* before masculine words, and *une* before feminine words.

(3) The French *partitive* article is *du*, for the masculine singular; *de la*, for the feminine singular; and *des* for the plural of both genders.

These words (*du, de la, des*) are only used before nouns, and their English equivalent is *some, any*.

Before adjectives, *some, any*, are expressed in French by *de* for both genders and numbers.

27. From the foregoing remarks it follows that the learner is to translate the English *definite* article

*The*, by  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{le} \text{ before a word masculine singular} \\ \textit{la} \text{ before a word feminine singular} \\ \textit{l'} \text{ before a word, either masculine or feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or } h \text{ mute.} \\ \textit{les} \text{ before any word in the plural.} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{beginning with a con-} \\ \text{sonant or } h \text{ aspirate.} \end{array}$

 See Exceptions to the use of *l'* in Rule 14, p. 9.

And the English *indefinite* article

*A* or *an*,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{un} \text{ before a masculine word.} \\ \textit{une} \text{ before a feminine word.} \end{array} \right.$

28. The English prepositions *to* and *at* are generally rendered in French by *à* ; and *of* and *from* by *de*, or *d'* if the word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

### EXERCISE I.

*The father.*—*The mother.*—*The children.*—*The brother.*—  
*père m.*      *mère f.*      *enfants pl.*      *frère m.*

*The sister.*—*The uncle.*—*The aunt.*—*The relations.*—*A son.*—  
*sœur f.*      *oncle m.*      *tante f.*      *parents pl.*      *fils m.*

*A daughter.*—*The man.*—*The women.*—*A boy.*—  
*fille f.*      *homme h. m.*      *femmes pl.*      *garçon m.*

*The day.*—*The night.*—*The sun.*      *The moon.*—*The stars.*—  
*jour m.*      *nuît f.*      *soleil m.*      *lune f.*      *étoiles pl.*

*A history.*—*The school.*—*A book.*—*The page.*  
*histoire f.*      *école f.*      *livre m.*      *page f.*

### CONTRACTION OF THE ARTICLE.

29. Whenever the prepositions *à* (*to* or *at*) or *de* (*of* or *from*) precede the article *le* before a word masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate, *à le* is contracted into *au*, and *de le* into *du* ; and before plural words of either gender, *à les* is changed into *aux*, and *de les* into *des*.

*A* and *de* are not contracted with *le* before words which begin with a vowel or *h* mute, but then the article suffers elision.

Neither are *à* and *de* ever contracted with *la*.

The learner will therefore translate

<i>To the</i> or <i>at the,</i> by	{	<i>au</i>	{ before a word masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirate.†
		<i>à la</i>	{ before a word feminine singular, beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirate.
		<i>à l'</i>	{ before a word masculine or feminine, in the singular, beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.
		<i>aux</i>	{ before any word in the plural.
<i>Of the</i> or <i>from the,</i> by	{	<i>du</i>	{ before a word masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirate.
		<i>de la</i>	{ before a word feminine singular, beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirate.
		<i>de l'</i>	{ before a word masculine or feminine, in the singular, beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.
		<i>des</i>	{ before any word in the plural.
<i>To a, to an,</i> <i>at a, at an,</i> are translated by		{ <i>à un</i>	before a masculine word.
		{ <i>à une</i>	before a feminine word.
<i>Of or from a</i> or <i>an,</i> by		{ <i>d'un</i>	before a masculine word.
		{ <i>d'une</i>	before a feminine word.

See Exceptions to the use of *l'* in Rule 14, p. 9.

## EXERCISE II.

*To the king.*—*To the queen.*—*To the hero.*—*To the scholars.*—  
roi m. reine f. heros *h* asp. écoliers pl.

*Of the master.*—*Of the house.*—*Of the church.*—*Of the coat.*—  
maître m. maison f. église f. habit *h* m.

*Of the curtains.*—*To a dictionary.*—*Of a grammar.*—*To a pen.*—  
rideaux pl. dictionnaire m. grammaire f. plume f.

*Of a penknife.*—*At the hotel.*—*From the garden.*—*To the*  
canif m. hôtel *h* m. jardin m.

† *H* is aspirate in the following words and their derivatives: hâbleur, hache, hagard, hale, haillon, haine, hair, haire, hâle, haletant, halle, hallebarde, hallier, halte, hamac, hameau, hampe, hanche, hangar, hanneton, hanter, happer, haquenée, harangue, haras, harasser, harceler, hardes, hardi, harem, hareng, hargneux, haricot, harnacher, harnais, haro, harpe, harpie, harpon, hart, hasard, hâte, hauban, haubert, hausse, hautain, haut, havre, havresac, hennir, hennissement, héraut, hère, hérissier, hérisson, hernie, héron, héros, † herse, hêtre, heurter, hibou, hideux, hiérarchie, hisser, hobereau, hocher, hochet, Hollande, homard, Hongrie, honte, hoquet, horde, hors-d'œuvre, hotte, Hot-tentot, houblon, houe, houille, houlette, houppe, houppe-lande, houri, housse, houssine, houx, hoyau, huche, huée, hussard, huguenot, Huns (*a people*), huppe, hure, hurlement, hutte, &c.

‡ *Héroïne, héroïque, héroïquement, héroïsme* and *héroïde*, although derivatives of *héros*, begin with *h* mute: *l'héroïne, l'héroïsme*.



town. — *Of the harp.* —      *To a watch.* — *From a clock.* —  
*ville f.*      *harpe f. h asp.*      *montre f.*      *horloge f.*  
*Of the ladies.* — *At an inn.* — *From a village to a town.*  
*dames pl.*      *auberge f.*      — m.

## GENERAL RULES ON THE ARTICLE.

30. I. The article must always agree in gender and number with its noun.

31. II. The article and the prepositions *à* and *de*, whether contracted or not, are generally repeated in French before every noun, although often omitted in English.

## EXAMPLE.

*Le lis est le symbole de la candeur, | The lily is the emblem of candour,*  
*de l'innocence, et de la pureté. | innocence, and purity.*

☞ The expression *LES père et mère* is, however, allowed by custom.

## EXERCISE III.

The lion is the king of animals. — The fox is the  
 — m. *est*      *roi m. art.*      *animaux pl.*      *renard m.*

emblem of cunning. — The rose is the queen of flowers. —  
*emblème m. art.*      *ruse f.*      — f.      *reine f. art.*      *fleurs pl.*

Idleness is the mother of all vices. — The love of  
*art.*      *paresse f.*      *mère f. de tous art.* — pl.      *amour m.*

life is natural to man. — She (is learning)  
*art.*      *vie f.*      *naturel*      *art.*      *homme h m.*      *Elle apprend*

drawing, music, and dancing. — I write to the  
*art.*      *dessin m. art.*      *musique f.*      *et art.*      *danse f.*      *J'écris*

nephew and the niece. — The Creator of heaven and  
*neveu m.*      *pr.*      *nièce f.*      *Créateur m. art.*      *ciel m.*

earth. — The vigour of mind and body.  
*pr. art.*      *terre f.*      *vigueur f. art.*      *esprit m.*      *pr. art.*      *corps. m.*

## OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE DU, DE LA, DE L', DES, DE, D' (some or any).

32. III. Before every noun USED IN A PARTITIVE SENSE, *i.e.*, implying a part, not the whole, whether *some* or *any* be actually expressed in English or left out, the corresponding French words must be used; thus—

Some or any.	<i>du</i>	before singular masculine <i>nouns</i>	} beginning with a con- sonant or <i>h</i> aspirate.
	<i>de la</i>	before singular feminine <i>nouns</i>	
	<i>de l'</i>	before singular (masculine or feminine) <i>nouns</i> beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> silent.	
	<i>des</i>	before any plural <i>nouns</i> .	
	<i>de</i>	before <i>adjectives</i> (of both genders and numbers) beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirate.	
	<i>d'</i>	before <i>adjectives</i> (of both genders and numbers) beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> silent.	

See Exceptions to the use of *l'* in Rule 14, p. 9.

## EXAMPLES.

Envoyez-nous <i>du</i> pain, <i>de la</i> viande, et <i>des</i> pommes de terre.	<i>Send us some bread, meat, and potatoes.</i>
Avez-vous <i>de</i> l'argent?	<i>Have you any money?</i>
Nous avons <i>d'</i> excellents amis.	<i>We have excellent friends.</i>
J'ai <i>de</i> bon papier et <i>de</i> bonne encre, mais <i>de</i> mauvaises plumes.	<i>I have good paper and good ink, but bad pens.</i>

## EXERCISE IV.

Give me <i>some</i> paper, ink, and pens.— <i>Donnez-moi papier m. encre f. et plumes pl.</i>	Take <i>Prenez</i>
<i>some</i> tea or coffee.— Put in <i>some</i> sugar and cream.— <i>thé m. ou café m. Mettez-y sucre m. crème f.</i>	
Offer him <i>some</i> cheese, eggs, butter, and milk.— <i>Offrez-lui fromage m. œufs pl. beurre m. lait m.</i>	
Drink <i>some</i> wine, <i>some</i> beer, or <i>some</i> water.— Eat <i>Buvez vin m. bière f. eau f. Mangez</i>	
<i>some</i> hash. — Bring me <i>some</i> oil, mustard, <i>hachis m. h asp. Apportez-moi huile h m. moutarde f.</i>	
pepper, and salt.— Have you <i>any</i> change? — Has she <i>any</i> <i>poudre m. sel m. Avez-vous monnaie f. A-t-elle</i>	
wool or thread?—Is there <i>any</i> ripe fruit in the garden? <i>laine f. fil m. Y a-t-il <sup>2</sup>mûrs <sup>1</sup>fruits pl. dans jardin m.</i>	
Yes; there are apricots, peaches, pears, and apples.— He <i>il y a abricots, pêches, poires, pommes. Il</i>	
has <i>some</i> very powerful protectors.—I had amiable brothers <i>a très puissant protecteurs. J'avais aimables frères</i>	
and kind sisters.—Bring me <i>some</i> cold water.— There are <i>bonnes sœurs. <sup>2</sup>froide <sup>1</sup>eau f. Voilà</i>	
<i>fine</i> strawberries and excellent cherries. <i>belles fraises f. excellentes cerises f.</i>	

For Etymology of ARTICLES, see Appendix, p. 374.

## CHAPTER II.

## OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

33. A *Substantive* or *Noun* is the name of any person or thing that exists, or of which we have any notion ; as, *Alexandre*, Alexander ; *Londres*, London ; *homme*, man ; *maison*, house ; *vertu*, virtue.

Substantives are either *proper* or *common*.

- (a) The substantive *proper*, or *proper name*, is the name appropriated to one person, or one thing only ; as, *Calvin*, *Milton*, *France*, *Paris*, *Dublin*.
- (b) The *common* noun is that which belongs to persons, or things of the same kind ; as, *homme*, man ; *arbre*, tree ; which appellation equally suits all men, all trees.

Among common nouns, we call *collective* those which, even in the singular, express the idea of a *collection* of persons or things.

Collective nouns are either *general* or *partitive*.

- (c) A *collective general noun* may designate an *entire body* ; as, *le peuple*, *l'armée*, *la foule*, *la multitude* ; or it may express a *whole definite portion* of the persons or things ; as, *la moitié*, *le tiers*, *cette quantité*, *ce nombre*, *cette partie*.
- (d) A *collective partitive noun* only presents to the mind the idea of a *partial intermediate number* ; as, *une foule*, *une grande partie*, *la plupart*, *une quantité*, *une nuée*, *le plus grand nombre*.†

## OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF SUBSTANTIVES.


## GENERAL RULE.

34. The plural of Substantives, either masculine or feminine, is formed by adding an *s* to the singular ; as,

le père, . . . .	<i>the father.</i>	les pères, . . . .	<i>the fathers.</i>
la mère, . . . .	<i>the mother.</i>	les mères, . . . .	<i>the mothers.</i>
l'enfant, . . . .	<i>the child.</i>	les enfants, . . . .	<i>the children.</i>
le moment, . . . .	<i>the moment.</i>	les moments, ‡ . . . .	<i>the moments.</i>

† The difference between the two *collectives* is very often indicated by the determinative particle which precedes the collective. Thus, *l'assemblée des princes* is a collective general, whereas, *une assemblée de princes* is merely a collective partitive. (For further explanation see Syntax.)

‡ *Gent* loses its final *t* in the plural, *gens* ; but the singular, *gent*, is only used in familiar poetry, as *la gent marécageuse*, the marshy tribe.

 This rule applies to verbs in the infinitive used as substantives; as,

le baiser, . . .	<i>the kiss.</i>	les baisers, . . .	<i>the kisses.</i>
le souvenir, . . .	<i>the remembrance.</i>	les souvenirs, . . .	<i>the remembrances.</i>
l'être, . . .	<i>the being.</i>	les êtres, . . .	<i>the beings.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

35. EXCEPTION I.—Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural; as,

le lis, . . . . .	<i>the lily.</i>	les lis, . . . . .	<i>the lilies.</i>
la voix, . . . . .	<i>the voice.</i>	les voix, . . . . .	<i>the voices.</i>
le nez, . . . . .	<i>the nose.</i>	les nez, . . . . .	<i>the noses.</i>

## EXERCISE V.

The *trees* of their *orchards*. — The *flowers* of our *gardens*. —  
*arbre leurs verger fleur nos jardin*

The *palaces* of the *kings*. — Buy me some *oranges* and *walnuts*.  
*palais roi Achetez-moi 32 et 32 noix*

— The *fashions* of the *French*. — The *crosses* of the *knights*. —  
*mode Français croix chevalier*

The *laws* of those *countries*. — The *movements* of the *armies*. —  
*loi ces pays mouvement armée*


The *spoons* and *forks* are on the table. — He has  
*cuille art. fourchette sont sur — f. Il a*

three *sons* and two *daughters*. — The *lilies* of the *fields*.

*trois fils deux fille champ*

36. EXCEPTION II.—Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, form their plural by adding *x*; as,

hoyau, . . . . .	<i>mattock.</i>	hoyaux, . . . . .	<i>mattocks.</i>
chapeau, . . . . .	<i>hat.</i>	chapeaux, . . . . .	<i>hats.</i>
jeu, . . . . .	<i>game.</i>	jeux, . . . . .	<i>games.</i>
vœu, . . . . .	<i>vow.</i>	vœux, . . . . .	<i>vows.</i>

 Except the noun *landau*, a landau, which forms its plural regularly, by adding *s*—*landaus*.

37. Nouns ending in *ou* conform to the general rule—i.e., take *s* in the plural, except the following, which take *x* :—

bijou, . . . . .	<i>jewel.</i>	bijoux, . . . . .	<i>jewels.</i>	genou, . . . . .	<i>knee.</i>	genoux, . . . . .	<i>knees.</i>
caillon, . . . . .	<i>pebble.</i>	cailloux, . . . . .	<i>pebbles.</i>	hibou, . . . . .	<i>owl.</i>	hiboux, . . . . .	<i>owls.</i>
chou, . . . . .	<i>cabbage.</i>	choux, . . . . .	<i>cabbages.</i>	joujou, . . . . .	<i>toy.</i>	joujoux, . . . . .	<i>toys.</i>

## EXERCISE VI.

A fleet of twenty *ships*. — The *boats* of the sailors. —  
*flotte f. vingt vaisseau bateau matelot*  
 He (found himself) between two *fires*. — *Owls* are  
*Il se trouva entre deux feu art. sont*  
*nocturnal birds*. — The *knives* are on the sideboard. —  
*nocturnes oiseaux couteau sur buffet m.*  
 (There are) many *pickpockets* in London and Paris. —  
*Il y a beaucoup de filou à Londres et à —*  
 Fill up those *holes*. — (Here are) brass *nails*. — Our doors  
*Remplissez ces trou m. voici de cuivre 32 clou. Nos porte*  
 have *bolts*. — He has sold the *pictures* and the *jewels*.  
*ont 32 verrou vendu tableau*

38. EXCEPTION III. — Nouns ending in *al*, and six ending in *ail*, form their plural by changing *l* or *il* into *u* and adding *x*; as,

canal, canal.	canaux, canals.	soupirail, air-hole.	soupiraux, air-holes.
hôpital, hospital.	hôpitaux, hospitals.	vantail, { a leaf of a door.	vantaux, { leaves of doors.
corail, coral.	coraux, corals.	vitrail, { stained-glass window.	vitraux, { stained-glass windows.
émail, enamel.	émaux, enamels.		

39. Seven nouns in *al* and all others in *ail* form their plural regularly; as,

bal, { ball (a dance).	bals, balls.	attirail, apparatus.	attirails, apparatus.
carnaval, carnival.	carnavals, carnivals.	détail, { detail, particulars.	détails, details.
chacal, jackal.	chacals, jackals.	éventail, fan.	éventails, fans.
nopal, nopal.	nopals, nopals.	gouver- { helm, rudder.	gouver- { helms, rudders.
régat, regatta.	régats, regattas.	portail, portal.	portails, portals.
cal, callosity.	cals, callosities.	sérail, seraglio.	sérails, seraglios.

**PAL**, a pale, has the two forms *pals* and *paux* in the plural.

**AIL**, garlic, has also two forms — *aïls* and *aulx*.

**BÉTAIL**, cattle, has for its plural *bestiaux*.

40. **AÏEUL**, **CIEL**, **ŒIL**, **TRAVAIL**, have two forms for the plural, and a different meaning in each form; viz.:

aïeul, { grandfather, . . .	aïeuls, grandfathers.
{ ancestor, forefather, . . .	aïeux, forefathers, ancestors.
ciel, { sky, heaven, . . .	cieux, skies, heavens.
{ tester of a bed, sky in a picture, . . .	ciels, { skies in pictures, testers of beds, &c.
œil, { the eye, . . .	yeux, the eyes.
{ in some compound expressions, &c., . . .	œils; as des œils-de-bœuf, sort of round windows.
travail, { work, . . .	travaux, works.
{ report of a minister, brake for shoeing horses, . . .	travails, reports, brakes.

## EXERCISE VII.

The *horses* of the *generals*. — The *marshals* of France. —  
*cheval général marechal* —

The English *admirals*. — These *corals* are beautiful. — The *balls*  
<sup>2</sup>*anglais* <sup>1</sup>*amiral* Ces *corail* sont *superbes*. bal

of the nobility. — He sells *fans*. — *Canals* are  
*noblesse* f. Il vend 32 *éventail* art. 38 sont

artificial rivers. — The *heavens* declare the glory of God. —  
<sup>2</sup>*artificielles* 32 <sup>1</sup>*rivières*. ciel pl. *annoncent gloire* f. Dieu.

Open your *eyes*. — She has the portraits of her two  
*Ouvrez* \* art. *œil* Elle a — ses deux

*grandfathers*. — His *forefathers* have filled high stations.  
*Ses* ont rempli de *grandes charges*.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE  
OF SUBSTANTIVES.

REMARK. — Nouns referring to persons or animals alter their termination, like adjectives, when used in the feminine gender.

41. Many nouns form their feminine by adding *e*, whether the masculine ends with a vowel or a consonant.

Mas.		Fem.	Mas.		Fem.
ami,	<i>friend</i> ,	amie.	marquis,	<i>a marquis</i> ,	marquise.
cousin,	<i>cousin</i> ,	cousine.	(a) Auvergnat,	{ <i>a native of</i>	{ Auvergnate.
commerçant,	<i>tradesman</i> ,	commerçante.	avocat,	<i>a barrister</i> ,	avocate.†
ours,	<i>a bear</i> ,	ourse.	(b) Persan,	<i>a Persian</i> ,	Persane.

(a) One noun ending in *at* forms its feminine by doubling *t* and adding *e*—viz., *chat*, *a cat*, *chatte*.

(b) One noun and one proper name ending in *an* double also the last consonant and add *e*—viz., *paysan*, *a peasant*, *paysanne*; *Jean*, *John*, *Jeanne*.

42. Some nouns ending in *e* or *é* form their feminine by adding *sse*.

Mas.		Fem.	Mas.		Fem.
abbé,	<i>an abbot</i> ,	abbesse.	nègre,	<i>negro</i> ,	négresse.
âne,	<i>ass</i> ,	ânesse.	prêtre,	<i>a priest</i> ,	prêtresse.
chanoine,	<i>a canon</i> ,	chanoinesse.	prince,	<i>a prince</i> ,	princesse.
comte,	<i>an earl</i> ,	comtesse.	prophète,	<i>a prophet</i> ,	prophétresse.
Druide,	<i>a Druid</i> ,	Druidesse.	Suisse,	<i>a Swiss</i> ,	Suisse.
hôte,	<i>host, guest</i> ,	hôtesse.	tigre,	<i>a tiger</i> ,	tigresse.
maitre,	<i>master</i> ,	maitresse.	traître,	<i>traitor</i> ,	traitresse.

† *Avocate* means *intercessor*; used especially in religious matters.

(a) ~~For~~ To these must be added a few which form also their feminine in *esse*, although the masculine does not end in *e* or in *t* :—

dieu,	a god,	déesse	doge,	doge,	dogaresse.
devin,†	a soothsayer,	devineresse.	larron,	a thief,	larronnesse
duc,	a duke,	duchesse.	pair,	a peer,	païresse.

43. Nouns in *eur* derived from present participles by the change of *ant* into *eur*, form their feminine by changing *r* into *s* and adding *e*. ‡

Pres. Part.	Mas.		Fem.
chantant,	chanteur,	a singer,	(a) chanteuse.
connaissant,	connaisseur,	{ one who has a thorough knowledge ; a judge,	connaisseuse.
chassant,	chasseur,	a hunter,	(b) chasseuse.
fournissant,	fournisseur,	a purveyor,	fournisseuse.
débitant,	débiteur,	one who is fond of spreading news,	(c) débitrice.
demandant,	demandeur,	one who asks,	demandeuse.
vendant,	vendeur,	seller,	vendeuse.
devinant,	devineur,	one who guesses riddles, &c.,	devineuse.

(a) *Cantatrice*, another feminine of *chanteur*, is derived from Italian, and means an *eminent professional singer*.

(b) *Chasseresse*, hunter, another feminine of *chasseur*, is only used in poetry.

(c) *Débitrice* § means also a *debtor*, and in this sense its feminine is *débitrice*.

(d) 1ST REMARK.—The following nouns ending in *eur* form also their masculine, as those above, from present participles, but their feminine is formed by suppressing *u* from the masculine termination, and adding to it *esse* ||—

Pres. Part.	Mas.		Fem.	
demandant,	demandeur,	a plaintiff,	demanderesse.	} Law termina.
défendant,	défendeur,	a defendant,	défenderesse.	
vendant,	vendeur,	a seller,	venderesse.	
baillant,	baillieur,	a lessor,	bailleresse.	
vengeant,	vengeur,	an avenger,	vengeresse.	
enchantant,	enchanteur,	an enchanter,	enchanteresse.	
péchant,	pêcheur,	a sinner,	pêcheresse.	

44. Nouns in *teur*, not derived from present participles, form their feminine by changing *teur* into *trice* :—

Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
accusateur, an accuser,	accusatrice.	instituteur, { a teacher, a }	institutrice.
bienfaiteur, a benefactor,	bienfaitrice.	acteur, { schoolmaster }	actrice.
conducteur, a conductor,	conductrice.		

† This noun has also a regular feminine—*devine*.

‡ The use of this form is rather recent. In old French the ending *esse*, from Latin *issa*, was preferred. The nouns mentioned in 1st Remark are a remnant of that earlier form.

§ This word is derived, not from the French present participle *débitant*, but from the Latin word *debitor*.

|| The reason of this change is simply the shortening of the syllable *eur*, on which the tonic accent lies in the masculine; whilst in the feminine it lies on *esse*.

Mas.		Fem.	Mas.		Fem.
amateur,	{ one who is very fond of anything,	amatrice.†	exécuteur,	executor,	exécutrice.
débiteur,	a debtor,	débitrice.†	inventeur,	an inventor,	inventrice.
tuteur,	a guardian,	tutrice.	inspecteur,	an inspector,	inspectrice.
			persécuteur,	a persecutor,	persécutrice.

One in *deur* forms its feminine in *drice*; viz.: *ambassadeur*, an ambassador, *ambassadrice*.

45. Nouns ending in *x* form their feminine in *se*; those ending in *f* change it into *v* and add *e*; those ending in *et*, *en*, *on*, *ot*, double the last consonant and add *e*.

Mas.		Fem.	Mas.		Fem.
époux,	a husband,	épouse.	chartreux,	{ a Carthusian monk,	chartreuse
veuf,	a widower,	veuve.	bailli, §	a bailiff,	baillive.
sujet,	a subject,	sujette.	Européen,	an European	Européenne.
paien,	a pagan,	païenne.	Troyen,	a Trojan,	Troyenne.
lion,	a lion,	lionne.	quarтерон,	quadroon,	quarтерonne.
sot,	a fool,	sotte.			

(a) EXCEPTION. — However, nouns in which *ot* has become final by the suppression of a foreign ending, do not double *t* in the feminine; thus:—

*bigot* *bigote*, a *bigot*. | *cagot*, *cagote*, a *hypocrite*. | *idiot*, *idiotte*, an *idiot*.

(b) The following form their feminine in *ine*: *héros*, *héroïne*; *Czar*, *Czarine*; *Philippe*, *Philippine*.

(c) 2D REMARK.—The following drop the masculine termination and add *e*, or a whole syllable ending with *e*—

Mas.		Fem.	Mas.		Fem.
compagnon,	a companion,	compagne.	cochon,	a pig,	coche.
vieillard,	an old man,	vieille.	mulet,	a mule,	mule.
canard,	a drake,	cane.	loup,	a wolf,	louve.
poulet,	a cock,	poulette.	taureau,	a bull,	taure.

(d) 3D REMARK.—Several have entirely distinct forms for the masculine and the feminine:—

Mas.		Fem.	Mas.		Fem.
père,	a father,	mère.	empereur,	emperor,	impératrice.
frère,	a brother,	sœur.	roi,	king,	reine.
oncle,	uncle,	tante.	gouverneur,	a governor,	gouvernante.
cheval,	horse,	jument.	serviteur,	a servant,	servante.

(e) 4TH REMARK.—The following and some others are common gender:—

artiste,	artist.	élève,	a pupil.	pensionnaire,	a boarder.
camarade,	comrade.	esclave,	a slave.	malade,	a patient.
enfant, †	child.	pupille,	a ward.	compatriote,	a compatriot.

(f) 5TH REMARK.—Nouns expressing professions, trades, &c., generally carried on by men, have no feminine, such as—

† This word is little used.

‡ See Rule 43 above.

§ This word was formerly spelled *baillif*; hence its present form for the feminine.

|| *Enfant*, when used in the plural, is masculine only.



graveur,	an engraver.	docteur,	a doctor.	peintre,	a painter.
sculpteur,	a sculptor.	écrivain,	a writer.	poète,†	a poet.
imprimeur,	a printer.	guide,	a guide.	médecin,	a physician, &c.

(g) 6TH REMARK.—The nouns *témoin*, *adversaire*, and *imposteur* have also no feminine.

(h) When the substantives mentioned in Remarks 5 and 6 are used in reference to nouns, or pronouns feminine, all the words that depend on them are used in the masculine; thus: Cette négresse est *un* imposteur; Sa sœur a été à mon égard *un* adversaire *haineux* et impitoyable; Cette femme est *un bon* peintre,—*un grand* poète,—*un* écrivain de mérite; Mademoiselle S. est *un* témoin *franc* et honnête.

(i) 7TH REMARK.—There are also some nouns referring to animals which are only used in the masculine, others only in the feminine, others again which are common gender. These nouns, and the way to use them in reference to gender, are mentioned in No. 22 and No. 407.

### EXERCISE VIII.

She is a great talker and a great laugh.— Joan of Arc  
C'est grande parleur rieur. Jeanne d'Arc

was the avenger of France. — She is the benefactress of the  
fut vengeur art. — C'est bienfaiteur

poor. — She is a good actress and a celebrated singer. —  
pauvre pl. bonne célèbre

Minerva was the protectress of the fine arts. — The  
Minerve était protecteur beaux-arts.

plaintiff (f.) and the defendant (f.) are both present.—  
demandeur défendeur sont toutes deux présentes.

She was his intercessor (with the) king and with the queen.—  
Elle fut son avocat auprès du et de la

The (peasant girl) approached him.— She is my friend and  
paysan s'approcha de lui. C'est mon ami et ma

companion. — The earl and the countess were present.—  
compagnon. étaient présents.

I am his wife.—Those disconsolate widowers and widows.  
Je suis son époux. Ces <sup>1</sup>inconsolables <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>ces <sup>4</sup>

—His sister is a foolish little girl.—He has a fine mare.  
Sa sœur est <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>petite \* Il a belle

† Poète has also a feminine form, *poétresse*.—(ACAD.)

For Etymology of Nouns, see Appendix, pp. 375 to 391.

## CHAPTER III.

## OF THE ADJECTIVE.

46. An *Adjective* (from the Latin *adjectivus*) is, as its name implies, *added to* a substantive to give it a special meaning.

(a) There are two classes of adjectives, viz. :—(1) The *adjectives of quality*, which serve to *qualify* persons or things ; as, *ami FIDÈLE*, faithful friend ; *TRISTE sort*, sad fate. (2) The *determinative adjectives*, which add to a substantive an idea of *indication or limitation* ; as, *DEUX pigeons*, two pigeons ; *DEUXIÈME étage*, second floor ; *MON canif*, my penknife ; *CETTE semaine*, this week ; *CHAQUE jour*, every day.

(b) In English, adjectives never vary on account of gender and number, but French adjectives change their termination according to the gender and number of the nouns or pronouns to which they relate.

## § 1. ADJECTIVES OF QUALITY.

OF THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE  
OF ADJECTIVES.

## GENERAL RULE.

47. The feminine of adjectives is formed by adding an *e* mute to the masculine singular ; as,

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
prudent,	prudente,	prudent.	joli,	jolie,	pretty.
grand,	grande,	great.	âgé,	âgée,	old, aged.
court,	courte,	short.	prêt,	prête,	ready.

## EXCEPTIONS.

48. EXCEPTION I.—Adjectives ending in *e* mute (that is, *e* not accented) remain the same in the feminine ; as,

un jeune garçon, a young boy. | une jeune fille, a young girl.

## EXERCISE IX.

Their house is small, but it is very pretty. —  
Leur maison f. est petit mais elle est très

That street is narrow and dark. — The meat is cold ; the  
Cette rue f. étroit et obscur viande f. froid

water is hot. — This pear (is not) ripe. — Avoid  
eau f. chaud Cette poire f. n'est pas mûr Évitez

bad company. — That girl is very cunning. — She  
art. mauvais compagnie f. fille f. rusé Elle

has a *black* dress and a *red* scarf. — The *eldest* sister  
 a <sup>2</sup>*noir* <sup>1</sup>*robe* f. <sup>2</sup>*rouge* <sup>1</sup>*écharpe* f. <sup>2</sup>*aîné* <sup>1</sup>*sœur*  
 is a model of *filial* piety. — (She is) a *clever* woman.  
*modèle* m. — <sup>2</sup>*piété* f. *O'est habile femme.*

49. EXCEPTION II.—Adjectives ending in *f* change that letter into *ve* for the feminine; as,

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
actif,	active,	active.	neuf,	neuve,	new.
brave,	brève,	brief, short.	vif,	vive,	lively.

50. EXCEPTION III.—Adjectives ending in *x* change the *x* into *se*; as,

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
heureux,	heureuse,	happy.	paresseux,	paresseuse,	idle.
jaloux,	jalouse,	jealous.	vertueux,	vertueuse,	virtuous.

51. The following in *x* form their feminine thus :

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
doux,	douce,	sweet, mild.	roux,	rousse,	red.
fauz,	fausse,	false.	vieux,	vieille,†	old.

### EXERCISE X.

Is she *attentive*?—Catherine de Médicis was *ambitious*,  
*Est-elle attentif* — — — *était ambitieux*  
*imperious*, and *superstitious*; she was a *native* of Florence.—  
*impérieux et superstitieux* \* *natif de* —  
 Joshua (brought down) the walls of the *proud* Jericho.—  
*Josus fit tomber mur orgueilleux Jéricho* f.  
 The Italian language is *sweet* and *harmonious*. — That  
<sup>2</sup>*italienne* <sup>1</sup>*langue* f. *doux harmonieux* *Cette*  
*news* is *false*.—The *new* tower is in the *old* town.  
*nouvelle* f. *faux* <sup>2</sup>*neuf* <sup>1</sup>*tour* f. *dans vieux ville* f.

52. EXCEPTION IV.—Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ien*, *on*, *et*, and *ot*, form their feminine by doubling the last consonant, and adding an *e* mute after it; as,

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
cruel,	cruelle,	cruel.	bon,	bonne,	good.
pareil,	pareille,	similar.	net,	nette,	clean.
ancien,	ancienne,	ancient.	vieillot,	vieillotte,	oldish.
chrétien,	chrétienne,	Christian.	bellot,	bellotte,	pretty.

53. The following adjectives in *et* and *er* follow the

† *Vieille* is formed from the masculine *viell*, which is often used in the singular instead of *vieux*, before vowels or *h* mute; as, *mon viell ami*.

*general rule*, but take a grave accent over the *e* before the final *t* or *r* in the feminine :

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
complet,	complète,	complete.	secret,	secrète,	secret.
concret,	concrète,	concrete.	cher,	chère,	dear.
incomplet,	incomplète,	incomplete.	fier,	fière,	proud.
discret,	discrète,	discreet.	premier,	première,	first.
indiscret,	indiscrète,	indiscreet.	dernier,	dernière,	last.
inquiet,	inquiète,	uneasy.	replet,	replète,	replete.

## EXERCISE XI.

The soul is *immortal*.—I (am reading) *ancient history*.—  
*âme f. est immortel Je lis art. 2ancien 1histoire f. h m.*

We are (in the) *nineteenth century* of the *Christian*  
*Nous sommes au dix-neuvième siècle m. 2chrétien*

era.—She (is not) *pretty*, but she is *good*. — That poor  
*1ère f. Elle n'est pas joli mais est Cette pauvre*

woman is *dumb*.—Are you *ready*, my *dear sister*? — Your  
*femme muet Êtes-vous 47 ma sœur? Votre*

mother is very *uneasy*.—That person is extremely *indiscreet*.  
*mère très personne f. extrêmement*

54. EXCEPTION V.—Adjectives ending in *eur*, formed from a participle present by the change of *ant* into *eur*, make *euse* in the feminine ; as,

Part.	Mas.	Fem.	
flattant,	flatteur,	flatteuse,	flattering, a flatterer.
mentant,	menteur,	menteuse,	lying, a liar.
trompant,	trompeur,	trompeuse,	deceiving, deceitful. †

55. Adjectives ending in *érieur*, and three ending in *eur* expressing comparison, follow the general rule, and take *e* mute in the feminine ; as,

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
antérieur,	antérieure,	anterior.	supérieur,	supérieure,	superior.
citérieur,	citérieure,	citerior.	ultérieur,	ultérieure,	ulterior.
extérieur,	extérieure,	exterior.	majeur,	majeure,	major.
intérieur,	intérieure,	interior.	mineur,	mineure,	minor.
inférieur,	inférieure,	inferior.	meilleur,	meilleure,	better.
postérieur,	postérieure,	posterior.			

☞ *Hébreu*, Hebrew, is only used in the masculine : *les livres hébreux*. For the feminine, another adjective is used : *la langue hébraïque*. The latter is of both genders, for we say—*les caractères hébraïques*.

† See Rules 43 and 44, and Remarks.

56. There are seven adjectives ending in *c* which form their feminine thus :

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
blanc,	blanche,	white.	public,	publique,	public.
caduc,	caduque,	infirm.	sec,	sèche,	dry.
franc,†	franche,	frank, open.	ture,	turque,	Turkish.
grec.	grecque,	Greek, Grecian.			

† *Franc* (Frankish or Frank) is *franque* in the feminine : *la race franque*.

57. The seven following, ending in *s*, take *se* in the feminine :

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
bas,	basse,	low.	gros,	grosse,	big.
épais,	épaisse,	thick.	las,	lasse,	tired.
expres,	expresse,	express.	profes,	professe,	professed (in religious affairs).
gras,	grasse,	fat.			

58. The following adjectives form their feminine irregularly :

Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
beau,	belle,†	fine.	long,	longue,	long.
bénin,	bénigne,	benign.	malin,	maligne,	malignant.
favori,	favorite,	favourite.	mou,	molle,†	soft.
fou,	folle,†	foolish.	nouveau,	nouvelle,†	new.
frais,	fraiche,	fresh.	nul,	nulle,	null.
gentil,	gentille,	genteel.	col,	coite,	still.
jumeau,	jumelle,	twin.	tiers,	tierce,	a third person.

† REMARKS.—(a) The feminines, *belle*, *folle*, *molle*, *nouvelle*, are formed from the masculines, *bel*, *fol*, *mol*, *nouvel*, which are used before a vowel or *h* mute.

(b) Adjectives ending in *gu* take a diæresis over the *é* in the feminine : *aigu*, *aiguë*, acute ; *ambigu*, *ambiguë*, ambiguous (see Rule 17).

(c) The Adjectives *châtain*, auburn ; *dispos*, nimble, active, have no distinct form for the feminine. However, modern authors use *châtain* in the feminine. *L'une était châtain*, *l'autre était brune* (VICTOR HUGO).

## EXERCISE XII.

(Here is) a handsome white dress. — His public life is  
*Voici beau* <sup>2</sup>blanc <sup>1</sup>robe f. *Sa* <sup>2</sup>public <sup>1</sup>vie f. est  
 irreproachable. — This table is too low. — This board is  
*irréprochable. Cette* — f. *trop bas* *planche* f.  
 too long and too thick. — This soup is too fat. — It is  
*long* *épais* *soupe* f. *gras* *C'est*  
 a new discovery. — Have you seen my favourite flower,  
*nouveau découverte* f. *Avez-vous vu ma* <sup>2</sup>favori <sup>1</sup>fleur f.  
 the rose, so fresh and so sweet? — That is a fine tree. —  
 — f. *si frais* *doux* *Voilà* *arbre* m.  
 Is she quarrelsome? — The city of Troy was in Asia  
*Est-elle querelleur* *ville* f. *Troie était dans* art. *Asie* f.

*Minor.* — (There is) a *superior* power.—That is a *flattering*  
*Mineur* 55 *Il y a* <sup>2</sup>*supérieur* <sup>1</sup>*puissance* f. *O* <sup>2</sup>  
 promise.  
<sup>1</sup>*promesse* f.

## PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

## GENERAL RULE.

59. Adjectives form their plural, like substantives, by the simple addition of an *s* to the singular; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
grand, <i>mas.</i>	grands,	} <i>great.</i>
grande, <i>fem.</i>	grandes,	
savant, <i>mas.</i>	savants,	} <i>learned.</i>
savante <i>fem.</i>	savantes,	

This rule is without any exceptions for the feminine, but the masculine has the three following:—

60. EXCEPTION I.—Adjectives ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the plural masculine; as, *gras*, fat; *gros*, big, *heureux*, happy.

61. EXCEPTION II.—Adjectives ending in *au* take *x* in the plural masculine; as, *beau*, handsome; *nouveau*, new; plural, *beaux*, *nouveaux*.—*Hébreu* also takes *x* in the plural, *hébreux*; but *bleu*, blue, takes *s*: *des yeux bleus*, blue eyes.

62. EXCEPTION III.—Adjectives ending in *al* change this termination into *aux* for the plural masculine; as, *égal*, equal; *moral*, moral; plural, *égaux*, *moraux*.

A few adjectives ending in *al* follow the general rule, and take *s* in the plural, and others have no plural masculine; but these are adjectives seldom used.

63. *Tout*, all, is the only adjective that changes *t* into *s* for the plur. mas., but it makes *toutes* in the plur. fem.

However, when *tout* is used as a noun it preserves the *t* final in the plural: *Plusieurs tous distincts l'un de l'autre*.

## EXERCISE XIII.

Give some *entertaining* books to those *pretty little* girls.  
*Donnez* <sup>2</sup>*amusant* <sup>1</sup>*livre* m. *ces* *joli* *petit* *filles*  
 —He has *powerful* enemies, but their efforts (will be)  
*Il a de puissant ennemi* m. *mais leurs* — m. *seront*

vain and useless.—These chickens are big and fat, but those  
*vain et inutile Ces poulet m. sont gros gras*  
 partridges are very lean. — All the general officers were  
*perdrix f. très maigre Tout <sup>2</sup>général <sup>1</sup>officier étaient*  
 present. — The old and the new soldiers did won-  
*présent vieux soldat firent 32 mer-*  
 ders.—I agree to all those conditions; they are reasonable.  
*veille Je consens ces ——— f. elles raisonnable*

## OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

64. (a) There are three degrees of comparison; the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

(b) The *Positive* is the adjective itself, merely expressing the quality of an object, without any comparison; as,

*Un enfant sage et studieux.* | *A well-behaved and studious child.*

## EXERCISE XIV.

She is satisfied with her lot. — Merit is modest. —  
*Elle est content de son sort. art. mérite m. modeste.*

Socrates and Plato were two great philosophers. —  
*Socrate Platon étaient deux grand philosophe*

Virgil had a fine and delicate taste. — The style of  
*Virgile avait <sup>2</sup>fin <sup>3</sup>et <sup>4</sup>délicat <sup>1</sup>goût m. — m.*

Fénelon is harmonious. — The Alps are high and steep. —  
*—— est harmonieux. Alpes f. pl. sont haut escarpé*

The city of Rome is full of ancient and modern monuments.  
*ville f. —— rempli <sup>2</sup>ancien <sup>3</sup>et <sup>4</sup>moderne <sup>1</sup>—— m.*

65. The *Comparative Degree* expresses a comparison between two or more objects. There are three sorts of comparatives, viz. of *superiority*, *inferiority*, and *equality*.

(a) The comparative of *superiority* is formed by putting the adverb *plus*, more, before the adjective, and the conjunction *que*, than, after it; as,

Athènes a été *plus* illustre que | Athens was more illustrious  
 Lacédémone. | than Lacedaemon.

(b) *N.B.*—The comparative degree is often formed in English by adding *r* or *er* to the positive; as, *wise, wiser; great, greater*; and as these letters stand for the adverb *more*, they must be rendered in French by its corresponding adverb *plus*; thus, *wiser, plus sage; greater, plus grand*.

(c) *Plus* must be repeated before every adjective.

## EXERCISE XV.

Virtue is more precious than riches. — He is  
 art. *vertu* f. *est* *précieux* art. *richesses* pl. *Il*  
 happier than a king. — He is more fortunate than wise. — It is  
 content 12 *rot.* *heureux* *sage.* *Il*  
 more noble to forgive than to (avenge one's self). —  
 — *de pardonner* *de se venger.*

The simplicity of nature is more pleasing than all the  
*simplicité* f. art. — f. *agréable* *tout*  
 embellishments of art. — London is more populous  
*ornement* m. art. — *Londres* m. *peuplé*  
 than Paris, but France is larger and more populous than  
 — *mais* art. — f. *grand et*

England. — The Thames is deeper than the Seine.  
 art. *Angleterre.* *Tamise* f. *profond* — f.

66. The comparative of *inferiority* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it; as,

L'Afrique est <i>moins</i> peuplée <i>que</i> l'Europe.		Africa is less populous than Europe.
--	--	---

(a) *Moins* is to be repeated before every adjective.

(b) The comparative of *inferiority* may also be formed by putting the verb in the negative, with *si*, so, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it; as,

L'Afrique n'est pas <i>si</i> peuplée <i>que</i> l'Europe.		Africa is not so populous as Europe.
---	--	---

## EXERCISE XVI.

Death is less fatal than pleasures which attack  
 art. *mort* f. *est* *funeste* art. *plaisir* *qui attaquent*  
 virtue. — He is less polite and obliging than his brother. —  
 art. *vertu* f. *Il* *poli* *obligeant* *son frère.*

She is less amiable than her sister. — Cæsar (was not) less brave  
*Elle* *aimable* *sa sœur.* *César n'était pas* —  
 than Alexander. — They are less happy than you think. — He  
 12 *Alexandre* *Ils* *heureux* *vous ne pensez.*

(is not) so rich as his brother-in-law. — His family is much  
*n'est pas* *riche* *beau-frère.* *Sa famille* f. *bien*  
 less numerous than ours. — He is less rich than you.  
*nombreux* *la nôtre.*



67. The comparative of *equality* is formed by placing the adverb *aussi*, as, before the adjective, and *que*,† as, after it.

(a) *Aussi* must be repeated before every adjective when several qualities are attributed to one noun or pronoun, without expressing any comparison, in which case *que* is placed after the last adjective; as in—

Charles est *aussi* grand, *aussi* fort, | Charles is as tall, as strong and  
et *aussi* actif *que* Louis. | active as Louis.

(b) But if a comparison is made between two adjectives expressing qualities attributed to one noun or pronoun, then *aussi* is used only before the first and *que* after it; as in—

Aristide était *aussi* vaillant *que* | Aristides was as valiant as just.  
juste.

(c) Of course two or more adjectives may be compared to one, in which case the first rule given above holds good; as in—

Elle est *aussi* vertueuse et *aussi* | She is as virtuous and good as (she  
bonne *que* belle. | is) beautiful.

Or one adjective may be compared to several, in which case *que* is used only after the first; as in—

Henri IV était *aussi* brave *que* | Henry IV. was as brave as (he  
clément et généreux. | was) clement and generous.

### EXERCISE XVII.

Is he as clever, and as docile as his cousin?—He is as  
*Est-il habile — son — m. Il est*

tall as you.—Your niece is as pretty and well-informed as  
*grand vous. Votre nièce joli instruit*

that girl.—She is as good as beautiful.—Socrates was as  
*cette fille. beau Socrate était*

valiant and wise as (he was) patient.—Cicero was as pious  
*vaillant sage \* \* — Cicéron pieux*

as eloquent. — It is as easy to do good as to do  
*éloquent. Il aise de faire art. bien m.*

evil.— History is as useful as (it is) agreeable and  
*art. mal m. art. histoire h m. utile \* \* agréable*

interesting. — This house is as large and convenient  
*intéressant f. Cette maison f. grand commode*

as yours.  
*la vôtre*

† Do not forget that *que* becomes *qu'* before a vowel (see Rule 12).

68. The *Superlative Degree* expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree. There are two sorts of superlatives, the *relative* and the *absolute*.

(a) The superlative *relative* expresses a relation or comparison with another object ; it is formed by putting the article *le, la, les*, before the comparative ; as—

Le chien est l'animal <i>le plus</i> fidèle.		<i>The dog is the most faithful animal.</i>
Ce sont les hommes <i>les plus</i> sages de l'assemblée.—(ACAD.)		<i>They are the wisest men in the assembly.</i>

(b) The superlative *relative* may also be formed by placing before the comparative one of the possessive adjectives, *mon, ma, mes, my ; ton, tu, tes, thy ; son, sa, ses, his or her ; notre, nos, our ; votre, vos, your ; leur, leurs, their ;* as—

<i>Mon plus</i> puissant protecteur.		<i>My most powerful protector.</i>
<i>Votre plus</i> grand ennemi.		<i>Your greatest enemy.</i>

### EXERCISE XVIII.

Gold is *the purest, the most precious, the most ductile*,  
 art. or m. est pur, précieux, —

and, after platinum, *the heaviest of all metals*.—  
 après art. platine m. pesant tout art. métal m.

'The *least excusable of all errors* is that which is  
 ——— art. erreur f. celle qui

wilful.—The elephant is *the strongest of all animals*.—  
 volontaire. éléphant m. fort art. animal m.

I prefer my house to *the finest palace*. — *Our greatest*  
 Je préfère ma maison 29 beau palais m. Nos grand

interests. — *Your most cruel enemies*. — *My prettiest rings*.  
 intérêt m. Vos cruel ennemi m. Mes bague f.

69. The superlative *absolute* does not imply any relation to another object, but merely expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree. It is formed by putting before the adjective one of these words, *très, fort, bien, very ; extrêmement, extremely ; infiniment, infinitely ; excessivement, excessively ;* or any other adverb expressing a very high degree.

### EXERCISE XIX.

Mr and Mrs Fox are *very* happy. They are both *very*  
 heureux. tous deux

capricious.—Dublin is a *very* large and *very* fine city.—That  
 capricieux. — est grand beau ville f. Cette

lady is *very* charitable.—He is a *very* unfortunate man.—He  
*dame* ——— *C'est* <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>*malheureux* <sup>1</sup>*homme* *Il*  
 (is not) *very* clever. — This soup is *very* hot. — The  
*n'est pas* *habile.* *Cette soupe* *f.* *chaud*  
 tea and the sugar are *very* bad. — That work  
*thé* *m.* *sucré* *m.* *mauvais.* *Cet ouvrage* *m.*  
 is *very* much esteemed by the learned. — Madame Dacier  
 \* *estimé* *de* *29* *savant* *m.* *pl.* — — —  
 was *extremely* learned. — God is *infinitely* just.  
*était* *savant* *Dieu* *juste.*

70. The adjectives, *bon*, *mauvais*, and *petit*, and the adverbs, *bien*, *mal*, and *peu*, form their degrees in the following manner :

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjectives.	<i>bon</i> , <i>good.</i>	<i>meilleur</i> , <i>better.</i> †	<i>le meilleur</i> , <i>the best.</i>
	<i>mauvais</i> , <i>bad.</i>	<i>pire</i> , <i>worse.</i>	<i>le pire</i> , <i>the worst.</i>
	<i>petit</i> , <i>little.</i>	<i>moindre</i> , <i>less.</i>	<i>le moindre</i> , <i>the least.</i>
Adverbs.	<i>bien</i> , <i>well.</i>	<i>mieux</i> , <i>better.</i>	<i>le mieux</i> , <i>the best.</i>
	<i>mal</i> , <i>badly.</i>	<i>pis</i> , <i>worse.</i>	<i>le pis</i> , <i>the worst.</i>
	<i>peu</i> , <i>little.</i>	<i>moins</i> , <i>less.</i>	<i>le moins</i> , <i>the least.</i>

(a) ~~Plus~~ *Plus mauvais*, *plus petit*, *plus mal*, are also used, but never *plus bon*, *plus bien*, *plus peu*.

(b) *Plus petit* is used in reference to size, instead of *moindre* :—*Votre sœur est plus petite que Julie ; Ce verger est plus petit que l'autre.*

(c) *Bon* is used after *plus*, instead of *meilleur*, when separated from it ; as in—*Ce vin est-il plus ou moins bon que le vôtre ? Cette tisane est, plus qu'aucune autre, bonne pour cette maladie.* Also when *plus* is used as an expression of time : *Il n'est plus bon à rien* (153 (a)).

## EXERCISE XX.

That wine is *good*, but this is *better*. — Lend me  
*Ce vin* *m.* *est* *mais celui-ci* *Prêtez-moi*  
 the best book in your library. — He writes *well*, but his  
*livre* *m.* *de* *votre bibliothèque* *Il écrit* *sa*  
 sister writes still *better*. — The life of a slave is *worse*  
*sœur* *encore* *vie* *f.* *esclave* *m.*  
 than death itself. — He was a *little better*, but he is  
*que* *art.* *mort* *f.* *même.* *se portait* *mais est*

† Care should be taken, when translating *better*, *worse*, and *less*, to ascertain whether these words are adjectives or adverbs. They are *adjectives*, of course, when related to a *noun* or to a *pronoun*; and they are *adverbs* when related to an *action*, a *quality*, or a *state*.

now worse than ever. — She speaks little. — Speak less. —  
*maintenant que jamais. parle Parlez*

(It is) his least misfortune. — The remedy is worse than  
*C'est son malheur m. remède m. est*

the disease. — Temperance is the best doctor.  
*mal m. art. tempérance f. médecin m.*

*N.B.*—There are some adjectives which have neither comparatives nor superlatives, because the qualities which they express are in themselves the highest degree of perfection, worth, &c.; such as *éternel*, *immortel*, *suprême*, &c.

## § II. DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

There are four classes of *determinative adjectives*—namely, (1) the *numeral*; (2) the *possessive*; (3) the *demonstrative*; and (4) the *indefinite*.

*Care* should be taken not to confound the last three classes of *adjectives* with their correlative *pronouns* (see Chapter IV.) An adjective, whatever its nature may be, always requires a noun or a pronoun to accompany it; it can only be *added to*. A pronoun, on the contrary, is used alone, either to avoid repeating a noun already mentioned, or instead of a noun present to the mind. Thus, *mon*, *cette*, *quel*, *chaque*, are adjectives, whilst *le mien*, *celle-là*, *quelqu'un*, *chacun*, are pronouns.

### (1) OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

71. The Adjectives of Number are divided into *Cardinal* and *Ordinal*.

(a) The *Cardinal* numbers are used to count and express the quantity or number of persons or things.

(b) *UN* is the only *cardinal* number which has a distinct form for the feminine—*UNE*.

(c) The *Ordinal* numbers mark the order or rank which persons or things hold with regard to one another.

(d) *Ordinal* adjectives are formed by adding *ième* to the corresponding cardinal numbers when the latter end with a consonant; as, *sept*, *septième*. When they end with *e*, that *e* is suppressed before adding *ième*; as, *quatre*, *quatrième*. To form the ordinal adjective of *cinq*, the vowel *u* is inserted between *q* and *ième*, thus: *cinquième*. The *f* of *neuf* is changed into *v*, thus: *neuf*, *neuvième*. Finally, in compound ordinal numbers the last only takes the ending *ième*. Thus, 899<sup>th</sup> is *huit cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième*.

(e) *FIRST* has two forms in French: (1) *unième*, which is used after the *TENS*, as in *vingt et unième*; and (2) *premier*, which is only used by itself. *SECOND* has also two forms in French: (1) *second*, used only by itself; and (2) *deuxième*, used not only by itself but also after the *TENS*—as in *trente-deuxième*, for instance.

(f) *Premier* and *second* are the only ordinal adjectives which have a distinct form for the feminine: *première* and *seconde*.

(g) The Arabic or decimal numeration expresses all numbers by means of ten figures called in French—1, *un*; 2, *deux*; 3, *trois*; 4, *quatre*; 5, *cinq*; 6, *six*; 7, *sept*; 8, *huit*; 9, *neuf*; and 0, *zéro*. The latter has no value by itself, but when placed at the right of another figure, increases it tenfold.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1 Un (*m*), une (*f*).

2 Deux.

3 Trois.

4 Quatre.

5 Cinq.

6 Six.

7 Sept.

8 Huit.

9 Neuf.

10 Dix.

11 Onze.

12 Douze.

13 Treize.

14 Quatorze.

15 Quinze.

16 Seize.

17 Dix-sept. †

18 Dix-huit.

19 Dix-neuf.

20 Vingt. §

21 Vingt et un.

22 Vingt-deux.

23 Vingt-trois.

24 Vingt-quatre.

25 Vingt-cinq.

26 Vingt-six.

27 Vingt-sept.

28 Vingt-huit.

29 Vingt-neuf.

30 Trente.

31 Trente et un.

32 Trente-deux.

33 Trente-trois.

34 Trente-quatre.

† is mute in these numbers, but *t* is heard.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st 1<sup>er</sup> Premier (*m*), première (*f*).2d 2<sup>e</sup> Second (*m*), seconde (*f*).3d 3<sup>e</sup> Troisième.4th 4<sup>e</sup> Quatrième.5th 5<sup>e</sup> Cinquième.6th 6<sup>e</sup> Sixième.7th 7<sup>e</sup> Septième.8th 8<sup>e</sup> Huitième.9th 9<sup>e</sup> Neuvième.10th 10<sup>e</sup> Dixième.11th 11<sup>e</sup> Onzième.12th 12<sup>e</sup> Douzième.13th 13<sup>e</sup> Treizième.14th 14<sup>e</sup> Quatorzième.15th 15<sup>e</sup> Quinzième.16th 16<sup>e</sup> Seizième.17th 17<sup>e</sup> Dix-septième.18th 18<sup>e</sup> Dix-huitième.19th 19<sup>e</sup> Dix-neuvième.20th 20<sup>e</sup> Vingtième.21st 21<sup>e</sup> Vingt et unième.22d 22<sup>e</sup> Vingt-deuxième.23d 23<sup>e</sup> Vingt-troisième.24th 24<sup>e</sup> Vingt-quatrième.25th 25<sup>e</sup> Vingt-cinquième.26th 26<sup>e</sup> Vingt-sixième.27th 27<sup>e</sup> Vingt-septième.28th 28<sup>e</sup> Vingt-huitième.29th 29<sup>e</sup> Vingt-neuvième.30th 30<sup>e</sup> Trentième.31st 31<sup>e</sup> Trente et unième.32d 32<sup>e</sup> Trente-deuxième.33d 33<sup>e</sup> Trente-troisième.34th 34<sup>e</sup> Trente-quatrième.

† (1) The final consonant of the numbers *cinq*, *six*, *sept*, *huit*, *neuf*, *dix* (whether used by themselves or preceded by other numbers) is silent, when they precede nouns, or adjectives followed by nouns, or other numbers, provided these words begin with a consonant or *h* aspirate; but the final consonant is sounded in any other case. (2) The *x* of *dix* is sounded like *s* in *dix-sept*, and like *z* in *dix-huit* and *dix-neuf*.

‡ Hyphens connect the component parts of numbers only from *dix-sept* to *quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, except in cases where the conjunction *et* is used, as stated p. 38 (*h*); therefore, 398 is *trois cent quatre-vingt-dix-huit*.

§ *gt* is mute in *vingt* before consonants, but *t* is sounded before vowels or *h* mute.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

35	Trente-cinq.
36	Trente-six.
37	Trente-sept.
38	Trente-huit.
39	Trente-neuf.
40	Quarante.
41	Quarante et un.
42	Quarante-deux.
43	Quarante-trois.
44	Quarante-quatre.
45	Quarante-cinq.
46	Quarante-six.
47	Quarante-sept.
48	Quarante-huit.
49	Quarante-neuf.
50	Cinquante.
51	Cinquante et un.
52	Cinquante-deux.
53	Cinquante-trois.
54	Cinquante-quatre.
55	Cinquante-cinq.
56	Cinquante-six.
57	Cinquante-sept.
58	Cinquante-huit.
59	Cinquante-neuf.
60	Soixante.
61	Soixante et un.
62	Soixante-deux.
63	Soixante-trois.
64	Soixante-quatre.
65	Soixante-cinq.
66	Soixante-six.
67	Soixante-sept.
68	Soixante-huit.
69	Soixante-neuf.
70	Soixante-dix.
71	Soixante et onze.
72	Soixante-douze.
73	Soixante-treize.
74	Soixante-quatorze.
75	Soixante-quinze.
76	Soixante-seize.
77	Soixante-dix-sept.
78	Soixante-dix-huit.
79	Soixante-dix-neuf.
80	Quatre-vingts.
81	Quatre-vingt-un.
82	Quatre-vingt-deux.
83	Quatre-vingt-trois.
84	Quatre-vingt-quatre.
85	Quatre-vingt-cinq.
86	Quatre-vingt-six.
87	Quatre-vingt-sept.

{  
 is not heard in  
 these numbers.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

35th	35°	Trente-cinquième.
36th	36°	Trente-sixième.
37th	37°	Trente-septième.
38th	38°	Trente-huitième.
39th	39°	Trente-neuvième.
40th	40°	Quarantième.
41st	41°	Quarante et unième.
42d	42°	Quarante-deuxième.
43d	43°	Quarante-troisième.
44th	44°	Quarante-quatrième.
45th	45°	Quarante-cinquième.
46th	46°	Quarante-sixième.
47th	47°	Quarante-septième.
48th	48°	Quarante-huitième.
49th	49°	Quarante-neuvième.
50th	50°	Cinquantième.
51st	51°	Cinquante et unième.
52d	52°	Cinquante-deuxième.
53d	53°	Cinquante-troisième.
54th	54°	Cinquante-quatrième.
55th	55°	Cinquante-cinquième.
56th	56°	Cinquante-sixième.
57th	57°	Cinquante-septième.
58th	58°	Cinquante-huitième.
59th	59°	Cinquante-neuvième.
60th	60°	Soixantième.
61st	61°	Soixante et unième.
62d	62°	Soixante-deuxième.
63d	63°	Soixante-troisième.
64th	64°	Soixante-quatrième.
65th	65°	Soixante-cinquième.
66th	66°	Soixante-sixième.
67th	67°	Soixante-septième.
68th	68°	Soixante-huitième.
69th	69°	Soixante-neuvième.
70th	70°	Soixante-dixième.
71st	71°	Soixante et onzième.
72d	72°	Soixante-douzième.
73d	73°	Soixante-treizième.
74th	74°	Soixante-quatorzième.
75th	75°	Soixante-quinzième.
76th	76°	Soixante-seizième.
77th	77°	Soixante-dix-septième.
78th	78°	Soixante-dix-huitième.
79th	79°	Soixant-dix-neuvième.
80th	80°	Quatre-vingtième.
81st	81°	Quatre-vingt-unième.
82d	82°	Quatre-vingt-deuxième.
83d	83°	Quatre-vingt-troisième.
84th	84°	Quatre-vingt-quatrième.
85th	85°	Quatre-vingt-cinquième.
86th	86°	Quatre-vingt-sixième.
87th	87°	Quatre-vingt-septième.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS.

88	Quatre-vingt-huit.
89	Quatre-vingt-neuf.
90	Quatre-vingt-dix.
91	Quatre-vingt-onze.
92	Quatre-vingt-douze.
93	Quatre-vingt-treize.
94	Quatre-vingt-quatorze.
95	Quatre-vingt-quinze.
96	Quatre-vingt-seize.
97	Quatre-vingt-dix-sept.
98	Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.
99	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.
100	Cent.
101	Cent un.
102	Cent deux.
200	Deux cents.
1000	Mille.
10,000	Dix mille.
1,000,000	Un million.†

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

88th	88°	Quatre-vingt-huitième.
89th	89°	Quatre-vingt-neuvième.
90th	90°	Quatre-vingt-dixième.
91st	91°	Quatre-vingt-onzième.
92d	92°	Quatre-vingt-douzième.
93d	93°	Quatre-vingt-treizième.
94th	94°	Quatre-vingt-quatorzième.
95th	95°	Quatre-vingt-quinzième.
96th	96°	Quatre-vingt-seizième.
97th	97°	Quatre-vingt-dix-septième.
98th	98°	Quatre-vingt-dix-huitième.
99th	99°	Quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième.
100th	100°	Centième.
101st	101°	Cent-unième.
102d	102°	Cent-deuxième.
200th	200°	Deux centième.
1000th	1000°	Millième.
10,000th	10,000°	Dix millièm.
1,000,000th	1,000,000°	Millionième.

† not heard in these numbers.

(h) The conjunction *et* (and) unites *un* to *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, and also *onze* to *soixante*. But the conjunction and which unites *hundred* to other numerals in English is not expressed in French—*hundred and two*, *cent deux*.

(i) Among the words which express *number*, there are some which are real *substantives*; these are of three sorts, called *collective*, *distributive*, and *proportional*.

(j) The *collective* denotes a certain quantity or collection; it takes an article, and is followed by *de* (or *d'*) before a substantive: *une douzaine de plumes*; *un million d'hommes*; *des milliers d'étoiles*; *une vingtaine de francs*.

(k) The *distributive* expresses a part of a whole, and is, as in English, expressed by means of the ordinal numbers; as *trois cinquièmes*, *six huitièmes*, &c., except one-half, *le demi* (or *la moitié*); one-third, *un tiers*; one-fourth, *un quart*; two-thirds, *deux tiers*; three-fourths, *trois quarts*.

(l) The *proportional* denotes the progressive increase of things; as, *le double*, *le triple*, *le centuple*, a hundredfold.

72. REMARKS.—I. The *ordinal* numbers, the *collective* and *distributive* nouns, take an *s* in the plural; as,

Les premières douzaines.  
Les sept huitièmes.

The first dozens.  
The seven eighths.

73. II. *Vingt* and *cent*‡ are the only *cardinal* numbers

† The words *million*, *billion*, *trillion*, &c., are real *collective nouns* which require a determinative and take *s* in the plural: *plusieurs millions d'hommes*.

‡ When *cent* and *mille* are used as simple *numerals* they do not take the article *un*;—*cent fois*, one hundred times; *mille dangers*, a thousand dangers. But if *cent* and *mille* are *collective nouns*, they require an article and *de* (or *d'*) before the following substantive:—*un cent de fagots*; *ces briques nous coûtent tant le mille* (382), those bricks cost us so much a thousand.

which take an *s* in the plural—that is, when preceded by another number which multiplies them ; as,

Quatre-vingts chevaux.  
Cinq cents soldats.

Eighty horses.  
Five hundred soldiers.

The preceding remark holds good when the noun is understood ; as,  
Nous étions deux cents. | We were two hundred (persons).

74. III. But when *vingt* and *cent* are followed by another number, or used as *ordinal* numbers (76), they do not take an *s* ; as,

Quatre-vingt-dix chevaux.  
Cinq cent vingt soldats.  
L'an huit cent.  
Page quatre-vingt.

Ninety horses.  
Five hundred and twenty soldiers.  
In the year eight hundred.  
Page the eightieth.

75. IV. *Mille*,† a thousand, never takes an *s* in the plural ; but *mille*, a mile, takes one : thus, *dix mille* is ten thousand, and *dix milles* means ten miles. In mentioning the Christian era, *mille* is spelt *mil* ; as,

Napoléon mourut en MIL.† huit cent vingt et un.

Napoleon died in one THOUSAND eight hundred and twenty-one.

But this spelling (*mil*) is only applied to dates of the Christian era, and we write *l'an mille de l'ère des Juifs*.

76. V. The French make use of the *cardinal* numbers instead of the *ordinal*—1st, in mentioning THE DAY OF THE MONTH, except *the first*, which is *le premier* ; 2dly, in speaking of SOVEREIGNS, and in quoting CHAPTERS, PAGES, SECTIONS, BOOKS, &c., always excepting *the first* of the series, which is *premier* or *première*.

1. { L'année commence le premier janvier, et finit le trente et un décembre.
2. { François premier succéda à Louis XII (douze).  
Chapitre premier, page deux cent.

The year begins (on) the first (of) January, and ends (on) the thirty-first (of) December.  
Francis (the) first succeeded Louis (the) twelfth.  
Chapter (the) first, page 200.

In speaking of the Emperor Charles V. and of Pope Sixtus V., we say *Charles-Quint*, § *Sixte-Quint*.

† See note on previous page.

‡ We also say *dix-huit cent*, (*onze cents*, 1100 ; *douze cents*, 1200, &c.), but not *dix cents*, 1000 ; this is always *mille*.

§ The French say *Charles-Quint* (in imitation of the Spanish) to distinguish that Emperor from their own king, *Charles V* (*cinq*)—1537-1580.



## EXERCISE XXI.

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus, in  
 art. *Amérique f. fut découverte par Christophe Colomb en*  
 (the year) *one thousand four hundred and ninety-two.*—We have  
 \* \* \* *Nous avons*  
*eighty* (men of war) ready to sail, we (shall soon have)  
*vaisseaux de guerre prêts faire voile en aurons bientôt*  
*two hundred.*—Our troops took five thousand prisoners. —  
*Nos troupes firent prisonnier*  
 (It is) *four miles* from here.—Send me the <sup>2</sup>*first two dozens.*  
*Il y a mille m. ici. Envoyez-moi*  
 —Your letter of the *fifteenth* of January (reached me) on  
*Votre lettre f. \* janvier m'est parvenue \**  
 the *first* of February. — I arrived on the *second.*  
 \* *février suis arrivé \**

## EXERCISE XXII. (FIRST PART.)

Louis the *sixteenth*, Louis the *eighteenth*, and Charles the *tenth*,  
 — — — — —  
 were brothers. — Francis the *first*, king of France, and  
*étaient frère François*  
 Frederick the *second*, king of Prussia, were great warriors.  
*Frédéric Prusse, étaient de grand guerrier*  
 —Louis the *thirteenth* was the founder of the French Academy.  
*est fondateur <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>Académie f.*  
 —Charles the *fifth*, king of France, was surnamed the wise.—  
*fut surnommé sage.*

Pope Sixtus the *fifth* was contemporary with Philip the *second*,  
 art. *pape était contemporain de Philippe*  
 son of the emperor Charles the *fifth*.—James I. and Henry IV.

77. OBSERVATIONS ON THE *days of the week*, THE *months*, THE *seasons*, AND THE *hour*.

(1) The days of the week are all masculine in French, and take no capitals. They are: *Sunday*, dimanche; *Monday*, lundi; *Tuesday*, mardi; *Wednesday*, mercredi; *Thursday*, jeudi; *Friday*, vendredi; *Saturday*, samedi. (See Rule 21 (b).)

(2) ~~as~~ The preposition *on*, used in English before *days* and *dates*, must not be expressed in French. Observe also that the *plural form* used in English to express something habitually occurring on certain *days*, is rendered by the *singular* article *LE* in French. Examples:—

*He will come on Saturday.*  
*She will be here on the 21st.*  
*Peter goes out on Sundays.*

*Il viendra samedi.*  
*Elle sera ici le 21. (See R. 76.)*  
*Pierre sort LE dimanche.*

(3) The names of the months (*les mois*) are all masculine in French, and take no capitals (see Rule 21 (b).) They are :

<i>January,</i>	<i>janvier.</i>	<i>May,</i>	<i>mai.</i>	<i>September,</i>	<i>septembre.</i>
<i>February,</i>	<i>février.</i>	<i>June,</i>	<i>juin.</i>	<i>October,</i>	<i>octobre.</i>
<i>March,</i>	<i>mars.</i>	<i>July,</i>	<i>juillet.</i>	<i>November,</i>	<i>novembre.</i>
<i>April,</i>	<i>avril.</i>	<i>August,</i>	<i>août.</i>	<i>December,</i>	<i>décembre.</i>

The *l* of *avril* is slightly liquid. *Août* is generally pronounced *ou*.

(4) The names of the four seasons (*les saisons*) are : *Spring*, le printemps ; *Summer*, l'été ; *Autumn*, l'automne ; *Winter*, l'hiver—all masculine. (See Rule 21 and EXCEPTIONS (b).)

(5) ~~§~~ We say *en été*, *en automne*, *en hiver*, but *au printemps* (never *en printemps*).

(6) THE HOUR.—There is no distinction made in French between *one hour* and *one o'clock*, *six hours* and *six o'clock*—i. e., the word *heure* is used indifferently to express an interval of 60 minutes, or the time of day which the clock indicates. Example :—

<i>What o'clock is it?—It is one o'clock.</i>	<i>Quelle heure est-il?—Il est UNE heure.</i>
<i>It is two o'clock—four o'clock, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Il est DEUX heures—QUATRE heures, &amp;c.</i>
<i>It is half-past one—half-past three, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Il est UNE heure et demie—TROIS heures et demie, &amp;c.</i>
<i>It is a quarter to six—five minutes to seven, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Il est SIX heures moins un quart—SEPT heures moins cinq (minutes).</i>
<i>A quarter past two—ten minutes past nine, &amp;c.</i>	<i>DEUX heures un quart—NEUF heures dix (minutes).</i>

(7) ~~§~~ Observe that the fractions of the hour *never precede*, but, on the contrary, always follow it in French. The word *minute* is frequently left out in ordinary conversation, in such phrases as *deux heures cinq* (five minutes past two). Of course the pronoun *il* is impersonal and unchangeable in mentioning the hour.

## EXERCISE XXII. (SECOND PART.)

*February* is the shortest month of the year.—What is the  
*est* <sup>2</sup>*court* 68 <sup>1</sup>*mois* m. *année* f. *Quel*

*day* of the month? (To-day is) the seventeenth.  
*quantième* m. *C'est aujourd'hui* 76

—What o'clock is it by your watch? It is ten minutes past  
*à* *votre montre* f. 77 (7)

*four*.—We shall be at Paris on *Monday* next.—They have a  
*Nous serons* — *prochain. Ils ont \**

holiday on *Saturdays*.—I shall be here on *Wednesday* week.—  
*congé* 77 (2) *Je serai ici de* *en huit*

The country is beautiful *in the spring*. — Summer is my  
*campagne f. beau 77 (5) art. ma*  
 favourite season. — (Come back) in an *hour*. — What day  
<sup>2</sup> 58 <sup>1</sup> *saison* *Revenez dans heure f. jour m.*  
 was it yesterday? (Yesterday was) *Tuesday*. — My sisters  
*était-ce hier C'était hier Mes sœurs*  
 will be (back) on *Sunday fortnight*. — It is very warm *in*  
*seront (de retour) de en quinze. Il fait chaud au*  
*July*. — It is very cold *in December*. — (The clock is) ten  
*mois de froid h m. horloge 2*  
 minutes slow. — My watch is a quarter of an hour too fast.  
 ——— (*retarde de*) *Ma \* 2 un quart d' \* 1 (avance d')*

78. There are English words which can be made French by a mere change in their termination. Example:—*military, militaire; victory, victoire; favour, faveur; doctor, docteur; famous, fameux; constancy, constance; fury, furie; modesty, modestie; beauty, beauté; &c.*

79. Most proper names of women and goddesses ending in *a*, become French by changing that *a* into *e* mute; as,

Julia,	Julie.		Minerva,	Minerve.
Sophia,	Sophie.		Diana,	Diane.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

The sagacity of that animal is admirable. — That  
<sup>78 f.</sup> <sup>cet</sup> — <sup>est</sup> —  
 instrument is very harmonious. — The history of the Royal  
 ——— <sup>m.</sup> <sup>tres</sup> <sup>78</sup> <sup>h m.</sup> <sup>2</sup>  
 Society. — The rector of an academy. — He has the approbation  
<sup>1</sup> *Société f.* *académie f.* <sup>22 (b)</sup>  
 of the nation. — His memory is extraordinary. — The valour of  
<sup>22 (b)</sup> *Sa mémoire f.* <sup>f.</sup>  
 that general is regulated by prudence. — His courage is  
*ce général réglée par art.* — <sup>22 (b)</sup> *Son* —  
 invincible. — The number of stars is incalculable. —  
 ——— *nombre m. art. étoile* —  
 Give this nosegay to Maria or Louisa. — Flora was the  
*Donnez ce bouquet m. à ou à était*  
 goddess of flowers, and Pomona the goddess of fruits.  
<sup>42 (a)</sup> <sup>art.</sup> *fleur* <sup>art.</sup> —

## EXERCISE XXIV.

The weathercock is the symbol of inconstancy.—The  
*girouette* f. *symbole* m. art.  
 prosperity of the wicked is not durable. — An ambitious  
*prosperité* 22 (b) *méchants* pl. \_\_\_\_\_<sup>2</sup>  
 soul is seldom capable of moderation. — It is sometimes  
<sup>1</sup>*âme* f. *rarement* *modération* *quelquefois*  
 difficult to distinguish the copy from the original. — The sublimity  
*difficile de distinguer* f. \_\_\_\_\_ m. 22 (b)  
 of his sentiments is still superior to the energy of his  
*ses* \_\_\_\_\_ m. *encore supérieur* *énergie* *ses*  
 expressions. — Magistrates and physicians formerly rode  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 22 (b) art. *Magistrat* art. *médecin* <sup>2</sup>*autrefois* <sup>1</sup>*allaient*  
 on mules. — Thalia is the muse of comedy, Urania that  
*sur des* \_\_\_\_\_ — f. art. *comédie* f. *celle*  
 of astronomy. — The unicorn is a fabulous animal.  
 art. f. *licorne* f. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>

## (2) OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

80. The *Possessive* Adjectives denote possession or property; they are called *adjectives* because they are *joined to a noun*.

They, however, participate of the nature of pronouns in that they avoid the use or the repetition of a noun or pronoun; and their *root*, which is invariable, points out the person to which they refer, whilst their *endings* agree in gender and number with the *thing possessed*. Thus in *mon, ma, mes, M*, the invariable root, relates to an owner of the first person singular, whilst the final letters *on, a, es* agree respectively with a thing possessed, which is either *mas. sing.*, *fem. sing.*, or plural. The same remark applies to all other *possessive* adjectives, and the invariable *roots* of these words are but the roots of the objective form of the corresponding personal pronouns.

The *possessive* adjectives are:—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Mas.	Fem.	For both genders.	
mon	ma	mes	<i>my.</i>
ton	ta	tes	<i>thy.</i>
son	sa	ses	<i>his, her, its.</i>
notre	notre	nos	<i>our.</i>
votre	votre	vos	<i>your.</i>
leur	leur	leurs	<i>their.</i>

81. OBSERVE.—(1) The *possessive* adjectives, as well as the preposition which may accompany them, are generally

repeated before every noun, and agree with it in gender and number.

82. (2) The *possessive adjectives* always agree in French with the noun following, and never with the preceding one; that is to say, they agree with the object *possessed*, and not with the *possessor*, as in English.

83. (3) For the sake of euphony, *mon, ton, son*, are used instead of *ma, ta, sa*, before a feminine word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

### EXERCISE XXV.

*My* father, mother, and brothers are in the country. —  
*père mère frère sont à campagne f.*  
*His* uncle, aunt, and cousins are in Wales. — I  
*oncle tante — m. sont dans le pays de Galles*  
 have seen Paris, *its* theatres, and buildings. — *Our* perseverance  
*ai vu — théâtre m. édifice m. persévérance f.*  
 and *our* efforts. — *Your* country and *your* friends. — *Their*  
*— m. pays m. ami m.*  
 house and *their* servants. — *Her* son is learned. — *His* sister  
*maison f. domestique fils est savant. sœur*  
 is married. — *My* ambition, *thy* honesty, and *his* friendship.  
*mariée. — f. honnêteté f. h m. amitié f.*  
 — *My* brother has lost *his* pen, *his* pencil, and *his* books. —  
*a perdu plume f. crayon m. livre m.*  
*My* mother has sold *her* house and *her* garden. — *His* aunt, *his*  
*vendu jardin m. 83*  
 excellent aunt, has forgiven him. — Give me *my* brush, *my*  
*— 47 2a 3pardonné 1lui. Donnez-moi brosse f. 83*  
 other brush.  
*autre*

### (3) OF DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

84. (a) The *Demonstrative Adjectives* always precede a substantive, which they designate and point out. They are:—

<i>This, or that,</i>	{	<i>Ce</i> , before a word masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirate.
		<i>Cet</i> , before a word masculine singular, beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.
		<i>Cette</i> , before any feminine word.
<i>These, or those,</i>	{	<i>Ces</i> , before any word in the plural, whether masculine or feminine.

(b) ~~et~~ If we wish to point out the difference between *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, we add to the noun, by means of a hyphen, the particles *ci*† and *là* (*here* and *there*). Example:—*Ce cheval-ci*, this horse; *ce cheval-là*, that horse. *Ces plumes-ci*, these pens; *ces plumes-là*, those pens.

85. RULE.—The Demonstrative Adjectives must be repeated in French before every noun, though in English *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, are frequently used before the first noun only, and understood before the others; as,

*Ces hommes, ces femmes, et ces* | These men, women, and children  
enfants jouent. | are playing.

## EXERCISE XXVI.

*This* picture, *that* bird, *this* doll, *these* flowers, and  
tableau m. oiseau m. poupée f. fleur et  
*those* shells are (my sister's).—Taste *this* wine. — Take  
coquillage sont à ma sœur. Goûtez vin m. Prenez  
one of *these* biscuits. — *Those* children (are going) to  
— m. enfant vont  
school. — Give him *this* book and *that* slate. — *These* .  
art. école Donnez-lui livre m. ardoise f.  
cups and saucers (are not) clean.—*This* cake is for you.—  
tasse soucoupe ne sont pas propre gâteau m. pour  
*These* pencils are better than *those*. — *That* exercise was  
84 (b) crayons m. 70 65 (a) ceux-là. 84 (b) thème m. était  
much longer than *this* (one).—*Those* birds begin to  
beaucoup 65 (a) celui-ci oiseau commencent à  
build their nests early.  
faire nid de bonne heure

## (4) OF INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

86. (a) French grammarians give the common designation of *Indefinite* Adjectives to all determinative words which only add to a substantive a general or indefinite meaning. Here follows a list of those most in use:—

---

† *Ci* is an abbreviation of *ici*. The use of *ci* and *là* after the noun is only compulsory when a distinction or comparison is made between *this*, *these* (the nearest) and *that*, *those* (the farthest); the demonstrative adjectives *ce*, *cel*, *cette*, *ces*, by themselves, do not show this difference.

<i>Mas. sing.</i>	<i>Fem. sing.</i>	<i>Mas. plur.</i>	<i>Fem. plur.</i>	
chaque	chaque	aucuns	aucunes	each (every).
* { aucun, pas un	aucune, pas une	nuls	nulles	any, not any.
nul	nulle	mêmes	mêmes	not any, no.
même	même	plusieurs	plusieurs	same, self (very)
* .. .. no singular	.. ..	tous	toutes	several.
* tout	toute	quelconques	quelconques	all, every, any.
quelconque	quelconque	quels	quelles	whatever, any.
quel	quelle	quelques	quelques	what, which.
quelque	quelque	autres	autres	some, a few.
* autre	autre	maints	maintes	other.
maint	mainte	pareils	pareilles	many, many a.
pareil	pareille	tels	telles	like, such.
* tel	telle	certains	certaines	such, such a.
* l'un et l'autre	l'une et l'autre	.. ..	.. ..	both.
* l'un ou l'autre	l'une ou l'autre	.. ..	.. ..	either.
* ni l'un ni l'autre	ni l'une ni l'autre	.. ..	.. ..	neither.
certain	certaine	certains	certaines	certain, some.
.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	quantes	as many (times)†

(b) *N.B.*—Amongst the above *indefinite* expressions, those marked with an asterisk (\*) are *adjectives* only when used in connection with a noun; if used alone they are *indefinite pronouns* (see Rule 127).

(c) ~~As~~ Indefinite adjectives agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they relate, with the exception of *chaque* and *plusieurs*. They are placed *before* the substantive, except *quelconque*, and occasionally *aucun*, *même*, *tel*, and *pareil*.

87. *CHAQUE*, *every*, *each*, is of both genders, and without plural. This word must not be confounded with *chacun*; *chaque* is always followed by a noun; *chacun*, on the contrary, is never joined to a noun (see Rule 122).

*Chaque* âge a ses plaisirs.

*Chaque* science a ses principes.

Every age has its pleasures.

Every science has its principles.

88. *NUL*, *m.*, *NULLE*, *f.*; *AUCUN*, *m.*, *AUCUNE*, *f.*; *PAS UN*, *m.*, *PAS UNE*, *f.*; *none*, *no*, *no one*, *not one*, *not any*.

These expressions have nearly the same meaning when accompanied by the negative *ne* placed before the verb—

*Nul* homme n'est parfait.

*Vous* n'avez *aucune* preuve; non,  
*pas une*.

No man is perfect.

You have no proof; no, not  
one.

*N.B.*—*No*, in answer to a question, is translated by *non*.

89. (a) *MÊME*, *same*, *self*, *like*, *alike*; plural, *MÊMES*; of both genders. Example:—

C'est le *même* homme, la *même*  
personne.

Les cendres du berger et du roi  
sont les *mêmes*.

It is the same man, the same  
person.

The ashes of the shepherd and  
the king are alike.

† As in *toutes et quantes fois*, *toutes fois et quantes que*—as many times as, whenever.

(b) *Même* is often placed after a substantive or a pronoun, to give more energy to the expression.† Example :—

C'est la bonté <i>même</i> .		<i>She is kindness itself.</i>
Le roi lui- <i>même</i> s'y opposa.		<i>The king himself opposed it.</i>
Nous le ferons nous- <i>mêmes</i> .		<i>We will do it ourselves.</i>

(c) *Même* is also an adverb; then it is invariable, and means *even*, *also*. Example :—

Les femmes et <i>même</i> les enfants		<i>Women and even children were</i>
furent tués.		<i>killed.</i>

90. *PLUSIEURS*, *several*. It is of both genders, and has no singular. Example :—

<i>Plusieurs</i> historiens ont raconté.		<i>Several historians have related.</i>
En <i>plusieurs</i> occasions.		<i>On several occasions.</i>

91. *TOUT*. There are various kinds of this word.

(a) *Tout*, indefinite adjective, meaning *every*,‡ *each*, *any*, *any one*; the *quisque* of the Latin. In this sense, *tout* never takes an article nor a pronoun, and is always singular. Examples :—

<i>Tout</i> citoyen doit servir son pays.		<i>Every citizen ought to serve his country.</i>
<i>Toute</i> peine mérite salaire. — (Ac.)		<i>Every labour deserves a reward.</i>

(b) *Tout*, adjective, *all*, *whole* :

<i>Tout</i> le monde; <i>toute</i> la terre; tous les hommes.		<i>All the world; all the earth; all men.</i>
<i>Tout</i> l'homme ne meurt pas.		<i>The whole man does not die.</i>

(c) *Tout*, adverb, *quite*, *entirely*, *however* :

Elle fut <i>tout</i> étonnée.		<i>She was quite astonished.</i>
Nos vaisseaux sont <i>tout</i> prêts.		<i>Our vessels are quite ready.</i>

(d) ~~Le~~ *Tout*, adverb, for the sake of euphony, agrees like an adjective in gender and number, when immediately followed by an adjective or participle feminine, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirate; as,

Elle était <i>toute</i> changée.		<i>She was quite altered.</i>
Elle en est <i>toute</i> honteuse.		<i>She is quite ashamed of it.</i>
<i>Toutes</i> spirituelles qu'elles sont. §		<i>Witty as they are.</i>

(e) *Tout*, substantive masculine, *the whole*—the *totum* of the Latin; its plural is *touts* : *un tout*, *des touts*—

*Le tout* est plus grand que sa partie. | *The whole is larger than its part.*

† Examples of *même* placed before and after a substantive :—

Il partit le <i>même</i> jour.		<i>He left on the same day.</i>
Il partit le jour <i>même</i> .		<i>He left on the very day.</i>

‡ *Every* is often translated by *tous les*, *toutes les* : *every morning*, *tous les matins*; *every week*, *toutes les semaines*.

§ But we should write : *tout aimable qu'elle est*; *tout étonnantes que sont ces aventures*,—because the adjective following *tout* begins with a vowel.



92. **QUELCONQUE**, *whatever, whatsoever*. When used with a negative, it is nearly synonymous with *nul, aucun*; it is invariable, and is always placed after a noun; as,

Il n'y a homme *quelconque*.

*There is no man whatever.*

Il n'y a raison *quelconque*.

*There is no reason whatsoever.*

When used without a negative, it admits of a plural; as,

Deux points *quelconques*.—(AC.)

*Two points whatsoever.*

Prêtez-moi deux romans *quelconques*.

*Lend me any two novels.*

93. **QUEL**, *m.*, **QUELLE**, *f.*; **QUELS**, *m. pl.*, **QUELLES**, *f. pl.*, *which, what*. This indefinite adjective is used principally in interrogations and exclamations, or to express uncertainty and doubt. It may be followed by a noun, with which it agrees in gender and number, or be separated from such noun, or from the pronoun referring to it, by the verb *être*, if used in interrogation; as in **QUELS chevaux avez-vous vus?** or **QUELS sont les chevaux que vous avez vus?** What horses have you seen? or, Which are the horses that you have seen?

*N.B.*—The indefinite article *a, an*, used in English exclamations after *what*, is not expressed in French.

*Quel maître!*—*Quelle dame!*

*What master!*—*What lady!*

*Quels livres, quelles brochures lisez-vous?*

*What books, what pamphlets do you read?*

*Quel bonheur!*

*What happiness!*

*Quel homme vous êtes!*

*What a man you are!*

Il ne sait *quel* parti prendre.

*He knows not what course to take.*

J'ai des nouvelles à vous *ap-*  
*prendre. — Quelles sont-elles?*

*I have news to tell you. — What is it?*

94. (a) **QUELQUE**, *s.*, **QUELQUES**, *pl.*, *some*, is of both genders, and is always joined to a noun.

*Quelque auteur en a parlé.*

*Some author has mentioned it.*

Il y a *quelques* difficultés.

*There are some difficulties.*

(b) *Quelque*, with *que* before the succeeding verb, means *whatever*.

*Quelque soin qu'on prenne.*

*Whatever care one may take.*

*Quelque raison qu'il ait.*

*Whatever reason he may have.*

*Quelques efforts que vous fassiez.*

*Whatever efforts you may make.*

*Quelque chose qu'il m'ait dite.†*

*Whatever he may have told me.*

† *Quelque chose*, something (indefinite pronoun), is masculine: donnez-lui *quelque chose de bon*. *Quelque chose*, whatever thing, is composed of *quelque* (indefinite adjective) and *chose* (substantive feminine): *quelque chose qu'il m'ait dite*.—(ACAD.)

(c) When *whatever* is followed by a noun subject of *to be* (être), it is translated in French by two words—viz., *quel* and *que*. In this case *quel* is an adjective, and agrees in gender and number with the noun subject, which is then *always* inverted—i.e., placed after the verb, as shown in the following examples:—

<i>Quelle que</i> soit votre intention.		Whatever your intention may be.
<i>Quels que</i> soient vos desseins.		Whatever your designs may be.
<i>Quelles que</i> soient vos vues.—(AC.)		Whatever your views may be.

(d) *Quelque*, followed by an adverb or an adjective without a noun, is considered as an adverb, and is invariable; it corresponds to the English *however*, *howsoever*; as,

<i>Quelque bien</i> écrits que soient ces ouvrages, ils ont peu de succès.		However well written these works may be, they have little success.
<i>Quelque puissants</i> qu'ils soient, je ne les crains point.—(ACADEMY.)		However powerful they may be, I do not fear them.

(e) *Quelque*, when immediately followed by a cardinal number, is also considered as an adverb; then, it means *about*, *nearly*, *some*, and is of the familiar style; as,

Alexandre perdit <i>quelque</i> trois cents hommes, lorsqu'il défît Porus.		Alexander lost some three hundred men when he defeated Porus.
--	--	---

## EXERCISE XXVII.

*Every country has its customs.*—No man is dissatisfied with  
                   *pays m. a coutume n'est mécontent de*  
 his own understanding.—No reason can justify a  
                   *propre jugement m. raison f. ne peut justifier le*  
 falsehood. — It is the same sun that (gives light to) all  
                   *mensonge m. C'est soleil m. qui éclaire*  
 the nations of the earth.—It is virtue itself.—Divide the  
                   — 22 (b) *terre f. art. vertu f. Divisez*  
 whole into several parts. — The whole fleet is at sea.—Every  
                   *en partie 2 1 flotte f. est en mer.*  
 truth (is not) proper (to be told).—Any pretext whatever.  
                   *vérité f. n'est pas bon à dire. Un prétexte m.*

## 95. REMARKS UPON SOME INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

(a) *TEL, telle, tels, telles*, such, such a; † *AUTRE, autres* (both genders), other; *L'UN ET L'AUTRE, l'une et l'autre*, both; *L'UN OU L'AUTRE, l'une ou l'autre*, either; *NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE, ni l'une ni l'autre*, ‡ neither; *PLUSIEURS*, several—are only considered as adjectives when they are joined to substantives; as,

*Tel père, tel fils.*

*L'autre jour.*

*D'autres voitures (32).*

*L'un et l'autre auteur.*

*L'une ou l'autre dame.*

*Ni l'un ni l'autre habit ne lui plaît.*

*Like father, like son.*

*The other day.*

*Other carriages.*

*Both authors.*

*Either lady.*

*Neither coat pleases him.*

\* \* Compare with Indefinite Pronouns, Chapter IV.

(b) *MAINT, mainte, maints, maintes*, many, many a; † *CERTAIN, certaine, certains, certaines*, one, a, certain, some; *PARÉIL, pareille, pareils, pareilles*, like, alike, such, similar—are always used as adjectives:—

*Dans maintes occasions.*

*J'ai lu maint ouvrage de ce genre.*

*J'ai rencontré certains messieurs.*

*Une pareille surprise.*

*On many occasions.*

*I have read many a † work of this kind.*

*I have met certain gentlemen.*

*Such a surprise.*

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

I have read *both* versions.— *Such* deeds of benevolence

*J'ai lu 95 — f. s. De 32 acte m. bienfaisance*

are rare.—Where are *all* the *other* flowers?—*Neither* lady is  
*sont — 59 Où fleur f. 95 dame n'est*

my relative. — *Either* shawl (will suit) me. — Bring some  
*parente châle m. 2conviendra 1me Apportez 94*

*other* books.—*Like* master, like man.—*What* lesson have you  
*livre m. Tel maître valet leçon f. avez-vous*

learnt?—(There are) *some* defects in that picture.—*What*—*apprise?* *Il y a défaut dans tableau m.*

ever your talents (may be), you (will not succeed) without  
*2 — m. pl. 1soient ne réussirez pas sans*

application. — She is *quite* wet. — These ladies were *quite*  
*Elle mouillée furent*

surprised to see him.

*surprises de 2voir 1le*

† Observe that the article *a, an*, has its corresponding French word *un, une*, placed before *tel*, and that it is not expressed after *maint, mainte*.

‡ The noun following *l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre*, is always used in the singular.

For Etymology of ADJECTIVES, see *Appendix*, pp. 391 to 403.

## CHAPTER IV.

## OF PRONOUNS.

96. The word *Pronoun* is formed of the word *noun*, and of the Latin preposition *pro*, which means *for* or *instead of*.

In the French language there are five kinds of Pronouns—viz., the *Personal*, the *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, the *Relative*, and the *Indefinite*.

## § I. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

97. *Personal* Pronouns are used instead of the names of persons or things, to avoid the repetition of the nouns which they represent.

(a) There are *three persons*: the first is, the person speaking; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person or thing spoken of.

(b) The pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons are both masculine and feminine—that is, of the same gender as the person or persons they represent.

(c) ~~as~~ The pronoun is the *subject* when it is in the state, or performs the action, expressed by the verb. The pronoun is the *object* when it completes the verb, either with or without a preposition.

## 98 PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

		Singular.	Examples.	
Subject,	Je,	I.	Je donne,	I give.
Object,	{ moi,	{ me.	suivez-moi,	follow me.
		{ to me.	écoutez-moi,	listen to me.
		{ me.	il me flatte,	he flatters me.
	me,	{ to me.	il me parle,	he speaks to me.
		Plural.		
Subject,	nous,	we.	nous donnons,	we give.
Object,	nous,	{ us.	il nous voit,	he sees us.
		{ to us.	il nous parle,	he speaks to us.

99. PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS.—The Personal Pronouns are generally placed before the verb, *except*—

(1) When the pronouns (used as *objects*) take a preposition before them in French; as, *il parle de nous*, he speaks of us.

(2) In interrogative sentences (when used as *subjects*); as, *parlez-vous*? do you speak?

(3) When the verb is in the first person plural, or in either of the second persons of the Imperative, without a negative; as, *parlez-moi*, speak to me. But if the Imperative is used with a negative, the personal pronouns are placed before the verb; as, *ne me parlez pas*, do not speak to me.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

*I speak French.*—*I have said that.*—*Lend me your pencil.*—  
*parle français.*      *ai dit cela.*      *Prêtez votre crayon m.*  
*Help me.*—*Believe me.*—*Write to me.*—*Do not write to me.*  
*Aidez*      *Croyez*      *Écrivez*  
*— He hurts me.*—*He sees me.*—*This picture pleases me*  
*Il blesse*      *voit*      *Ce tableau m. plaît*  
*more than the other.*—*We praise God.*—*He knows us.*—  
*plus que*      *autre.*      *louons Dieu.*      *connatt*  
*We tell him the truth, but he (will not) believe us.*—  
<sup>2</sup>*disons* <sup>1</sup>*lui*      *vérité f. mais*      *ne veut pas croire*  
*He related to us the history of his misfortunes.*  
*a raconté*      *histoire h m.*      *ses malheur*

## 100. PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

		Singular.		Examples.	
Subject,	tu,		thou.	tu es heureux,	thou art happy.
Object,	{ toi,		thee.	je parle pour toi,	I speak for thee.
	{ te,		{ thee.	Dieu te voit,	God sees thee.
			{ to thee.	Je te parle,	I speak to thee.
		Plural.			
Subject,	vous,		you.	vous chantez,	you sing.
Object,	vous,		{ you.	il vous connatt,	he knows you.
			{ to you.	Je vous parle,	I speak to you.

101. REMARK.—When from politeness we use *vous* (you) instead of the singular *tu* (thou), the verb is put in the plural, but the adjective or participle following remains in the singular, and takes the feminine termination if we speak to a female; as,

Monsieur, vous êtes bien bon.		Sir, you are very good.
Madame, vous êtes bien bonne.		Madam, you are very good.

## EXERCISE XXX.

*Thou fearest God.*—*He (will do) it for thee.*—*He praises*  
*crains Dieu.*      *Il*      <sup>2</sup>*fera*      <sup>1</sup>*le pour*      *loue*  
*thee.*—*He will speak to thee.*—*You have spoiled this book.*—  
*parlera*      *avez gâté ce livre m.*  
*How troublesome you are!*—*How good you are!*—*Ladies,*  
*Que*      <sup>2</sup>*importun*      <sup>1</sup>*m.*      <sup>2</sup>*êtes*      <sup>3</sup>*bon*      <sup>1</sup>*f.*      <sup>2</sup>      *Mesdames,*  
*how amiable you are!*—*I bring you the newspaper.*—*You*  
<sup>3</sup>*aimable*      <sup>1</sup>      <sup>2</sup>      *apporte*      *journal m.*

(are fond of) flowers; if you like, I will give you this  
*aimez art. fleur si voulez donnerai ce*  
 fine nosegay. — Are you pleased, my dear little friend?  
*beau bouquet m. Êtes content ma 53 amie f.*

## 102. PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

		Singular.	Examples.
Subject,	{ il, m.	he, it.	il donne, he gives.
	{ elle, f.	she, it.	elle donne, she gives.
Object,	{ lui, m.	{ him.	il parle de lui, he speaks of him.
	{ lui, f.	{ to him.	il lui parle, he speaks to him.
	{ elle, f.	{ to her.	je lui parlerai, I will speak to her.
		her.	il parle d'elle, he speaks of her.
		Plural.	
Subject,	{ ils, m.	they.	ils mangent, they eat.
	{ elles, f.	they.	elles chantent, they sing.
Object,	{ eux, m.	them.	venez avec eux, come with them.
	{ elles, f.	them.	c'est pour elles, it is for them.
	{ leur, m. & f.	to them.	je leur parlerai, I will speak to them.

OF THE PRONOUNS *le, † la, les*.

103. These pronouns always accompany a verb, and are thus easily distinguished from the articles *le, la, les* (see p. 13), which constantly accompany a noun. Examples:—

le, mas.	{ him,	je le connais,	I know him.
	{ it,	{ voilà un bon livre, lisez- } le,	there is a good book, read it.
la, fem.	{ her,	je la vois,	I see her.
	{ it,	{ vous avez la clef, don- } nez-la moi,	you have the key, give it me.
les, for both gend.	{ them,	{ vous les trouverez dans } mon tiroir,	you will find them in my drawer.
		{ il les connaît,	he knows them.

In this phrase, *Je connais les princes et les princesses, je les vois souvent* (I know the princes and the princesses, I see them often), the first two *les* are articles, the third is a pronoun.

These three personal pronouns, *le, la, les*, are called "Relative" by some Grammarians.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

*He* has done his duty. — *She* sings well. — I (am writing)  
*a fait son devoir. chante bien. écris*  
 to him. — What (shall I say) to her? — They speak to them.  
*Que dirai-je in. parlent*  
 — They will return with them. — (Do not come) without them.  
*f. reviendront m. Ne venez pas sans f.*

† The pronouns *le* and *la* are replaced by *l'* when the following word begins with a vowel or *h* silent. (See Rules 11 and 12.)

— *They* prefer the country to the town. — Prosperity  
*m. préfèrent campagne f. ville f. art. prospérité* †  
 gets us friends and adversity tries *them*.  
*fait 32 ami art. éprouve*

### OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS, *Se, Soi*.

104. *Se, soi*, Pronouns of the third person, are used both for persons and things. *Se* is placed before a verb, and *soi* generally after a preposition. Examples:—

SE,	<i>himself,</i>	<i>il se loue,</i>	<i>he praises himself.</i>
	<i>herself,</i>	<i>elle se flatte,</i>	<i>she flatters herself.</i>
	<i>itself,</i>	<i>il se détruit,</i>	<i>it destroys itself.</i>
	<i>oneself,</i>	<i>se louer,</i>	<i>to praise oneself.</i>
	<i>themselves,</i>	<i>ils or elles se flattent,</i>	<i>they flatter themselves.</i>
SOI,	<i>to himself,</i>	<i>il s'attribue,</i>	<i>he attributes to himself.</i>
	<i>to herself,</i>	<i>elle s'attribue,</i>	<i>she attributes to herself.</i>
	<i>to oneself,</i>	<i>se prescrire,</i>	<i>to prescribe to oneself.</i>
	<i>to themselves,</i>	<i>ils or elles se prescrivent,</i>	<i>they prescribe to themselves.</i>
	<i>himself,</i>	<i>chacun pour soi,</i>	<i>every one for himself.</i>
	<i>itself,</i>	<i>cela est bon en soi,</i>	<i>that is good in itself.</i>
	<i>oneself,</i>	<i>il faut songer à soi,</i>	<i>one must think of oneself.</i>
	<i>themselves,</i>	<i>{ on doit parler rarement } de soi,</i>	<i>{ people should seldom speak of themselves.</i>

### EXERCISE XXXII.

He submits *himself* to your orders. — That lady praises  
*soumet vos ordre Cette dame loue*  
*herself* (too much.) — She gives *herself* (a great deal) of  
*trop. donne beaucoup*  
 trouble. — They expose *themselves* to danger. — They  
*peine exposent art. — m.*  
 will accustom *themselves* (to it.) — (Every one) works for  
*3accoutumeront 1 2y Chacun travaille pour*  
*himself.* — The loadstone attracts iron to *itself*. —  
*aimant m. attire art. fer m.*

Virtue is amiable in *itself*. — He will soon correct *himself*.  
*art. vertu f. est aimable de \* 3bientôt 2corrigerà 1*

### § II. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

105. (a) These pronouns always refer to a noun previously expressed, representing *an object possessed*.

(b) The *endings* of these pronouns agree in gender and number with the *object possessed*, whilst their *roots*, which are invariable, relate to the *person of the owner*. They consist of the definite article, which is

never separated from them, is inflected according to the gender and number of the *thing possessed*, and, combined with *d* and *de*, has the same forms as if joined to a noun.

The possessive pronouns are :—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	<i>mine.</i>
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	<i>thine.</i>
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	<i>his, hers, its.</i>
le nôtre	la nôtre	Pl. for both genders {	les nôtres	<i>ours.</i>
le vôtre	la vôtre		les vôtres	<i>yours.</i>
le leur	la leur		les leurs	<i>theirs.</i>
du mien	de la mienne	des miens	des miennes	<i>of or from mine.</i>
au mien	à la mienne	aux miens	aux miennes	<i>to or at mine, &amp;c.</i>

### EXERCISE XXXIII.

(Here is) your hat, (don't take) mine. — His  
*Voici chapeau m. ne prenez pas*

house and mine have been burnt, but theirs (has not)  
*maison f. et ont été brûlées mais n'a point*

suffered. — Your books are better bound than mine. — My  
*souffert. livre m. sont reliés que*

watch (does not go) so well as hers. — Your garden is  
*montre f. ne va pas si que jardin m. est*

larger than ours, but our orchard is larger than yours. —  
*plus grand verger m.*

You have taken my gloves, and (I have) taken yours. —  
*avez pris gant m. moi j'ai*

I know your relations, but I (don't know) theirs. —  
*connais parent m. pl. ne connais pas*

The master has spoken of my book and of hers. — I have  
*maître a parlé 105 (b) J'ai*

written to his aunt and to mine. — We have received letters  
*écrit tante avons reçu 32 lettre*

from our parents and from yours.

### § III. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

106. The *Demonstrative* Pronouns serve to point out the persons or things to which we wish to refer; the nature of these pronouns is rather to *show* than to *name* objects.



They all relate to the third person, as follows :—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.		Mas.	Fem.	
ce	... ..	<i>this, that, it.</i>	No plural.		
celui	celle	<i>that.</i>	ceux	celles	<i>those.</i>
celui-ci	celle-ci	<i>this.</i>	ceux-ci	celles-ci	<i>these.</i>
celui-là	celle-là	<i>that.</i>	ceux-là	celles-là	<i>those.</i>
ceci	... ..	<i>this.</i>	} No plural.		
cela	... ..	<i>that.</i>			

(a) ~~CE~~ CE, demonstrative pronoun, differs from CE, demonstrative adjective (p. 44) in this, that *ce*, adjective, is always placed before a substantive, whereas the pronoun *ce* either accompanies the verb *être* or the verbs *devoir* and *pouvoir* (when the two last named are followed by *être*), or it precedes the pronouns *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *à quoi* :

<i>Ce qui me plaît, c'est sa modestie.</i>	What ( <i>that which</i> ) pleases me is his modesty.
<i>Ce que vous dites.</i>	What ( <i>that which</i> ) you say.
<i>Ce à quoi il s'applique.</i>	That to which he applies himself.
<i>Ce doit être Alfred.</i>	It must be Alfred.
<i>Si ce pouvait être lui !</i>	If it could be him !

(b) CE, demonstrative pronoun (i.e., not preceding a substantive) is unchangeable for both genders and numbers :—

<i>De toutes les vertus celle qui se fait le plus chérir, c'est l'humanité.</i>	<i>Of all the virtues, that which makes itself most beloved is humanity.</i>
<i>Ce furent les Phéniciens qui inventèrent l'écriture. — (BOSSUET.)</i>	<i>It was the Phœnicians who invented writing.</i>

(c) N.B.—Although CE is unchangeable in these cases, the verb which accompanies it is put in the *third person plural* when it precedes a *plural* noun or the pronouns *eux*, *elles* ; before any other pronoun (including *nous* and *vous*) the verb is in the *third person singular*, and even with *eux*, *elles*, when the verb is used interrogatively. (See SYNTAX.)

107. The Pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, always relate to a noun expressed before ; as,

<i>Voici votre livre, où est celui de votre frère ?</i>	<i>Here is your book, where is that of your brother ?</i>
<i>J'admire les traductions de Pope et celles de Delille.</i>	<i>I admire the translations of Pope and those of Delille.</i>

108. When two or more objects have been spoken of, *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci* are used with reference to the nearest, and *celui-là*, *celle-là*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là* refer to the most distant, or first-mentioned object ; as,

<i>Voici deux pistolets, lequel choisissez-vous, celui-ci ou celui-là ?</i>	<i>Here are two pistols, which do you choose, this or that ?</i>
---	--

<p>Le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle; cependant nous négligeons celle-ci, et nous sacrifions tout pour celui-là.</p>	<p><i>The body perishes, the soul is immortal; yet we neglect the latter, and sacrifice everything for the former.</i></p>
---	--

This last example shows also that the English words, *the former*, are likewise expressed by *celui-là*, *celle-là*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là*, and *the latter* by *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they relate.

*N.B.*—See Remark on *ci* and *là*, page 45.

109. *Ceci*, this, and *cela*, that, are never followed by a noun, nor used with reference to a noun mentioned before; they stand for something pointed at, but not named; they have no plural, and are both masculine.

<p><i>Ceci</i> est bon, mais <i>cela</i> est mauvais. Donnez-moi <i>ceci</i>, et gardez <i>cela</i>.</p>	<p><i>This is good, but that is bad.</i> <i>Give me this, and keep that.</i></p>
--	--

#### EXERCISE XXXIV.

*It is a misfortune.*—(Here is) your umbrella, and *that* of  
*est malheur m. Voici parapluie m.*

your cousin. — Bring my scissors, and those of my  
*— m. Apportez ciseaux m. pl.*

sister. — Which of these watches (will you have), *this*, or  
*sœur. Laquelle 84 montre f. voulez-vous 108 ou*  
*that?* — (Here are) fine pictures, buy *these* or *those*.—  
*108 Voici de beau tableau m. achetez*

Give *this* to (the lady) and *that* to (the gentleman).— An  
*Donnez madame monsieur.*

upright magistrate and a brave officer are equally  
*<sup>2</sup>intègre <sup>1</sup>magistrat m. — officier m. sont également*  
*estimable; the former makes war against domestic*  
*— 108 fait art. guerre f. à art. <sup>2</sup>domestique*  
*enemies, the latter protects us against foreign enemies.—*  
*<sup>1</sup>ennemi m. pl. 108 protège contre art. <sup>2</sup>extérieur <sup>1</sup>*

Who is it? It is the postman. — It is the children.—Is it  
*Qui facteur. sont enfant.*

they? — Is it your brothers? No; it is my sisters. —  
*eux Sont-frère Non 106 (c) sœur.*

Do you know these gentlemen? Yes; they are London  
*Connaissiez-vous messieurs Oui ce <sup>2</sup>de Londres 32*  
*merchants.*  
*<sup>1</sup>négociant*

## § IV. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

110. *Relative Pronouns* are those which relate to a noun or pronoun, or phrase going before, which is thence called the *antecedent*.

The relative pronouns are: *qui, que, quoi, lequel, dont, où, en, y*.

111. **QUI, QUE, QUOI**, are of both genders and numbers:—

qui,	<i>who,</i>	{ Dieu <i>qui</i> est juste, . . .	<i>God who is just.</i>
	<i>which,</i>	{ la dame <i>qui</i> parle, . . .	<i>the lady who is speaking.</i>
à qui,	<i>said of persons only.</i>	{ les oiseaux <i>qui</i> chantent,	<i>the birds which are singing.</i>
		{ to whom, { le garçon à <i>qui</i> j'écris,	<i>the boy to whom I am writing.</i>
que,	<i>whom,</i>	{ l'homme <i>que</i> vous voyez,	<i>the man whom you see.</i>
	<i>which,</i>	{ les livres <i>que</i> vous lisez,	<i>the books which you read.</i>
quoi,	<i>what,</i>	{ voilà de <i>quoi</i> je voulais	<i>that is what I wished to</i>
		{ vous parler,	<i>speak to you about.</i>

Let the student notice from the above examples that *qui* is used as *subject* in reference to *persons, animals, and things*,—that *WHOM* is translated by *qui* after a preposition, in which case *qui* is only used in reference to *persons*.

REMARK.—*Que* loses the *e* before a vowel; *qui* never changes.

112. (a) **LEQUEL** is a compound of *quel*, and of the article *le*, with which it incorporates in the following manner, and *must be used* as the equivalent of *WHICH*, whenever *WHICH* is preceded by a preposition and refers to *animals and things*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
lequel	laquelle		lesquels	lesquelles	<i>which.</i>
duquel	de laquelle		desquels	desquelles	<i>of which.</i>
auquel	à laquelle		auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to which.</i>

(b) This pronoun is used with reference to persons and things, with which it also agrees in gender and number. Examples:—

lequel, <i>m. which,</i>	{ le fauteuil sur lequel je suis assis,	{ the arm-chair on which I am sitting.
auquel, <i>m. to which,</i>	{ le cheval auquel vous avez donné l'avoine,	{ the horse to which you have given the oats.
laquelle, <i>f. which,</i>	{ c'est une de ses sœurs, mais je ne sais laquelle,	{ it is one of his sisters, but I do not know which.
à laquelle, <i>f. to which,</i>	{ c'est une raison à laquelle il n'y a point de réplique,	{ it is a reason to which there can be no reply.

113. (a) **DONT** is of both genders and numbers, and is used when speaking of persons or things: it supplies the place of *de qui*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, *de quoi*, but is never used in asking a question.

(b) **NOTE**.—*Dont* is never used in asking a question, that is—you never begin a question with *dont*; but, in the body of an interrogative phrase, the word is perfectly correct; as, *Où est la femme dont vous parlez?* Where is the woman of whom you speak? Here follow some examples of *dont* :—

dont,	of which,	{ c'est une maladie dont on ne connaît pas la cause,	{ it is an illness, the cause of which is unknown.
	of whom,	{ l'homme dont vous parlez,	{ the man of whom you speak.
	whose,	{ la nature dont nous ignorons les secrets,	{ nature, whose secrets are unknown to us.

114. *Qui*, *que*, *quoi*, *lequel*, are called relative pronouns *absolute*, when they have no antecedent, and only present to the mind a vague and indeterminate idea.

(a) In this case *qui* is used only in speaking of persons (whether as *subject* or *object*, with or without a preposition), and *que* and *quoi* are used in speaking of things (i.e., *que* only as a *direct object*, and *quoi* with a preposition).

(b) *Lequel* marks a distinction, and is used in interrogative sentences, when asking which person or thing among several. Examples on the use of *qui*, *que*, *quoi*, *lequel* :—

qui,	who,	{ qui (quelle personne) est là ?	{ who is there ?
		{ je ne sais qui est arrivé,	{ I don't know who has arrived.
	whom,	{ qui appelez-vous ? . . .	{ whom do you call ?
		{ consultez qui vous voudrez,	{ consult whom you please.
que,	what,	{ je saurai avec qui il est venu,	{ I shall know with whom he came.
		{ pour qui parlez-vous ? . . .	{ for whom are you speaking ?
		{ que (quelle chose) cherchez-vous ?	{ what are you seeking ?
quoi,	what,	{ je ne sais que faire, . . .	{ I don't know what to do.
		{ à quoi (à quelle chose) pensez-vous ?	{ what are you thinking of ?
		{ quoi de plus aimable que la vertu ?	{ what more amiable than virtue ?
lequel, m. which,		{ lequel préférez-vous ? . .	{ which do you prefer ?
		{ choisissez lequel vous voudrez,	{ choose which you please.
laquelle, f. which,		{ laquelle de ses sœurs est mariée ?	{ which of his sisters is married ?

## OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *οὗ*.

115. OÙ is a relative pronoun when used instead of *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, preceded by a preposition. Its English equivalent is the pronoun *which*, preceded by the prepositions *in, during, or through*. This pronoun is employed only in speaking of *time and places*, and is of both genders and numbers. Examples:—

L'instant où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort.—(VOLTAIRE.)  
La maison où je demeure.—(ACAD.)  
Les pays par où j'ai passé.

*The instant in which we are born is a step towards death.  
The house in which I live.  
The countries through which I have passed.*

### EXERCISE XXXV.

The man *who* reasons. — The lady whom I see. — The  
*raisonne. dame vois.*  
 sciences *to which* he applies. — Here is the gentleman  
 — f. pl. *s'applique. Voici monsieur*  
*of whom* you speak. — With *whom* do you live? — *What*  
*parlez. Avec demeurez-vous?*  
 (shall we do) *to-day?* — *Which* (do you like) best of those  
*ferons-nous aujourd'hui? aimez-vous*  
 three pictures? — The child *to whom* everything gives way  
*tableau m. enfant m. tout cède*  
 is most unhappy. — The state *in which* I find myself.  
*art. malheureux. état m. 115 me trouve.*

## OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *en*.

116. (a) EN, a pronoun of both genders and numbers, is sometimes used in speaking of persons, although it is chiefly said of things, and places: its principal function is to avoid the repetition of a word or phrase already expressed. It signifies *of him, of her, of it, from it, of them, some of it, some of them, any, for it for them, &c.*

(b) EN is placed before the verb whenever the latter is followed by *some* or *any* or a *cardinal adjective*, an *adverb* or a *noun of quantity* when the words are not followed by their nouns. Examples :—

Il aime les auteurs français, il	<i>He likes French authors, he often</i>
EN parle souvent.	<i>speaks of them.</i>
Cette maladie est dangereuse, il	<i>That illness is dangerous, he</i>
pourrait EN mourir.	<i>mighi die of it.</i>
A-t-il des protecteurs?—Oui, il	<i>Has he any protectors?—Yes, he</i>
EN a beaucoup.	<i>has many.</i>

Vous parlez d'argent, **EN** avez-vous ?—Oui, j'**EN** ai.  
A-t-elle des frères ?—Oui, elle **EN** a quatre.  
Nous reste-t-il du vin ?—Oui, nous **EN** avons encore plusieurs bouteilles.

*You talk of money, have you any ?—Yes, I have some.  
Has she any brothers ?—Yes, she has four.  
Have we any wine left ?—Yes, we have still several bottles (of it).*

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *y*.

117. (*a*) *Y*, a pronoun of both genders and numbers, is sometimes employed with reference to persons, but its use is almost strictly confined to things: it corresponds to the English *to him, to her, to it, to them, in it, in them, therein, &c.* Examples:—

Je connais cet homme, je ne m'*y* fie pas.  
Il aime l'étude et s'*y* livre entièrement.  
J'ai reçu sa lettre, j'*y* répondrai.  
Vos raisons sont bonnes, je m'*y* rends.  
J'*y* ai remarqué quelques fautes.

*I know that man, I do not trust to him.  
He loves study, and devotes himself entirely to it.  
I have received his letter, I shall answer (to) it.  
Your reasons are good, I yield to them.  
I observed some faults in it, on in them.*

*Some Grammarians class en and y among the personal pronouns.*

(*b*) The pronouns *en* and *y* are always placed before the verb, except with an Imperative affirmative.

[See, in the Chapter on the Adverb, what is said upon *y*, Adverb.]

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

Read his letter, and tell me what you think of it.—  
*Lisez lettre f. dites-moi ce que pensez*

Give me that, I (am in want) of it.—Are you going to  
*Donnez-moi ai besoin Allez-vous*

Edinburgh? I come from it.—(Here are) strawberries, will  
*Édimbourg viens Voici 32 fraise voulez*

you have any? — I will give you some. — Take some  
*\* 1vais 4donner 2 3 Prenez*

more. — I consent to it.— Put your signature to it.—  
*davantage. consens Mettez- 117 (b)*

Those arguments are conclusive; I see no reply  
*— m. sont décisif n' vois point de réplique*

to them. — The undertaking is difficult, but you  
*entreprise f. difficile mais*

(will succeed) (in it). — They will gain nothing (by it).  
*viendrez à bout 116 n' gagneront rien y*

## § V. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

118. The common designation of *Indefinite Pronouns* is applied to a class of words referring to persons or things in a vague, indeterminate, or general manner. Such are the following:—

ON, one, they, we, people, &c.	RIEN, anything, nothing ( <i>negatively</i> ).
QUICONQUE, whoever, whomever.	L'AUTRE, <i>les autres</i> , the other, the others.
QUELQU'UN, some one.	NUL, <i>nulle</i> , no one, nobody.
QUELQUES - UNS, <i>quelques - unes</i> , some.	PAS UN, <i>pas une</i> , not one.
CHACUN, <i>chacune</i> , each (one), every one.	AUCUN, <i>aucune</i> , any, none ( <i>negatively</i> ).
AUTRUI, others (our neighbour).	PLUSIEURS, several.
PERSONNE, anybody; nobody (with <i>ne</i> ).	TOUT LE MONDE, everybody.
L'UN L'AUTRE, <i>les uns les autres</i> , one another.	TEL, such a one, such.
L'UN ET L'AUTRE, <i>les uns et les autres</i> , both.	QUELQUE CHOSE, something.
L'UN OU L'AUTRE, <i>les uns ou les autres</i> , either.	TOUT, everything, all ( <i>mas. sing.</i> )
NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE, <i>ni les uns ni les autres</i> , neither.	TOUS DEUX, TOUS LES DEUX, both.
UN de, <i>une de</i> ; L'UN de, <i>l'une de</i> , one of.	QUI QUE CE SOIT, whoever it may be; nobody (with <i>ne</i> ).
	QUOI QUE CE SOIT, whatever it may be; nothing (with <i>ne</i> ).

119. ON, *one, they, people, we, &c.* ON (sometimes L'ON) is of constant occurrence in French when speaking in general terms without referring to any particular person. Although *on* has commonly a plural meaning, it always requires the verb to be in the third person *singular*.

(a) ON is never used as object, its correlative objective pronoun being *se* or *soi*. It may also be used instead of any personal pronoun. (*See SYNTAX*, page 284.)

On dit que nous aurons bientôt la paix.

On pense que la nouvelle est vraie.

They (or people) say we shall soon have peace.

It is thought that the news is true.

(b) REMARK.—L'ON may be and is used after a vowel sound such as in the words *et, si, ou, qui, quoi, où*, for the sake of euphony: *Si L'ON vous aide; à quoi L'ON pense*;—also after *que*, especially when the following word begins with the syllable *com* or *con*, to avoid tautophony. We say, therefore, *ce que L'ON comprend bien*, not *ce qu'on comprend bien*; and for the same reason *l'on* is not used before words beginning with *l*; we say, therefore, *si ON la laisse ou qu'ON l'emmène*, not *si l'on la laisse ou que l'on l'emmène*; *ou ON loue vos ouvrages*, not *ou l'on loue vos ouvrages*.

(c) The French Academy leaves the use of ON or L'ON to be determined by taste and euphony.

120. **QUICONQUE**, *whoever, whichever, whosoever, any person whatever*. This pronoun has no plural, and is used only with reference to persons; it is generally *masculine*, unless the context clearly shows that it refers to women. Examples:—

<i>Quiconque</i> me trompera sera puni.	Whoever deceives me shall be punished.
Mesdames, <i>quiconque</i> de vous sera assez hardie pour médire de moi, je l'en ferai repentir.	Ladies, whichever of you shall be bold enough to speak ill of me, I will make her repent it.
—(ACAD.)	

121. (a) **QUELQU'UN**, *somebody, some one*. Examples:—J'attends *quelqu'un*, I expect some one; *quelqu'un* me l'a dit, somebody told me so.

This pronoun takes gender and number; thus:—

Quelqu'un, m. }	some one,	Quelques-uns, m. pl. }	{ some, sev- eral, out. of a great- er number.
Quelqu'une, f. }	somebody.	Quelques-unes, f. pl. }	
<i>Quelqu'un</i> de ces messieurs. <i>Quelqu'une</i> de ces dames. <i>Quelqu'un</i> m'a dit. J'ai lu <i>quelques-uns</i> de ces livres. Connaissez-vous <i>quelques-unes</i> de ces dames ? Oui, j'en connais <i>quelques-unes</i> .		<i>One of these gentlemen.</i> <i>One of these ladies.</i> <i>Somebody told me.</i> <i>I have read some of those books.</i> <i>Do you know any of those la-</i> <i>dies ?</i> <i>Yes, I know some of them.</i>	

(b) **QUELQUE CHOSE**, *something*, is applied to things, as *quelqu'un*, somebody, to persons. Example:—Prêter *quelque chose* à *quelqu'un* (to lend something to somebody).

122. **CHACUN**, m., **CHACUNE**, f., *every one, each*; without plural.

<i>Chacun</i> vit à sa manière.	Every one lives after his own way.
<i>Chacune</i> de ces demoiselles.	Each of these young ladies.

[See page 46, what is said on *chaque*, every, each.]

123. **AUTRUI**, *others, other people*. This pronoun is masculine and has no plural; it is generally preceded by a preposition, and only refers to persons; it appears in maxims, devices, &c.; but *les autres* is preferred in ordinary language. Examples:—

La charité se réjouit du bonheur d' <i>autrui</i> (or <i>des autres</i> ).	Charity rejoices in the happiness of others.
Ne faites pas à <i>autrui</i> ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit.	Do not to others what you would not wish others to do to you.

124. **PERSONNE**. This pronoun is always masculine and



singular. When it means *no person, nobody, no one*, it requires the negative *ne* to be put *before the verb*, whether *PERSONNE* be used as subject or as object; therefore, if it is used without a verb, *NE must not be employed at all*.

Je n'ai vu *personne*.

*Personne ne sera assez hardi.*

Qui est là ?—*Personne*.

*I have seen nobody.*

*Nobody will be bold enough.*

*Who is there ?—Nobody.*

(a) When *personne* is used without a negative in interrogative sentences, and those expressing doubt and uncertainty, it means *any person, any body, any one*.

Y a-t-il *personne* d'assez hardi ?

Je doute que *personne* y réussisse.—(ACAD.)

*Is there anybody bold enough ?*

*I doubt whether any one will succeed in it.*

**PERSONNE** as an indefinite pronoun has **RIEN** for its correlative applied to things.

(b) **RIEN** (*nothing*), whether used as subject or as object, requires **NE** to be put *before the verb*, and therefore when *rien* is used without a verb, *NE must not appear at all*.

Qui ne risque rien n'a rien.

Qu'avez-vous vu ?—*Rien*.

*Nothing venture, nothing have.*

*What have you seen ?—Nothing.*

It also means *anything* (from its Latin derivation *res*, a thing):—

Est-il rien de plus joli ?

*Is there anything prettier ?*

(c) **PERSONNE**, as a noun, is always feminine, and is used both in the singular and plural; it means *a person, a man or woman, people*.

C'est une *personne* de mérite.

C'est une *personne* très instruite.

Des *personnes* bien intentionnées

*He is a man of merit.*

*She is a very well-informed person.*

*Well-intentioned people.*

### EXERCISE XXXVII.

(Here is) *something* for you.—(How many) pens have you ?

Voici 121 (b) pour Combien de plumes f. avez-

—I have not one.—What (did you tell) him ? Nothing. —

n' 116 ai f. 114 avez-vous dit 99 124 (b)

One has often need of a (person inferior) to oneself. —

a souvent besoin plus petit m. que soi

They say he is learned. — God (will punish) whosoever

dit qu' est Dieu punira

transgresses his laws.—Somebody has taken my umbrella. —

transgresse loi a pris parapluie m.

Every one (will read) in his turn. — We (must not) covet

lira à tour m. Il ne faut pas désirer

the property of other people.—Pride becomes nobody.

bien m. 123 art. orgueil m. sied à

125. L'UN L'AUTRE, *m.*, L'UNE L'AUTRE, *f.*; LES UNS LES AUTRES, *m. pl.*, LES UNES LES AUTRES, *f. pl.*; *one another, each other*

(a) This pronoun is employed in speaking of persons and things. *L'un, l'autre* is used with reference to two, and *les uns les autres* with reference to more than two.

(b) If there be any preposition, it must be placed between *l'un l'autre*, and not before, as is the case in English before *one another* or *each other*.

Ils se louent *l'un l'autre*.

Les soldats s'excitaient *les uns les autres*.

Ils parlent mal *l'un DE l'autre*.

*They praise one another.*

*The soldiers excited one another.*

*They speak ill OF each other.*

126. (a) L'UN ET L'AUTRE, *m.*, L'UNE ET L'AUTRE, *f.*; LES UNS ET LES AUTRES, *m. pl.*, LES UNES ET LES AUTRES, *f. pl.*; *the one and the other, both*.

*L'un et l'autre* sont bons.

*L'une et l'autre* rapportent le même fait.

Ils se réunissaient *les uns et les autres* contre l'ennemi.

*Both are good.*

*Both relate the same circumstance.*

*They all united against the enemy.*

(b) ~~the~~ The negative form of this pronoun is *ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre; ni les uns ni les autres, ni les unes ni les autres* (neither).

Lesquels de ces journaux voulez-vous?—*Ni les uns ni les autres*.

*Which of these newspapers will you have?—Neither.*

127. Amongst the *indefinite* expressions (such as those mentioned, Rule 118), some are used either as *adjectives* (Rule 86, p. 46) or as *pronouns*. They are: †*Tous, toutes; l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre, tel, plusieurs, aucun, nul, pas un, l'autre, les autres, d'autres, un autre, &c.* Examples:—

*Adjectively.*

*Tous les hommes* (*all men*).

*L'un et l'autre* portrait (*both portraits*).

*Plusieurs fois* (*several times*).

*Nul besoin* (*no need*).

*Un tel homme* (*such a man*).

*Pronominally.*

*Tous* ont juré de le faire (*all have sworn to do it*).

Je les ai vus *l'un et l'autre* (*I have seen them both*).

*Plusieurs* le disent (*several say so*).

*Nul* n'en parle (*no one speaks of it*).

*Tel* qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera (*proverb*).‡

† N.B.—Further peculiarities of the pronouns are to be found in the Syntax.

‡ *He that laughs on Friday may cry on Sunday*—i.e., *Don't halloo till you are out of the wood*.

## EXERCISE XXXVIII. (FIRST PART.)

Fire and water destroy each other. — I have  
 art. feu m. art. eau f. se détruisent ai  
 read the Iliad and the Æneid, both have delighted me.—  
 lu Iliade f. Énéide f. ont enchanté

People who have (little to do) are very great talkers ;  
 art. gens m. peu d'affaires de parleur  
 the less one thinks, the more one speaks.—Each of them resolved  
 moins pense plus parle. résolut  
 to live as a gentleman.—He who chooses badly for himself,  
 de vivre en \* gentilhomme. \* choisit soi  
 chooses badly for others.—Some assert the contrary.—No one is  
 assurant contraire m. 118 n'est  
 satisfied with his fortune, nor dissatisfied with his own wit.  
 content de — f. ni mécontent \* esprit m.

## EXERCISE XXXVIII. (SECOND PART.)

Nothing can save him. — Everything is ready. —  
 124 (b) ne peut sauver 118 prêt  
 Everybody (will come).—All were around him.—Have you  
 118 viendra m. pl. étaient autour de Avez-  
 met any of your fellow-students? —Whom have you  
 rencontré 121 (a) condisciple 114 (a)  
 seen?—I have not seen anybody.—We have nothing to give  
 vu 1 ai 2 n' 4 124 n'avons 124 (b) à donner  
 you. — Where are your nieces? — Both are in the  
 1 Où sont nièce Toutes deux au  
 drawing-room.—All my flowers are withered ; all, without  
 salon 91 (b) fleur f. flétries 127 f. pl. sans  
 exception.—Our own rights are limited by those of other people.  
 — \* droits m. limités par 107 123  
 Certain places, which were formerly contiguous to the  
 95 (b) endroit † 111 étaient autrefois contigu  
 sea, are at present very distant from it ; such are the towns  
 mer ‡ aujourd'hui éloigné 116 (a) 127 ville f.  
 of Aigues-Mortes and Ravenna.  
 — prep. Ravenne

† Remember Rule 23 (a).

‡ See Rule 23 (b).

For Etymology of PRONOUNS, see Appendix, pp. 404-405.

## CHAPTER V.

## OF THE VERB.

128. THERE are in French two AUXILIARY Verbs—viz. : AVOIR, to have, and ÊTRE, to be, both irregular. They are called *auxiliary* verbs because they are not only used with their own respective signification, but also help to form the compound tenses of all other verbs.

(a) The verb AVOIR is used to form the compound tenses of *all active verbs*, and of *most neuter verbs* ; its own compound tenses, and those of the verb ÊTRE, to be.

(b) The verb ÊTRE is used to form *all passive verbs*, the compound tenses of *all pronominal verbs*, and those of a small number of neuter verbs.

## 129. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB AVOIR, TO HAVE.

## INFINITIVE.

1. PRESENT.		3. PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	
Avoir, .	, to have.	Ayant, .	. having.
2. PAST.		4. PARTICIPLE PAST.	
Avoir eu,	. to have had.	Eu, m., eue, f.,	had.

## COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant eu, . . having had.

## INDICATIVE.

1. PRESENT.		3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.	
J'ai,	<i>I have.</i>	J'eus,	<i>I had.</i>
tu as,	<i>thou hast.</i>	tu eus,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
il, or elle a,	<i>he, or she has.</i>	il eut,	<i>he had.</i>
nous avons,	<i>we have.</i>	nous eûmes,	<i>we had.</i>
vous avez,	<i>you have.</i>	vous eûtes,	<i>you had.</i>
ils, or elles ont,	<i>they have.</i>	ils eurent,	<i>they had.</i>
2. IMPERFECT.		4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.	
J'avais,	<i>I had.</i>	J'ai eu,	<i>I have had.</i>
tu avais,	<i>thou hadst.</i>	tu as eu,	<i>thou hast had.</i>
il avait,	<i>he had.</i>	il a eu,	<i>he has had.</i>
nous avions,	<i>we had.</i>	nous avons eu,	<i>we have had.</i>
vous aviez,	<i>you had.</i>	vous avez eu,	<i>you have had.</i>
ils avaient,	<i>they had.</i>	ils ont eu,	<i>they have had.</i>

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu eus eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il eut eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous eûmes eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous eûtes eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils eurent eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

J'avais eu,	<i>I had had.</i>
tu avais eu,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
il avait eu,	<i>he had had.</i>
nous avions eu,	<i>we had had.</i>
vous aviez eu,	<i>you had had.</i>
ils avaient eu,	<i>they had had.</i>

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

J'aurai,	<i>I shall have.</i>
tu auras,	<i>thou shalt have.</i>
il aura,	<i>he shall have.</i>
nous aurons,	<i>we shall have.</i>
vous aurez,	<i>you shall have.</i>
ils auront,	<i>they shall have.</i>

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai eu,	<i>I shall</i>	<i>(have had)</i>
tu auras eu,	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il aura eu,	<i>he shall</i>	
nous aurons eu,	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez eu,	<i>you shall</i>	
ils auront eu,	<i>they shall</i>	

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

J'aurais,	<i>I should have.</i>
tu aurais,	<i>thou shouldst have.</i>
il aurait,	<i>he should have.</i>
nous aurions,	<i>we should have.</i>
vous auriez,	<i>you should have.</i>
ils auraient,	<i>they should have.</i>

## 2. PAST.

J'aurais eu,	<i>I should</i>	<i>(have had)</i>
tu aurais eu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il aurait eu,	<i>he should</i>	
nous aurions eu,	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez eu,	<i>you should</i>	
ils auraient eu,	<i>they should</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

Aie,	<i>Have (thou).</i>	Ayons,	<i>let us have.</i>
qu'il ait,	<i>let him have.</i>	ayez,	<i>have (ye).</i>
		qu'ils aient,	<i>let them have.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que j'aie,	<i>That I may</i>	<i>(have)</i>
que tu aies,	<i>that thou mayst</i>	
qu'il ait,	<i>that he may</i>	
que nous ayons,	<i>that we may</i>	
que vous ayez,	<i>that you may</i>	
qu'ils aient,	<i>that they may</i>	

## 3. PRETERITE.

Que j'aie eu,	<i>That I may</i>	<i>(have had)</i>
que tu aies eu,	<i>that thou mayst</i>	
qu'il ait eu,	<i>that he may</i>	
que nous ayons eu,	<i>that we may</i>	
que vous ayez eu,	<i>that you may</i>	
qu'ils aient eu,	<i>that they may</i>	

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que j'eusse,	<i>That I might</i>	<i>(have)</i>
que tu eusses,	<i>that thou mightst</i>	
qu'il eût,	<i>that he might</i>	
que nous eussions,	<i>that we might</i>	
que vous eussiez,	<i>that you might</i>	
qu'ils eussent,	<i>that they might</i>	

## 4. PLUPERFECT.†

Que j'eusse eu,	<i>That I might</i>	<i>(have had)</i>
que tu eusses eu,	<i>that thou mightst</i>	
qu'il eût eu,	<i>that he might</i>	
que nous eussions eu,	<i>that we might</i>	
que vous eussiez eu,	<i>that you might</i>	
qu'ils eussent eu,	<i>that they might</i>	

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Past Conditional.

## GENERAL REMARKS ON ENDINGS OF VERBS.

130. Let the student at once notice that, although AVOIR and ÊTRE are quite irregular in their conjugation,

the following *final* letters are common to *all French verbs* without exception:—

(1) IMPERFECT INDICATIVE. ( <i>did; used to; was...ing.</i> )	(2) FUTURE. ( <i>shall, or will.</i> )	(3) CONDITIONAL. ( <i>should, or would.</i> )
(I) . . . <i>ais.</i>	(I) . . . <i>Rai.</i>	(I) . . . <i>Rais.</i>
(thou) . . . <i>ais.</i>	(thou) . . . <i>Ras.</i>	(thou) . . . <i>Rais.</i>
(he) . . . <i>ait.</i>	(he) . . . <i>Ra.</i>	(he) . . . <i>Rait.</i>
(we) . . . <i>ions.</i>	(we) . . . <i>Rons.</i>	(we) . . . <i>Rions.</i>
(you) . . . <i>iez.</i>	(you) . . . <i>Rez.</i>	(you) . . . <i>Riez.</i>
(they) . . . <i>aient.</i>	(they) . . . <i>Ront.</i>	(they) . . . <i>Raient.</i>

(4) The *final* letters for the FUTURE of all verbs (*ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont*) are the same as those of the Present Indicative of *avoir*.

(5) The *final* letters for the CONDITIONAL of all verbs (*ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient*) are the same as those of the Imperfect Indicative of *avoir*.

(6) *s final* is found in the *first* and *second* persons singular of French verbs, but never in the third person singular.

(7) *t final* is found in the *third* person singular, but never in the first or second.

(8) The endings *ons, ions*, indicate the *first* person plural in all tenses except the Preterite Definite of the Indicative.

(9) The endings *ez, iez*, indicate the *second* person plural in all tenses except the Preterite Definite of the Indicative.

(10) The endings *ent, ont*, indicate the *third* person plural.

(11) The endings *mes, tes, rent*, indicate the three persons plural of the Preterite Definite Indicative (*mes* and *tes* being always preceded by a vowel with a circumflex accent).

(12) The endings *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent*, are those of the Present Subjunctive.

(13) The endings *sse, sses, t* (preceded by a vowel with a circumflex accent), *ssions, ssiez, ssent*, are those of the Imperfect Subjunctive.

(14) The ending *ant* indicates the Present Participle.

(15) The endings *t, é, e; i, ie, or u, ue*, indicate the Past Participle.

(16) The *third* person singular of the Present Indicative of verbs ending in *Dre* consists simply of the *root* of the verb, without any ending being added. (The only verbs excepted from this rule are those in *soudre* and *indre*, in which *d* is changed into *t*).

N.B.—In the following Exercises, the noun being used in a partitive sense, it will be necessary to place before the noun either *DU, DE LA, DE L', or DES*, according to the directions given, Rule 32, page 17.

### EXERCISE XXXIX.

INDICATIVE. PRES.—I have money.—He has wealth.—  
argent m. bien m.

She has patience and sweetness.—We have relations and  
— f. douceur f. parent

friends.—You have gold and silver. — They have ambition  
ami or m. argent m. m. — f.

and perseverance.—They have pomegranates and pine-apples.  
persévérance f. f. grenade f ananas m.

IMPERF. — We had umbrellas and cloaks. — You had  
*parapluie m. manteau m.*  
 muskets, rifles, pistols, and artillery. — They had  
*fusil m. carabine f. pistolet m. artillerie f.*  
 swords, lances, pikes, pitchforks, bows, and arrows.  
*épée f. — f. pique f. fourche f. arc m. flèche f.*  
 PRETERITE DEFIN. — I had strawberries. — She had raspberries.  
*fraise f. framboise f.*  
 We had gooseberries. — You had cherries. — They had grapes.  
*groseille f. cerise f. f. raisin m. s.*

## EXERCISE XL.

Peter has talent and experience. — You have courage and  
*Pierre — m. expérience f. — m.*  
 firmness. — John and James have walnuts and filberts. — Jane  
*fermeté f. Jean Jacques noix f. aveline f. Jeanne*  
 had modesty and abilities. — He has had good luck. — We  
 ind-2 78 f. *talent pl. bonheur m.*  
 shall have soup or fish. — Andrew shall have oranges and  
*soupe f. poisson m. André — f.*  
 lemons. — Louisa and Martha shall have figs and plums. —  
*citron m. 79 79 figue f. prune f.*  
 That we may have had snow, rain, and wind. — Having  
*neige f. pluie f. vent m.*  
 eyes, see ye not? Having ears, hear ye not?  
 40 *ne voyez- point? oreille f. n'entendez-*

131. The addition of an adjective, *after* the noun, makes no difference as to the use of *du, de la, de l', des*. But, the adjective must agree with the noun, in gender and number. — (See Rules 47 to 63.)

## EXERCISE XLI. (FIRST PART.)

INDIC. PRES. — I have red ink. — She has clear and  
*rouge 1'encre f. 2clair*  
 just ideas. — We have ripe pears. — You have sincere friends.  
*3juste 1idée f. 2mûr 1poire f. 2sincère 1*  
 — Margaret and Sophia have green parasols and brown dresses.  
*Marguerite Sophie 2vert 1ombrelle f. 2brun 1robe f.*  
 FUT. ABS. — We shall have white curtains. — You will have  
*blanc 1rideau m.*

true and real pleasures. — They will have new houses.  
<sup>2</sup>vrai <sup>3</sup>réel <sup>1</sup>plaisir m. <sup>2</sup>neuf <sup>1</sup>maison f.

SUBJ. PRES.—In order that I may have ready money.—  
*Afin.* <sup>2</sup>comptant <sup>1</sup>

That you may have enlightened judges and faithful agents.  
<sup>2</sup>éclairé <sup>1</sup>juge m. <sup>2</sup>fidèle <sup>1</sup>—

132. But, if the adjective comes *before* the noun, then only *de* or *d'* is to be used before the adjective, instead of *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, without any regard to the gender or number of the noun, as already stated in Rule 32.

## EXERCISE XLI. (SECOND PART.)

I have some good snuff. — He has good brandy, and  
<sup>52</sup>tabac † <sup>eau-de-vie</sup> f.  
 excellent wine.—We have beautiful walks in our town.—  
 ——— <sup>vin</sup> † <sup>beau promenade</sup> † <sup>dans</sup>  
 She had great qualities.—We shall have had long sufferings.—  
 ind-2 <sup>grand qualité</sup> † <sup>58 souffrance</sup> †  
 I should have fine pictures and pretty engravings.—You would  
<sup>58 tableau</sup> <sup>joli gravure</sup> †  
 have great advantages.—That you may have good reasons to  
<sup>avantage</sup> 24 (a) <sup>raison</sup> †  
 give him. — Have you not better pens to lend me?—  
<sup>donner lui</sup> N' <sup>pas</sup> 70 <sup>plume f.</sup> à <sup>prêter</sup>  
 I have very good pens, but bad ink, and bad paper.  
<sup>très</sup> <sup>mais mauvais</sup> <sup>papier</sup> †

*Recapitulatory EXERCISE upon the three foregoing Remarks.*

He has credit, power, authority, and riches. — We  
<sup>crédit</sup> † <sup>puissance</sup> † <sup>autorité</sup> † <sup>richesse</sup> † pl.  
 shall have wine, beer, and cider.—Let us have politeness.—  
<sup>bière</sup> f. <sup>cidre</sup> m. <sup>politesse</sup> †  
 We have white bread, delicate meat, and delicious wines.—  
<sup>2</sup>blanc <sup>1</sup>pain † <sup>2</sup>délicat <sup>1</sup>viande f. <sup>2</sup>délicieux <sup>1</sup>  
 That they may have prepossessing manners.—She has excellent  
<sup>2</sup>prévenant <sup>1</sup>manière f.  
 qualities.—They have small apricots, but large peaches.  
<sup>petit abricot</sup> † <sup>gros pêche</sup> f.

† Refer to Rule 23 (a).

‡ Refer to Rule 22 (b).



133. CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB  
*ÊTRE*, TO BE.

## INFINITIVE.

1. PRESENT.		3. PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	
<i>Être</i> , . . .	<i>to be.</i>	<i>Étant</i> , . . .	<i>being.</i>
2. PAST.		4. PARTICIPLE PAST.	
Avoir été, . . .	<i>to have been.</i>	<i>Été</i> ,† . . .	<i>been.</i>
COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.			
Ayant été, . . .		<i>having been.</i>	

## INDICATIVE.

1. PRESENT.		5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.	
Je suis,	<i>I am.</i>	J'eus été,	<i>I had been.</i>
tu es,	<i>thou art.</i>	tu eus été,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il, or elle est,	<i>he, or she is.</i>	il eut été,	<i>he had been.</i>
nous sommes,	<i>we are.</i>	nous eûmes été,	<i>we had been.</i>
vous êtes,	<i>you are.</i>	vous eûtes été,	<i>you had been.</i>
ils, or elles sont,	<i>they are.</i>	ils eurent été,	<i>they had been.</i>
2. IMPERFECT.		6. PLUPERFECT.	
J'étais,	<i>I was.</i>	J'avais été,	<i>I had been.</i>
tu étais,	<i>thou wast.</i>	tu avais été,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
il était,	<i>he was.</i>	il avait été,	<i>he had been.</i>
nous étions,	<i>we were.</i>	nous avions été,	<i>we had been.</i>
vous étiez,	<i>you were.</i>	vous aviez été,	<i>you had been.</i>
ils étaient,	<i>they were.</i>	ils avaient été,	<i>they had been.</i>
3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.		7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.	
Je fus,	<i>I was.</i>	Je serai,	<i>I shall be.</i>
tu fus,	<i>thou wast.</i>	tu seras,	<i>thou shalt be.</i>
il fut,	<i>he was.</i>	il sera,	<i>he shall be.</i>
nous fûmes,	<i>we were.</i>	nous serons,	<i>we shall be.</i>
vous fûtes,	<i>you were.</i>	vous serez,	<i>you shall be.</i>
ils furent,	<i>they were.</i>	ils seront,	<i>they shall be.</i>
4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.		8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.	
J'ai été,	<i>I have been.</i>	J'aurai été,	<i>I shall have</i>
tu as été,	<i>thou hast been.</i>	tu auras été,	<i>thou shalt have</i>
il a été,	<i>he has been.</i>	il aura été,	<i>he shall have</i>
nous avons été,	<i>we have been.</i>	nous aurons été,	<i>we shall have</i>
vous avez été,	<i>you have been.</i>	vous aurez été,	<i>you shall have</i>
ils ont été,	<i>they have been.</i>	ils auront été,	<i>they shall have</i>

## CONDITIONAL.

1. PRESENT.		2. PAST.	
Je serais,	<i>I should be.</i>	J'aurais été,	<i>I should have</i>
tu serais,	<i>thou shouldst be.</i>	tu aurais été,	<i>thou shouldst have</i>
il serait,	<i>he should be.</i>	il aurait été,	<i>he should have</i>
nous serions,	<i>we should be.</i>	nous aurions été,	<i>we should have</i>
vous seriez,	<i>you should be.</i>	vous auriez été,	<i>you should have</i>
ils seraient,	<i>they should be.</i>	ils auraient été,	<i>they should have</i>

† *Êté* never changes its termination.

## IMPERATIVE.

Sois,	.	.	.	.	Be (thou).
qu'il soit,	.	.	.	.	let him be.
soyons,	.	.	.	.	let us be.
soyez,	.	.	.	.	be (you).
qu'ils soient,	.	.	.	.	let them be.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je sois,	That I may be.
que tu sois,	that thou mayst be.
qu'il soit,	that he may be.
que nous soyons,	that we may be.
que vous soyez,	that you may be.
qu'ils soient,	that they may be.

## 3. PRÆTERITE.

Que j'aie été,	That I may	} have been
que tu aies été,	that thou mayst	
qu'il ait été,	that he may	
que nous ayons été,	that we may	
que vous ayez été,	that you may	
qu'ils aient été,	that they may	

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je fusse,	That I might be.
que tu fusses,	that thou mightst be.
qu'il fût,	that he might be.
que nous fussions,	that we might be.
que vous fussiez,	that you might be.
qu'ils fussent,	that they might be.

## 4. PLUPERFECT.†

Que j'eusse été,	That I might	} have been
que tu eusses été,	that thou mightst	
qu'il eût été,	that he might	
que nous eussions été,	that we might	
que vous eussiez été,	that you might	
qu'ils eussent été,	that they might	

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Past Conditional.

134. GENERAL RULE.—The adjective and past participle must be of the same gender and number as the noun or pronoun which is the subject of the verb *être*.—See Rules 47 to 63.

## EXERCISE XLII.

INDIC. PRES.—I am ready.—She is inquisitive.—We are  
f. 47 curieux.

busy.—Your sisters are careful.— Men are mortal.  
occupé soigneux. art. mortel.

IMPERF.—I was uneasy.—Mary was tall.—She was prudent  
f. 53 Marie grand. —

and discreet.—Her manners were full of dignity.—We were  
53 manière f. plein 78 f.

all present when the thing happened.—They were absent.  
tout — lorsque chose f. arriva. m. —

PRET. DEF.—The country was not ungrateful to him.  
patrie 22 (b) ne point ingrat envers

—The ides of March were fatal to Julius Cæsar.  
— f. mars — Jules Cæsar.

PRET. INDEF. — Your aunts have always been good and  
*toujours*  
 charitable. — Ladies, you have not been disinterested enough.  
 — *Mesdames, n' pas désintéressé assez*

## EXERCISE XLIII.

PLUPERF. — She had been too hasty. — We had been idle  
*prompt paresseux*  
 and prodigal. — They had been economical and temperate.  
*prodigue économe sobre*

FUT. ABS. — His memory will be immortal. — We shall be  
*mémoire f. immortel f.*  
 attentive and more diligent. — They will be very glad to see you.  
 — *plus bien aise de voir*

FUT. ANT. — She will have been proud, whimsical, and jealous.  
*53 fantasque jaloux*  
 — They will have been very much pleased and very grateful.  
*f. très \* satisfait reconnaissant*

IMPERA. — Let us be friends. — Let her be charitable. —  
*amis 48*  
 Be true to thy word. — Rich people, be humane, kind-hearted,  
*fidèle parole f. m. pl. \* humain tendre*  
 and generous.  
*généreux.*

PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS ON  
FRENCH VERBS.

135. There are in French five kinds of verbs (besides the two auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être* already mentioned) — viz., *Active, Passive, Neuter, Pronominal, and Impersonal* verbs.

136. French verbs are divided into MOODS, of which there are five — viz., *Infinitive, Indicative, Conditional, Imperative, and Subjunctive*.

137. There are in each mood two sorts of tenses — viz., *simple and compound*.

(a) The *compound* tenses are those which are formed by adding, to any tense of one of the auxiliary verbs, the past participle of any verb.

(b) The *simple* tenses are formed by changing for each tense and person the *final letters* of the verb,

138. These changes are called *inflections*; they not only indicate the *person* but also the *tense*.

Thus, whilst in English the future tense is formed with the help of the auxiliary words *shall* and *will*, it is formed in French by adding certain *terminations* to the *radical letters* or *stem* of the verb, as, for instance, *crâi*, which, in the first conjugation and for the first person singular, is the equivalent of *shall*, so that *j'aimERAI*, which means *I shall love*, is expressed in French in the following order—*I love shall*.

In tenses formed with the help of the auxiliary words *should*, *would*, *may*, *might*, the latter are represented in French, in the same manner, by peculiar endings, as will be seen hereafter.

139. A verb, therefore, consists of two parts—an *invariable* part called *root* or *stem*, which conveys the idea expressed by the verb; and a *variable* part which is named *ending* or *termination*, and indicates the *tense*, the *person*, and even the *mood*.

Thus in the word *parlONS*, the root *parl* has the force of *speak*, and the ending *ons* indicates the first person plural of the Imperative, having thus the force of "*let us*."

140. Verbs which have an *invariable root* throughout, and assume the *endings* peculiar to their conjugation, are termed *Regular* verbs. Verbs the root of which *varies* more or less, or which *have not the endings* of their conjugation, are called *Irregular* verbs. Verbs which are *not* used in *all tenses* and *persons* are named *Defective* verbs.

There are in French, therefore, *Regular*, *Irregular*, and *Defective* verbs.

141. French verbs are divided into *four conjugations*, chiefly distinguished by their *ending* in the *Present Infinitive*, which is—

For the first conjugation, . . .	—ER, as in <i>parLER</i> .
„ second „ . . .	—IR, as in <i>finIR</i> .
„ third „ . . .	—OIR, as in <i>recevOIR</i> .
„ fourth „ . . .	—RE, as in <i>vendRE</i> .

In the Third Conjugation there are only seven regular verbs the Present Infinitive of which ends in *EVOIR*.

142. The *root* of a verb is obtained by cutting off the *ending*.

Thus, for instance, if we wish to know the *root* of *recevoir*, we suppress the ending *voir*, and the remaining part *rec* is the root. If to this we add the ending *ez*, we form the word *recevez*, which is the second person plural of the Imperative.

From the above we see that CONJUGATING a *regular*

verb is only adding to its *root* the *terminations* peculiar to each *person* of each *tense*, according to the CONJUGATION.

Before beginning to conjugate a verb, it is necessary to ascertain to which conjugation it belongs, then to cut off the ending in order to obtain the root,—and this once obtained, there will only remain to add to it the terminations peculiar to each person in every tense.

### FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

143. As has been seen in Rule 137, there are in each mood *simple* and *compound* tenses. The *simple* tenses are divided into *primitive tenses*, so called because they are used to form the others—and *derivative tenses*, thus named because formed or derived from the primitive tenses.

(a) There are *five* primitive tenses—viz., the PRESENT INFINITIVE, the PRESENT PARTICIPLE, the PAST PARTICIPLE, the PRESENT and the PRETERITE DEFINITE OF THE INDICATIVE.

(b) From the <i>Present Infinitive</i> are formed	The Future Indicative,† by adding the endings of the Present Indicative of AVOIR : <i>ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont</i> (130 (12)).
(c) From the <i>Present Participle</i> are formed	The Present Conditional, by adding the endings of the Imperfect Indicative of AVOIR : <i>ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient</i> .
(d) From the <i>Past Participle</i> are formed	The Plural of the Present Indicative,† by changing ANT into <i>ons, ez, ent</i> .
(e) From the <i>Present Indicative</i> is formed	The Imperfect Indicative, by changing ANT into <i>ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient</i> .
(f) From the <i>second person singular of the Preterite Definite Indicative</i> is formed	The Present Subjunctive,† by changing ANT into <i>e, es, e, ions, iez, ent</i> (130 (12)).
	All the compound tenses, with the help of either of the auxiliary verbs <i>avoir</i> or <i>être</i> .
	The Imperative, by suppressing the Pronouns <i>je, nous, vous</i> .
	The Imperfect Subjunctive, by adding <i>se, ses, sions, siez, sent</i> , changing <i>s</i> into <i>t</i> for the third person singular, and putting a circumflex accent over the vowel preceding the <i>t</i> .

† The letters *oi* must be suppressed from Infinitives of the *third* conjugation before the endings are added ; thus, *recev*|*oi*|*r, je recevrai*. In the *fourth* conjugation the final *e* is suppressed before adding the endings ; thus, *vendr*|*e, je vendrai*.

‡ In the Present Participle of the *third* conjugation, the tonic accent lying on the final syllable *ant*, the *e* preceding *v* is scarcely sounded at all, but in the *third person plural* of the Present Indicative, and in the *three persons (sing.)* and the *third person plural* of the Present Subjunctive, the tonic accent lying on the syllable which precedes *v*, this syllable is sounded long and broad ; hence the *e* preceded by *v* is, in these two tenses and persons, changed into *oi*. Thus *recevant* gives *ils reçoivent* ; *que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, &c.*

## § I. CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE VERBS.

144. An *Active* verb expresses an action done by the subject, and has an object, either expressed or understood. In this phrase: *Jean aime Dieu*, John loves God, *Jean* is the subject, *aime* the verb active, and *Dieu* the object.

MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION IN *ER*.145. *PARLER*, TO SPEAK.

## INFINITIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

*Parler*, . . . to speak.

## 2. PAST.

*Avoir parlé*, . . . to have spoken.

## 3. PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

*Parlant*, . . . speaking.

## 4. PARTICIPLE PAST.

*Parlé*, . . . spoken.

## COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

*Ayant parlé*, . . . having spoken.

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

*Je parle*, *I speak.*†  
*tu parles*, *thou speakest.*  
*il parle*, *he speaks.*  
*nous parlons*, *we speak.*  
*vous parlez*, *you speak.*  
*ils parlent*, *they speak.*

## 2. IMPERFECT.

*Je parlais*, *I was*  
*tu parlais*, *thou wast*  
*il parlait*, *he was*  
*nous parlions*, *we were*  
*vous parliez*, *you were*  
*ils parlaient*, *they were*

## 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

*Je parlai*, *I spoke.*  
*tu parlais*, *thou spokest.*  
*il parla*, *he spoke.*  
*nous parlâmes*, *we spoke.*  
*vous parlâtes*, *you spoke.*  
*ils parlèrent*, *they spoke.*

## 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

*J'ai parlé*, *I have*  
*tu as parlé*, *thou hast*  
*il a parlé*, *he has*  
*nous avons parlé*, *we have*  
*vous avez parlé*, *you have*  
*ils ont parlé*, *they have*

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

*J'eus parlé*, *I had*  
*tu eus parlé*, *thou hadst*  
*il eut parlé*, *he had*  
*nous eûmes parlé*, *we had*  
*vous eûtes parlé*, *you had*  
*ils eurent parlé*, *they had*

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

*J'avais parlé*, *I had*  
*tu avais parlé*, *thou hadst*  
*il avait parlé*, *he had*  
*nous avions parlé*, *we had*  
*vous aviez parlé*, *you had*  
*ils avaient parlé*, *they had*

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

*Je parlerai*, *I shall*  
*tu parleras*, *thou shalt*  
*il parlera*, *he shall*  
*nous parlerons*, *we shall*  
*vous parlerez*, *you shall*  
*ils parleront*, *they shall*

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

*J'aurai parlé*, *I shall*  
*tu auras parlé*, *thou shalt*  
*il aura parlé*, *he shall*  
*nous aurons parlé*, *we shall*  
*vous aurez parlé*, *you shall*  
*ils auront parlé*, *they shall*

† I speak, I do speak, or I am speaking. (See 549 N.B., p. 308.)

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je parlerais,	<i>I should</i>	} <i>speak</i>
tu parlerais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il parlerait,	<i>he should</i>	
nous parlerions,	<i>we should</i>	
vous parleriez,	<i>you should</i>	
ils parleraient,	<i>they should</i>	

## 2. PAST.

J'aurais parlé,	} <i>I should have spoken.</i>
tu aurais parlé,	
il aurait parlé,	
nous aurions parlé,	
vous auriez parlé,	
ils auraient parlé,	

## IMPERATIVE.

Parle,	<i>Speak (thou).</i>
qu'il parle,	<i>let him speak.</i>
parlons,	<i>let us speak.</i>
parlez,	<i>speak (you).</i>
qu'ils parlent,	<i>let them speak.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je parle,	} <i>That I may speak.</i>
que tu parles,	
qu'il parle,	
que nous parlions,	
que vous parliez,	
qu'ils parlent,	

## 3. PRETERITE.

Que j'aie parlé,	} <i>That I may have spoken.</i>
que tu aies parlé,	
qu'il ait parlé,	
que nous ayons parlé,	
que vous ayez parlé,	
qu'ils aient parlé,	

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je parlasse,	} <i>That I might speak.</i>
que tu parlasses,	
qu'il parlât,	
que nous parlussions,	
que vous parlassiez,	
qu'ils parlassent,	

## 4. PLUPERFECT.†

Que j'eusse parlé,	} <i>That I might have spoken.</i>
que tu eusses parlé,	
qu'il eût parlé,	
que nous eussions parlé,	
que vous eussiez parlé,	
qu'ils eussent parlé,	

† ~~est~~ By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Past Conditional.

\* \* See Idiomatic Tenses, No. 152.

146. Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminating in *er*; as,

Accepter,	<i>to accept.</i>	fermer,	<i>to shut.</i>
chanter,	<i>to sing.</i>	flatter,	<i>to flatter.</i>
chercher,	<i>to seek.</i>	garder,	<i>to keep.</i>
danser,	<i>to dance.</i>	louer,	<i>to praise.</i>
demander,	<i>to ask.</i>	montrer,	<i>to show.</i>
donner,	<i>to give.</i>	porter,	<i>to carry.</i>
éviter,	<i>to avoid.</i>	raconter,	<i>to relate.</i>

## EXERCISE XLIV.

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.—I study geography and  
étudier art. géographie f.

history. — He dines at five o'clock. — We admire the  
art. histoire f. h m. dîner heure admirer

beauty of that landscape. — You forgive your enemies. —  
*beauté † paysage 24 (a) pardonner à ennemi*  
 Your brothers and sisters sing and dance very well.

81

IMPERF. — I was accusing my friend. — He was listening  
*accuser ami écouter*  
 attentively. — We were blaming our neighbours. — You were  
*attentivement. blâmer voisin*  
 proposing a salutary advice. — They were praising your prudence  
*proposer † avis † — †*  
 — The ancient Peruvians worshipped the sun.  
*ancien Péruvien adorer soleil †*

## EXERCISE XLV.

PRET. DEF. — I approved his action. — She sang two or three  
*approuver 83 — †*  
 songs. — He borrowed money. — We declined his offer. —  
*chanson † emprunter 32 argent † refuser 83 offre f.*  
 You rewarded the servant. — They declared war.  
*récompenser domestique m. déclarer art. guerre f.*  
 PRET. INDEF. — I have surmounted all the difficulties. — He  
*surmonter tout difficulté †*  
 has offended his Majesty. — We have bought an estate. — They  
*offenser Majesté † acheter terre f.*  
 have considered the justice of his demand. — At all times,  
*considérer — f. demande f. Dans art.*  
 gold has been looked upon as the most precious metal.  
*art. regarder comme des pl.*

## EXERCISE XLVI.

PLUPERF. — I had asked his consent. — The queen had  
*demander consentement †*  
 manifested her displeasure. — We had consulted men  
*montrer mécontentement † consulter 32*  
 of honour. — You had emptied the bottle. — They  
*honneur h m. vider bouteille f.*  
 had repaired the house. — He had tuned my piano.  
*réparer maison † accorder — †*  
 FUT. ABSOL. — I shall cross the river. — She will travel  
*traverser rivière f. voyager*  
 with us. — We will breakfast with you. — You will shut the  
*avec déjeuner fermer*

† Refer to Rule 32 (b).

† Refer to Rule 23 (a).



shutters. — They will bring letters and newspapers.  
*volet m. apporter 32 lettre f. 32 journal †*

CONDIT. PRESENT.—I would explain the rule.—He would  
*expliquer règle f.*

avoid his company. — She would prepare the ball dresses.—  
*compagnie f. préparer robes de bal.*

We would walk faster. — They would gain the victory.  
*marcher plus vite. remporter victoire f.*

## EXERCISE XLVII.

IMPERATIVE.—Give me his address and yours.—Let us  
*Donner adresse †*

frequent good company.—James, carry this letter to the  
*fréquenter art. Jacques, porter lettre f.*

post-office.—“Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye  
*poste f. on 119 (b) ind-7*

shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.”  
*trouver frapper on 119 (b) ouvrira \**

SUBJ. PRESENT.—That I may strengthen my party.—That  
*renforcer parti †*

he may appease his anger. — That you may find friends.  
*apaiser colère f. des*

IMPERF.—That I might prove the fact.—That she might  
*prouver fait †*

remain in town. — That they might take advantage of the  
*rester à la ville profiter*

circumstances. — That you might imitate his conduct.  
*circonstance † imiter conduite f.*

MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN *IR*.

147.

*FINIR*, § TO FINISH.

## INFINITIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Finir, . . . to finish.

## 2. PAST.

Avoir fini, . . . to have finished.

## 3. PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Finissant, . . . finishing.

## 4. PARTICIPLE PAST.

Fini, . . . finished.

## COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant fini, . . . having finished.

† Refer to Rule 23 (a).

‡ Refer to Rule 22 (b).

§ The final *s* of the Infinitive of the 2d Conjugation is always sounded.

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je finis,	<i>I finish.</i>
tu finis,	<i>thou finishest.</i>
il finit,	<i>he finishes.</i>
nous finissons,	<i>we finish.</i>
vous finissez,	<i>you finish.</i>
ils finissent,	<i>they finish.</i>

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Je finissais,	<i>I was</i>
tu finissais,	<i>thou wast</i>
il finissait,	<i>he was</i>
nous finissions,	<i>we were</i>
vous finissiez,	<i>you were</i>
ils finissaient,	<i>they were</i>

## 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je finis,	<i>I finished.</i>
tu finis,	<i>thou finishedst.</i>
il finit,	<i>he finished.</i>
nous finîmes,	<i>we finished.</i>
vous finîtes,	<i>you finished.</i>
ils finirent,	<i>they finished.</i>

## 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai fini,	<i>I have</i>
tu as fini,	<i>thou hast</i>
il a fini,	<i>he has</i>
nous avons fini,	<i>we have</i>
vous avez fini,	<i>you have</i>
ils ont fini,	<i>they have</i>

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus fini,	<i>I had</i>
tu eus fini,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut fini,	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes fini,	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes fini,	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent fini,	<i>they had</i>

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

J'avais fini,	<i>I had</i>
tu avais fini,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il avait fini,	<i>he had</i>
nous avions fini,	<i>we had</i>
vous aviez fini,	<i>you had</i>
ils avaient fini,	<i>they had</i>

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je finirai,	<i>I shall</i>
tu finiras,	<i>thou shalt</i>
il finira,	<i>he shall</i>
nous finirons,	<i>we shall</i>
vous finirez,	<i>you shall</i>
ils finiront,	<i>they shall</i>

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai fini,	<i>I shall have</i>
tu auras fini,	<i>thou shalt have</i>
il aura fini,	<i>he shall have</i>
nous aurons fini,	<i>we shall have</i>
vous aurez fini,	<i>you shall have</i>
ils auront fini,	<i>they shall have</i>

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je finirais,	<i>I should</i>
tu finirais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il finirait,	<i>he should</i>
nous finirions,	<i>we should</i>
vous finiriez,	<i>you should</i>
ils finiraient,	<i>they should</i>

## 2. PAST.

J'aurais fini,	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais fini,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il aurait fini,	<i>he should</i>
nous aurions fini,	<i>we should</i>
vous auriez fini,	<i>you should</i>
ils auraient fini,	<i>they should</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

Finis,	<i>Finish (thou).</i>
qu'il finisse,	<i>let him finish.</i>
finissons,	<i>let us finish.</i>
finissez,	<i>finish (you).</i>
qu'ils finissent,	<i>let them finish.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je finisse,	<i>That I</i>
que tu finisses,	<i>may finish.</i>
qu'il finisse,	
que nous finissions,	
que vous finissiez,	
qu'ils finissent,	

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je finisse,	<i>That I</i>
que tu finisses,	<i>might finish.</i>
qu'il finît,	
que nous finissions,	
que vous finissiez,	
qu'ils finissent,	

## 3. PRÉTERITE.

Que j'aie fini,  
que tu aies fini,  
qu'il ait fini,  
que nous ayons fini,  
que vous ayez fini,  
qu'ils aient fini,

(That I may  
have finished.)

## 4. PLUPERFECT. †

Que j'eusse fini,  
que tu eusses fini,  
qu'il eût fini,  
que nous eussions fini,  
que vous eussiez fini,  
qu'ils eussent fini,

(That I might  
have finished.)

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Past Conditional.

\*.\* See Idiomatic Tenses, No. 152.

## 148. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Abolir,                    to abolish.  
adoucir,                to soften.  
affermir,               to strengthen.  
agir,                    to act.  
applaudir,            to applaud.  
avertir,                to warn.  
bâtir,                   to build.  
choisir,                to choose.  
démolir,               to demolish.  
divertir,               to divert.  
embellir,               to embellish.  
emplir,                to fill.

enrichir,              to enrich.  
établir,               to establish.  
fléchir,                to soften.  
fournir,                to furnish.  
franchir,               to leap over.  
frémir,                to shudder.  
garantir,               to warrant.  
guérir,                to cure.  
nourrir,                to nourish, to feed.  
obéir,                   to obey.  
punir,                   to punish.  
réussir, &c.            to succeed, &c.

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I shudder when I think (of it).—He  
   quand <sup>2</sup>penser <sup>1</sup>y

fulfils his promise. — Your sister enjoys good  
remplir promesse †                    jouir d'une

health. — You act as a master. They punish the idlers.  
santé †                    en \* maître                    paresseux

IMPERF.—I was varnishing a picture. — He was climbing  
   vernir                    tableau †                    gravir

the hill. — They were building a bridge and fortifications.  
colline f.                    bâtir                    pont †                    32                    — †

PRET. DEF. — I warned my sister of her danger. — You  
   avertir                    — †

chose a pretty colour.—They succeeded in their undertaking.—  
joli couleur †                    réussir                    entreprise †

That victory strengthened him on his throne.  
   trône m.

† Refer to Rule 22 (b).

‡ Refer to Rule 23 (a).

## EXERCISE XLIX.

PRET. INDEF. — I have chosen it (out of) a thousand. —  
entre \*

He has enriched science with new discoveries. — You  
enrichir art. — + de nouveau découverte f.  
have grown tall. — The greatest empires have perished.  
grandir — m. périr

PRET. ANT. — I had done before him. — When he had  
finir avant lui Quand  
filled his pockets with pears and apples, he went away.  
remplir poche de poire de pomme s'en alla.

PLUPERF. — That merchant had supplied this house  
négociant fournir maison f.  
with wine. — The king had ennobled him. — They had disobeyed  
de anoblir désobéir  
my orders. — He had warranted my watch for six months.  
à ordre m. montre f. mois.

## EXERCISE L.

FUT. ABSOL. — I will search into that affair. — That will  
approfondir affaire f.  
cure him. — We will rebuild our country-house. — I think  
guérir 103 rebâtir maison de campagne. penser  
you will succeed. — They will obey the laws of the country.  
que réussir obéir à loi § pays ‡

FUT. ANT. — I shall have finished my exercise before dinner.  
thème m. avant dîner.

— That bad news will have cooled his ardour.  
nouvelle f. refroidir 83 ardeur †

CONDIT. PRES. — I would mitigate the punishment. —  
adoucir punition †  
If he (were to do) that good action, everybody would  
faisait — † tout le monde 118  
applaud him (for it). — He would repeal those cruel laws.  
applaudir 1<sup>e</sup> 103 2<sup>e</sup> 116 abolir 2 — 47 1<sup>e</sup> loi §

## EXERCISE LI.

IMPERATIVE. — Let us banish vice and cherish  
bannir art. — m. chérir  
virtue. — Act as a man of honour. — Choose two  
art. vertu § en \* honneur h m.

† See Rule 22 (b).

‡ See Rule 23 (a).

§ See Rule 23 (b).

(of them).—Reflect for a moment.—Blush with shame.

116 *Réfléchir* \* —† *rougir de honte* h asp.

SUBJ. PRES.—That I may accomplish my design. — That  
*accomplir dessein* †

you may establish communications between these two towns.  
*établir* 32 ———— ‡ *entre*

IMPERF.—That she might match the colours. — That you  
*assortir couleur* ‡

might enjoy your glory.—That they might soften his heart.  
*jouir de gloire.* *attendrir cœur* §

### EXERCISE LII.

That we might have fathomed that mystery.—That they  
*approfondir mystère* m.

might have fed the poor, and cured the sick. — All  
*pauvre* pl. *malade* pl. *Tout*

that we build is of short duration. — Let him bless  
*ce que* *court durée* f. *bénir* art.

Providence.—God will punish the ungrateful.—I shall finish  
——— † *Dieu* *ingrat* m. pl.

my translation this evening.—I have converted him.—That  
*traduction* ‡ *soir* † *convertir*

town was swallowed up by an earthquake. — The  
*engloutir* † *tremblement de terre.*

torpedo benumbs the hand of him who touches it.  
*torpille* f. *engourdir* *celui* *toucher*

### MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN OIR.

#### 149. RECEVOIR, TO RECEIVE.

##### INFINITIVE.

##### 1. PRESENT.

*Recevoir*, . . . *to receive.*

##### 2. PAST.

*Avoir reçu*, || . . . *to have received.*

##### 3. PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

*Recevant*, . . . *receiving.*

##### 4. PARTICIPLE PAST.

*Reçu*, . . . *received.*

##### COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

*Ayant reçu*, . . . *having received.*

† See Rule 23 (a).

‡ See Rule 22 (b).

§ See Rule 22 (c).

|| ~~See~~ In verbs ending in *cevoir*, a cedilla is put under the *c* whenever this consonant precedes *o* or *u*, in order to preserve the soft sound of the root (see Rule 18).

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je reçois,	<i>I receive.</i>
tu reçois,	<i>thou receivest.</i>
il reçoit,	<i>he receives.</i>
nous recevons,	<i>we receive.</i>
vous recevez,	<i>you receive.</i>
ils reçoivent,	<i>they receive.</i>

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Je recevais,	<i>I was</i>	receiving
tu recevais,	<i>thou wast</i>	
il recevait,	<i>he was</i>	
nous recevions,	<i>we were</i>	
vous receviez,	<i>you were</i>	
ils recevaient,	<i>they were</i>	

## 3. PRÆTERITE DEFINITE.

Je reçus,	<i>I received.</i>
tu reçus,	<i>thou receivedst.</i>
il reçut,	<i>he received.</i>
nous reçûmes,	<i>we received.</i>
vous reçûtes,	<i>you received.</i>
ils reçurent,	<i>they received.</i>

## 4. PRÆTERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai reçu,	<i>I have</i>	received
tu as reçu,	<i>thou hast</i>	
il a reçu,	<i>he has</i>	
nous avons reçu,	<i>we have</i>	
vous avez reçu,	<i>you have</i>	
ils ont reçu,	<i>they have</i>	

## 5. PRÆTERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus reçu,	<i>I had</i>	received
tu eus reçu,	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il eut reçu,	<i>he had</i>	
nous eûmes reçu,	<i>we had</i>	
vous eûtes reçu,	<i>you had</i>	
ils eurent reçu,	<i>they had</i>	

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

J'avais reçu,	<i>I had</i>	received
tu avais reçu,	<i>thou hadst</i>	
il avait reçu,	<i>he had</i>	
nous avions reçu,	<i>we had</i>	
vous aviez reçu,	<i>you had</i>	
ils avaient reçu,	<i>they had</i>	

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je recevrai,	<i>I shall</i>	receive
tu recevras,	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il recevra,	<i>he shall</i>	
nous recevrons,	<i>we shall</i>	
vous recevrez,	<i>you shall</i>	
ils recevront,	<i>they shall</i>	

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai reçu,	<i>I shall</i>	have received.
tu auras reçu,	<i>thou shalt</i>	
il aura reçu,	<i>he shall</i>	
nous aurons reçu,	<i>we shall</i>	
vous aurez reçu,	<i>you shall</i>	
ils auront reçu,	<i>they shall</i>	

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je recevrais,	<i>I should</i>	receive
tu recevrais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il recevrait,	<i>he should</i>	
nous recevriions,	<i>we should</i>	
vous recevriez,	<i>you should</i>	
ils recevraient,	<i>they should</i>	

## 2. PAST.

J'aurais reçu,	<i>I should</i>	have received.
tu aurais reçu,	<i>thou shouldst</i>	
il aurait reçu,	<i>he should</i>	
nous aurions reçu,	<i>we should</i>	
vous auriez reçu,	<i>you should</i>	
ils auraient reçu,	<i>they should</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

Reçois,	<i>Receive (thou).</i>
qu'il reçoive,	<i>let him receive.</i>
recevons,	<i>let us receive.</i>
recevez,	<i>receive (you).</i>
qu'ils reçoivent,	<i>let them receive.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je reçoive,	That I may receive.
que tu reçoives,	
qu'il reçoive,	
que nous recevions,	
que vous receviez,	
qu'ils reçoivent,	

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je reçusse,	That I might receive.
que tu reçusses,	
qu'il reçût,	
que nous reçussions,	
que vous reçussiez,	
qu'ils reçussent,	

## 3. PRÉTERITE.

Que j'aie reçu,  
que tu aies reçu,  
qu'il ait reçu,  
que nous ayons reçu,  
que vous ayez reçu,  
qu'ils aient reçu,

(That I may  
have received.)

## 4. PLUS-QU'IMPARFAIT.†

Que j'eusse reçu,  
que tu eusses reçu,  
qu'il eût reçu,  
que nous eussions reçu,  
que vous eussiez reçu,  
qu'ils eussent reçu,

(That I might  
have received.)

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Past Conditional.

\* \* See Idiomatic Tenses, No. 152.

This Conjugation has only seven verbs, which are:—

*Recevoir*, to receive, which is given as a model; and

*Apercevoir*, to perceive.  
*concevoir*, to conceive.  
*décevoir*, to deceive.  
*devoir*, to owe.

*redevoir* { to remain in debt;  
to owe still.  
*percevoir* { to collect (rents, in-  
come, taxes).

## EXERCISE LIII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I perceive the steeple of the village.—  
*apercevoir clocher* 23 — 24 (a)

From his window, he perceives the top of a mountain.  
*fenêtre f. sommet 23 montagne f.*

IMPERF.—He owed a large sum to his partner. — You  
*devoir grand somme f. associé m.*

were collecting the taxes.—They owed a thousand pounds.  
*percevoir impôt 23 † livres sterling.*

PRET. DEF.—We perceived several men coming towards  
90 *qui venaient à*

us.—The besieged received succour.  
*assiégé m. pl. 32 secours pl.*

PRET. INDEF.—I received a letter this morning. — That  
*lettre f. matin 23*

regiment has received recruits. — We have perceived  
*régiment 23 32 recrue f.*

you from afar.—The soldiers have received provisions for  
*loin. soldat 32 vivre m.*

three days.—My sister has received your parcel.  
*paquet 23*

† Refer to p. 38 footnote, cent and mille.

## EXERCISE LIV.

FUTURE ABSOL.—I shall receive your letter on the fifteenth.  
\* 76

— She will receive some visits. — He will still owe thirteen  
*visite redevoir*

guineas. — They will owe their misfortunes to their faults.  
*guinée f. devoir malheur m. faute f.*

COND. PRES.—I would conceive the greatest hopes. — You  
*concevoir espérance f.*

ought to behave differently. — He would receive a blow.  
*devoir vous conduire autrement. coup m.*

IMPERATIVE. — Receive this as a token of my  
109 *en \* témoignage* 82

confidence and esteem.—Let us receive his apology. —  
*confiance f. de mon estime f. 83 excuse f.*

Conceive the horror of his situation. — Receive him  
*Concevoir horreur h m. 82 — f.*

kindly. — Receive everybody (with civility.)  
*avec bonté. tout le monde poliment*

MODEL OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION IN *RE*.

150.

*VENDRE*, TO SELL.

## INFINTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Vendre, . . . *to sell.*

## 2. PAST.

Avoir vendu, . . . *to have sold.*

## 3. PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Vendant, . . . *selling.*

## 4. PARTICIPLE PAST.

Vendu, . . . *sold.*

## COMPOUND OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Ayant vendu, . . . *having sold.*

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je vends, *I sell.*  
tu vends, *thou sellest.*  
il vend, *he sells.*  
nous vendons, *we sell.*  
vous vendez, *you sell.*  
ils vendent, *they sell.*

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Je vendais, *I was*  
tu vendais, *thou wast*  
il vendait, *he was*  
nous vendions, *we were*  
vous vendiez, *you were*  
ils vendaient, *they were*

(*selling*)



## 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je vendis,	<i>I sold.</i>
tu vendis,	<i>thou soldest.</i>
il vendit,	<i>he sold.</i>
nous vendîmes,	<i>we sold.</i>
vous vendîtes,	<i>you sold.</i>
ils vendirent,	<i>they sold.</i>

## 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai vendu,	<i>I have</i>
tu as vendu,	<i>thou hast</i>
il a vendu,	<i>he has</i>
nous avons vendu,	<i>we have</i>
vous avez vendu,	<i>you have</i>
ils ont vendu,	<i>they have</i>

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus vendu,	<i>I had</i>
tu eus vendu,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il eut vendu,	<i>he had</i>
nous eûmes vendu,	<i>we had</i>
vous eûtes vendu,	<i>you had</i>
ils eurent vendu,	<i>they had</i>

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

J'avais vendu,	<i>I had</i>
tu avais vendu,	<i>thou hadst</i>
il avait vendu,	<i>he had</i>
nous avions vendu,	<i>we had</i>
vous aviez vendu,	<i>you had</i>
ils avaient vendu,	<i>they had</i>

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je vendrai,	<i>I shall</i>
tu vendras,	<i>thou shalt</i>
il vendra,	<i>he shall</i>
nous vendrons,	<i>we shall</i>
vous vendrez,	<i>you shall</i>
ils vendront,	<i>they shall</i>

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai vendu,	<i>I shall</i>
tu auras vendu,	<i>thou shalt</i>
il aura vendu,	<i>he shall</i>
nous aurons vendu,	<i>we shall</i>
vous aurez vendu,	<i>you shall</i>
ils auront vendu,	<i>they shall</i>

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je vendrais,	<i>I should</i>
tu vendrais,	<i>thou shouldst</i>
il vendrait,	<i>he should</i>
nous vendrions,	<i>we should</i>
vous vendriez,	<i>you should</i>
ils vendraient,	<i>they should</i>

## 2. PAST.

J'aurais vendu,	<i>I should</i>
tu aurais vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
il aurait vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
nous aurions vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
vous auriez vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
ils auraient vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

Vends,	<i>Sell (thou).</i>
qu'il vende,	<i>let him sell.</i>
vendons,	<i>let us sell.</i>
vendez,	<i>sell (you).</i>
qu'ils vendent,	<i>let them sell.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je vende,	<i>That I may</i>
que tu vendes,	<i>sell.</i>
qu'il vende,	<i>sell.</i>
que nous vendions,	<i>sell.</i>
que vous vendiez,	<i>sell.</i>
qu'ils vendent,	<i>sell.</i>

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je vendisse,	<i>That I might</i>
que tu vendisses,	<i>sell.</i>
qu'il vendît,	<i>sell.</i>
que nous vendissions,	<i>sell.</i>
que vous vendissiez,	<i>sell.</i>
qu'ils vendissent,	<i>sell.</i>

## 3. PRETERITE.

Que j'aie vendu,	<i>That I may</i>
que tu aies vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
qu'il ait vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
que nous ayons vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
que vous ayez vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
qu'ils aient vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>

## 4. PLUPERFECT.†

Que j'eusse vendu,	<i>That I might</i>
que tu eusses vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
qu'il eût vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
que nous eussions vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
que vous eussiez vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>
qu'ils eussent vendu,	<i>have sold.</i>

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Past Conditional.

\*. See Idiomatic Tenses, No. 152.

## 151. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Attendre,	to wait for.	pendre,	to hang.
correspondre,	to correspond.	perdre,	to lose.
défendre,	to defend.	prétendre,	to pretend.
dépendre,	to depend.	rendre,	to render.
descendre,	to descend.	répandre,	to spread.
entendre,	to hear.	répondre,	to answer.
fendre,	to split.	suspendre,	to suspend.
fondre,	to melt.	tordre,	to twist.
mordre,	to bite.	&c.	&c.

## EXERCISE LV.

INDICAT. PRESENT.—I hear the children.—That depends  
*enfant*

on circumstances.—He understands English (a little).—That  
*des circonstance f. entendre 2 l'anglais 1*

dog bites.—He defends his sister.—We expect several  
*chien m. attendre*

friends to dinner.—You pretend that these men confound  
*à dîner. prétendre que 84 confondre*

the arts with the sciences.—He is splitting some wood.  
— *m. — f. bois m.*

IMPERF.—I was waiting for the steamboat.—He was  
*attendre \* bateau à vapeur m.*

coming down with David.—They were wasting their time.  
*descendre perdre temps m.*

PRET. DEF.—I alighted at the hôtel de France.—He  
*descendre h m.*

answered in a few words.—We spread nets everywhere.—  
*en peu de mots. tendre 32 filet m. partout*

They lost their lawsuit.—The storm burst upon the town.  
*procès m. orage m. fondre*

## EXERCISE LVI.

PRET. INDEF.—I have heard that musician.—He has  
*entendre musicien m.*

restored the money.—The sun has melted the snow.—The  
*rendre fondre neige f.*

thermometer has fallen four degrees since yesterday.  
*thermomètre m. descendre de degré m. depuis hier.*

—You have defended him with much talent. — Ladies,  
*défendre beaucoup de — Mesdames*  
 have you heard the music of the new opera?  
*musique f. nouvel opéra m.*

FUTURE. — Make haste, I will wait for you. — It is a  
*Dépêchez-vous attendre \* C<sup>e</sup>*  
 thing to which he will never condescend. — You will  
*chose f. ne <sup>2</sup>jamais <sup>1</sup>condescendre*

wait a long time—They will shear their sheep.  
*attendre \* longtemps. tondre brebis pl.*

COND. PRES. — I would correspond regularly with  
*correspondre régulièrement*  
 my friends. — Your hens would lay eggs every day.  
*poule f. pondre tous les jours.*

IMPERATIVE. — Let us answer their letter. — Wait  
*répondre à Attendre*  
 till to-morrow.—“Render unto Cæsar (the things which  
*jusqu'à demain. à César ce qui appartient*  
 are Cæsar’s).”  
*à César.*

## IDIOMATIC TENSES OF FRENCH VERBS.

152. (a) The Idiomatic Tenses are formed with *venir de* (to have just) and *aller* (to be going to), followed by an Infinitive. These tenses are :—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(1) INSTANT FUTURE.<br/> <i>I am going to sing, &amp;c.</i><br/>           Je vais chanter.<br/>           tu vas chanter.<br/>           il va chanter.<br/>           nous allons chanter.<br/>           vous allez chanter.<br/>           ils vont chanter.</p>                            | <p>(3) PAST (JUST ELAPSED).<br/> <i>I have just received, &amp;c.</i><br/>           Je viens de recevoir.<br/>           tu viens de recevoir.<br/>           ils vient de recevoir.<br/>           nous venons de recevoir.<br/>           vous venez de recevoir.<br/>           ils viennent de recevoir.</p> |
| <p>(2) IMPERFECT FUTURE (ELAPSED).<br/> <i>I was going to fill, &amp;c.</i><br/>           J'allais remplir.<br/>           tu allais remplir.<br/>           il allait remplir.<br/>           nous allions remplir.<br/>           vous alliez remplir.<br/>           ils allaient remplir.</p> | <p>(4) PLUPERFECT (JUST ELAPSED).<br/> <i>I had just sold, &amp;c.</i><br/>           Je venais de vendre.<br/>           tu venais de vendre.<br/>           il venait de vendre.<br/>           nous venions de vendre.<br/>           vous veniez de vendre.<br/>           ils venaient de vendre.</p>        |

(b) ~~as~~ The verb *devoir* (to owe) has also numerous idiomatic meanings in French when followed by an Infinitive. In most cases it is

expressed in English by—to be obliged to, to be to, to have to, to intend to, must, ought to, to be necessary to, &c., as follows:—

(5) *I am to, I intend to speak, &c.*

Je dois parler.  
tu dois parler.  
il doit parler.  
nous devons parler.  
vous devez parler.  
ils doivent parler.

(6) *I was to, I intended to answer, &c.*

Je devais répondre.  
tu devais répondre.  
il devait répondre.  
nous devions répondre.  
vous deviez répondre.  
ils devaient répondre.

(7) *I ought to, or should succeed, &c.*

Je devrais réussir.  
tu devrais réussir.  
il devrait réussir.  
nous devrions réussir.  
vous devriez réussir.  
ils devraient réussir.

(8) *I ought to, or should have built, &c.*

J'aurais dû bâtir.  
tu aurais dû bâtir.  
il aurait dû bâtir.  
nous aurions dû bâtir.  
vous auriez dû bâtir.  
ils auraient dû bâtir.

(9) *I have had to, I have been obliged to, I surely must have received, &c.*

J'ai dû recevoir.  
tu as dû recevoir.  
il a dû recevoir.

nous avons dû recevoir.  
vous avez dû recevoir.  
ils ont dû recevoir.

# EXERCISE LVII.

*N.B.*—Each figure in parenthesis shows the idiomatic tense to be used under Rule 152.

What are we going to do?—We will sing a duet. — I am  
Qu' 114 (1) faire (1) duo m. (5)  
to speak to-night.—Peter intends to stay here.—My sister was  
ce soir Pierre (5) rester ici  
going to play a piece. — I ought to start now. — We were  
(2) jouer morceau m. (7) partir maintenant (6)  
to dance together.—You must have received my letter. — Your  
danser ensemble (9) recevoir lettre f.  
friend ought to have come sooner. — We had just met him.—  
(8) venir plus tôt. (4) rencontrer 103  
She has just taken off her bonnet.—I will conjugate a few  
(3) ôter chapeau m. (1) conjuguer 94  
verbs. — You should speak louder. — The children have  
verbe m. (7) plus haut. (3)  
just arrived. — Has Paul been obliged to go to Paris?—I was  
arriver. 161 Paul a-t-il (9) aller — (6)  
to sell the house and garden.

## OF THE NEGATIONS USED WITH VERBS.

153. (a) French negation is expressed by *two words*. The first particle is *ne*, placed before, and one of the following expressions goes *after* the verb in simple tenses, and *generally* between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses:—

ne—pas, <i>not</i> .		ne—personne, { <i>nobody,</i>	ne—nullement, } <i>not</i>
ne—point, <i>not (at all)</i> .		{ <i>not any-</i>	ne—aucunement, } <i>at all</i> .
ne—plus, { <i>no more, no</i>		<i>body.</i>	ne—nulle part, <i>nowhere</i> .
ne—jamais, <i>never.</i>		ne—rien, <i>nothing.</i>	ne—ni—ni, <i>neither, nor.</i>
ne—guère, { <i>scarcely, not</i>		ne—nul, } <i>no, not any.</i>	ne—pas encore, <i>not yet.</i>
often.		ne—aucun, }	ne—pas un, une, <i>not one.</i>

(b) ~~SE~~ Only, but (meaning “only”) are expressed in French by NE—QUE.

N.B.—In compound tenses *personne*, *aucun*, *que*, *nul*, *nulle part*, follow the participle.

(c) “When the verb is in the Present of the Infinitive, it is optional to place *pas* and *point* before or after the verb. *Pour ne POINT souffrir*. — *Pour ne souffrir POINT*. The first manner of speaking, however, is more used.”—(FR. ACAD. ‘Dict. crit. de *Féraud*,’ &c.)

(d) The same rule holds good for the Past Infinitive, and is applicable to other negatives (*ne plus*, *ne rien*, *ne jamais*); as, *Il dit n’avoir RIEN entendu*; or, *Il dit NE RIEN avoir entendu*.

154. When the negative is followed by a noun, *de* is used instead of the definite article; as, *Je n’ai pas DE livres*, I have no books; *elle n’a point DE place*, she has no room; *nous n’avons plus d’oranges*, we have no oranges left.

155. The words *do*, *does*, or *did*, used with some tenses of an English verb (chiefly in *interrogation* and *negation*), are not expressed in French, but they point out in *what tense* the English leading verb *is to be used in French*.

## 156. MODEL OF NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE.

1. PRESENT.		3. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
Ne pas devoir, <i>not to owe</i> , &c.		Ne devant pas, <i>not owing</i> .
2. PAST.		4. COMPOUND PARTICIPLE.
N’avoir pas dû, † { <i>not to have</i>		N’ayant pas dû, { <i>not having</i>
{ <i>owed</i> , &c.		{ <i>owed</i> , &c.

† See Rule 9.

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je ne *dois* pas,†  
tu ne *dois* pas,  
il ne *doit* pas,  
nous ne *devons* pas,  
vous ne *devez* pas,  
ils ne *doivent* pas,

(I do not  
owe.)

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Je ne *devais* pas,  
tu ne *devais* pas,  
il ne *devait* pas,  
nous ne *devions* pas,  
vous ne *deviez* pas,  
ils ne *devaient* pas,

(I was  
not owing.)

## 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je ne *dus* pas,  
tu ne *dus* pas,  
il ne *dut* pas,  
nous ne *dâmes* pas,  
vous ne *dâtes* pas,  
ils ne *durent* pas,

(I did  
not owe.)

## 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je n'*ai* pas dû,  
tu n'*as* pas dû,  
il n'*a* pas dû,  
nous n'*avons* pas dû,  
vous n'*avez* pas dû,  
ils n'*ont* pas dû,

(I have  
not owed.)

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je n'*eus* pas dû,  
tu n'*eus* pas dû,  
il n'*eut* pas dû,  
nous n'*eûmes* pas dû,  
vous n'*eûtes* pas dû,  
ils n'*euvent* pas dû,

(I had  
not owed.)

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

Je n'*avais* pas dû,  
tu n'*avais* pas dû,  
il n'*avait* pas dû,  
nous n'*avions* pas dû,  
vous n'*aviez* pas dû,  
ils n'*avaient* pas dû,

(I had  
not owed.)

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je ne *devrai* pas,  
tu ne *devras* pas,  
il ne *devra* pas,  
nous ne *devrons* pas,  
vous ne *devrez* pas,  
ils ne *devront* pas,

(I shall  
not owe.)

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je n'*aurai* pas dû,  
tu n'*auras* pas dû,  
il n'*aura* pas dû,  
nous n'*aurons* pas dû,  
vous n' *aurez* pas dû,  
ils n'*auront* pas dû,

(I shall  
not have owed.)

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je ne *devrais* pas,  
tu ne *devrais* pas,  
il ne *devrait* pas,  
nous ne *devrions* pas,  
vous ne *devriez* pas,  
ils ne *devraient* pas,

(I should  
not owe.)

## 2. PAST.

Je n'*aurais* pas dû,  
tu n'*aurais* pas dû,  
il n'*aurait* pas dû,  
nous n'*aurions* pas dû,  
vous n'*auriez* pas dû,  
ils n'*auraient* pas dû,

(I should  
not have owed.)

## IMPERATIVE.

Ne *dois* pas  
qu'il ne *doive* pas  
qu'ils ne *doivent* pas

Ne *devons* pas  
ne *devez* pas

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je ne *doive* pas,  
que tu ne *doives* pas,  
qu'il ne *doive* pas,  
que nous ne *devions* pas,  
que vous ne *deviez* pas,  
qu'ils ne *doivent* pas,

(That I  
may not owe.)

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je ne *dusse* pas,  
que tu ne *dusses* pas,  
qu'il ne *dât* pas,  
que nous ne *dussions* pas,  
que vous ne *dussiez* pas,  
qu'ils ne *dussent* pas,

(That I  
might not owe.)

† See other significations of *devoir*, Rule 152 (b).

## 3. PRETERITE

Que je n'aie pas d4,  
que tu n'aies pas d4,  
qu'il n'ait pas d4,  
que nous n'ayons pas d4,  
que vous n'ayez pas d4,  
qu'ils n'aient pas d4,

(That I may  
not have owed.)

## 4. PLUPERFECT.

Que je n'eusse pas d4,  
que tu n'eusses pas d4,  
qu'il n'eût pas d4,  
que nous n'eussions pas d4,  
que vous n'eussiez pas d4,  
qu'ils n'eussent pas d4,

(That I might  
not have owed.)

## EXERCISE LVIII.

INDICAT. PRES.—I have *no* change. —The butcher has  
*monnaie.* *boucher m.*  
*no* mutton.—My sister sings *but little*.—We *do not* speak of  
*mouton.* *chanter*  
that.—You *do not* answer his letters.—They are not playing.  
*répondre à* *lettre m.* *jouer*

IMPERF. — I *did not* expect that of you. — She was *not*  
*attendre*  
dancing.—You were *only* thinking of him.—They were *not*  
*danser* *penser à*  
happy.—I know *neither* his mother *nor* his sisters.  
*heureux ne connais ni 82 ni 82*

## EXERCISE LIX.

PRET. DEF. — I *did not* receive his note in time. — He  
*billet m. à temps.*  
*did not* forget his promise.—She *did not* hear him.  
*oublier promesse f. entendre*

PRET. INDEF.—I have *not* yet received his answer. —  
*encore réponse f.*  
He has *only* spoken to his colonel. — You have *not* brought  
*apporter*  
the parcel. — Your brothers *cannot have* <sup>2</sup>met <sup>1</sup>him.  
*paquet m. devoir ind-4 152 (9) rencontrer le*

PLUPERF. — I had *not* finished my exercise when you  
*thème m. quand f.*  
came in.  
*êtes entrée.†*

## EXERCISE LX.

FUT.—I shall *not* speak to him *any more*.—We will *not* travel  
102 *voyager*  
this year. — You will *never* succeed in that undertaking.  
*année f. réussir entreprise f.*

COND. PRES. — I would owe *nothing*. — You would not  
devoir

wait for anybody. — They would *never* pardon him. — We  
*attendre* \* 124 *pardonner lui*.

(ought not to) think of such things.

152 (7) *penser à de tel chose f.*

PAST. — He (ought not to have) shown them the spot. — You  
152 (8) <sup>2</sup>*montrer* <sup>1</sup>*leur* *endroit m.*

(should not have) spoken thus.

152 (8) *inf.-1 ainsi*

IMPERA. — Let us not imitate his conduct. — Do not lose  
*imiter conduite f. perdre*

your time. — Don't shut the window. — Don't wait for me.  
*temps m. fermer fenêtre f. attendre*

— Never yield to the violence of thy passions. Let us  
*t' abandonner — f. — f.*

not act against him. — Do not receive any of his letters. — Do  
*agir lui. f.*

not spread that bad news. — Do not be so idle.  
*répandre mauvais nouvelle f. paresseux.*

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS INTERROGATIVELY.

### PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

157. The tenses of English verbs are chiefly formed by combining words, but, as we have said (138), *inflection* is the mark of French tenses. Hence, such particles as *do*, *does*, *did*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would*, &c., when used as mere auxiliaries, are not translated separately in French. Thus, *I sing*, *I do sing*, *I am singing*, have only one rendering in French, *JE CHANTE*; — *Do you sing?* *Are you singing?* *CHANTEZ-VOUS?* — *Was he singing?* *CHANTAIT-IL?*

158. (1) A verb used *interrogatively* has only two moods — viz., the INDICATIVE and the CONDITIONAL.

159. (2) When the subject of an interrogative verb is a personal pronoun, the demonstrative pronoun *CE*, or the indefinite pronoun *ON*, it is placed *after the verb* in a simple tense, and *after the auxiliary* in a compound tense, and the verb and the pronoun subject are connected by a hyphen; as—

*Parlez-vous?* Are you speaking? — *Jouerons-nous?* Shall we play? — *Est-ce mon tour?* Is it my turn? — *Avait-on attendu longtemps?* Had



they waited long?—*Le voient-ils?* Do they see him?—*L'ont-ils vu?* Have they seen him?


160. (3) When the third person singular of a verb ends with a vowel, for the sake of euphony we place between the verb and the pronoun the letter *t*, preceded and followed by a hyphen; as, *Aura-t-il?* Will he have?—*Danse-t-elle?* Does she dance?

161. (4) When the subject of an interrogative verb is a proper name, a noun, a demonstrative pronoun (except *ce*), an indefinite pronoun (except *on*), or a possessive pronoun, it is placed *before the verb*, and one of the personal pronouns *il, ils, elle, elles*, according to the gender and number of the subject, is put after the verb in simple tenses, and after the auxiliary in compound tenses, and the verb is connected by a hyphen with *il, ils, elle, or elles*; as—

*Louise cause-t-elle avec votre mère?* Is Louisa talking with your mother?—*Jean est-il allé au théâtre?* Is John gone to the theatre?—*Ma sœur chantait-elle?* Was my sister singing?—*Ces gants-ci sont à moi; ceux-là sont-ils à vous?* These gloves are mine; are those yours?—*Voici mon chien; le vôtre est-il dans son chenil?* Here is my dog; is yours in its kennel?—*Ceci vous plaît-il?* Does this please you?—*Personne croira-t-il cela?* Will anybody believe that?—*Personne ne vous a-t-il vu?* Has not anybody seen you?—*Chacun est-il content?* Is every one pleased?

(a) However, when an interrogative sentence, having for subject any of the words mentioned in the foregoing paragraph, begins in English with a preposition or an adverb, *it begins in French with the same word*, and in this case, such subject *may* be placed after the verb in simple tenses, and after the past participle in a compound tense, except, however, when the verb has a noun for a direct or indirect object; as—

*Où a été votre frère?* or *Où votre frère a-t-il été?* Where has your brother been?—*Comment s'appelle ce monsieur?* or *Comment ce monsieur s'appelle-t-il?* What is this gentleman's name?


(b)  If an interrogative sentence, having for its subject any of the words mentioned in first paragraph of Rule 161, is introduced by the relative pronoun *que*, such subject *must* follow the verb in a simple tense, and the past participle in a compound tense; as—

*Que fait votre ami?* What is your friend doing?—*Qu'a dit le juge?* What has the judge said? The following construction may, however, be used: *Qu'est-ce que votre ami fait? Qu'est-ce que le juge a dit?*

162. (5) When the first person singular of a verb ends with an *e* mute, an *acute accent* is placed over that *e*, which is a sign to pronounce it; as, *Parl  -je ?* Do I speak?—*Chant  -je ?* Do I sing?

163. (6) Questions are often asked by *Est-ce que*, and then the subject or nominative precedes the verb; as, *Est-ce que vous lisez Horace ?* Do you read Horace? This mode of interrogation is also used with verbs that have but one syllable in the first person singular of the Present of the Indicative; so instead of saying, *Vends-je ? rends-je ? mens-je ? perds-je ? fonds-je ? pars-je ?* and the like, we say, *Est-ce que je vends ? est-ce que je rends ?* &c.

(a) By employing the former mode of expression, we sometimes could not even be understood; as, for instance, *Vends-je ? rends-je ? mens-je ?* might be mistaken for the Imperative *venge, range, mange*. Usage, however, permits us to say, *Ai-je ? suis-je ? dis-je ? fais-je ? dois-je ? vois-je ? vais-je ?* because there is no ambiguity nor any harshness of sound.

(b)  *EST-CE QUE* is preferred in familiar conversation, when putting questions in the first person, rather than using the form mentioned in No. 162. *EST-CE QUE* is frequently used also to express surprise or doubt. Examples :

<i>Est-ce que vous ne savez pas votre le��on ?</i>	<i>Do you not (really) know your lesson ?</i>
<i>Est-ce que vous partez d��j�� ?</i>	<i>Are you going already ?</i>
<i>Est-ce que j'arrive trop tard ?</i>	<i>Am I coming too late ?</i>
<i>Est-ce qu'on va bient��t sortir ?</i>	<i>Are we going out soon ?</i>

## 164. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS INTERROGATIVELY.

### INDICATIVE.

1. PRESENT.		2. IMPERFECT.		} giving }
Donn��-je, †	<i>Do I give ?</i>	Donnais-je ?	<i>Was I</i>	
donnes-tu ?	<i>dost thou give ?</i>	donnais-tu ?	<i>wast thou</i>	
donne-t-il ?	<i>does he give ?</i>	donnait-il ?	<i>was he</i>	
donnons-nous ?	<i>do we give ?</i>	donnions-nous ?	<i>were we</i>	
donnez-vous ?	<i>do you give ?</i>	donniez-vous ?	<i>were you</i>	
donnent-ils ?	<i>do they give ?</i>	donnaient-ils ?	<i>were they</i>	

† Or, *Est-ce que je donne ?*

## 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Donnai-je ?	Did I	give f.
donnas-tu ?	didst thou	
donna-t-il ?	did he	
donnâmes-nous ?	did we	
donnâtes-vous ?	did you	
donnèrent-ils ?	did they	

## 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Ai-je donné ?	Have I	given f.
as-tu donné ?	hast thou	
a-t-il donné ?	has he	
avons-nous donné ?	have we	
avez-vous donné ?	have you	
ont-ils donné ?	have they	

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Eus-je donné ?	Had I	given f.
eus-tu donné ?	hadst thou	
eut-il donné ?	had he	
eûmes-nous donné ?	had we	
eûtes-vous donné ?	had you	
eurent-ils donné ?	had they	

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

Avais-je donné ?	Had I	given f.
avais-tu donné ?	hadst thou	
avait-il donné ?	had he	
avions-nous donné ?	had we	
aviez-vous donné ?	had you	
avaient-ils donné ?	had they	

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Donnerai-je ?	Shall I	give f.
donneras-tu ?	shalt thou	
donnera-t-il ?	shall he	
donnerons-nous ?	shall we	
donneriez-vous ?	shall you	
donneront-ils ?	shall they	

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Aurai-je donné ?	Shall I	have given f.
auras-tu donné ?	shalt thou	
aura-t-il donné ?	shall he	
aurons-nous donné ?	shall we	
auriez-vous donné ?	shall you	
auront-ils donné ?	shall they	

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Donnerais-je ?	Should I	give f.
donnerais-tu ?	shouldst thou	
donnerait-il ?	should he	
donnerions-nous ?	should we	
donneriez-vous ?	should you	
donneraient-ils ?	should they	

## 2. PAST.

Aurais-je donné ?	Should I	have given f.
aurais-tu donné ?	shouldst thou	
aurait-il donné ?	should he	
aurions-nous donné ?	should we	
auriez-vous donné ?	should you	
auraient-ils donné ?	should they	

## EXERCISE LXI.

INDICATIVE. PRES.—Have I friends ?—Is she pleased ?  
satisfait

Does Francis bring good news ?—Does Mary dance  
François 161 apporter nouvelle f. Marie 161 danser  
well ?—Has she a watch ?—Is breakfast ready ?—Do you  
montre f. déjeuner m. prêt  
call ?—Does that belong to you ?  
appeler <sup>1</sup>cela appartient <sup>2</sup>100

IMPERF.—Was he waiting for your arrival ?—Were they  
attendre \* arrivée f. on 119  
speaking of our captain ?—Had the traveller a pistol ?  
capitaine voyageur m. pistolet m.

PRET. DEF. Did he prefer your house to hers ?—Did  
préférer maison f.  
they clear up his doubts ?—Was he bold enough ?  
éclaircir doute m. <sup>2</sup>hardi <sup>1</sup>

EXERCISE LXII.

PRET. INDEF.—Has the king rewarded his services?—  
*récompenser* — m.

What has your mother replied?—Where have your partners  
*Qu'* *répondre* *Où* *associé* m.  
 sent my goods? — Have you bought a pencil-case?  
*envoye* *marchandises* f. pl. *portecrayon* m.

PLUPERF.—Had anybody offended that gentleman?—  
*personne* m. *offenser* *monsieur*

Why had Jasper forgotten the date?—Had he lost his  
*Pourquoi* *Gaspard* *oublier* — f. *perdre*  
 pocket-book?  
*portefeuille* m.

FUT.—Shall I have that pleasure?—Will Miss Isabella  
*plaisir* m.

sing?—Where will the ladies alight?—What will your  
*chanter* — *dame* *descendre* *Que*  
 guardian give you?—My uncle is here; will yours soon  
*tuteur* <sup>2</sup>*donner* <sup>1</sup>100 *oncle* *ici* 157 161 <sup>2</sup>*bientôt*  
 arrive?—Will everybody (give credit) to those things?  
<sup>1</sup>*arriver* *tout le monde* *ajouter foi* 84 *chose*

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

165. To add the negative form to a verb used interrogatively, *ne* is placed before the verb, and before the personal pronoun or pronouns used objectively, if any; and the second part of the negative (see Rule 153) comes after the pronoun subject, both in simple and compound tenses.

~~But~~ However, *nulle part*, *que* (used with *ne*, in the sense of *only*), *personne*, and *aucun*, when employed as objects, follow the participle.

INDICATIVE.

1. PRESENT.

Est-ce que je ne perds pas?  
 (for ne perds-je pas?)  
 ne perds-tu pas?  
 ne perd-il pas?  
 ne perdons-nous pas?  
 ne perdez-vous pas?  
 ne perdent-ils pas?

(Do I not  
 lose?)

2. IMPERFECT.

Ne perdais-je pas?  
 ne perdais-tu pas?  
 ne perdait-il pas?  
 ne perdions-nous pas?  
 ne perdiez-vous pas?  
 ne perdaient-ils pas?

(Was I not  
 losing?)

† D takes the sound of *t*, when at the end of a verb followed by one of the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *on*.—(*Dumarsais*, *Féraud*, *Bouillette*, *Demandre*, &c.)

## 3. PRÉTERITE DÉFINITE.

Ne perdis-je pas ?  
 ne perdis-tu pas ?  
 ne perdit-il pas ?  
 ne perdtmes-nous pas ?  
 ne perdttes-vous pas ?  
 ne perdirent-ils pas ?

— Did I not  
 lose ?

## 4. PRÉTERITE INDEFINITE.

N'ai-je pas perdu ?  
 n'as-tu pas perdu ?  
 n'a-t-il pas perdu ?  
 n'avons-nous pas perdu ?  
 n'avez-vous pas perdu ?  
 n'ont-ils pas perdu ?

— Have I not  
 lost ?

## 5. PRÉTERITE ANTERIOR.

N'eus-je pas perdu ?  
 n'eus-tu pas perdu ?  
 n'eut-il pas perdu ?  
 n'eûmes-nous pas perdu ?  
 n'eûtes-vous pas perdu ?  
 n'eurent-ils pas perdu ?

— Had I not  
 lost ?

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

N'avais-je pas perdu ?  
 n'avais-tu pas perdu ?  
 n'avait-il pas perdu ?  
 n'avions-nous pas perdu ?  
 n'aviez-vous pas perdu ?  
 n'avaient-ils pas perdu ?

— Had I not  
 lost ?

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Ne perdrai-je pas ?  
 ne perdras-tu pas ?  
 ne perdra-t-il pas ?  
 ne perdrons-nous pas ?  
 ne perdrez-vous pas ?  
 ne perdront-ils pas ?

— Shall I not  
 lose ?

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

N'aurai-je pas perdu ?  
 n'auras-tu pas perdu ?  
 n'aura-t-il pas perdu ?  
 n'aurons-nous pas perdu ?  
 n'aurez-vous pas perdu ?  
 n'auront-ils pas perdu ?

— Shall I not  
 have lost ?

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Ne perdrais-je pas ?  
 ne perdrais-tu pas ?  
 ne perdrait-il pas ?  
 ne perdriions-nous pas ?  
 ne perdriez-vous pas ?  
 ne perdraient-ils pas ?

— Should I  
 not lose ?

## 2. PAST.

N'aurais-je pas perdu ?  
 n'aurais-tu pas perdu ?  
 n'aurait-il pas perdu ?  
 n'aurions-nous pas perdu ?  
 n'auriez-vous pas perdu ?  
 n'auraient-ils pas perdu ?

— Should I not  
 have lost ?

## EXERCISE LXIII.

INDICAT. PRES.—Am I not troublesome ? — Is she not  
*importun*

attentive ? — Does your sister never draw ? — Do we not walk  
*dessiner* *marcher*  
 too fast ? — Do you not hear the drum ? — Are they not  
*trop vite ?* *entendre* *tambour m.* 152 (1)  
 going to speak to anybody ? † — Has not Ralph enough money ?  
*personne* *Raoul assez d'*

IMPERF.—Did not his conduct deserve your esteem and  
 82 *conduite f.* *mériter* *estime f.*  
 mine ? — Had he not a short coat and a cloak above  
<sup>2</sup>*court* <sup>1</sup>*habit m.* *manteau m.* *par-dessus.*  
 it ? — Was not Edmund to reply to my letter ?  
 \* 152 (6) *Edmond* \* *répondre à* *lettre f.*

† Not....anybody—i.e., nobody (158).

EXERCISE LXIV.

PRET. DEF.—Why did he not answer your question?  
*Pourquoi répondre à — f.*

—Did she not turn the box upside-down?  
*renverser boîte f. sans dessus dessous?*

PRET. INDEF.—Has he not sold again his country-house? —  
*revendre maison de campagne f.*

Have you not signed the letter? — Have they not been any-  
*signer nulle*

where? † — Was not Emily compelled to leave school?  
*part Émilie 152 (9) quitter art. pension f.*

FUT. ABS.—Will he not betray your confidence? — Will you  
*trahir confiance f.*

only consult your lawyer? — Will not Julia invite any of  
*consulter avocat? Julie inviter m.*

your relatives?  
*parent m.*

§ II. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

166. (a) The *Passive* verb expresses an action received or suffered by its subject or nominative.

(b) There is only one mode of conjugating passive verbs; it is by adding to the verb *être*, through all its tenses, the past participle of the active verb.

167. Every past participle employed with the verb *être*, must agree in *gender* and *number* with the subject of *être*. To form the feminine, an *e* is added, and to form the plural, an *s*.

168. It has already been said (Rule 101) that the participle must be put in the singular when the pronoun *vous* is used instead of *tu*; thus, we must say, in speaking to a man, *vous êtes loué*; and, in speaking to a female, *vous êtes louée*.

169. MODEL FOR THE CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

INFINITIVE.

1. PRESENT. Être loué, . . . to be praised.	3. PARTICIPLE PRESENT. Étant loué, . . . being praised.
2. PAST. Avoir été loué, to have been praised.	4. PARTICIPLE PAST. Ayant été loué, having been praised.

† Not....anywhere—i.e., nowhere (153).

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je suis	{ loué, m. }	I am praised.
tu es	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle est	{ loués, m. }	
nous sommes	{ louées, f. }	
vous êtes	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles sont	{ louées, f. }	

## 2. IMPERFECT.

J'étais	{ loué, m. }	I was praised.
tu étais	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle était	{ loués, m. }	
nous étions	{ louées, f. }	
vous étiez	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles étaient	{ louées, f. }	

## 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je fus	{ loué, m. }	I was praised.
tu fus	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle fut	{ loués, m. }	
nous fûmes	{ louées, f. }	
vous fûtes	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles furent	{ louées, f. }	

## 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

J'ai été	{ loué, m. }	I have been praised.
tu as été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle a été	{ loués, m. }	
nous avons été	{ louées, f. }	
vous avez été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles ont été	{ louées, f. }	

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

J'eus été	{ loué, m. }	I had been praised.
tu eus été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle eut été	{ loués, m. }	
nous eûmes été	{ louées, f. }	
vous eûtes été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles eurent été	{ louées, f. }	

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

J'avais été	{ loué, m. }	I had been praised.
tu avais été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle avait été	{ loués, m. }	
nous avions été	{ louées, f. }	
vous aviez été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles avaient	{ louées, f. }	

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je serai	{ loué, m. }	I shall be praised.
tu seras	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle sera	{ loués, m. }	
nous serons	{ louées, f. }	
vous serez	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles seront	{ louées, f. }	

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

J'aurai été	{ loué, m. }	I shall have been praised.
tu auras été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle aura été	{ loués, m. }	
nous aurons été	{ louées, f. }	
vous aurez été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles auront été	{ louées, f. }	

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je serais	{ loué, m. }	I should be praised.
tu serais	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle serait	{ loués, m. }	
nous serions	{ louées, f. }	
vous seriez	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles seraient	{ louées, f. }	

## 2. PAST.

J'aurais été	{ loué, m. }	I should have been praised.
tu aurais été	{ louée, f. }	
il or elle aurait été	{ loués, m. }	
nous aurions été	{ louées, f. }	
vous auriez été	{ loués, m. }	
ils or elles auraient	{ louées, f. }	

## IMPERATIVE.

Sois	{ loué, m. }	Be (thou) praised.
qu'il or qu'elle soit	{ louée, f. }	
soyons	{ loués, m. }	
soyez	{ louées, f. }	
qu'ils or qu'elles soient	{ loués, m. }	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je sois	{ loué, m. }	That I may be praised.
que tu sois	{ louée, f. }	
qu'il or qu'elle soit	{ loués, m. }	
que nous soyons	{ louées, f. }	
que vous soyez	{ loués, m. }	
qu'ils or qu'elles soient	{ louées, f. }	

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je fusse	{ loué, m. }	That I might be praised.
que tu fusses	{ louée, f. }	
qu'il or qu'elle fût	{ loués, m. }	
que nous fussions	{ louées, f. }	
que vous fussiez	{ loués, m. }	
qu'ils or qu'elles fus- sent	{ louées, f. }	

## 3. PRÉTERITE.

Que j'aie été	} loués, m. louée, f. loués, m. louées, f. That I may have been praised.
que tu aies été [été]	
qu'il or qu'elle ait	
que nous ayons été	
que vous ayez été	
qu'ils or qu'elles aient été	

## 4. PLUPERFECT.

que j'eusse été	} loués, m. louée, f. loués, m. louées, f. That I might have been praised.
que tu eusses été	
qu'il or qu'elle eût été	
que nous eussions été	
que vous eussiez été	
qu'ils or qu'elles eussent été	

## EXERCISE LXV.

INDIC. PRES.—He is loved and esteemed by everybody.  
aimer estimer de tout le monde.

PRET. DEF.—The city of Rome was several times sacked.—  
ville f. — fois f. saccagé

He was saved from a great danger by (his youngest son.)  
délivrer —m. par le plus jeune de ses fils.

—She was accused of theft by her mistress.—The Gauls  
accuser vol m. par Gaules f. pl.

were conquered by Cæsar.—The two generals were wounded.  
167 conquis par blesser

PRET. INDEF.—Your work has been praised in a very  
ouvrage m. d' 2 fort

delicate manner by an academician.—The dykes have  
3 1 manière f. par académicien digue f.

been broken.—The land has been inundated.—She has not  
rompre terre f. inonder

been well rewarded.  
récompenser

FUT. ABS.—You will be recognised.—Your conduct will  
reconnu conduite f.

be approved by wise and enlightened people.  
de art. 2 3 éclairé 1 personne f. pl.

## § III. OF NEUTER VERBS.

170. The *Neuter* verb expresses merely the state of its subject ; as, *J'existe*, I exist ; or else an action limited to the subject which produces it ; as, *Je marche*, I walk.

(a) A *neuter* verb may be easily known by its not admitting immediately after it the words *quelqu'un*, somebody, or *quelque chose*, something. We cannot say: *Je marche quelqu'un*, *je languis quelque chose*; *marcher* and *languir*, therefore, are *neuter* verbs.



(b) ~~NE~~ *Neuter* verbs take *avoir* or *être* in their compound tenses, according as they express *action* or *state* :—

La journée *a* passé vite.  
La journée *est* passée.

The day has *passed* quickly.  
The day is *over* (past).

171. (a) The following form their compound tenses exclusively with *être*, and therefore their past participle agrees with the subject of *être*, according to No. 167.

Aller,	to go.	éclorre,	{ to blow, to be hatched.	redevenir,	{ to become again.
arriver,	to arrive.	mourir,	to die.	retourner,	to go back.
décéder,	to die.	naître,	{ to be born, to come to life.	revenir,	to come back.
devenir,	to become.	parvenir,	to attain.	survenir,	to happen.
disconvenir,	{ to deny, to disown.	provenir,	to come from.	venir,	to come.
échouer,	to become due.				

(b) *N.B.*—*Circonvenir*, *contrevenir*, and *subvenir* take *AVOIR* in their compound tenses. *Convenir* (meaning “to acknowledge, to admit, to agree”), requires *ÊTRE*; but when it means “to please, to suit, to fit,” &c., it requires *AVOIR* in its compound tenses. Examples :—

Cette place lui *aurait* bien convenu. *This place would have suited him well.*

Il *est* convenu de sa méprise.— *He has acknowledged his mistake*  
(ACAD.) (i.e., he is convinced of).

Nous *sommes* convenus des conditions. *We have agreed upon the conditions*  
(i.e., we are agreed as to).

172. (a) Some *neuter* verbs take either *avoir* or *être*, according to the idea one wishes to express. (1) *AVOIR* is used to express the action at the time of its occurrence, or while it is in progress. (2) *ÊTRE* is used rather to mark the result of an accomplished fact.

Aborder,	to land.	descendre,	to go down.	passer,	to pass.
accourir,	to run to.	disparaître,	to disappear.	remonter,	{ to go up
accroître,	to increase.	échapper,	to escape.		again.
apparaître,	to appear.	entrer,	{ to go in, to come in.	rentrer,	{ to go (or come)
croître,	to grow.	fleurir,	to blossom.		in again.
déborder,	to overflow.	grandir,	{ to grow taller.	repartir,	to start again.
déchoir,	{ to fall lower, to decay.	monter,	to go up.	rester,	{ to remain, to stay.
demeurer,	to dwell, to stay.	partir,	to set out.	sortir,	to go out.

*tomber*, to fall, and its derivative *retomber*, to fall again.

#### EXAMPLES WITH *AVOIR*.

Ma sœur *a* passé en Amérique avec son mari. *My sister has gone to America with her husband.*

La neige *a* tombé pendant vingt-quatre heures. *Snow has been falling for twenty-four hours.*

Ces enfants *ont* grandi beaucoup. *These children have grown very much.*

Depuis ce moment il *a* déchu de jour en jour.— (ACAD.) *Since that time he declined from day to day.*

## EXAMPLES WITH ÊTRE.

Ma sœur *est* passée en Amérique  
depuis douze ans.  
Voyez toute la neige qui *est* tombée !  
Comme vous *êtes* grands tous deux !  
Il *est* déchu de son droit.

*My sister has been in America for  
the last twelve years.  
See all the snow that has fallen !  
How you are both grown !  
He has forfeited his right.*

(b) Of course if any *neuter* verbs are used as *active* verbs, they require the auxiliary *avoir*. Examples :—

Nous *avons* rentré les fleurs.  
Avez-vous descendu mes gants ?  
A-t-il remonté l'horloge ?  
Le tailleur a-t-il retourné l'habit ?

*We have taken in the flowers.  
Have you brought down my gloves ?  
Has he wound up the clock ?  
Has the tailor turned the coat ?*

## § IV. OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

173. *Pronominal* verbs are those which are conjugated with two pronouns of the same person ; as, *je me repens*, I repent ; *il se propose*, he intends ; *nous nous flattons*, we flatter ourselves.

174. *Pronominal* verbs are called *reflective* when they express an action performed and suffered by the subject itself ; as, *je me blesse*, I hurt myself ; *je me réjouis*, I rejoice. They are called *reciprocal* when they express a reciprocity of action between two or more subjects ; as, *nous nous entr'aidons*, we help each other. They are called *pronominal by nature* when they express an action limited to the subject, in which case they are rendered in English by a *neuter*, and, sometimes, by a *transitive verb* ; as, *Je me repens*, I repent ; *il se dépêche*, he hastens ; *je me souviens de cela*, I remember that.

175. *Pronominal* verbs have no conjugation of their own ; they follow the one to which their *Infinitive* belongs. In their compound tenses, they take *être* instead of *avoir*, but in these verbs, *être* really means *to have*.

(a) The Past Participle of *reflective* and *reciprocal* verbs agrees in gender and number with the second pronoun when it is *direct* object ; as in : *Nous nous sommes flattés* (We have flattered ourselves) ; *elles se sont entr'aidées* (they (*f*) have helped each other).

(b) But the Past Participle remains unchanged when the second pronoun is *indirect* object, if there be no *direct* object, or if the *direct* object does not precede the auxiliary verb ; as in : *Votre sœur s'est nuï* (Your sister has done herself harm) ; *ils se sont adressés des lettres* (they have addressed letters to each other).

(c) The Past Participle of a verb *pronominal by nature* always agrees with the *subject* ; as in : *Ils se sont repentis* (They have repented) ; *ELLE s'est repentie* (she has repented).

## 176. CONJUGATION OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

## INFINITIVE.

1. PRESENT.  
Se réjouir, . . . to rejoice.

2. PAST.  
S'être réjoui or } to have re-  
réjouie, f. } joined.

3. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.  
Se réjouissant, rejoicing.

4. PAST PARTICIPLE.  
S'étant réjoui or } having re-  
réjouie, f. } joined.

## INDICATIVE.

1. PRESENT.  
Je me réjouis,  
tu te réjouis,  
il se réjouit,  
nous nous réjouissons,  
vous vous réjouissez,  
ils se réjouissent,

I rejoice, &c.

2. IMPERFECT.  
Je me réjouissais,  
tu te réjouissais,  
il se réjouissait,  
nous nous réjouissions,  
vous vous réjouissiez,  
ils se réjouissaient,

I was rejoicing, &c.

3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.  
Je me réjouis,  
tu te réjouis,  
il se réjouit,  
nous nous réjouîmes,  
vous vous réjouîtes,  
ils se réjouirent,

I rejoiced, &c.

4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.  
Je me suis réjoui,  
tu t'es réjoui,  
il s'est réjoui,  
nous nous sommes réjouis,  
vous vous êtes réjouis,  
ils se sont réjouis,

I have rejoiced, &c.

5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.  
Je me fus réjoui,  
tu te fus réjoui,  
il se fut réjoui,  
nous nous fûmes réjouis,  
vous vous fûtes réjouis,  
ils se furent réjouis,

I had rejoiced, &c.

6. PLUPERFECT.  
Je m'étais réjoui,  
tu t'étais réjoui,  
il s'était réjoui,  
nous nous étions réjouis,  
vous vous étiez réjouis,  
ils s'étaient réjouis,

I had been rejoicing, &c.

7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.  
Je me réjouirai,  
tu te réjouiras,  
il se réjouira,  
nous nous réjouirons,  
vous vous réjouirez,  
ils se réjouiront,

I shall rejoice, &c.

8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.  
Je me serai réjoui,  
tu te seras réjoui,  
il se sera réjoui,  
nous nous serons réjouis,  
vous vous serez réjouis,  
ils se seront réjouis,

I shall have rejoiced, &c.

## CONDITIONAL.

1. PRESENT.  
Je me réjouirais,  
tu te réjouirais,  
il se réjouirait,  
nous nous réjouirions,  
vous vous réjouiriez,  
ils se réjouiraient,

I should rejoice, &c.

2. PAST.  
Je me serais réjoui,  
tu te serais réjoui,  
il se serait réjoui,  
nous nous serions réjouis,  
vous vous seriez réjouis,  
ils se seraient réjouis,

I should have rejoiced, &c.

## IMPERATIVE.

Réjouis-toi,	.	.	Rejoice (thou).
qu'il se réjouisse,	.	.	let him rejoice.
réjouissons-nous,	.	.	let us rejoice.
réjouissez-vous,	.	.	rejoice (you).
qu'ils se réjouissent,	.	.	let them rejoice.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je me réjouisse,  
que tu te réjouisses,  
qu'il se réjouisse,  
que nous nous réjouissions,  
que vous vous réjouissiez,  
qu'ils se réjouissent,

(That I may)  
rejoice,  
etc.

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je me réjouisse,  
que tu te réjouisses,  
qu'il se réjouît,  
que nous nous réjouissions,  
que vous vous réjouissiez,  
qu'ils se réjouissent,

(That I might)  
rejoice,  
etc.

## 3. PRETERITE.

Que je me sois réjoui,  
que tu te sois réjoui,  
qu'il se soit réjoui,  
que nous nous soyons réjouis,  
que vous vous soyez réjouis,  
qu'ils se soient réjouis,

(That I may)  
have rejoiced.

## 4. PLUPERFECT.†

Que je me fusse réjoui,  
que tu te fusses réjoui,  
qu'il se fût réjoui,  
que nous nous fussions réjouis,  
que vous vous fussiez réjouis,  
qu'ils se fussent réjouis,

(That I might)  
have rejoiced.

† By omitting *que*, this tense is also used for the Past Conditional.

## 177. Conjugate in the same manner:—

S'abonner, to subscribe.  
s'accorder, to agree.  
s'adresser, to apply.  
se baigner, to bathe.  
se dépêcher, to make haste.  
s'enrichir, to grow rich.  
s'établir, to settle, &c.

se chérir, to cherish one another.  
s'apercevoir, to become aware.  
s'attendre, to expect.  
s'entendre, to be agreed, &c.  
se répondre, to answer each other.  
se saluer, to bow to one another.  
se tromper, to be mistaken, &c.

## EXERCISE LXVI.

INDIC. PRES.—That woman nurses herself too much.—

s'écouter trop.

You wonder at that.—We take a walk (every day).

s'étonner de 109 se promener tous les jours.

IMPERF.—I was riding (on horseback).—We were

se promener à cheval.

fatiguing ourselves (to no purpose).—You were amusing

se fatiguer inutilement s'amuser

yourself in the garden.—They quarrelled with everybody.

dans se disputer tout le monde.

PRET. DEF.—I presented myself to the assembly.—He

se présenter assemblée f.

lost himself in the crowd.—She laughed at his advice.—

se perdre foule f. se moquer de avis m.

We applied to the prime minister.—You perceived

s'adresser premier ministre. s'apercevoir de

the snare.—They met several times in the street.

piège m. se rencontrer 90 fois rue f.

MISCELLANEOUS.—She has given herself much trouble.—  
176 *donner s' beaucoup de peine.*

I will bathe.—She will not (get up).—We cannot  
152 (1) *veut 153 se lever pouvons 153*  
agree.—You cannot (bear each other).  
*nous accorder pouvez 153 vous souffrir*

## EXERCISE LXVII.

PRET. INDEF.—I have exposed myself.—He has amused  
*s'exposer s'amuser*  
himself.—She has revenged herself.—You stopped too  
*se venger m. pl. s'arrêter trop*  
long.—My brothers have noticed the alteration.  
*longtemps s'apercevoir de changement m.*

PLUPERF.—I had fallen asleep.—They had grown rich  
*s'endormir s'enrichir*  
at your expense.—He had got up at four o'clock.  
*dépens pl. se lever heures.*

FUT. ABS.—I shall bathe to-morrow.—You will  
*se baigner demain.*  
catch cold.—I shall warm myself.—He will grow bold.—  
*s'enrhumer se chauffer s'enhardir*  
They will defend themselves well.—They will fly away.  
*se défendre s'envoler*

IMPERA.—Let us rest under the shade of this  
*se reposer à ombre f.*  
tree.—Rise from there, that is not your place.  
*arbre m. se lever là ce —f.*

MISCELLANEOUS.—I must make haste to (get up).—That  
*Il faut que je sub-1 de me lever 84*  
poor lady has hurt herself.—My brothers have subscribed  
*pauvre 175 (a) blesser s' 175 (c)*  
to that newspaper.—John and Louise had noticed all  
*84 journal m. Jean Louise s'apercevoir ind-6 de tout*  
those things.  
*84 chose f.*

# 178. NEGATIVE CONJUGATION OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

## INFINITIVE.

### 1. PRESENT.

Ne pas s'apercevoir, { not to notice, not to perceive, not to become aware.

### 2. PAST.

Ne pas s'être aperçu } not to have or aperçue, f. } noticed.

### 3. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Ne s'apercevant pas, } not noticing.

### 4. PAST PARTICIPLE.

Ne s'étant pas aperçu } not having or aperçue, f. } noticed.

## INDICATIVE.

### 1. PRESENT.

Je ne m'aperçois pas,  
tu ne t'aperçois pas,  
il ne s'aperçoit pas,  
nous ne nous apercevons pas,  
vous ne vous apercevez pas,  
ils ne s'aperçoivent pas,

(I do not notice, &c.)

### 2. IMPERFECT.

Je ne m'apercevais pas,  
tu ne t'apercevais pas,  
il ne s'apercevait pas,  
nous ne nous apercevions pas,  
vous ne vous aperceviez pas,  
ils ne s'apercevaient pas,

(I was not noticing, &c.)

### 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Je ne m'aperçus pas,  
tu ne t'aperçus pas,  
il ne s'aperçut pas,  
nous ne nous aperçûmes pas,  
vous ne vous aperçûtes pas,  
ils ne s'aperçurent pas,

(I did not notice, &c.)

### 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Je ne nie suis pas aperçu,  
tu ne t'es pas aperçu,  
il ne s'est pas aperçu, [çus,  
nous ne nous sommes pas aper-  
vous ne vous êtes pas aperçus,  
ils ne sont pas aperçus,

(I have not noticed, &c.)

### 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je ne me fus pas aperçu,  
tu ne te fus pas aperçu,  
il ne se fut pas aperçu,  
nous ne nous fûmes pas aperçus,  
vous ne vous fûtes pas aperçus,  
ils ne se furent pas aperçus,

(I had not noticed, &c.)

### 6. PLUPERFECT.

Je ne m'étais pas aperçu,  
tu ne t'étais pas aperçu,  
il ne s'était pas aperçu,  
nous ne nous étions pas aperçus,  
vous ne vous étiez pas aperçus,  
ils ne s'étaient pas aperçus,

(I had not noticed, &c.)

### 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je ne m'apercevrai pas,  
tu ne t'apercevras pas,  
il ne s'apercevra pas,  
nous ne nous apercevrons pas,  
vous ne vous apercevrez pas,  
ils ne s'apercevront pas,

(I shall not notice, &c.)

### 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je ne me serai pas aperçu,  
tu ne te seras pas aperçu,  
il ne se sera pas aperçu, [çus,  
nous ne nous serons pas aper-  
vous ne vous serez pas aperçus,  
ils ne se seront pas aperçus,

(I shall not have noticed.)

## CONDITIONAL.

### 1. PRESENT.

Je ne m'apercevrais pas,  
tu ne t'apercevrais pas,  
il ne s'apercevrait pas,  
nous ne nous apercevriions pas,  
vous ne vous apercevriez pas,  
ils ne s'apercevraient pas,

(I should not notice, &c.)

### 2. PAST.

Je ne me serais pas aperçu,  
tu ne te serais pas aperçu,  
il ne se serait pas aperçu, [çus,  
nous ne nous serions pas aper-  
vous ne vous seriez pas aperçus,  
ils ne se seraient pas aperçus,

(I should not have noticed.)

## IMPERATIVE.

Ne t'aperçois pas,	. . .	Do not notice.
qu'il ne s'aperçoive pas,	. . .	let him not notice.
ne nous apercevons pas,	. . .	let us not notice.
ne vous apercevez pas,	. . .	do not notice.
qu'ils ne s'aperçoivent pas,	. . .	let them not notice.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

*That I may not notice, &c.*  
 Que je ne m'aperçoive pas.  
 que tu ne t'aperçoives pas.  
 qu'il ne s'aperçoive pas.  
 que nous ne nous apercevions pas.  
 que vous ne vous aperceviez pas.  
 qu'ils ne s'aperçoivent pas.

## 2. IMPERFECT.

*That I might not notice, &c.*  
 Que je ne m'aperçusse pas.  
 que tu ne t'aperçusses pas.  
 qu'il ne s'aperçût pas.  
 que nous ne nous aperçussions pas.  
 que vous ne vous aperçussiez pas.  
 qu'ils ne s'aperçussent pas.

## 3. PRETERITE.

*That I may not have noticed, &c.*  
 Que je ne me sois pas aperçu.  
 que tu ne te sois pas aperçu.  
 qu'il ne se soit pas aperçu.  
 que nous ne nous soyons pas aperçus.  
 que vous ne vous soyez pas aperçus.  
 qu'ils ne se soient pas aperçus.

## 4. PLUPERFECT.

*That I might not have noticed, &c.*  
 Que je ne me fusse pas aperçu.  
 que tu ne te fusses pas aperçu.  
 qu'il ne se fût pas aperçu.  
 que nous ne nous fussions pas aperçus.  
 que vous ne vous fussiez pas aperçus.  
 qu'ils ne se fussent pas aperçus.

## EXERCISE LXVIII. (FIRST PART.)

N.B.—*The Tenses will now be used promiscuously.*

I do not flatter myself.—Martha does not dress herself  
*se flatter* *Marthe* *s'habiller*  
 well.—Not to rest if one has not fulfilled one's task.—  
*bien* *se reposer si* 119 *ne s'acquitter de sa tâche*  
 We do not intend to travel this year.—You never  
*se proposer de voyager* *année f.*  
 make haste.—Your sister and mine have not  
*se dépêcher* *sœur*  
 (spoken to one another).—Luke and Frances have not  
*se parler* 175 (b) *Luc* *Françoise*  
 caught cold.—They would not have exposed themselves  
*s'enrhumer* 175 (c) m. *s'exposer* 175 (a)  
 so rashly.—We never rise before seven o'clock in.  
*si témérairement* *se lever avant* *heures*  
 winter.—Those two children cannot help teasing  
*hiver* *enfant ne peuvent s'empêcher de se taquiner*  
 each other.—Mary has not subscribed to this review.—  
*l'un l'autre* *Marie* *s'abonner* 175 (c) *à* *revue f.*  
 My uncles will not take notice of it.—They never notice  
*oncle* *s'apercevoir* 116 m. *s'apercevoir*

anything.—We cannot help admiring them.  
*de rien ne pouvons nous empêcher de <sup>2</sup>admirer <sup>1</sup>103*  
 —They have (taken the wrong) path.—They suffer from  
*f. 175 (c) se tromper de sentier m. souffrent de*  
 cold for (not having provided themselves) with  
*art. froid m. pour 175 (a) se munir 178 inf-2 de art.*  
 necessary raiment.  
<sup>2</sup>*nécessaire <sup>1</sup>vêtement pl.*

## 179. PRONOMINAL VERBS, INTERROGATIVELY.

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Me coupé-je? *or,*  
 Est-ce que je me coupe?  
 te coupes-tu?  
 se coupe-t-il?  
 nous coupons-nous?  
 vous coupez-vous?  
 se coupent-ils?

—Do I cut  
 myself?  
 —Was I cutting  
 myself?  
 —Did I cut  
 myself?  
 —Have I cut  
 myself?

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Me fus-je coupé?  
 te fus-tu coupé?  
 se fut-il coupé?  
 nous fâmes-nous coupés?  
 vous fîtes-vous coupés?  
 se furent-ils coupés?

—Had I cut  
 myself?  
 —Had I cut  
 myself?  
 —Shall I cut  
 myself?

## 2. IMPERFECT

Me coupais-je?  
 te coupais-tu?  
 se coupait-il?  
 nous coupions-nous?  
 vous coupiez-vous?  
 se coupaient-ils?

—Was I cutting  
 myself?  
 —Did I cut  
 myself?  
 —Have I cut  
 myself?

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

M'étais-je coupé?  
 t'étais-tu coupé?  
 s'était-il coupé?  
 nous étions-nous coupés?  
 vous étiez-vous coupés?  
 s'étaient-ils coupés?

—Had I cut  
 myself?  
 —Shall I cut  
 myself?

## 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Me coupai-je?  
 te coupas-tu?  
 se coupa-t-il?  
 nous coupâmes-nous?  
 vous coupâtes-vous?  
 se coupèrent-ils?

—Did I cut  
 myself?  
 —Have I cut  
 myself?

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Me couperai-je?  
 te couperas-tu?  
 se coupera-t-il?  
 nous couperons-nous?  
 vous couperez-vous?  
 se couperont-ils?

—Shall I cut  
 myself?  
 —Shall I have  
 cut myself?

## 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Me suis-je coupé?  
 t'es-tu coupé?  
 s'est-il coupé?  
 nous sommes-nous coupés?  
 vous êtes-vous coupés?  
 se sont-ils coupés?

—Have I cut  
 myself?  
 —Shall I have  
 cut myself?

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Me serai-je coupé?  
 te seras-tu coupé?  
 se sera-t-il coupé?  
 nous serons-nous coupés?  
 vous serez-vous coupés?  
 se seront-ils coupés?

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Me couperais-je?  
 te couperais-tu?  
 se couperait-il?  
 nous couperions-nous?  
 vous couperiez-vous?  
 se couperaient-ils?

—Should I cut  
 myself?  
 —Should I have  
 cut myself?

## 2. PAST.

Me serais-je coupé?  
 te serais-tu coupé?  
 se serait-il coupé?  
 nous serions-nous coupés?  
 vous seriez-vous coupés?  
 se seraient-ils coupés?

—Should I have  
 cut myself?



## EXERCISE LXVIII. (SECOND PART.)

Is Peter washing himself? — Why do you hide  
*Pierre se laver Pourquoi se cacher*  
 yourself? — Are your brothers and sisters enjoying  
*frère sœur s'amuser*  
 themselves? — Was Henry rejoicing at his good fortune? —  
*Henri se réjouir de — f.*  
 Are the ladies expecting this news? — Had you  
*dame s'attendre à nouvelle f. m. pl.*  
 endeavoured to perfect yourselves in this art? —  
*s'efforcer ind. 6 de vous perfectionner dans — m.*  
 Have we mistaken the date? — Have they agreed upon  
 175 (c) *se tromper de \* — f. f. s'entendre sur*  
 the course (to be followed)? — Will they prove worthy  
*marche f. à suivre m. 1<sup>se</sup> 3<sup>montrer digne</sup>*  
 (of it)? — Is that conceivable? — Are these oranges  
*2<sup>en</sup> 161 (4) se concevoir — f.*  
 getting spoiled? — Is this passage (to be found) in the  
*se gâter — m. se trouver ind-1*  
 same author? — Has this house been built quickly?  
*auteur maison f. se bâtir 175 (a) vite*

## 180. PRONOMINAL VERBS USED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Ne me flatté-je pas?  
*Do I not flatter myself?*  
 ne te flattes-tu pas? &c.  
*dost thou not flatter thyself? &c.*

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Ne me flattais-je pas? &c.  
*Was I not flattering myself? &c.*

## 3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.

Ne me flattai-je pas? &c.  
*Did I not flatter myself? &c.*

## 4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.

Ne me suis-je pas flatté?  
*Have I not flattered myself?*  
 ne t'es-tu pas flatté? &c.  
*hast thou not flattered thyself? &c.*

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Ne me fus-je pas flatté? &c.  
*Had I not flattered myself? &c.*

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

Ne m'étais-je pas flatté? &c.  
*Had I not flattered myself? &c.*

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Ne me flatterai-je pas? &c.  
*Shall I not flatter myself? &c.*

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Ne me serai-je pas flatté? &c.  
*Shall I not have flattered myself? &c.*

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Ne me flatterais-je pas? &c.  
*Should I not flatter myself? &c.*

## 2. PAST.

Ne me serais-je pas flatté? &c.  
*Should I not have flattered myself? &c.*

## EXERCISE LXVIII. (THIRD PART.)

Am I not mistaken? exclaimed the old man.—  
*se tromper* ind-1 *s'écrier* ind-3 *vieillard*

Why should not our troops have (taken possession)  
*Pourquoi* *troupe* f. pl. *s'emparer* 175 (c)

of that redoubt?—Are not these words (to be found)  
*redoute* f. *mot* m. *se trouver* ind-1

in your dictionary?—Will not Lucy have yielded to their  
*dictionnaire* m. *Lucie* *se rendre*

entreaties?—Did not Helena fancy that we  
*prière* f. pl. *Hélène* *s'imaginer* ind-2 *que*

meant to stop longer?—Would not our sisters  
*se proposer de s'arrêter plus longtemps* *sœur*

have rejoiced at our good fortune?—Did we never  
*se réjouir de* *fortune* f. m.

(take alarm) without foundation?—Will not your  
*s'alarmer* ind-4 *sans* *fondement*

parents (grow impatient)?—Had not Amelia (lost her way)  
 — m. *s'impacienter* *Amélie* *se perdre* 174 (a)

in the mountain?—Does not her brother often go to  
*montagne* f. *frère* *souvent* *se rendre*

London?—Is not our alphabet composed of twenty-five  
*Londres* — m. *se composer* 537 (b)

letters?—Do not those doors shut easily?—Have not  
*lettre* *porte* f. *se fermer* *facilement*

their gardens (improved in beauty) since (last year)?  
*jardin* m. *s'embellir* 175 (a) *depuis l'année dernière*

## 181. CASES IN WHICH AVOIR IS USED INSTEAD OF ÊTRE.

The French make use of *avoir* with a *substantive* in a few cases where the English use *to be* (*être*) with an *adjective* (see No. 403); as in—

J'ai faim,	{ I am hun- gry.	Elle a soif,	{ she is thirsty.	ils ont envie,	{ they are in- clined.
tu as tort,	{ thou art wrong.	nous avons peur,	{ we are afraid.	elles ont honte,	{ they are a- shamed.
il a raison,	{ he is right.	vous avez sommeil,	{ you are sleepy.	j'ai froid,	{ I am cold, &c.

Quel âge a-t-il? How old is he?—Il a quatorze ans. He is fourteen years old.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISE.

Are you cold? No; I am warm. — Do not be afraid of  
*froid non chaud peur*  
 my dog. — *Pauline* is wrong to come so late. — Am I right  
 82 *chien m. tort de venir tard raison*  
 to blame her? — Are the children hungry? No; they are  
*de blâmer 103 enfant m. faim m.*  
 thirsty. — We are inclined to go to the concert this evening. —  
*soif envie d'aller — m. 84 soir m.*  
 You will be cold (coming out). — Is your little sister sleepy?  
*en sortant petit sœur f. sommeil*  
 Yes; but she is ashamed (to own it). — How old are your  
*Oui; mais honte d'en convenir Quel âge*  
 brothers? Edward is ten years old, and George is two years  
*frères Édouard ans \* Georges*  
 younger.  
*de moins*

## § V. OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

182. (a) These verbs are so called because they can never have a noun as their subject, and therefore, although in each tense they assume a form which is the same as the third person singular of other verbs, they do not refer to any of the *three persons*, and are, for this reason, called *impersonal*.

(b) *Impersonal* verbs take the inflections of the third person singular of the conjugation to which they belong, and whether conjugated with *avoir* or *être*, their past participle is invariable. The following are among those most in use:—

<i>Pleuvoir</i> (183) to rain.	<i>venir</i> (248) to happen.	<i>sembler</i> (145) to seem.
<i>neiger</i> (189) to snow.	<i>advenir</i> (248) to suit.	<i>s'ensuivre</i> (329) to follow.
<i>grêler</i> (145) to hail.	<i>convenir</i> (248) to be of in-	<i>seoir</i> (299) to become.
<i>tonner</i> (145) to thunder.	<i>falloir</i> (187) to be neces-	<i>s'agir de</i> (184) to be at
<i>éclairer</i> (145) to lighten.	sary, &c.	stake.
<i>geler</i> (202) to freeze.	<i>importer</i> (145) to be of in-	there...
<i>dégeler</i> (202) to thaw.	portance.	<i>y avoir</i> (186) to be,
<i>arriver</i> (145) to happen.	<i>paraître</i> (289) to appear.	&c.

*Il pleut*, it rains; *il neige*, it snows; *il grêle*, it hails; *il tonne*, it thunders; *il éclaire*, it lightens; *il gèle*, it freezes; *il dégèle*, it thaws; *il arrive*, it happens; *il convient*, it suits; *il faut*, it is necessary; *il importe*, it matters; *il paraît*, it appears; *il semble*, it seems; *il s'ensuit*, it follows; *il sied*, it becomes; *il y a*, there is, there are; *il s'agit de*, the question is; *il vient* or *advient*, it happens, &c.


183. CONJUGATION OF *PLEUVOIR*, TO RAIN.

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	<i>pleuvant,</i>	<i>raining.</i>	<i>Past. Part.</i>	<i>plu, rained.</i>
<i>IND. Pres.</i>	<i>il pleut,</i>	<i>it rains.</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	<i>il a plu.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>il pleuvait,</i>	<i>it was raining.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>il avait plu.</i>
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	<i>il plut,</i>	<i>it rained.</i>	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	<i>il eut plu.</i>
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	<i>il pleuvra,</i>	<i>it will rain.</i>	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	<i>il aura plu.</i>
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	<i>il pleuvrait,</i>	<i>it would rain.</i>	<i>Past,</i>	<i>il aurait plu.</i>
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>				
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i>	<i>qu'il pleuve,</i>	<i>that it may rain.</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>qu'il ait plu.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>qu'il plût,</i>	<i>that it might rain.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>qu'il eût plu.</i>

184. CONJUGATION OF *IL S'AGIT*, THE MATTER

IS ; THE QUESTION IS ; SOMEBODY IS CONCERNED :  
SOMETHING IS AT STAKE ; &c. &c.†

<i>IND. Pres.</i>	<i>il s'agit,</i>	<i>the matter is.</i>	<i>Pret. Indef.</i>	<i>il s'est agi.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>il s'agissait,</i>	<i>the question was.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>il s'était agi.</i>
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	<i>il s'agit,</i>	<i>it was the time to.</i>	<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	<i>il se fut agi.</i>
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	<i>il s'agira,</i>	<i>{ the question will be. }</i>	<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	<i>il se sera agi.</i>
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	<i>il s'agirait,</i>	<i>{ the question would be. }</i>	<i>Past,</i>	<i>il se serait agi.</i>
		<i>{ No Imperative. }</i>		
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i>	<i>qu'il s'agisse,</i>	<i>{ that the ques- tion may be. }</i>	<i>Pret.</i>	<i>qu'il se soit agi.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>qu'il s'agît,</i>	<i>{ that the ques- tion might be. }</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>qu'il se fût agi.</i>

185.  *Il s'agit* generally takes *de*. Ex. : *Il s'agit de vous* (You are concerned) ; *de quoi s'agit-il ?* (What is the matter ?)

186. (a) CONJUGATION OF *Y AVOIR*,

THERE . . . TO BE.

INFINITIVE PAST, *y avoir eu, there . . . to have been.*

<i>IND. Pres.</i>	<i>il y a,</i>	<i>there is, or there are.</i>
<i>Pret Indef.</i>	<i>il y a eu,</i>	<i>there has been, or there have been.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>il y avait,</i>	<i>there was, or there were.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>il y avait eu,</i>	<i>there had been.</i>
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	<i>il y eut,</i>	<i>there was, or there were.</i>
<i>Pret. Ant.</i>	<i>il y eut eu,</i>	<i>there had been.</i>
<i>Fut. Abs.</i>	<i>il y aura,</i>	<i>there will be.</i>
<i>Fut. Ant.</i>	<i>il y aura eu,</i>	<i>there will have been.</i>
<i>COND. Pres.</i>	<i>il y aurait,</i>	<i>there would be.</i>
<i>Past,</i>	<i>il y aurait eu,</i>	<i>there would have been.</i>
<i>(No Imperative.)</i>		
<i>SUBJ. Pres.</i>	<i>qu'il y ait,</i>	<i>that there may be.</i>
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>qu'il y ait eu,</i>	<i>that there may have been.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>qu'il y eût,</i>	<i>that there might be.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>qu'il y eût eu,</i>	<i>that there might have been.</i>

† The context of the sentence will, in most cases, show the meaning of this verb.

(b) *Y AVOIR*, CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY.

IND. Pres.	il n'y a pas,	there is not, there are not.
Pret. Indef.	il n'y a pas eu,	there has not been, there have not been.
Imperf.	il n'y avait pas,	there was not, there were not.
Pluperf.	il n'y avait pas eu,	there had not been.
Pret. Def.	il n'y eut pas,	there was not, there were not.
Pret. Ant.	il n'y eut pas eu,	there had not been.
Future,	il n'y aura pas,	there will not be.
Fut. Ant.	il n'y aura pas eu,	there will not have been.
COND. Pres.	il n'y aurait pas,	there would not be.
Past,	il n'y aurait pas eu,	there would not have been.
SUBJ. Pres.	qu'il n'y ait pas,	that there may not be.
Pret.	qu'il n'y ait pas eu,	that there may not have been.
Imperf.	qu'il n'y eût pas,	that there might not be.
Pluperf.	qu'il n'y eût pas eu,	that there might not have been.

(c) *Y AVOIR*, CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY.

IND. Pres.	y a-t-il ?	is there ? are there ?
Pret. Ind.	y a-t-il eu ?	has there been ? have there been ?
Imperf.	y avait-il ?	was there ? were there ?
Pluperf.	y avait-il eu ?	had there been ?
Pret. Def.	y eut-il ?	was there ? were there ?
Pret. Ant.	y eut-il eu ?	had there been ?
Future,	y aura-t-il ?	will there be ?
Fut. Ant.	y aura-t-il eu ?	will there have been ?
COND. Pres.	y aurait-il ?	would there be ?
Past,	y aurait-il eu ?	would there have been ?

(d) *Y AVOIR*, INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY.

IND. Pres.	n'y a-t-il pas ?	is there not ? are there not ? [been ?
Pret. Indef.	n'y a-t-il pas eu ?	has there not been ? have there not
Imperf.	n'y avait-il pas ?	was there not ? were there not ?
Pluperf.	n'y avait-il pas eu ?	had there not been ?
Pret. Def.	n'y eut-il pas ?	was there not ? were there not ?
Pret. Ant.	n'y eut-il pas eu ?	had there not been ?
Future,	n'y aura-t-il pas ?	will there not be ?
Fut. Ant.	n'y aura-t-il pas eu ?	will there not have been ?
COND. Pres.	n'y aurait-il pas ?	would there not be ?
Past,	n'y aurait-il pas eu ?	would there not have been ?

(e) ~~Observe~~ Observe that the above verb always remains in the singular in French, although it is used in the plural in English, when followed by a substantive plural.

187. *FALLOIR*, TO BE NECESSARY.

INFINITIVE PAST, *avoir fallu*, to have been necessary.

Pres. Part.	none.	Past. Part.	fallu.
IND. Pres.	il faut, it is necessary, it must.	Pret. Indef.	il a fallu.
Imperf.	il fallait.	Pluperf.	il avait fallu.
Pret. Def.	il fallut.	Pret. Ant.	il eut fallu.
Fut. Abs.	il faudra.	Fut. Ant.	il aura fallu.
COND. Pres.	il faudrait.	Past,	il aurait fallu.

(No Imperative.)

SUBJ. Pres.	qu'il faille.	Pret.	qu'il ait fallu.
Imperf.	qu'il fallût.	Pluperf.	qu'il eût fallu.

188. Besides meaning *to be necessary*, this verb (*falloir*) has also the force of *must*. It may be followed by a verb, in the Infinitive or in a personal mood.

(a) *FALLOIR* is usually followed by an Infinitive when a general idea is to be expressed, as in : *People should not lie*, *Il ne faut pas MENTIR* ; *One must be honest*, *Il faut ÊTRE probe*.

(b) *FALLOIR* is followed by a personal mood, generally as the equivalent of *MUST*, when referring to a definite subject, and, in this case, the following verb is used in the subjunctive mood and preceded by the conjunction *que*, the subject of the French subjunctive being the subject of *must* in English. Examples :—

Il faut <i>que je vende</i> ma maison.	I must sell my house.
Il faut <i>que nous allions</i> à la douane.	We must go to the custom-house.

The sentences run in French as if they were in English : *It is necessary that I should sell my house* ; *it is necessary that we should go to the custom-house*.

(c) Another construction is to allow the second verb to remain in the infinitive, as in English ; then the personal pronoun which is the subject of the verb *must*, is to be expressed by one of the pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, placed after the impersonal pronoun *il* ; as, *Il me faut commencer mon ouvrage*, I must begin my work. But this form is seldom used.

(d) All expressions implying necessity, obligation, or want, may be rendered by *falloir* ; as,

Il lui faut un habit.—(ACAD.)	He wants a coat.
Il faut un dictionnaire à Charles.	Charles wants a dictionary.
Il faut une plume à cet enfant.	That child wants a pen.

(e) The verb *Falloir* is also used to express *lack, absence*, and has this meaning in such idiomatic sentences as the following :

Il s'en faut de beaucoup que la somme y soit.	It is very far from the sum wanted.
Peu s'en fallut qu'on ne m'abandonnât.	They were very near abandoning me.

(f) *Ne* must be put before the verb of the following clause when *s'en falloir* is used negatively or accompanied by some expression having the force of a negative, as in the last-given example.

(g) When *Falloir* is employed to express *absence, lack*, it is conjugated pronominally with the two pronouns *se* and *en* (*s'en*) placed between *il* and the verb ; thus :—

*S'EN FALLOIR*, TO BE FAR FROM, &c.

INFINITIVE PAST, *s'en être fallu*, *to have been far from, much wanting, &c.*

Comp. Part., *s'en étant fallu*, *much having been wanted, &c.*

IND. Pres. il s'en faut.	Pret. Indef. il s'en est fallu.
Imperf. il s'en fallait.	Pluperf. il s'en était fallu.
Pret. Def. il s'en fallut.	Pret. Ant. il s'en fut fallu.
Future, il s'en faudra.	Fut. Ant. il s'en sera fallu.
COND. Pres. il s'en faudrait.	COND. Past. il s'en serait fallu.

S'en faut-il de beaucoup ?	Is there much wanting ?
Ne s'en faut-il guère ?	Is there not much wanting ?
Ne s'en était-il pas fallu de bien peu que je ne réussisse ?	Was I not very near succeeding ?



(Should we not) love virtue?—Must not children  
 188 (a) ind-1 aimer art. vertu f. 188 (b) que art.  
 honour their parents?—It (scarcely ever) hails in this  
 honorer subj-1 — ne (153) guère gréler  
 country.—There arrived some persons whom we did not  
 pays Il ind-3 personne que  
 expect. — It appears that you (have not attended) to  
 attendre ind-2 ne vous êtes pas occupé de  
 that business.—It is not becoming in you to contradict your  
 affaire f. \* de contredire  
 father.—There are crocodiles in the Nile and in some  
 32 — Nil m. quelques  
 other rivers.—What has happened?  
 fleuve advenir 248

## EXERCISE LXXII.

Is there any one here?—There is nobody.—Were there any  
 quelqu'un 124  
 cavalry at the review?—There would be more happiness  
 cavalerie f. revue f. plus de bonheur  
 in this world if every one knew how to moderate  
 en monde m. chacun savait \* \* modérer  
 his desires.—(The question is) to know who is to succeed  
 désir Il s'agit 185 de savoir 114 152 (5) <sup>2</sup>succéder  
 him. — Your fortune (was at stake). — Now  
<sup>1</sup>lui 102 \* <sup>3</sup>— f. <sup>1</sup>Il s'agir ind-2 <sup>2</sup>maintenant  
 (is the time) to study. — What is the question? —  
<sup>1</sup>Il s'agir ind-1 d' étudier De quoi s'agir ind-1  
 Who is concerned? — I am concerned. — He was  
 De qui 185 ind-1 185 ind-1 de moi <sup>2</sup>qu'ne subj-2  
 (little better than) a ruined man. — I wish  
<sup>1</sup>ne s'en falloir guère ind-2 \* ruiné \* voudrais  
 that there were more order in his conduct.—It is not necessary  
 subj-2 d' conduite f.  
 to be a conjurer to guess his motives.—One day it  
 \* sorcier pour deviner motif un jour  
 happened that somebody asked Diogenes at what hour  
 advenir ind-3 que 121 ind-3 à Diogène  
 people should dine: If one is rich, replied he, when  
 il falloir ind-2 l'on répondre quand  
 one likes; if one is poor, when one can.  
 on veut peut.



There are verbs in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations which, without being actually *irregular*, present, in their root or in their termination (on account of some rule of pronunciation, of their meaning, or of their etymology), either some slight deviation from the general rules of their conjugation, or have, from the fact of their being strictly *regular*, some peculiarity of spelling, as the following rules and examples will show and explain.

## § I. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

### HAVING SOME PECULIARITIES IN THEIR SPELLING

Comprise those ending in *ger*, *éer*, *cer*, those having *e* or *é* in their penult, and those ending in *yer* or *ier*.

#### (1) OF VERBS ENDING IN GER.

189. Verbs ending in *ger* require an *e* mute after the *g*† when this consonant should be followed by one of the vowels *a* or *o*, to indicate that *g* must preserve throughout the verb the soft sound it has in the Infinitive present, as will be seen in the following verb :—

#### MANGER, TO EAT.

*Part. Pres.* mangeant, *eating.*    *INF. Past,* avoir mangé, *to have eaten.*  
*Part. Past,* ayant mangé, *having eaten.*

*IND. Pres.* nous mangeons.  
*Imp.* Je mangeais, tu mangeais, il mangeait, . . . ils mangeaient.  
*Pret.* Je mangeai, tu mangeas, il mangea, nous mangeâmes, vous mangeâtes.

*IMPER.* mangeons.

*SUBJ. Imp.* Que je mangeasse, que tu mangeasses, qu'il mangeât, que nous mangeassions, que vous mangeassiez, qu'ils mangeassent.

#### 190. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Abréger (196),	<i>to abridge.</i>	engager,	<i>to engage.</i>
arranger,	<i>to arrange.</i>	gager,	<i>to bet.</i>
bouger,	<i>to stir.</i>	juger,	<i>to judge.</i>
corriger,	<i>to correct.</i>	négliger,	<i>to neglect.</i>
déranger,	<i>to disorder.</i>	partager,	<i>to divide, to share.</i>
diriger,	<i>to direct.</i>	songer,	<i>to think.</i>
encourager,	<i>to encourage.</i>	venger,	<i>to revenge, &amp;c.</i>

† The slight irregularity found in these verbs is the result of *g* having two sounds—i.e., hard before *a*, *o*, *u* (as *g* in *go*), and soft before *e*, *i*, *y* (as *s* in *pleasure*). When *g* is to be sounded soft before *a*, *o*, *u*, the vowel *e* is inserted between them, as in *geat*, *gougeon*, *gageure*. When it is to be sounded hard before *e*, *i*, *y*, the vowel *u* is inserted, as in *guerre*, *guitare*, *Saint-Guy*.

## EXERCISE LXXIII.

The eye judges of colours; the ear judges of  
*œil m.* art. *couleur f.* *oreille f.*  
 sounds.—Where do you direct your steps?—He disturbed  
 art. *son m.* *pas m.* *déranger*  
 everybody.—The example of the general encouraged the  
*tout le monde* *exemple m.*  
 army.—Have you corrected your exercise?—I would wager  
*armée f.* *thème m.* *gager*  
 a hundred francs (that it is not so.)—Abridge your speech.—  
 \* — *m. que cela n'est pas.* *discours m.*  
 Don't stir.—We protect the widow and the orphan.  
*protéger* *veuve* *orphelin*

(2) OF VERBS ENDING IN *ÊER*.

191. Verbs in *êer* being perfectly regular, and their root ending with *ê*, two *e*'s come together in all the tenses and persons in which the ending begins with *e*, and, therefore, in the feminine form of the Past Participle there are three *e*'s together, as will be seen in the following verb:—

*AGREER*, TO ACCEPT, TO PLEASE.

*Part. Pres.* agréant. *INF. Past.* avoir agréé.

*Part. Past.* agréé, agréée (f).

*IND. Pres.*, J'agréé, tu agréés, il agréé, nous agréons, vous agréés, ils agréent.—*Fut.*, j'agréerai, &c.—*COND.*, j'agréerais, &c.—*IMPER.*, agréé, &c.—*SUBJ. Pres.*, que j'agréé, que tu agréés, &c.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

*créer*, to create.  
*gréer*, to rig.

*récréer*, to divert, to amuse.  
*suppléer*, to supply, &c.

192. REMARK.—In the future and conditional of verbs in *êer*, poets usually suppress the second *e*:—

Votre cœur d'Ardaric *agrèrait*-il la flamme?—(CORNEILLE.)

Nos hôtes *agrèront* les soins qui leur sont dus.—(LA FONTAINE.)

In prose, that suppression would be an error.

(3) OF VERBS ENDING IN *CER*.

193. In verbs in *cer*, a cedilla is put under *c*, whenever it is followed by *a* or *o*, to point out that *c* must preserve

throughout the verb the soft sound it has in the Present Infinitive (*see* Rule 18, and footnote, p. 84), as shown in the following model :—

### AVANCER, TO ADVANCE.

	<i>Part. Pres. avançant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, avancé.</i>
IND. Pres.	nous avançons.	
Imp.	J'avancais, tu avançais, il avançait ; ils avançaient.	
Pret.	J'avançai, tu avanças, il avança ; nous avançâmes, vous avançâtes.	
IMPER.	avançons.	
SUBJ. Imp.	Que j'avançasse, tu avançasses, il avançât ;	
	et nous avançassions, vous avançassiez, ils avançassent.	

194. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Amorcer,	<i>to bait.</i>	énoncer,	<i>to express, utter.</i>
annoncer,	<i>to announce.</i>	percer,	<i>to pierce.</i>
bercer,	<i>to rock.</i>	pincer,	<i>to pinch.</i>
commencer,	<i>to begin.</i>	rinser,	<i>to rinse, wash.</i>
devancer,	<i>to outrun.</i>	sucer,	<i>to suck.</i>
enfoncer,	<i>to sink, break in.</i>	&c.	&c.

### EXERCISE LXXIV.

We have amused ourselves. — Poets have created  
 m. pl. 175 *récréer* ind-4 art. *poète* art.  
 heroes and demigods. — His proposal was accepted. —  
*héros, h asp. 31 demi-dieu 36 proposition f. agréer* ind-3  
 I shall make up the rest. — He announced that news to all  
*suppléer reste m. nouvelle f.*  
 his friends. — It was beginning to rain when we (set out). —  
*à quand partir* ind-4 172.  
 Rinse these glasses. — The poor widow was rocking her  
*Rincer verre m. veuve 194 68 (b)*  
 youngest child. — Let us pierce holes through the  
*jeune 32 trou m. à travers*  
 lid of this box. — They amuse themselves by  
*couvercle m. boîte f. m. 191 en*  
 driving nails into the wall. — Let us replace this  
*enfoncer* inf-3 32 *clou dans mur m. remplacer*  
 sentence by another. — The two ships that were  
*phrase f. par une autre navire m. qu'on a*  
 launched yesterday were splendidly rigged.  
*lancer m. pl. hier ind-2 magnifiquement gréer* inf-4

#### (4) OF VERBS WITH *E* MUTE IN THEIR PENULT.

195. In verbs which have *e* mute in their penultimate syllable, a grave accent† is put over it when the consonant that follows precedes *e*, *es*, or *ent*, as shown below :—

##### *SEMER*, TO SOW.

*Part. Pres.* semant, sowing. *INF. Past*, avoir semé, to have sown.

*IND. Pres.* Je sème, tu sèmes, il sème, ils sèment.

*Future.* Je sèmerai, tu sèmeras, il sèmera, nous sèmerons, vous sèmerez, ils sèmeront.

*COND.* Je sèmerais, tu sèmerais, il sèmerait, nous sèmerions, vous sèmeriez, ils sèmeraient.

*SUB. Pres.* Que je sème, que tu sèmes, qu'il sème, . . . qu'ils sèment.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Achever, to finish.	enlever, { to carry	peser, to weigh.
amener, to bring.	away.	sevrer, to wean.
élever, to elevate.	lever, to lift up.	soulever, to raise.
emmener, { to lead	mener, to lead.	surmener, { to override,
away.	parsemer, to strew.	etc., etc.

#### (5) OF VERBS WITH *É* IN THEIR PENULT.

196. In verbs which have *é* in their penultimate syllable, the acute accent on it is changed into a grave accent† when the following consonant precedes *e*, *es*, or *ent*, except, however, in the *future* and *conditional present*, as shown in the following model :—

##### *CÉDER*, TO YIELD.

*Part. Pres.* cédant, yielding. *INF. Past*, avoir cédé, to have yielded.

*IND. Pres.* Je cède, tu cèdes, il cède, . . . ils cèdent.

*Future.* Je céderai, &c.—*COND.* je céderais, &c.

*SUBJ. Pres.* Que je cède, que tu cèdes, qu'il cède, . . . qu'ils cèdent.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Adhérer, to adhere.	interpréter, to interpret.	recéler, to conceal.
abrégér, to shorten.	lécher, to lick.	régler, to rule, settle.
alléger, to alleviate.	persévérer, to persevere.	régner, to reign.
impregnér, to impregnate.	posséder, to possess.	répéter, to repeat.
inquiéter, to disquiet.	préférer, to prefer.	révéler, to reveal.
interférer, to interfere.	protéger, to protect.	sécher, to dry.

† The principle which causes this change to be made is that in French pronunciation a final or penultimate mute syllable is never preceded by another mute syllable. This modification of the sound of *e* is indicated either by an accent (as seen in the two foregoing verbs, or else by doubling the consonant following *e*, as will be shown further on), in verbs ending in *eler*, *eter*.

197. *Mener* (to lead), and its derivatives, *amener* (to bring), and *emmener* (to lead away), when used in a literal sense, can only have for object a being *able to walk*, such as a person, or an animal; whereas *porter* (to carry), *apporter* (to bring), and *emporter* (to take away), can only have for object either a thing, or a being (person or animal) *unable to walk* for any reason whatsoever.

## EXERCISE LXXV. (FIRST PART.)

Long may the queen *reign* over us.—They *adhere* to  
<sup>1</sup>*longtemps* <sup>2</sup>*que* <sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup>*régner* *sur* m. 196

the same *opinion*. — Farmer Jarvis *is sowing* rye. —  
 89 — f. art. *fermier* — 195 32 *seigle* m.

Let them *yield* to necessity. — He must *shorten*  
 m. 196 art. *nécessité* f. 188 (b) *abrégé* 196

his lessons. — What fortune do your cousins *possess*? —  
*leçon* 93 — f. — m. 196

Bring your friend and your music. — I *get up* every  
*amener* *ami* *apporter* *musique* f. *se lever* 195 *tous les*  
 morning at seven o'clock. — Ralph *will bring* his sister  
*matin* *heures* *Raoul* *amener* 195

next time. — The pupils *will repeat* this fable by  
 art. *prochain* *fois* f. *élève* 196 — f. *par*

heart. — Does not heaven *protect* innocence? — Let  
*cœur* art. *ciel* m. *protéger* art. — f.

John *weigh* this flour. — I must *finish* my long letter. — Where  
*Jean* 195 *farine* f. *achever* 58 *lettre* f. *Où*

*are they leading* these horses? — Does not Amy *prefer* to  
 m. *mener* *cheval* *Aimée* 196 \*

remain at her grandfather's?  
*rester* *chez* *grand-père* \*

(6) OF VERBS ENDING IN *ELER*.

198. Many verbs in *eler* double the letter *l* before *e*, *es*, *ent*, as shown in the following model: †—

† For explanation of this reduplication, see footnote page 123.

**APPELER, TO CALL.**

	<i>Part. Pres. appelant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, appelé.</i>
IND. Pres.	J'appelle, tu appelles, il appelle ; ils appellent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	J'appellerai, nous appellerons.	tu appelleras, vous appellerez, ils appelleront.
COND.	J'appellerais, nous appellerions,	tu appellerais, vous appelleriez, ils appelleraient.
IMPER.	appelle,	qu'il appelle ; qu'ils appellent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Que j'appelle, que tu appelles, qu'il appelle ; qu'ils appellent.	

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Amonceler,	<i>to heap up.</i>	épeler,	<i>to spell.</i>
atteler,	<i>to put horses to.</i>	niveler,	<i>to level.</i>
chanceler,	<i>to totter, stagger.</i>	rappeler,	<i>to recall.</i>
dételer,	<i>to unyoke.</i>	renouveler, &c.	<i>to renew, &amp;c.</i>

**(7) OF VERBS ENDING IN *ETER*.**

199. Many verbs in *eter* double the letter *t* before *e*, *es*, *ent* (see footnote, page 123), as shown in the following model :—

**JETER, TO THROW.**

	<i>Part. Pres. jetant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, jeté.</i>
IND. Pres.	Je jette, tu jettes, il jette ; ils jettent.	
<i>Future.</i>	Je jetterai, nous jetterons,	tu jetteras, vous jetterez, ils jetteront.
COND.	Je jetterais, nous jetterions,	tu jetterais, vous jetteriez, ils jetteraient.
IMPER.	jette,	qu'il jette, qu'ils jettent.
SUBJ. Pres.	Que je jette, que tu jettes, qu'il jette ; qu'ils jettent.	

200. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Briquer,	<i>to lay bricks.</i>	marqueter,	<i>to inlay.</i>
catcheter,	<i>to seal.</i>	projeter,	<i>to project, to scheme.</i>
décacheter,	<i>to unseal, &amp;c.</i>	souffleter,	<i>to give a box on the ear.</i>
démoucheter,	<i>to take off the button of a foil.</i>	tacheter,	<i>to speckle, to mark with spots.</i>
feuilletter,	<i>to turn the leaves over.</i>	voleter,	<i>to flutter, &amp;c., &amp;c.</i>
haleter,	<i>to be panting.</i>		

201. Verbs in *éler* and *éter* must not be confounded with those in *eler* and *eter*. The former (such as *révéler*, *répéter*) are conjugated as explained in Rule 196.

202. The French Academy does not double the *l* in the following verbs in *eler* : *bourreler*, to goad, &c. ; *celer*, to conceal ; *déceler*, to disclose ; *dégeler*, to thaw ; *geler*, to freeze ; *harceler*, to harass ; *peler*, to peel ; nor the *t* in

*acheter*, to buy; *racheter*, to redeem, to buy again; *becqueter*, to peck; *décolleter*, to bare the neck. We must therefore follow for these verbs the model *semer* (No. 195), and put a grave accent instead of a double *l* or *t*. Examples:—*je harcèle, il dégèlera; nous achèterons, vous pèleriez, &c.*

203. There are other verbs in *eter*, for the spelling of which the Academy leaves us in doubt. We think, for instance, that the verb *colleter*, to collar, should follow Rule No. 202, although the Academy is silent on the subject. Again, the Academy says *épousseter*, to dust, is written in the future, *j'épousseterai*, without doubling the *t* or putting any accent. These difficulties may be obviated by using such verbs in the infinitive: *il me faudra épousseter, &c.*

## EXERCISE LXXV. (SECOND PART.)

The bells *call* to church. — Let her *call* them  
*cloche* f. art. *église* f.  
 (as she pleases). — He is (near falling), he *staggers*. — We  
*comme il lui plaira* *près de tomber*  
 have *renewed* acquaintance. — They must *spell* all those  
*connaissance* 188 (b) subj-1  
 words. — She is *peeling* an apple. — Why do they *turn over*  
*mot* m. 202 m. 200  
*the leaves* of their books thus? — Because they do not  
 \* 2 *ainsi* *Parce qu'*  
*remember* where they *left off*. — Anthony must  
*se rappeler* 198 *où en rester* ind-4 *Antoine* 188 (b)  
*buy* another house. — That *throws* me into a great dilemma. —  
 202 *une autre* *dans embarras* m.  
 They will *throw* themselves into the midst of the  
 m. à 29 *milieu* m.  
 enemy. — Do sparrows *peck* your cherries? — You will *dust*  
*ennemi* m. pl. *moineau* m. 202 *cerise* f. 203  
 the furniture and then *put fresh* water in these  
*meuble* m. pl. *puis vous renouveler* ind-7 *l'eau de*  
 three decanters. — Oliver is always *scheming* something,  
*carafe* f. *Olivier* 157 *toujours* *projeter* quelque chose  
 but he never *bethinks* himself of (doing) anything useful.  
*mais* 153 *s'aviser* *faire* *rien* *d'utile*

## (8) OF VERBS ENDING IN OYER, UYER.

204. In verbs ending in *oyer* and *uyer*, *y* is changed into *i* before *e*, *es*, *ent*; and although the root ends in *y*, this does not prevent the endings beginning with *i* in the 1st and 2nd person plural of the Imperfect Indicative and Present Subjunctive, as the following model will show:—

## EMPLOYER, TO EMPLOY.

	Part Pres. employant.	Part. Past. employé.
IND. Pres.	J'emploie, tu emploies, il emploie; ils emploient.	
Imp.	nous employions, vous employiez.	
Fut.	J'emploierai, tu emploieras, nous emploierons, vous emploierez,	il emploiera; ils emploieront.
COND.	J'emploierais, tu emploierais, nous emploierions, vous emploieriez,	il emploierait; ils emploieraient.
IMPER.	emploie, qu'il emploie;	qu'ils emploient.
SUBJ.	je j'emploie, tu emploies,	il emploie;
Pres.	nous employions, vous employiez,	ils emploient.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

Aboyer, to bark.	ennuyer, { to tire, to weary.	nettoyer, to clean.
appuyer, { to prop, to rest upon.	essuyer, to wipe.	noyer, to drown.
broyer, to crush.	guerroyer, to war.	déployer { to display, to unfurl.
	&c. &c.	

205. The two verbs *envoyer* and *renvoyer* (to send and to send back) deviate from the preceding model of conjugation in the Future and Conditional, making *j'enverrai*, *j'enverrais*; *je renverrai*, *je renverrais*; instead of *j'envoierai*, &c.

## (9) OF VERBS ENDING IN AYER.

206. The model given by the French Academy for verbs ending in *ayer* is the following:—

## PAYER, TO PAY.

IND. }	Je paye,	tu payes,	il paye (or il paie);
Pres. }	nous payons,	vous payez,	ils payent (or paient).
Imp.	Je payais,	tu payais,	il payait;
	nous payions,	vous payiez,	ils payaient.
Pret.	Je payai,	tu payas,	il paya;
	nous payâmes,	vous payâtes,	ils payèrent.
Fut.	Je payerai (paierai, or paîtrai);†	tu payeras (paieras, or païras);	il payera (paiera, or païra).
	nous payerons (paierons, or paîtrons);	vous paierez (païerez, or paîtrez);	ils payeront (païeront, or paîtront).

† The contracted forms *païrai*, *païras*, &c., seem to be preferred by poets: *Je vous païrai, lui dit-elle.*—(LA FONTAINE.)



COND. Je payerais (paierais, or patrais); † tu payerais (paierais, or patrais); il payerait (paierait, or patrait).  
 nous payerions (paierions, or patrions); vous payeriez (paieriez, or patriez); ils payeraient (paieraient, or patraient).

IMPER.		paye,	qu'il paye;
	payons,	payez,	qu'ils payent.
SUBJ.	je paye,	tu payes,	il paye;
Pres.	nous payions,	vous payiez,	ils payent.
Imp.	je payasse,	tu payasses,	il payât;
	nous payassions,	vous payassiez,	ils payassent.

The above model shows that for verbs in *ayer* the Academy sanctions three forms of endings for *all* persons in the FUTURE and CONDITIONAL, and two for the *third* pers. sing. and plur. of the Present INDICATIVE. All other persons and tenses preserve the *y* throughout.

To avoid mistakes in writing their exercises, the best way for English students is to preserve the *y* throughout the whole of the verbs in *ayer*.

Conjugate in the same manner:—

Balayer,	to sweep.	frayer,	{ to open (a way), to mark,
délayer,	to dilute.		{ to trace out a road.
effrayer,	to frighten.	monnayer,	to coin.
égayer,	to enliven, to cheer.	rayer,	to erase, to scratch out.
enrayer,	{ to spoke wheels; to put	relayer,	{ to relieve; to change
	the drag on, &c.		(horses).
essayer,	to try.		

### (10) OF VERBS ENDING IN *IER*.

207. Verbs in *ier* being perfectly regular, and their root ending in *i*, there are consequently two *i*'s together in every person the ending of which begins with *i*—viz., the first two persons plural of the Imperfect Indicative and of the Present Subjunctive, as in the following example:—

#### *PRIER*, TO PRAY.

Imp. IND.	nous prions,	vous priez.
Pres. SUBJ.	que nous prions,	que vous priez.

208. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Certifier,	to certify.	nier,	to deny.
crier,	to cry.	oublier,	to forget.
étudier,	to study.	plier,	to bend.
lier,	to tie.	relier,	to bind.
manier,	to handle.	remercier,	to thank.

#### EXERCISE LXXVI. (FIRST PART.)

Why are the dogs barking thus?—We used to grind our  
*Pourquoi* 161 157 *ainsi* *broyer* 204  
 coffee ourselves. — You must wipe the plates and  
*café m. nous-mêmes* 188 (b) 204 *assiette f.*

† See footnote, p. 127.

dishes. — Allow me to try (once more). — They  
 art. plat m. *Permettez que* 206 subj-1 *encore une fois* m.  
 will use all possible means. — William is cleaning his  
 employer art. <sup>2</sup> — <sup>1</sup>moyen m. pl. *Guillaume*  
 gun. — All that he buys he pays (ready money). —  
*fusil* m. *ce qu'* 202 *le* 206 *argent comptant*  
 I shall endeavour to enliven them. — That tires me to death. —  
*essayer* *de* <sup>2</sup> 206 <sup>1</sup> 204 art. *mort* f.  
 Would these scarecrows frighten the birds? — I shall send  
 39 *épouvantail* m. pl. 206 *oiseau* 205  
 a man who will sweep all that snow. — You will send us back  
*qui* 206 *neige* f.  
 our grammars, for we must study our French verbs. —  
*grammaire* f. *car* 188 (b) 207 <sup>2</sup>français <sup>1</sup>verbe m.  
 Success repays us for all our troubles.  
 art. *Succès* m. *payer* *de* *peines* f. pl.

## EXERCISE LXXVI. (SECOND PART.)

Would they send us the newspaper every morning? —  
 159 *on* <sup>2</sup>205 <sup>1</sup> *journal* m. *tous les matin*  
 Would you dismiss your servant for such a trifle? —  
*renvoyer* *domestique pour* <sup>2</sup>tel <sup>1</sup> *bagatelle* f.  
 Must I reveal their secrets? — Must you scratch out  
 188 (b) 201 — 206  
 (the whole of) this sentence? — Must we not try to  
*toute* *phrase* f. 206 *de*  
 (make our) way through those marshes? — Mary does  
*nous frayer un chemin à travers* *marais* m. 35 *Marie*  
 not always occupy her time as she ought. —  
<sup>2</sup>toujours <sup>1</sup>employer *temps* m. *comme* *le devoir* cond-1  
 You must lean on my arm. — We must beg them  
 188 (b) *s'appuyer* *bras* m. 188 (b) *prier*  
 to lend us their ladder. — Why should we not open those  
*de prêter* *échelle* f. *décacheter*  
 letters at once? — We must not forget our luggage. —  
*immédiatement* 188 (b) 208 *bagages* m. pl.  
 He is a man who would submit to all their whims.  
 C' *se ployer* *à* *caprice* m.

## § II. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION WHICH PRESENT SLIGHT IRREGULARITIES.

These are *bénir*, *fleurir*, and *haïr*.

209. (a) *BÉNIR* has two meanings—viz., *to bless*, and *to consecrate* by a religious ceremony. It is perfectly regular, but has two forms for the Past Participle—viz., a regular one, *béni*, *bénie* (blessed); and a slightly irregular one, which is obtained by adding *t* to the regular masculine form: *bénit*, *bénite* (consecrated), as in *eau bénite* (holy water), *pain bénit* (consecrated bread).

(b) *FLEURIR* has also two meanings—viz., *to blossom*, and *to be prosperous*, *to flourish*. It is perfectly regular, but has two forms—1st, in the Present Participle: *fleurissant* (blooming), and *florissant* (flourishing); 2nd, in the two third persons of the Imperfect Indicative: *il fleurissait*, *ils fleurissaient* (it was blossoming, they were blossoming), and *il florissait*, *ils florissaient* (it was flourishing, they were flourishing).

(c) *HAÏR*, *to hate*. This verb is perfectly regular; only, in the three persons singular of the Present Indicative, and in the second person singular of the Imperative (which are all pronounced as the English word *hay*), the diæresis (see Rule 17) is not used; thus: *Je hais*, *I hate*; *tu hais*, *thou hatest*; *il hait*, *he hates*; *hais*, *hate (thou)*. But in the two first persons plural of the Preterite Indicative and in the third person singular of the Imperfect Subjunctive, the diæresis is used instead of the circumflex accent found in all verbs in these persons; thus: *nous haïmes*, *we hated*; *vous haïtes*, *you hated*; *qu'il haït*, *that he might hate*.

### EXERCISE LXXVII. (FIRST PART.)

May our benefactors be *blessed*! — I *hate* falsehood. —  
*que bienfaiteur* 167 art. *mensonge m.*

Flags *consecrated* by the priest are not always  
 art. *drapeau m. pl.* *par prêtre toujours*  
*blessed* by heaven.—O my son, *hate* (thou) vice, and  
*de art. ciel m.* *fil* art. — *m.*

never *wander* from the path of uprightness.—Athens  
*s'écarter sentier m.* art. *justice f.* *Athènes*

*flourished* under Pericles. — Peace alone can make a  
 ind-2 *sous Périclès art. paix f. seul peut rendre*

country *prosperous*. — Most of your rose-trees were  
*pays m. fleurir inf-3 La plupart de rosier m.*  
 already *blossoming*.—There is nothing that an upright man  
<sup>2</sup>*déjà* <sup>1</sup>*ind-2* *y avoir 153 qu' 2de bien 1*  
*hates so much as flattery*. — Those shrubs, by  
*subj-1 autant que art. flatterie f. arbuste m. en*  
*blooming too early, have suffered from the frost.*  
*inf-3 trop tôt souffert gelée f.*

### § III. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION WHICH PRESENT SLIGHT IRREGULARITIES.

These are ending in *attre*, *ompre*, and *cre*.

210. (a) Verbs ending in *attre* (such as *battre*, to beat, and its derivatives) lose one of the *t*'s of the root in the three persons singular of the Present Indicative, and the second person singular of the Imperative:—

*Je bats, I beat; tu bats, thou beatest; il bat, he beats; bats, beat (thou).* They are perfectly regular in all other persons and tenses.

(b) Verbs ending in *ompre* (only three in the language—viz., *rompre*, to break; *corrompre*, to corrupt; *interrompre*, to interrupt) add *t* to the third person singular of the Present Indicative, and are regular in all their other persons and tenses: *il rompt, il corrompt, il interrompt*.

(c) Verbs ending in *cre* change *c* into *qu* before all vowels except *u*, and are in every other respect perfectly regular. There are only two in the language—viz., *vaincre*, to vanquish, to conquer; *convaincre*, to convince, to convict.

<i>vaincre,</i>	<i>vainquant,</i>	<i>vaincu.</i>
<i>convaincre,</i>	<i>convainquant,</i>	<i>convaincu.</i>

#### EXERCISE LXXVII. (SECOND PART.)

Why does he *beat* my dog?—I *fight* the enemies of  
*battre chien m. combattre ennemi m. pl.*  
 my country.—The woodcutter *is felling* trees in the forest.—  
*patrie f. bûcheron abattre 32 arbre forêt f.*  
 Thou *art struggling* in vain, poor bird! the net does not  
*se débattre en — oiseau filet*  
 break. — Well, I *take off* these two francs from the bill. —  
*se rompre Eh bien, rabattre — facture f.*  
 Whoever names me breaks me, says silence.—Why does  
<sup>120</sup>*nommer rompre dit art. — m. 155*  
 Sophia so frequently *interrupt* those who speak?—By  
*Sophie 2si fréquemment 1interrompre ceux parler En*

convincing his fellow-citizens of the earnestness of his  
*convaincre* inf-3 *concitoyen* *sincérité*  
 patriotism, he *has defeated* all his rivals. — Scipio *vanquished*  
*patriotisme* m. *vaincre* *rival* 38 *Scipion* ind-3  
 Hannibal at the battle of Zama, in Africa. — The Greeks  
*Annibal* *bataille* f. — *en Afrique* *Grec*  
*vanquished* the Persians at *Marathon*, Salamis, Platea,  
 ind-3 *Perse* — pr. *Salamine* pr. *Platée*  
 and Mycale. — How many people will only be *convinced*  
 pr. — *Combien de gens veulent* 153 *être* m. pl.  
 by experience! — He was *convicted* of (high treason).  
 art. *expérience* f. ind-3 29 *le crime de lèse-majesté*.

## OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

210. Verbs may be irregular either in their *root*, or *endings*, or both.

(a) The *root* may be altered more or less, or even disappear altogether; the *endings* may be regularly formed, but not according to the conjugation of the verb in which they are found, or they may be quite irregular. The nature of the irregularities of the *root* must therefore be ascertained, and the *endings* must then be compared to those of the regular verbs.

(b) Irregularities found in *primitive* tenses generally occur also in their *derivatives*; and when a primitive tense is wanting, its derivatives are also generally wanting.

(c) Let learners, therefore, remember that there are five primitive tenses—viz., Present Infinitive, Present Participle, Past Participle, Present and Preterite Indicative. 1. The *Present Infinitive* forms the Future Indicative and the Present Conditional. 2. The *Present Participle* forms the plural of the Present Indicative, the Imperfect Indicative, and the Present Subjunctive. 3. The *Past Participle* forms all compound tenses. 4. The *Present Indicative* forms the Imperative. 5. The *Preterite Indicative* (2d pers. sing.) forms the Imperfect Subjunctive.

## § I. IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The only irregular verbs of this conjugation are *aller*, to go; *s'en aller*, to go away; *envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back.

### 211. ALLER, TO GO.

	<i>Part. Pres. allant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, allé.</i>
IND. }	Je vais,	tu vas,	il va ;
Pres. }	nous allons,	vous allez,	ils vont.
Imp.	J'allais,	tu allais,	il allait ;
	nous allions,	vous alliez,	ils allaient.
Pre.	J'allai,	tu allas,	il alla ;
	nous allâmes,	vous allâtes,	ils allèrent.

<i>Fut.</i>	J'irai,	tu iras,	il ira ;
	nous irons,	vous irez,	ils iront.
<i>COND. }</i>	J'irais,	tu irais,	il irait ;
<i>Pres. }</i>	nous irions,	vous iriez,	ils iraient.
<i>IMPER.</i>		va,	qu'il aille ;
	allons,	allez,	qu'ils aillent.
<i>SUBJ. }</i>	que j'aie,	tu ailles,	il aille ;
<i>Pres. }</i>	que nous allions,	vous alliez,	ils aillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	que j'allasse,	tu allasses,	il allât ;
	que nous allassions,	vous allassiez,	ils allassent.

212. REMARKS.—*Aller* is conjugated with the auxiliary *être*, in all its compound tenses : *Je suis allé*, &c. (171 (a).)

(a) The Imperative *va* takes *s* when immediately followed by the pronoun *en* or by *y* ; as : *Vas en savoir des nouvelles ; vas-y*.

(b) *Aller* is one of the verbs used as idiomatic auxiliaries : *je VAIS partir* (No. 152).

(c) All the compound tenses of *être*, and also its Preterite Indicative and Imperfect Subjunctive, may be used instead, and in the sense of *aller*, when *return* is implied. So, *il a été à Rome*, not only means that he went to Rome, but implies also that he has come back, or has left Rome.

(d) The use of *être* in the sense of *aller* should, however, be avoided before an Infinitive. Say, therefore, *j'allai*, or *je suis allé le trouver*, and not *je fus + le trouver*.

## 213. *S'EN ALLER*, TO GO AWAY.

### INFINITIVE.

1. PRESENT.	3. PARTICIPLE PRESENT.
<i>S'en aller</i> , to go away.	<i>S'en allant</i> , going away.
2. PAST.	4. COMP. OF PARTICIPLE PRESENT.
<i>S'en être allé</i> , to have gone away.	<i>S'en étant allé</i> , having gone away.

### INDICATIVE.

1. PRESENT.	3. PRETERITE DEFINITE.
<i>Je m'en vais</i> ,	<i>Je m'en allai</i> ,
<i>tu t'en vas</i> ,	<i>tu t'en allas</i> ,
<i>il s'en va</i> ,	<i>il s'en alla</i> ,
<i>nous nous en allons</i> ,	<i>nous nous en allâmes</i> ,
<i>vous vous en allez</i> ,	<i>vous vous en allâtes</i> ,
<i>ils s'en vont</i> ,	<i>ils s'en allèrent</i> ,
2. IMPERFECT.	4. PRETERITE INDEFINITE.
<i>Je m'en allais</i> ,	<i>Je m'en suis allé</i> (175 (c)),
<i>tu t'en allais</i> ,	<i>tu t'en es allé</i> ,
<i>il s'en allait</i> ,	<i>il s'en est allé</i> ,
<i>nous nous en allions</i> ,	<i>nous nous en sommes allés</i> ,
<i>vous vous en alliez</i> ,	<i>vous vous en êtes allés</i> ,
<i>ils s'en allaient</i> ,	<i>ils s'en sont allés</i> ,

† *J'ai été le trouver*, and similar sentences, are allowed by custom—i.e., *être* instead of *aller*, even before an infinitive, may be used, but only in compound tenses. Examples :—

*Les honneurs ont été le chercher* (ACAD.)—*Lui-même il avait été reconnaître les rivières et les montagnes qui servirent à ce grand dessein* (BOSSUET).—*On croit qu'Annibal fit une faute insigne de n'avoir point été assiéger Rome* (MONTESQUIEU).

## 5. PRETERITE ANTERIOR.

Je m'en *fus* allé,  
tu t'en *fus* allé,  
il s'en *fut* allé,  
nous nous en *fûmes* allés,  
vous vous en *fûtes* allés,  
ils s'en *furent* allés,

(I had gone  
away.)

## 6. PLUPERFECT.

Je m'en *étais* allé,  
tu t'en *étais* allé,  
il s'en *était* allé,  
nous nous en *étions* allés,  
vous vous en *étiez* allés,  
ils s'en *étaient* allés,

(I had gone  
away.)

## 7. FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

Je m'en *irai*,  
tu t'en *iras*,  
il s'en *ira*,  
nous nous en *irons*,  
vous vous en *irez*,  
ils s'en *iront*,

(I shall go  
away.)

## 8. FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Je m'en *serai* allé,  
tu t'en *seras* allé,  
il s'en *sera* allé,  
nous nous en *serons* allés,  
vous vous en *serez* allés,  
ils s'en *seront* allés,

(I shall have  
gone away.)

## CONDITIONAL.

## 1. PRESENT.

Je m'en *irais*,  
tu t'en *irais*,  
il s'en *irait*,  
nous nous en *irions*,  
vous vous en *iriez*,  
ils s'en *iraient*,

(I would or  
should go away.)

## 2. PAST.

Je m'en *serais* allé,  
tu t'en *serais* allé,  
il s'en *serait* allé,  
nous nous en *serions* allés,  
vous vous en *seriez* allés,  
ils s'en *seraient* allés,

(I should have  
gone away.)

## IMPERATIVE.

*Affirmatively.*

Va-t'en,  
qu'il s'en aille,  
allons-nous-en,  
allez-vous-en,  
qu'ils s'en aillent,

(Go (thou)  
away.)

*Negatively.*

Ne t'en va pas,  
qu'il ne s'en aille pas,  
ne nous en allons pas,  
ne vous en allez pas,  
qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas,

(Do not go  
away.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. PRESENT.

Que je m'en aille,  
que tu t'en ailles,  
qu'il s'en aille,  
que nous nous en allions,  
que vous vous en alliez,  
qu'ils s'en aillent,

(That I may  
go away.)

## 3. PRETERITE.

Que je m'en sois allé,  
que tu t'en sois allé,  
qu'il s'en soit allé,  
que nous nous en soyons allés,  
que vous vous en soyez allés,  
que ils s'en soient allés,

(That I may  
have gone away.)

## 2. IMPERFECT.

Que je m'en allasse,  
que tu t'en allasses,  
qu'il s'en allât,  
que nous nous en allussions,  
que vous vous en allassiez,  
qu'ils s'en allassent,

(That I might  
go away.)

## 4. PLUPERFECT.

Que je m'en fusse allé,  
que tu t'en fusses allé,  
qu'il s'en fût allé,  
que nous nous en fussions allés,  
que vous vous en fussiez allés,  
qu'ils s'en fussent allés,

(That I might  
have gone away.)

214. (a) With this verb the negative occupies the same place as in any other verb, and the interrogative form has the same construction as already mentioned. Examples:—

Il *ne* s'en va *pas*.  
Nous *ne* nous en sommes *pas* allés.  
S'en iront-ils ?

*He does not go away.*  
*We have not gone away.*  
*Will they go away ?*

<i>S'en serait-elle allée ?</i>	<i>Would she have gone away ?</i>
<i>Votre sœur s'en ira-t-elle ?</i>	<i>Will your sister go away ?</i>
<i>Vos cousins s'en étaient-ils allés ?</i>	<i>Had your cousins gone away ?</i>
<i>Ne t'en iras-tu pas ?</i>	<i>Wilt thou not go away ?</i>
<i>Madame, ne vous en étiez-vous pas allée ?</i>	<i>Madam, had you not gone away ?</i>
<i>Ton ami ne s'en alla-t-il pas ?</i>	<i>Did not thy friend go away ?</i>
<i>Vos parents ne s'en sont-ils pas allés ?</i>	<i>Have not your parents gone away ?</i>

(b) *S'en retourner* (to go back) and a few other verbs are formed and conjugated in the same manner as *s'en aller*. In several, however, *EN* appears as an inseparable prefix, as in *s'enfuir, s'ensuivre, endormir, &c., &c.*

(c) ~~SE~~ The Preterite Indicative of *être* is frequently used in the same way and with the same meaning as *s'en aller*, thus : *je m'en fus, tu t'en fus, &c.* Example :—*A deux heures M. Jordy s'en fut à ses affaires* (ED. ABOUT). At two o'clock Mr Jordy went away to his business.

215. The irregularities in the Future and Conditional of *envoyer* (to send) and *renvoyer* (to send back, to dismiss) are explained in Rule 205, q. v.

### EXERCISE LXXVIII.

*I am going to pay some visits.*—The traveller goes from  
                   \* *faire*                   *visite f.*                   *voyageur*  
 town to town.—Are those ladies going into the country ? —  
                   *en*                   *dame*                   *à*                   *campagne f.*  
*Is not blue becoming to (fair ladies) ?*—We went  
 153 art. *bleu m.* *aller bien*                   art. *blond f. pl.*                   ind-4  
 by land and sea.—Is Adela gone to church ?—Let us  
                   *terre*                   *pr. mer.*                   *Adèle*                   .                   art. *église f.*  
*go away from here without seeing them.*—Why do your  
                   *ici*                   *sans*                   *voir*                   *1*                   *Pourquoi*  
 friends go away (so soon) ?—I shall go back next  
                   *ami m.*                   *sitôt*                   *s'en retourner*                   *2prochain*  
                   week.—Would George and his sister have gone away  
                   *1art. semaine*                   *Georges*                   214 (a)  
 without us ?—Are not the children going back to-morrow ?—Did  
                   214 (b)                   *demain*  
 we not go away as soon as we were free ?—Did not the mayor  
                   214 (c) *aussitôt que*                   ind-3 *libre*                   *maire*  
 betake himself to the prefect's house ?—Must I not go away ?—  
                   214 (c)                   \*                   2 *préfet*                   \*                   1*chez*                   subj-1  
 Must not Edward go back ? — Must the pupils go away ?  
                   *Edouard*                   214 (b) subj-1                   *élève*                   subj-1



## § II. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

216. Observe that the inceptive *iss* is not found in the Present Participle (nor, consequently, in its derivatives, the Plural of the Present Indicative, the Imperfect Indicative, and the Present Subjunctive) of any of the irregular verbs of this conjugation.

(a) S'ABSTENIR (to abstain) is conjugated like *tenir*, q. v.

(b) ACCOURIR (to run to) is conjugated like *courir*, with this difference, that in its compound tenses it takes either *être* or *avoir*, according as we wish to denote *state* or *action* (see No. 172).

(c) ACCUEILLIR (to receive). See *cueillir* (No. 224).

### 217. ACQUÉRIR, TO ACQUIRE.

	<i>Part. Pres. acquérant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, acquis.</i>	
IND. }	J'acquiers,	tu acquiers,	il acquiert ;
Pres. }	nous acquérons,	vous acquérez,	ils acquièrent.
Imp. }	J'acquerais,	tu acquérais,	il acquerrait ;
	nous acquérions,	vous acquériez,	ils acquerraient.
Prët. }	J'acquis,	tu acquis,	il acquit ;
	nous acquîmes,	vous acquîtes,	ils acquirent.
Fut. }	J'acquerrai,	tu acquerras,	il acquerra ;
	nous acquerrons,	vous acquerez,	ils acquerront.
COND. }	J'acquerrais,	tu acquerrais,	il acquerrait ;
Pres. }	nous acquerrions,	vous acqueriez,	ils acquerraient.
IMPER. }		acquiers,	qu'il acquière ;
	acquérons,	acquérez,	qu'ils acquièrent.
SUBJ. }	ne j'acquière,	tu acquières,	il acquière ;
Pres. }	ne nous acquérions,	vous acquériez,	ils acquièrent.
Imp. }	ne j'acquisse,	tu acquisses,	il acquît ;
	ne nous acquissions,	vous acquissiez,	ils acquissent.

Conjugate in the same manner :—

Conquérir, to conquer.

Requérir, to request, to require (chiefly used in law).

S'enquérir, to inquire (seldom used except in the infinitive, and compound tenses).

218. (a) *Querir*, to fetch, is used after the verbs *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer* ; as in *allez querir* (go and fetch) ; *envoyez querir* (send for). It is confined to familiar conversation, and is getting obsolete.

(b) *Allez chercher*, *envoyons chercher*, &c., are now used instead of *allez querir*, &c.

## 219. ASSAILLIR, TO ASSAULT.

<i>Part. Pres. assaillant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, assailli.</i>	
IND. }	J'assaille,†	tu assailles,	il assaille ;
Pres. }	nous assaillons,	vous assaillez,	ils assaillent.
Imp.	J'assaillais,	tu assaillais,	il assaillait ;
	nous assaillions,	vous assailliez,	ils assaillaient.
Pret.	J'assaillais,	tu assaillais,	il assaillit ;
	nous assaillions,	vous assaillîtes,	ils assaillirent.
Fut.	J'assaillirai,	tu assailliras,	il assaillira ;
	nous assaillirons,	vous assaillirez,	ils assailliront.
COND. }	J'assaillirais,	tu assaillirais,	il assaillirait ;
Pres. }	nous assaillirions,	vous assailliriez,	ils assailliraient.
IMPER.		assaille,	qu'il assaille ;
	assaillons,	assaillez,	qu'ils assaillent.
SUBJ. }	ne j'assaille,	tu assailles,	il assaille ;
Pres. }	ne nous assaillons,	vous assailliez,	ils assaillent.
Imp.	ne j'assaillisse,	tu assaillisses,	il assaillît ;
	ne nous assaillions,	vous assaillissiez,	ils assaillissent.

Conjugate in the same manner *tressaillir*, to start.

## EXERCISE LXXIX.

He had acquired great influence over his contemporaries.—  
une — f. sur contemporain m.

He would acquire honour and reputation.—  
32 honneur m. h m. 32 réputation f.

Alexander conquered a great part of Asia.—A conquered  
ind-3 partie f. art. 2

province.—We were overtaken by a furious storm.—At  
1— f. ind-3 assaillir d' tempête f.

every word they said to him about his son, the good  
chaque qu' on disait \* de

old man trembled with joy.—She started with fear.—  
vieillard tressaillir ind-2 de joie. ind-3 de peur

Our hearts are throbbing with hope.—We must attack  
cœur m. tressaillir espérance 188 (b) assaillir

the left wing of the enemy.—Wealth  
2gauche 1aile f. ennemi m. pl. art. richesse f. pl.

is seldom for those who have acquired it.—I shudder  
pl. rarement ceux 2 f. pl. 588 1les tressaillir

with horror at the very thought of it.  
d' horreur cette seul pensée f. \* \*

† Observe that *assaillir* and *tressaillir* have the endings of the first conjugation in the following tenses: Pres. IND. *e, es, e, ons, ez, ent*; Imperf. *aïs, ais, ait, &c.*; and also in the IMPERATIVE and SUBJUNCT. Present.

220. *BOUILLIR*, TO BOIL.

<i>Part. Pres. bouillant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, bouilli.</i>	
IND. }	Je bous,	tu bous,	il bout ;
Pres. }	nous bouillons,	vous bouillez,	ils bouillent.
Imp.	Je bouillais,	tu bouillais,	il bouillait ;
	nous bouillions,	vous bouilliez,	ils bouillaient.
Pret.	Je bouillis,	tu bouillis,	il bouillit ;
	nous bouillîmes,	vous bouillîtes,	ils bouillirent.
Fut.	Je bouillirai,	tu bouilliras,	il bouillira ;
	nous bouillirons,	vous bouillirez,	ils bouilliront.
COND. }	Je bouillirais,	tu bouillirais,	il bouillirait ;
Pres. }	nous bouillirions,	vous bouilliriez,	ils bouilliraient.
IMPER.		bous,	qu'il bouille ;
	bouillons,	bouillez,	qu'ils bouillent.
SUBJ. }	Que je bouille,	tu bouilles,	il bouille ;
Pres. }	Que nous bouillions,	vous bouilliez,	ils bouillent.
Imp.	Que je bouillisse,	tu bouillisses,	il bouillît ;
	Que nous bouillions,	vous bouillissiez,	ils bouillissent.

221. *Bouillir* is often employed figuratively : *il bout de colère* (his blood is boiling with anger). It is a *neuter* verb, and, with its literal meaning, is only used in the infinitive, preceded by the verb *faire*, in any tense and person, whenever the subject is a noun (or a pronoun) referring to a person. Translate, therefore, *I was boiling potatoes* by *Je faisais bouillir des pommes de terre* ; and *The servant is boiling the meat* by *La bonne fait bouillir la viande* ; just as if those sentences ran in English : *I was causing potatoes to boil* ; *The servant is causing the meat to boil*.

(a) *Rebouillir*, to boil again, is conjugated in the same manner, and follows the same rules.

(b) *Ébouillir*, to boil away, is seldom used but in the Infinitive and Past Participle *ébouilli*, m. ; *ébouillie*, f. It is conjugated with *être*.

222. *COURIR*, TO RUN.

<i>Part. Pres. courant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, couru.</i>	
IND. }	Je cours,	tu cours,	il court ;
Pres. }	nous courons,	vous courez,	ils courent.
Imp.	Je courais,	tu courais,	il courait ;
	nous courions,	vous couriez,	ils couraient.
Pret.	Je courus,	tu courus,	il courut ;
	nous courûmes,	vous courûtes,	ils coururent.
Fut.	Je courrai,	tu courras,	il courra ;
	nous courrons,	vous courrez,	ils courront.
COND. }	Je courrais,	tu courrais,	il courrait ;
Pres. }	nous courrions,	vous courriez,	ils courraient.
IMPER.		cours,	qu'il coure ;
	courons,	courez,	qu'ils courent.
SUBJ. }	Que je coure,	tu coures,	il coure ;
Pres. }	Que nous courions,	vous couriez,	ils courent.
Imp.	Que je courusse,	tu courusses,	il courût ;
	Que nous courussions,	vous courussiez,	ils courussent.

## 223. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Accourir,	to run to.	encourir,	to incur.
concourir,	to concur.	parcourir,	to run over.
discourir,	to discourse.	secourir,	to succour.

## EXERCISE LXXX.

My heart *burns* with impatience.—Do we not all  
*bouillir d' — f. 153 2m. pl.*  
 feel the ardour of freedom *burning* within  
*1 sentons ardeur art. liberté f. qui bouillir ind-1 en*  
 us? — Does the water *boil*? — We *were boiling* some  
 potatoes. — *Boil* that meat *again*; it is not  
*pommes de terre. viande f.*  
 (done enough).—You *run* faster than I.—Will men  
*assez cuite plus vite moi. art.*  
 always *run* after shadows? — Socrates passed the last  
*32 chimère f. pl. passer.*  
 day of his life in *discoursing* on the immortality of the soul.—  
*à inf-1 immortalité*  
 You *would incur* the displeasure of the prince.—I have *run*  
*disgrâce f. —*  
 over the whole town to find him.—This sauce has  
*2 1 pour trouver 103 — f. est*  
*2 boiled away 1 too much.*  
*f trop*

COUVRIR, to cover; see Ouvrir (237).

## 224. CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

Part. Pres. cueillant.		Part. Past, cueilli.	
IND. }	Je cueille, †	tu cueilles,	il cueille;
Pres. }	nous cueillons,	vous cueillez,	ils cueillent.
Imp.	Je cueillais,	tu cueillais,	il cueillait;
	nous cueillions,	vous cueilliez,	ils cueillaient.
Pret.	Je cueillis,	tu cueillis,	il cueillit;
	nous cueillîmes,	vous cueillîtes,	ils cueillirent.
Fut.	Je cueillerai,	tu cueilleras,	il cueillera;
	nous cueillerons,	vous cueillerez,	ils cueilleront.
COND. }	Je cueillerais,	tu cueillerais,	il cueillerait;
Pres. }	nous cueillerions,	vous cueilleriez,	ils cueilleraient.
IMPER.		cueille,	qu'il cueille;
	cueillons,	cueillez,	qu'ils cueillent.
SUBJ. }	je cueille,	tu cueilles,	il cueille;
Pres. }	nous cueillons,	vous cueilliez,	ils cueillent.
Imp.	je cueillisse,	tu cueillisses,	il cueillît;
	nous cueillassions,	vous cueillissiez,	ils cueillissent.

† *Cueillir* and its derivatives have the endings of the first conjugation, except in the Part. Past, the Preterite of the INDICATIVE, and the Imperfect SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 225. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Accueillir, to receive, to welcome. | recueillir, to collect.

## 226. DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

	Part. Pres. dormant.		Part. Past, dormi.
IND. }	Je dors,	tu dors,	il dort ;
Pres. }	nous dormons,	vous dormez,	ils dorment.
Imp. }	Je dormais,	tu dormais,	il dormait ;
	nous dormions,	vous dormiez,	ils dormaient.
Pret. }	Je dormis,	tu dormis,	il dormit ;
	nous dormîmes,	vous dormîtes,	ils dormirent.
Fut. }	Je dormirai,	tu dormiras,	il dormira ;
	nous dormirons,	vous dormirez,	ils dormiront.
COND. }	Je dormirais,	tu dormirais,	il dormirait ;
Pres. }	nous dormirions,	vous dormiriez,	ils dormiraient.
IMPER. }		dors,	qu'il dorme ;
	dormons,	dormez,	qu'ils dorment.
SUBJ. }	Je dorme,	tu dormes,	il dorme ;
Pres. }	nous dormions,	vous dormiez,	ils dorment.
Imp. }	Je dormisse,	tu dormisses,	il dormît ;
	nous dormissions,	vous dormissiez,	ils dormissent.

## 227. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Endormir, to lull to sleep. | se rendormir, to fall asleep  
s'endormir, to fall asleep. | again.

228. (a) FAILLIR, to fail.—Pres. Part. faillant ; Past Part. failli ; IND. Pres. il faut ; Preterite, je faillis, tu faillis, &c. ; Future, je faillirai, &c. ; COND. Pres. je faillirais, &c. ; SUBJ. Imperf. que je faillisse, &c.

(b) This verb is very seldom used in the Present Participle ; the third pers. singular is met with in a very few proverbial expressions ; but all the compound tenses, and the simple tenses given above, are frequently employed.

(c) Its derivative *défaillir*, to faint, to fail, is only used in the first and third persons plural of the present of the Indicative, *nous défailions*, *ils défont* ; in the Imperfect, *je défaillais*, &c. ; in the Preterite definite, *je défaillis*, &c. ; in the Preterite indefinite, *j'ai défailli*, &c. ; and in the Infinitive *défaillir*. The Present Participle *défaillant* is often used adjectively. The Present Subjunctive, *que je défaille*, &c., and the Imperfect, *que je défaillisse*, &c., are also employed.

229. FÉRIR, to strike, is only used in the Infinitive in the expression *sans coup férir* (without striking a blow), which is frequently met with in history.

## EXERCISE LXXXI.

I will gather you some fine flowers. — We shall collect in  
fleur f. dans

ancient history, important and valuable facts. —  
art. 2 1 32 2 — 3 précieux 1 fait m.

The hare generally sleeps with its eyes open.—  
*lièvre m. 2ordinairement 1 \* \* art. ouvert*  
 That song lulls one to sleep.—I fell asleep about three o'clock.  
*\* ind-4 vers art.*  
 —He (was near) losing his life.—His strength  
*faillir ind-3 inf-1 \* art. force f. pl.*  
*fails* (every day).—We (took possession) of the town  
*défaillir tous les jours. s'emparer ind-3 ville f.*  
 (without striking a blow).—Give him this cordial (so that)  
*229 99 (3) — m. qu'*  
 he may not faint.—The failing strength of the poor  
*défaillir 2défaillant force f. pl.*  
 patient.—The old chief (took up) the gauntlet with  
*malade m. chef ramasser ind-3 gantelet m. d'*  
 a trembling hand.—They will take all the positions  
*2défaillant 1main f. m. enlever ind-7 — f.*  
 (without striking a blow).  
 229

230. *FUIR*, TO FLEE, TO RUN AWAY; TO SHUN.

		<i>Part. Pres. fuyant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, fui.</i>
IND.	}	Je fuis,	tu fuis,	il fuit ;
Pres.		nous fuyons,	vous fuyez,	ils fuient.
Imp.		Je fuyais,	tu fuyais,	il fuyait ;
		nous fuyions,	vous fuyiez,	ils fuyaient.
Pret.		Je fuis,	tu fuis,	il fuit ;
		nous fûmes,	vous fûtes,	ils fuirent.
Fut.		Je fuirai,	tu fuiras,	il fuira ;
		nous fuirons,	vous fuirez,	ils fuiront.
COND.	}	Je fuirais,	tu fuirais,	il fuirait ;
Pres.		nous fuirions,	vous fuiriez,	ils fuiraient.
IMPER.		fuyons,	fuis,	qu'il fuie ;
			fuyez,	qu'ils fuient.
SUBJ.	}	que je fuie,	tu fuies,	il fuie ;
Pres.		que nous fuyions,	vous fuyiez,	ils fuient.
Imp.		que je fusse,	tu fusses,	il fût ;
		que nous fuissions,	vous fussiez,	ils fussent.

231. Conjugate after the same manner, *s'enfuir*, to run away. In the Imperative we say, *enfuis-toi*, and not *enfuis-t'en*, nor *fuis-t'en*.

232. *GÉSIR*, to lie, to lie down, is obsolete. We, however, still say, *Il gît, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent. Je gisais, tu gisais, il gisait; nous gisions, vous gisiez, ils*

*gisaient*. *Gisant*. The Present Participle (*gisant*) is frequently used adjectively.

*Ci-gît* (here lies) is the usual form by which an epitaph is begun.

233. *ISSIR*, to descend, to spring from, has only the Past Participle—viz., *issu* (m.), *issue* (fem.), frequently employed as an adjective, i.e., without auxiliary, or as a participle with the auxiliary *être*.

234. The feminine Past Participle of the above verb (*issue*) is used as a noun, which means *issue*, *outlet*, *event*, &c.

*MENTIR*, to lie, to utter falsehood, is conjugated like *sentir*.

### 235. *MOURIR*, TO DIE.

	<i>Part. Pres. mourant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, mort.</i>
IND. }	Je meurs,	tu meurs,	il meurt ;
Pres. }	nous mourons,	vous mourez,	ils meurent.
Imp.	Je mourais,	tu mourais,	il mourait ;
	nous mourions,	vous mouriez,	ils mouraient.
Pret.	Je mourus,	tu mourus,	il mourut ;
	nous mourûmes,	vous mourûtes,	ils moururent.
Fut.	Je mourrai,	tu mourras,	il mourra ;
	nous mourrons,	vous mourrez,	ils mourront.
COND. }	Je mourrais,	tu mourrais,	il mourrait ;
Pres. }	nous mourrions,	vous mourriez,	ils mourraient.
IMPER.		meurs,	qu'il meure ;
	mourons,	mourez,	qu'ils meurent.
SUBJ. }	que je meure,	tu meures,	il meure ;
Pres. }	que nous mourions,	vous mouriez,	ils meurent.
Imp.	que je mourusse,	tu mourusses,	il mourût ;
	que nous mourussions,	vous mourussiez,	ils mourussent.

(a) *Mourir* is conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in its compound tenses.—The double *r* of the Future and Conditional must be sounded strongly.

(b) When this verb takes the reflected form, *se mourir*, it means *to be at the point of death* ; but, in this sense, it is seldom used except in the present and imperfect of the Indicative.—(ACAD.)

### 236. *OÛIR*, to hear. (Active and defective verb.)

*Part. Past, ouï*. IND. Pret. *j'ouïs*, tu ouïs,† &c. SUBJ. Imperf. *que j'ouïsse*, qu tu ouïsses, qu'il ouît, &c.

This verb is chiefly used in the *compound tenses*, which are generally followed by another verb in the infinitive ; as,

Je l'ai ouï prêcher.—(ACAD.)  
Je l'avais ouï dire.

*I have heard him preach.*  
*I had heard it said.*

† *Oyez*, the word which is repeated three times by the sheriff before making proclamations in court, is the 2nd pers. plur. of the Imperative of this verb, and means "hear ye." It was imported by the Normans.

## EXERCISE LXXXII.

(Let us make haste); time *flies*.—I cannot meet  
*Hâtons-nous* art. *ne puis rencontrer*  
 him; he *shuns* me.—He *died* some time after.—John Calvin,  
 94

the celebrated reformer, *died* at Geneva on the 27th May  
*célèbre réformateur* \*  
 1564.—He *is dying*.—All the witnesses have been *heard*.—  
*se mourir* *témoin* m.

Anger soon *dies* in a kind heart.—*Here lies* an  
 art. *colère* f. *promptement* <sup>1</sup> *bon*

honest man.—We found her *lying* in a dark corner.—  
*honnête* *trouver* ind-4 adj. fem. *obscur* <sup>1</sup> *coin*

(Behold them) *stretched* on the pavement.—Mary *was*  
*Les voilà* 232 inf-3 m. pl. *pavé* m. ind-2

*descended* from the dukes of Burgundy.—What will be the  
 233 *duc* *Bourgogne* 93

result of the affair?—They are (second cousins).  
 234 *affaire* f. m. *issu* pl. *de germain*.

## 237. OUVRIER, TO OPEN.

## Part. Pres. ouvrant.

## Part. Past, ouvert.

IND. }	J'ouvre, †	tu ouvres,	il ouvre;
Pres. }	nous ouvrons,	vous ouvrez,	ils ouvrent.
Imp. }	J'ouvrais,	tu ouvrais,	il ouvrait;
	nous ouvriions,	vous ouvriez,	ils ouvraient.
Pret. }	J'ouvris,	tu ouvris,	il ouvrit;
	nous ouvriîmes,	vous ouvriîtes,	ils ouvrirent.
Fut. }	J'ouvrirai,	tu ouvriras,	il ouvrira;
	nous ouvrirons,	vous ouvrirez,	ils ouvriront.
COND. }	J'ouvrirais,	tu ouvrirais,	il ouvrirait;
Pres. }	nous ouvririons,	vous ouvririez,	ils ouvriraient.
IMPER. }		ouvrez,	qu'il ouvre;
	ouvrons,	ouvrez,	qu'ils ouvrent.
SUBJ. }	je j'ouvre,	tu ouvres,	il ouvre;
Pres. }	vous ouvriions,	vous ouvriez,	ils ouvrent.
Imp. }	je j'ouvrisse,	tu ouvriisses,	il ouvrit;
	vous ouvriissions,	vous ouvriissiez,	ils ouvriissent.

## 238. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Couvrir,	to cover.	recouvrir,	to cover again.
découvrir,	to discover, to uncover.	rouvrir,	to open again.
offrir,	to offer.	souffrir,	to suffer.

† *Les* Verbs ending in *vrir* and *frir* have in the *Present* and *Imperfect Indicative*, the *IMPERATIVE*, and *Present SUBJUNCTIVE*, the endings of the first conjugation, and their *Past Participle* ends in *ert* (*souffert*, *soufferte*, *ouvert*, *ouverte*).



239. *PARTIR*, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY.

<i>Part. Pres. partant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, parti.</i>	
IND. }	Je pars,	tu pars,	il part ;
Pres. }	nous partons,	vous partez,	ils partent.
Imp.	Je partais,	tu partais,	il partait ;
	nous partions,	vous partiez,	ils partaient.
Pret.	Je partis,	tu partis,	il partit ;
	nous partîmes,	vous partîtes,	ils partirent.
Fut.	Je partirai,	tu partiras,	il partira ;
	nous partirons,	vous partirez,	ils partiront.
COND.	Je partirais,	tu partirais,	il partirait ;
	nous partirions,	vous partiriez,	ils partiraient.
IMPER.		pars,	qu'il parte ;
	partons,	partez,	qu'ils partent.
SUBJ. }	que je parte,	tu partes,	il parte ;
Pres. }	que nous partions,	vous partiez,	ils partent.
Imp.	que je partisse,	tu partisses,	il partît ;
	que nous partissions,	vous partissiez,	ils partissent.

(a) *Partir* (see Rule 172) is conjugated with *être* when we wish to express the result of the action, and with *avoir* when the action is meant, as distinguished from its result ; also when this verb is used figuratively.

(b) The verb *repartir* (to set out again) is conjugated in the same manner as *partir*, and the same rule holds good with it as regards the auxiliary verb.—But when *repartir* means to *reply*, it is only conjugated with *avoir*.

(c) *Répartir* (with an accent over the *é*), to divide, to apportion, to distribute, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

(d) *Partir* In many verbs beginning with *re*, and which have very different significations, this difference in the meaning is only indicated by an accent placed over the *é* following the initial *r*. Such are :

Reformer,	to form again.	réformer,	to amend, to reform.
resonner,	to ring a bell again.	résonner,	to resound.
remoudre,	to grind again (corn).	rémoudre,	to sharpen again, &c.

240. *SAILLIR*, to project, to jut out.—Pres. Part. saillant ; † Past. Part. sailli ; IND. Pres. il saille, ils saillent ; Imperf. il saillait, ils saillaient ; Preter. il saillit, ils saillirent ; Future, il saillera, ils sailleront ; COND. il saillerait, ils sailleraient ; SUBJ. Pres. qu'il saille, qu'ils saillent ; Imperf. qu'il saillît, qu'ils saillissent.

REMARK.—This verb has in the Present and Future Indicative, and in the Conditional Present, the endings of the first conjugation.

† *Saillant* is often used as adjective.

## EXERCISE LXXXIII.

Open this cupboard.—Harvey discovered the circulation of  
*armoire f.* — *f.*  
 the blood. — I offer you my services with all my heart. — The  
*sang m.* — *de* *cœur m.*  
 house has not been covered again since the roof  
*maison f.* *depuis que* *toit m.*  
 was burnt down. — That effort opened his wound  
*ind-4 brûlé \** — *m.* *blessure f.*  
 again.—He suffers more than you think. — They have left  
*plus que ne pensez partir ind-4*  
 for the country. — He will set out in two or three days.—  
*campagne f.* *dans*  
 That coach starts every day at (twelve o'clock). — The  
*voiture f.* *tous les jours* *midi*  
 gun went off all at once.—I arrived yesterday, and  
*fusil m.* *partir ind-4 tout à coup* *ind-4 hier*  
 I must set out again to-morrow. — (These are) the most  
*subj-1 demain Voici 68 (a)*  
 salient points, replied the orator. — Have they  
*2saillir inf-3* — *m. pl.* *ind-3 orateur on*  
 apportioned to each one his task? — Mary has left without  
*239 (c)* *122* *tâche f.* *partir*  
 bidding us farewell: we are very sad, now she is gone.  
*2dire 1 adieu bien triste depuis qu' partir*  
 —Those balconies project three feet beyond the wall.  
*balcon m.* *240 de pied m. au delà de mur m.*

## 241. SENTIR, TO FEEL, TO SMELL.

<i>Part. Pres. sentant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, senti.</i>	
IND. }	Je sens,	tu sens,	il sent ;
Pres. }	nous sentons,	vous sentez,	ils sentent.
Imp. }	Je sentais,	tu sentais,	il sentait ;
	nous sentions,	vous sentiez,	ils sentaient.
Pret. }	Je sentis,	tu sentis,	il sentit ;
	nous sentîmes,	vous sentîtes,	ils sentirent.
Fut. }	Je sentirai,	tu sentiras,	il sentira ;
	nous sentirons,	vous sentirez,	ils sentiront.
COND. }	Je sentirais,	tu sentirais,	il sentirait ;
Pres. }	nous sentirions,	vous sentiriez,	ils sentiraient.
IMPER. }		sens,	qu'il sente ;
	sentons,	sentez,	qu'ils sentent.
SUBJ. }	ne je sente,	tu sentes,	il sente ;
Pres. }	ne nous sentions,	vous sentiez,	ils sentent.
Imp. }	ne je sentisse,	tu sentisses,	il sentît ;
	ne nous sentissions,	vous sentissiez,	ils sentissent.

## 242. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Consentir,	to consent.	ressentir,	to resent.
mentir,	to lie.	se repentir,	to repent.
pressentir,	to foresee.	&c.	&c.

## 243. SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.

Part. Pres. servant.		Part. Past, servi.	
IND. }	Je sers,	tu sers,	il sert ;
Pres. }	nous servons,	vous servez,	ils servent.
Imp.	Je servais,	tu servais,	il servait ;
	nous servions,	vous serviez,	ils servaient.
Pret.	Je servis,	tu servis,	il servit ;
	nous servîmes,	vous servîtes,	ils servirent.
Fut.	Je servirai,	tu serviras,	il servira ;
	nous servirons,	vous servirez,	ils serviront.
COND. }	Je servirais,	tu servirais,	il servirait ;
Pres. }	nous servirions,	vous serviriez,	ils serviraient.
IMPER.		sers,	qu'il serve ;
	servons,	servez,	qu'ils servent.
SUBJ. }	ne je serve,	tu serves,	il serve ;
Pres. }	ne nous servions,	vous serviez,	ils servent.
Imp.	ne je servisse,	tu servisses,	il servît ;
	ne nous servissions,	vous servissiez,	ils servissent.

244. (a) Conjugate in the same manner, *Desservir*, to clear the table (to do an ill office, to injure, to disoblige).

(b) *Asservir*, to enslave, to subject, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

## EXERCISE LXXXIV.

He who *serves* well his country (has no need) of ancestors.—  
\* n'a pas besoin 40

You will feel the effects of it.—Smell this rose.—Shall we  
effet m. 116 — f.

consent to that bargain?—Never (tell a falsehood).—I foresaw  
marché m. mentir

all those misfortunes.—He *repents* of his bad conduct.—  
malheur m. mauvais conduite f.

He *serves* his friends with warmth.—Help the gentleman  
chaleur. 3<sup>d</sup> \* 4<sup>e</sup> monsieur

to some partridge.—Shall I have the honour to help you  
1 2<sup>e</sup> perdrix f. de

to a wing of a chicken?—Clear the table.—That fellow  
aile f. \* individu

disobliges everybody.—Is Alfred using my penknife?—  
118 — se servir de canif m.

*Have* your aunts *used* the same carriage? — *Has*  
*tante se servir de voiture f.*  
 any one *spoken against* us to the minister?  
*quelqu'un 161 desservir 98 auprès de ministre*

## 245. SORTIR, TO GO OUT, TO COME OUT.

<i>Part. Pres. sortant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. sorti.</i>	
IND. }	Je sors,	tu sors,	il sort ;
Pres. }	nous sortons,	vous sortez,	ils sortent.
Imp. }	Je sortais,	tu sortais,	il sortait ;
	nous sortions,	vous sortiez,	ils sortaient.
Pret. }	Je sortis,	tu sortis,	il sortit ;
	nous sortîmes,	vous sortîtes,	ils sortirent.
Fut. }	Je sortirai,	tu sortiras,	il sortira ;
	nous sortirons,	vous sortirez,	ils sortiront.
COND. }	Je sortirais,	tu sortirais,	il sortirait ;
Pres. }	nous sortirions,	vous sortiriez,	ils sortiraient.
IMPER. }		sors,	qu'il sorte ;
	sortons,	sortez,	qu'ils sortent.
SUBJ. }	je sorte,	tu sortes,	il sorte ;
Pres. }	nous sortions,	vous sortiez,	ils sortent.
Imp. }	je sortisse,	tu sortisses,	il sortît ;
	nous sortissions,	vous sortissiez,	ils sortissent.

246. (a) Conjugate in the same manner, *Ressortir*, to go out again. *Sortir* and *ressortir* are conjugated with *avoir* when action is meant, and with *être* when it is wished to express the result of the action (Rule 172). Both these verbs are also used *actively*, when, of course, they require the auxiliary *avoir* (Rule 172 (b)).

(b) But *ressortir*, to be under the jurisdiction of, is conjugated like *finir*.

## EXERCISE LXXXV.

I go out every morning before breakfast. — The  
*tout art. matin m. pl. avant*  
 fox comes out of his hole. — We went out of the town  
*renard m. terrier m.*  
 after him. — Everybody is gone out. — I shall go out in half  
*après Tout le monde 2demi-*  
 an hour. — If I were as ill as you, I would not go out. —  
<sup>1</sup> f. <sup>3</sup> 423 (b) *malade*  
 Do not go out to-day. — He (is just) gone out. — He went  
*aujourd'hui. 152 (3) inf-1*  
 out again immediately. — I will not go out again this  
*sur-le-champ.*  
 evening. — Those two towns are not under the same  
*soir m. ville f. ressortir de*

jurisdiction.—*Have they taken out the carriage from the jurisdiction f. on voiture f.*  
 coach-house? — How many times *have* Anthony and *remise f. Combien de fois aux. avoir Antoine*  
 Julian gone out to-day? — How long *have* the *Julien aujourd'hui Depuis quand aux. être*  
 (young ladies) been out? — (Those are) the orange-trees *demoiselle sortir Ce sont là orangers m.*  
 which we took out this morning.—We will take them *sortir ind-4 matin m. 152 (1) rentrer*  
 in now, and we shall take them out again to-morrow. *maintenant ressortir demain*

247. *TENIR*, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

	<i>Part. Pres. tenant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, tenu.</i>
IND.	{ Je tiens,	tu tiens,	il tient ;
Pres.	{ nous tenons,	vous tenez,	ils tiennent.
Imp.	Je tenais,	tu tenais,	il tenait ;
	nous tenions,	vous teniez,	ils tenaient.
Pret.	Je tins,	tu tins,	il tint ;
	nous tinmes,	vous tintes,	ils tinrent.
Fut.	Je tiendrai,	tu tiendras,	il tiendra ;
	nous tiendrons,	vous tiendrez,	ils tiendront.
COND.	{ Je tiendrais,	tu tiendrais,	il tiendrait ;
Pres.	{ nous tiendrions,	vous tiendriez,	ils tiendraient.
IMPER.		tiens,	qu'il tienne ;
	tenons,	tenez,	qu'ils tiennent.
SUBJ.	{ je tienne,	tu tiennes,	il tienne ;
Pres.	{ nous tenions,	vous teniez,	ils tiennent.
Imp.	je tinsses,	tu tinsses,	il tint ;
	nous tinssions,	vous tinssiez,	ils tinssent.

## 248. Conjugate in the same manner :—

<i>S'abstenir,</i>	<i>to abstain.</i>	<i>obtenir,</i>	<i>to obtain.</i>
<i>appartenir,</i>	<i>to belong.</i>	<i>parvenir,</i>	<i>to attain.</i>
<i>avenir or ad-</i>	<i>to happen, to</i>	<i>prévenir,</i>	<i>to anticipate ; to pre-</i>
<i>venir (imper-</i>	<i>come to pass,</i>		<i>vent.</i>
<i>sonally used),</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>se ressou-</i>	<i>venir,</i>
<i>contenir,</i>	<i>to contain.</i>		<i>to recall to mind.</i>
<i>convenir,</i>	<i>to agree ; to suit.</i>	<i>retenir,</i>	<i>to get hold again ; to</i>
<i>devenir,</i>	<i>to become.</i>		<i>retain.</i>
<i>disconvenir,</i>	<i>to deny.</i>	<i>revenir,</i>	<i>to come back.</i>
<i>entretenir,</i>	<i>to keep up ; to</i>	<i>soutenir,</i>	<i>to sustain.</i>
	<i>converse.</i>	<i>se souvenir,</i>	<i>to remember.</i>
<i>intervenir,</i>	<i>to intervene ; to</i>	<i>subvenir,</i>	<i>to relieve.</i>
	<i>interfere.</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
<i>maintenir,</i>	<i>to maintain.</i>		

Observe that in these verbs the *n* is doubled whenever it is followed by *e* mute, but in no other case.

For the auxiliary required in the compound tenses of *devenir*, *disconvenir*, &c., see Rule 171.

## EXERCISE LXXXVI.

I hold it fast; it shall not escape from me.— *Liberalité*  
*bien* . *échapper* \* *art.*  
*holds* a medium between prodigality and avarice.—  
*le milieu* m. *entre* *art.* — *f.*  
This garden is well kept.—He abstained from drinking on  
*jardin* m. *boire* \*  
that day.—These horses belong to our general.— *England*  
*ce jour-là.* *art.*  
and the principality of Wales contain fifty-two counties.—  
*principauté* f. *Galles* *comté* m.  
They conversed about trifles. — I shall maintain it  
*s'* *de* *bagatelles*  
everywhere.—Do not maintain so absurd an opinion.—Has  
*partout* *si* *absurde* *f.*  
he obtained permission? — Detain not the wages of a  
— *f.* *retenir* *gages* m. pl.  
servant. — That column supports all the building.  
*domestique* m. *colonne* f. *soutenir* *bâtiment* m.

249. *Venir* is conjugated like *tenir*, but with this difference, that in its compound tenses it always takes the auxiliary *être*.

250. *Prévenir* and *Subvenir* are conjugated in their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*. *Convenir*, when it signifies to agree, takes *être*; but *avoir*, when it signifies to suit. (See examples, page 104.)

251. *VÊTIR*, TO CLOTHE.

	<i>Part. Pres. vêtant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, vêtu</i>
IND. }	Je vêts,	tu vêts,	il vêt ;
Pres. }	nous vêtons,	vous vêtez,	ils vêtent.
Imp.	Je vêtais,	tu vêtais,	il vêtait ;
	nous vêtions,	vous vétiez,	ils vêtaient.
Pret.	Je vêtis,	tu vêtis,	il vêtît ;
	nous vêtîmes,	vous vêtîtes,	ils vêtirent.
Fut.	Je vêtirai,	tu vêtiras,	il vêtira ;
	nous vêtirons,	vous vêtirez,	ils vêtiront.
COND. }	Je vêtirais,	tu vêtirais,	il vêtirait ;
Pres. }	nous vêtirions,	vous vêtiriez,	ils vêtiraient.
IMPER.		vêts,	qu'il vête ;
	vêtons,	vêtez,	qu'ils vêtent.
SUBJ. }	que je vête,	tu vêtes,	il vête ;
Pres. }	que nous vêtions,	vous vétiez,	ils vêtent.
Imp.	que je vêtisse,	tu vêtisses,	il vêtît ;
	que nous vêtissions,	vous vêtissiez,	ils vêtissent.

252. *Vêtir*, in the singular of the Present of the Indicative, and in the singular of the Imperative, is seldom used. It is most frequently reflected, and then it signifies *to dress oneself*. In this sense it is conjugated in its compound tenses, like all other pronominal verbs, with the auxiliary *être*: *Je me SUIS vêtu*; *nous nous SOMMES vêtus*.

253. Conjugate in the same manner:—

*Dévêtir*, to divest, to strip. | *Revêtir*, to clothe, to invest.

#### EXERCISE LXXXVII.

I come from London.—You come very seasonably.—He  
*fort à propos.*  
 came on foot.—Come on Saturday morning, at ten o'clock.—  
*ind-4 à pied.* \* *heures.*  
 He will come back before the end of this month.—We have  
*fin f.* *mois m.*  
 agreed about the conditions.—That she might become more  
*de* — *f.*  
 prudent.—Do you deny the fact?—He will not interfere with  
 — *de fait m.* *dans*  
 that affair.—We shall attain our end.—Remember your  
*affaire f.* *à but m.* *de*  
 promises.—They have relieved all his wants.—He only  
*promesse f.* *On* 119 *à besoin m.* *ne*  
 passed for a traveller, but lately he has assumed the  
*ind-2 que voyageur depuis peu revêtir*  
 character of an envoy.—He dressed himself in haste.  
*caractère m.* \* *envoyé m.* *à art. hâte f. h a.*


### § III. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

254. *ASSEOIR*, to seat, is an active verb; but it is principally used as a reflected verb, and is conjugated as follows:

255. *S'ASSEOIR*, TO SEAT ONESELF, TO SIT, TO SIT DOWN.

	<i>Part. Pres. s'asseyant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, assis.</i>
IND. }	<i>Je m'assieds,</i> <i>tu t'assieds,</i>	<i>il s'assied;</i>
Pres. }	<i>nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez,</i>	<i>{ ils s'asseient (or s'asseyent).</i>
Imp.	<i>Je m'asseyais,</i> <i>tu t'asseyais,</i>	<i>il s'asseyait;</i>
	<i>nous nous asseyions, vous vous asseyiez,</i>	<i>ils s'asseyaient.</i>
Pret.	<i>Je m'assis,</i> <i>tu t'assis,</i>	<i>il s'assit;</i>
	<i>nous nous assîmes, vous vous assîtes,</i>	<i>ils s'assirent.</i>
Fut.	<i>Je m'assiérai,</i> <i>tu t'assiéras,</i>	<i>il s'assiéra;</i>
	<i>nous nous assiérons, vous vous assiérez,</i>	<i>ils s'assiéront.</i>

COND. }	Je m'assiérais,	tu t'assiérais,	il s'assiérait ;
Pres. }	nous nous assiérions,	vous vous assiériez,	ils s'assiéraient.
IMPER.		assieds-toi,	qu'il s'asseye ;
	asseyons-nous,	asseyez-vous,	{ qu'ils s'asseient (or asseyent).
SUBJ. }	Que je m'asseie (or	tu t'asseies (or	il s'asseie (or
	asseye),	asseyes),	asseye) ;
Pres. }	nous nous asseyions,	vous vous asseyiez,	{ ils s'asseient (or asseyent).
Imp. }	que je m'assisse,	tu t'assisses,	il s'assît ;
	que nous nous assissions,	vous vous assissiez,	ils s'assissent.

256.  There is a second form of conjugation for *s'asseoir*: *S'asoyant, assis. Je m'assois, tu t'assois, il s'assoit, nous nous assoyons, vous vous assoyez, ils s'assoient. Je m'asoyais, tu t'asoyais, &c. Je m'assis, &c. Je m'assoirai, &c. Je m'assoirais, &c. Assois-toi, qu'il s'assoie, &c. Que je m'assoie, que tu t'assoies, qu'il s'assoie, que nous nous assoyions, &c. Que je m'assisse, &c.* Both forms are admitted by the Academy, but the first is most in use.

Conjugate in the same manner, *se rasseoir*, to sit down again, to calm, to calm oneself.

*AVOIR*, to have, is conjugated at length, pp. 67 and 68.

257. (a) *CHOIR*, to fall, is only used now in the Infinitive. Example:—*Il s'est laissé choir*. The past participle, *chu, chue*, is obsolete.

(b) *DÉCHOIR*, to decay, to fall off. Past participle, *déchu*. This verb is seldom used in any other tense.

258. *ÉCHOIR*, to fall to ; to expire, to be due. Part. Pres. *échéant*. Part. Past, *échu, échue*. Indic. Pres. *il échoit* or *il échet* ; *ils échoient* or *ils échéent*. Imperf. *il échoyait* ; *ils échoyaient*. Pret. *il échut* ; *ils échurent*. Fut. *il écherra* or *échouira* ; *ils écherront* or *échouiront*. Cond. *il écherrait* or *échouirait* ; *ils écherraient* or *échouiraient*. Pres. Subj. *qu'il échoie* ; *qu'ils échoient*. Imperf. Subj. *qu'il échût* ; *qu'ils échussent*.

*FALLOIR*, to be necessary, is an impersonal verb, the conjugation of which has been given, page 116.

#### EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

Seat the child in an arm-chair. — Why do you not sit  
*fautueil* m. *Pourquoi*  
 down? — He sat down under the shade of a tree. — Shall  
*à* *ombre* f. *arbre* m.



*we sit down here?—Let us sit down, my friends.—Sit down*  
*on this form. — I (had risen) to go out, but he made me*  
*sur banc m. m'étais levé pour* <sup>1</sup>*fit*  
*sit down again.—He is much fallen in the esteem of the*  
*fort déchoir* *estime f.*  
*public.—This bill of exchange is due to-day.*  
*— m. lettre f. change aujourd'hui.*

259. *MOUVOIR*, TO MOVE.

<i>Part. Pres. mouvant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, mu.</i>	
IND. }	Je meus,	tu meus,	il meut ;
Pres. }	nous mouvons,	vous mouvez,	ils meuvent.
Imp.	Je mouvais,	tu mouvais,	il mouvait ;
	nous mouvions,	vous mouviez,	ils mouvaient.
Pret.	Je mus,	tu mus,	il mut ;
	nous mûmes,	vous mûtes,	ils murent.
Fut.	Je mouvrai,	tu mouvras,	il mouvra ;
	nous mouvrons,	vous mouvrez,	ils mouvront.
COND. }	Je mouvrais,	tu mouvrais,	il mouvrait ;
Pres. }	nous mouvriions,	vous mouvriez,	ils mouvraient.
IMPER.		meus,	qu'il meuve ;
	mouvons,	mouvez,	qu'ils meuvent.
SUBJ. }	je meuve,	tu meuves,	il meuve ;
Pres. }	nous mouvions,	vous mouviez,	ils meuvent.
Imp.	je musse,	tu musses,	il mût ;
	nous mussions,	vous mussiez,	ils mussent.

260. Conjugate in the same manner, *émouvoir*, to stir up, to move ; and *promouvoir*, to promote. This last verb is seldom used but in the Infinitive, and in the compound tenses.

*PLEUVOIR*, to rain ; see page 115.

261. *POURVOIR*, TO PROVIDE.

<i>Part. Pres. pourvoyant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, pourvu.</i>	
IND. }	Je purvois,	tu purvois,	il purvoit ;
Pres. }	nous pourvoyons,	vous pourvoyez,	ils pourvoient.
Imp.	Je pourvoyais,	tu pourvoyais,	il pourvoyait ;
	nous pourvoyions,	vous pourvoyiez,	ils pourvoyaient.
Pret.	Je pourvus,	tu pourvus,	il pourvut ;
	nous pourvûmes,	vous pourvûtes,	ils pourvurent.
Fut.	Je pourvoirai,	tu pourvoiras,	il pourvoira ;
	nous pourvoirons,	vous pourvoirez,	ils pourvoiront.
COND. }	Je pourvoirais,	tu pourvoirais,	il pourvoirait ;
Pres. }	nous pourvoirions,	vous pourvoiriez,	ils pourvoiraient.
IMPER.		purvois,	qu'il pourvoie ;
	pourvoyons,	pourvoyez,	qu'ils pourvoient.
SUBJ. }	je purvoie,	tu purvoies,	il purvoie ;
Pres. }	nous pourvoyions,	vous pourvoyiez,	ils pourvoient.
Imp.	je purvusse,	tu purvusses,	il purvût ;
	nous purvussions,	vous purvussiez,	ils purvussent.

262. *POUVOIR*, TO BE ABLE. (To can.—Walker.)

	<i>Part. Pres. pouvant.</i>		<i>Part. Past. pu.</i>
IND. }	Je puis, or je peux,	tu peux,	il peut ;
Pres. }	nous pouvons,	vous pouvez,	ils peuvent.
Imp.	Je pouvais,	tu pouvais,	il pouvait ;
	nous pouvions,	vous pouviez,	ils pouvaient.
Pret.	Je pus,	tu pus,	il put ;
	nous pûmes,	vous pûtes,	ils purent.
Fut.	Je pourrai,	tu pourras,	il pourra ;
	nous pourrons,	vous pourrez,	ils pourront.
COND. }	Je pourrais,	tu pourrais,	il pourrait ;
Pres. }	nous pourrions,	vous pourriez,	ils pourraient.
(No Imperative.)			
SUBJ. }	que je puisse,	tu puisses,	il puisse ;
Pres. }	que nous puissions,	vous puissiez,	ils puissent.
Imp.	que je pusse,	tu pusses,	il pût ;
	que nous pussions,	vous pussiez,	ils pussent.

263. REMARKS.—In the Future and Conditional of this verb, one *r* only is pronounced, although written with two.

(a) In the Present of the Indicative, we say *je puis* or *je peux* ; however, *je puis* is much more used, and ought to be preferred, since interrogatively we always say *puis-je* ?

Quels vœux *puis-je* former ?—(La Harpe.) | What desires may I express ?

Que *puis-je* ajouter à cet éloge ?—(C. Delavigne.) | What more can I add to this eulogium ?

(b) Moreover, *je puis*, and not *je peux*, is the expression employed in the writings of the best French authors.

... Enfin *je puis* parler en liberté ; | At last I may speak freely ; I can  
*Je puis* dans tout son jour mettre | show the truth in all its clear-  
la vérité.—(Racine.) | ness.

Je ne *puis* bien parler, et ne saurais me taire.—(Boileau.) | I cannot speak well, nor yet remain silent.

... Je ne *puis* songer | I cannot imagine that this clock  
Que cette horloge existe, et n'ait | exists, and yet had no maker.  
point d'horloger.—(Voltaire.)

*Je puis* être un serviteur inutile.—(Massillon.) | I may be a useless servant.

(c) We say : *je ne puis*, and *je ne puis pas*. In the first phrase, the negative is less strong : *Je ne puis* implies difficulties. *Je ne puis pas* expresses impossibility.

PRÉVALOIR, to prevail ; see *Valoir*.

PROMOUVOIR, to promote ; see *Mouvoir*.

264. (a) *RAVOIR*, to have again, to get again, is only used in the present of the Infinitive and in the future of the Indicative : *je raurai*, &c.—(Dict. of the Acad.)

(b) Figuratively, and familiarly, we say *se ravoir*, in the sense of *to recover, to gather new strength* :

Allons, monsieur, tâchez un peu de vous ravoir.—(J. J. Rousseau.) | Come, sir, try to recover yourself a little.

## EXERCISE LXXXIX.

The spring which moves the whole machine is very  
ressort m. mouvoir <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> — f.

ingenious.—He moved the heart of that unfeeling man.—  
émouvoir cœur m. <sup>2</sup>insensible <sup>1</sup>

He has been promoted to the dignity of chancellor.—He  
chancelier.

will provide for all your wants.—I cannot answer you.—  
à besoin m.

Can I be useful to you?—Save himself who can.—Can you  
utile Sauve \*

lend me an umbrella?—I could not foresee that event.—  
prêter ind-2 prévoir événement m.

I shall never be able to persuade him.—We would be able  
\* persuader

to go out.—Try to get it again.

\* 245 Tâcher de

## 265. SAVOIR, TO KNOW.

	Part. Pres. sachant.	Part. Past, su.
IND. } Je sais,	tu sais,	il sait ;
Pres. } nous savons,	vous savez,	ils savent.
Imp. } Je savais,	tu savais,	il savait ;
	nous savions,	ils savaient.
Pre. } Je sus,	tu sus,	il sut ;
	nous sûmes,	ils surent.
Fut. } Je saurai,	tu sauras,	il saura ;
	nous saurons,	ils sauront.
COND. } Je saurais,	tu saurais,	il saurait ;
Pres. } nous saurions,	vous sauriez,	ils sauraient.
IMPER. } sachons,	sachez,	qu'il sache ;
		qu'ils sachent.
SUBJ. } je sache,	tu saches,	il sache ;
Pres. } nous sachions,	vous sachiez,	ils sachent.
Imp. } je susse,	tu susses,	il sût ;
	nous sussions,	ils sussent.

266. (a) *Savoir*, with a negative, is sometimes used in the present Subjunctive *without* QUE, instead of the Indicative (as in: *Je ne SACHE rien de plus digne d'éloge*, I know nothing more praiseworthy), to intimate that if the statement does not agree with actual facts, the speaker is not aware of it; hence this form is often followed by a superlative, or by such expressions as have the force of one.

(b) This form is also found, for the same reason, but *with QUE*, after a negative or an interrogative clause, as in: *Il n'y a personne à la maison QUE JE SACHE*. There is nobody at home, as far as I know.—*Cela est-il dangereux, que vous sachiez?* Is that dangerous, as far as you know?

267. The conditional (*je ne saurais*) is sometimes used for *je ne pourrais*, and even for the present, *je ne puis*: *Je ne saurais faire ce que vous me dites* (Acad.), I cannot do what you tell me.—*Ce bois sacré ne saurait périr dans les flots* (Fénelon), This sacred wood could not be submerged.

*Ce qu'on NE SAURAIT FAIRE est difficile; ce qu'on NE PEUT FAIRE est impossible.*

That which one does not know how to perform is difficult; that which one cannot do is impossible.

N.B.—The absolute sense of *pouvoir* is modified and diminished by the use of *savoir* in the Conditional.

268. The student must not confound *savoir* with *connaître*.

(1) *SAVOIR*, signifies mental knowledge, information; as, *to be aware of, to be sensible of, to understand, to know by heart*, also *to know how to*.

(2) *CONNAÎTRE* is *to know by sight, to be acquainted with, &c.* Ex.:—  
Non seulement je *connais* les fables de La Fontaine, mais j'en *sais* beaucoup par cœur.

Not only am I familiar with La Fontaine's fables, but I know many of them by heart.

*Savez-vous où demeure ce monsieur? Non, je ne le connais pas du tout.*

Do you know where this gentleman lives? No, I do not know him at all.

Je *connais* votre neveu; c'est un jeune homme qui *sait* beaucoup de choses pour son âge.

I know your nephew; he is a young man who knows many things for his age.

*Savez-vous le français?*

Do you know French?

Je ne *connais* pas Londres.

I am not acquainted with London.

Je *sais* nager et patiner.

I can swim and skate.

(3) *SE CONNAÎTRE* à or *EN*, is *to be a judge of, a connoisseur*. Example:—

*Il se connaît EN poésie.*—(Acad.)

He is a judge of poetry.

*Moi, j'en crois ceux qui s'y connaissent.*—(Béranger.)

For my own part, I trust to those who know about the matter.

269. (a) *SEoir*, *to become, to befit*, is never used in the present of the Infinitive. It has only the participle present, *seyant* or *séant*, and the third persons of some of the simple tenses: *il sied, ils sièent; il seyait, ils seyaient; il siéra, ils siéront; il siérait, ils siéraient; qu'il siée, qu'ils sièent*.

(b) When *seoir* signifies *to sit*, it has only the two Participles, *séant* and *sis*, which are used in law and are respectively translated into English by *sitting*, and *situate* or *situated*.

270. **MESSEJOIR**, *not to become*, is used in the Pres. Ind. *je messieds, tu messieds, il messied, nous messeyons, vous messeyez, ils messeyent*. Imperf. *je messeyais, &c.* (no preterite). Fut. *je messierai, &c.* Cond. Pres. *je messierais, &c.* (no Imperative). Subj. Pres. *que je messeye, que tu messeyes, qu'il messeye, que nous messeyions, que vous messeyiez, qu'ils messeyent* (no Imperf.) Pres. Part. *messéant* (no Past Part., and therefore no compound tenses).

271. **SURSEOIR**.—Pres. Part. *sursoyant*. Past Part. *sursis*. Pres. Ind. *je sursois, tu sursois, il sursoit, nous sursoyons, vous sursoyez, ils sursoient*. Imperf. *je sursoyais, &c.* Pret. *je sursis, &c.* Fut. *je surseoirai, &c.* Cond. Pres. *je surseoirais, &c.* Imp. *sursois, &c.* Subj. Pres. *que je sursoie, &c.* Imperf. *que je sursisse, &c.*

N.B.—This verb is chiefly used as a law term, meaning to *postpone*, to *delay*.

### EXERCISE XC.

I know that he is not your friend, but I know likewise  
 that he is a man of probity.—The wise man knows how to  
 regulate his taste, his labours, and his pleasures.—Do you  
 know Spanish? — They do not know their lessons.—Milton  
 knew Homer almost by heart.—I shall know well how to  
 (defend myself).—(In order) that you may know it.—The  
 head-dress which that lady wore became her very well.—  
 Colours that are too gaudy will not become you.—They  
 have not offended you (as far as I know).—(I do not know)  
 that Peter is with them.—Will our uncle come  
 (as far as you know)?—We cannot tell you how pleased  
 we are.—I could not do such a thing.—Do you know this

de pl. aussi  
 \* bien. sage \* \*  
 régler goût pl. travail \*  
 art. espagnol 21 (d) leçon —  
 Homère presque cœur. \* \*  
 me défendre Afin  
 coiffure f. que porter ind-2 ind-2 lui  
 art. couleur f. \* \* voyant m.  
 offenseur pl. m. 266 (b) 266 (a)  
 subj-1 f. oncle  
 266 (b) 267 <sup>2</sup>dire <sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup>combien <sup>4</sup>content  
 4 5 267 faire <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> <sup>3</sup>chose f. 268 (2)

work? — Not only do I know it, but I know it almost by  
*ouvrage m.* \* 268 (1) *presque*  
 heart. — (Are you a judge) of pictures? — (Is he competent  
 268 (3) *en tableau pl.* 268 (3)  
 to judge) of those matters? — Can your sisters draw?  
*à chose pl.* 268 (1) *dessiner*

## 272. VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

	<i>Part. Pres. valant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. valu.</i>
IND. }	Je vaur,	tu vaur,
Pres. }	nous valons,	vous valez,
Imp. }	Je valais,	tu valais,
	nous valions,	vous valiez,
Pret. }	Je valus,	tu valus,
	nous valûmes,	vous valûtes,
Fut. }	Je vaudrai,	tu vaudras,
	nous vaudrons,	vous vaudrez,
COND. }	Je vaudrais,	tu vaudrais,
Pres. }	nous vaudrions,	vous vaudriez,
IMPER.		vaur,
	valons,	valez,
SUBJ. }	que je vaille,	tu vailles,
Pres. }	que nous valions,	vous valiez,
Imp. }	que je valusse,	tu valusses,
	que nous valussions.	vous valussiez,
		il vaut ;
		ils valent.
		il valait ;
		ils valaient.
		il valut ;
		ils valurent.
		il vaudra ;
		ils vaudront.
		il vaudrait ;
		ils vaudraient.
		qu'il vaille ;
		qu'ils valissent.
		il vaille ;
		ils valissent.
		il valût ;
		ils valussent.

In the compound tenses, *valoir* takes the auxiliary *avoir*.

Conjugate in the same manner : —

*Équivaloir, to be equivalent.* | *revaloir, to return like for like.*

273. *Prévaloir*, to prevail, follows the same conjugation, excepting that in the Subjunctive Present it makes, *que je prévale, que tu prévaies, qu'il prévale ; que nous prévalions, que vous prévaliez, qu'ils prévalent ;* and not, *que je prévaille, que tu prévailles, &c.*

## EXERCISE XCI.

This cloth is worth (twenty shillings) a yard. —  
*drap m.* *vingt-cinq francs le mètre.*

Actions are better than words. — His horse was not  
 art. *effet m. valoir* art. *parole f.*

worth ten guineas. — That victory procured him the staff  
*guinée victoire f. valoir lui bâton m.*

of a marshal of France. — One kilogramme is equivalent, in  
 \* *maréchal* — *m. équivaloir en*

English weights, to about two pounds ~~two~~ ounces. — That  
*anglais poids à environ livre f. once f.*

answer *will be equivalent* to a refusal. — Favour often  
*réponse* f. *refus* m. art. 2  
*prevails* over merit. — His advice *prevailed*. — That  
 1 *sur* art. *mérite* m. *avis* m.  
 consideration has *prevailed* over all others. — Doubt not  
*considération* f. art. *douter*  
 that truth will *prevail* at last.  
 art. \* *ne subj-1 à la longue*.

## 274. VOIR, TO SEE.

	Part. Pres. voyant.		Part. Past, vu.
IND. }	Je vois,	tu vois,	il voit ;
Pres. }	nous voyons,	vous voyez,	ils voient.
Imp.	Je voyais,	tu voyais,	il voyait ;
	nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils voyaient.
Pret.	Je vis,	tu vis,	il vit ;
	nous vîmes,	vous vîtes,	ils virent.
Fut.	Je verrai,	tu verras,	il verra ;
	nous verrons,	vous verrez,	ils verront.
COND. }	Je verrais,	tu verrais,	il verrait ;
Pres. }	nous verrions,	vous verriez,	ils verraient.
IMPER.		vois,	qu'il voie ;
	voyons,	voyez,	qu'ils voient.
SUBJ. }	que je voie,	tu voies,	il voie ;
Pres. }	que nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils voient.
Imp.	que je visse,	tu visses,	il vît ;
	que nous vissions,	vous vissiez,	ils vissent.

275. Conjugate in the same manner, *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of ; *revoir*, to see again ; and *prévoir*, to foresee. Observe, however, that this last verb makes in the Future, *je prévoirai*, *tu prévoiras*, &c., and in the Conditional, *je prévoirais*, &c.

## EXERCISE XCII.

I see it now. — I saw it with my own eyes.—That  
*maintenant*. ind-4 *de propre*  
 reform (will take place), but we shall not see it.—You shall  
*réforme* f. *aura lieu*  
 see what I can do. — Let us see your purchases.—See the  
*ce que* *sais faire*. *emplette* f.  
 admirable order of the universe : does it not announce a  
 2— 1*ordre* m. *univers* m. *annoncer*  
 supreme architect? — When shall we see your sisters again?  
*Quand*

— To finish their affairs, it would be necessary that they  
*Pour* *affaire f.* *faillir*  
 should see each other. — Wise men foresees events. —  
*s'entrevoir* subj-2 art. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> art.  
 I shall not put off the pursuit of that affair.  
 271 *poursuite f. pl.*

## 276. VOULOIR, TO WILL; TO BE WILLING; TO WISH.

	<i>Part. Pres. voulant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, voulu.</i>	
IND. }	Je veux,	tu veux,	il veut ;	
Pres. }	nous voulons,	vous voulez,	ils veulent.	
Imp. }	Je voulais ,	tu voulais,	il voulait ;	
	nous voulions,	vous vouliez,	ils voulaient.	
Pret. }	Je voulus,	tu voulus,	il voulut ;	
	nous voulûmes,	vous voulûtes,	ils voulurent.	
Fut. }	Je voudrai,	tu voudras,	il voudra ;	
	nous voudrons,	vous voudrez,	ils voudront.	
COND. }	Je voudrais,	tu voudrais,	il voudrait ;	
Pres. }	nous voudrions,	vous voudriez,	ils voudraient.	
IMPER. }	Veuillez, { The second pers. pl. is the only one used, and signifies, <i>be so good as, be so kind as to.</i> †			
SUBJ. }	je veuille,	tu veuilles,	il veuille ;	
Pres. }	nous voulions,	vous vouliez,	ils veuillent.	
Imp. }	je voulusse,	tu voulusses,	il voudût ;	
	nous voulussions,	vous voulussiez,	ils voulussent.	

† Observe that in the Present Subjunctive the *two first* persons plural are regular (viz.: *que nous voulions, que vous vouliez*), and that all the other persons of that tense are irregular.

## EXERCISE XCIII.

I can and *will* tell the truth. — He *wishes* to set out  
 pron. *dire vérité f.* \*  
 to-morrow. — If you *are willing*, he *will be willing* also. —  
*demain.* *le* *le* *aussi.*  
 We *wish* to be free. — He *wished* to accompany me. — They will  
 \* *libre.* \* *accompagner* *On*  
 give you whatever you *wish*. — I *should wish* (him to come.)  
*tout ce que* *ind-7* *qu'il vint. ‡*  
 — He *would wish* to speak to you in private. —  
 \* \* *en particulier.*  
 Have the goodness to read this letter. — Heaven *wills* it so.  
 276 imp. \* *lire* art. *ainsi.*

† Some admit of a second Imperative, *veux, voulons, voulez*, but they use it only in very rare instances, as in this phrase, *VOULONS, et nous pourrons.*

‡ Or *qu'il vienne*, because the Conditional here does not express a condition; but merely a wish, a desire. — (LITTRÉ's Dictionary.)



# § IV. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## 277. ABSOUDRE, TO ABSOLVE.

Part. Pres. absolvant.		Part. Past, absous, m.; absoute, f.	
IND. }	J'absous,	tu absous,	il absout ;
Pres. }	nous absolvons,	vous absolvez,	ils absolvent.
Imp.	J'absolvais,	tu absolvais,	il absolvait ;
	nous absolvions,	vous absolviez,	ils absolvaient.
(No Preterite Definite.)			
Fut.	J'absoudrai,	tu absoudras,	il absoudra ;
	nous absoudrons,	vous absoudrez,	ils absoudront.
COND. }	J'absoudrais,	tu absoudrais,	il absoudrait ;
Pres. }	nous absoudrions,	vous absoudriez,	ils absoudraient.
IMPER.		absous,	qu'il absolve ;
	absolvons,	absolvez,	qu'ils absolvent.
SUBJ. }	j'absolve,	tu absolves,	il absolve ;
Pres. }	nous absolvions,	vous absolviez,	ils absolvent.
(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)			

## 278. Conjugate in the same manner, *dissoudre*, to dissolve.

**ABSTRAIRE**, to *abstract*, is conjugated like *traire*, but is little used ; it is more customary to say *faire abstraction de*.

**ACROÏRE** is used in the Present of the Infinitive only, with any of the tenses of the verb *faire*, when it signifies, *faire croire ce qui n'est pas*, to make one believe what is not true, to impose upon one.

**ACROÎTRE**, to *increase*, is conjugated like *croître*.

**ADMETTRE**, to *admit*, like *mettre*.

**ATTEINDRE**, to *reach*. See *Peindre*.

279. **ATTRAIRE**, to *attract*, to *allure*, is used only in the Infinitive : *Le sel est bon pour attirer les pigeons*, salt is good for attracting pigeons. *Attirer* often supplies its place, and is more harmonious.

280. **BRAIRE**, to *bray*, is only used in the Inf. Pres. ; and in the third persons of the Ind. Pres. *il brait*, *ils braient* ; Fut. *il braira*, *ils brairont* ; Cond. Pres. *il brairait*, *ils brairaient*.

281. **BRUIRE**, to *rustle*, to *resound*, to *rattle*, is used only in the Inf. Pres. ; in the singular of the Ind. Pres. *je bruis*, *tu bruis*, *il bruit* ; Imperf. *je bruysais*, *tu bruysais*, *il bruysait*, *nous bruisions*, *vous bruysiez*, *ils bruysaient* ; Fut. *je bruirai*, *tu bruiras*, *il bruirra*, *nous bruirons*, *vous bruirez*, *ils bruiront* ; Cond. Pres. *je bruirais*, *tu bruirais*, *il bruirait*, *nous bruirions*, *vous bruiriez*, *ils bruiraient*. It has a past participle, *bruit*, and consequently the compound tenses. It has also a present participle, which is used adjectively—viz., *bruyant*.

*N.B.*—Custom is introducing another form for the Imperfect Indicative of BRUIRE—viz., *je bruissais, tu bruissais, &c.* Bernardin de Saint-Pierre says: *Les insectes bruissaient sous l'herbe* (the insects were rustling under the grass); and Lamartine: *La ville bruissait à ses pieds* (the town was murmuring at his feet). Another form for the Pres. Part., *bruissant* (often used adjectively), and another for the Pres. Subj., *que je bruise, &c.*, are also coming into use.—(LITTRÉ'S Dict.)

## EXERCISE XCIV.

I *pardon* you in consideration of your repentance.—She  
*absoudre* *faveur* *repentir*.

was *acquitted*.—These acids *dissolve* metals.—After the  
ind-3 *absoudre* *acide* art.  
death of Alexander, his empire was *dissolved*.—Have the two  
— m.

Houses of Parliament been *dissolved*?—Did the magistrate  
*chambre f. du parlement* 134 *magistrat*  
act wisely in absolving those guilty men?—  
*agir* ind-4 *sagement en* inf-3 *coupable* \*

Asses are exceedingly noisy when braying.—You  
art. *âne* *excessivement bruyant quand ils* ind-1

(will never be able) to make this negro sing; he  
153 *pouvoir* ind-7 \* *faire* <sup>3</sup> *4* *negre* <sup>2</sup> *chanter*

will *bray* (whatever you do).—The leaves were *rustling* in the  
ind-7 *quand même.* *feuille* *bruire*

grove.—All at once (the report of a firearm) *rattled*  
*bocage m. Tout à coup* *un coup de feu* *bruire* ind-4  
in my ear.—What a noisy meeting!  
à *oreille.* \* *bruyant assemblée f.*

## 282. BOIRE, TO DRINK.

	<i>Part. Pres. buvant.</i>	<i>Part. Past, bu.</i>
IND. } <i>Je bois,</i>	<i>tu bois,</i>	<i>il boit ;</i>
Pres. } <i>nous buvons,</i>	<i>vous buvez,</i>	<i>ils boivent.</i>
Imp. } <i>Je buvais,</i>	<i>tu buvais,</i>	<i>il buvait ;</i>
	<i>nous buvions,</i>	<i>ils buvaient.</i>
Pret. } <i>Je bus,</i>	<i>tu bus,</i>	<i>il but ;</i>
	<i>nous bûmes,</i>	<i>ils burent.</i>
Fut. } <i>Je boirai,</i>	<i>tu boiras,</i>	<i>il boira ;</i>
	<i>nous boirons,</i>	<i>ils boiront.</i>
COND. } <i>Je boirais,</i>	<i>tu boirais,</i>	<i>il boirait ;</i>
Pres. } <i>nous boirions,</i>	<i>vous boiriez,</i>	<i>ils boiraient.</i>
IMPER. } <i>bois,</i>	<i>bois,</i>	<i>qu'il boive ;</i>
	<i>buvons,</i>	<i>qu'ils boivent.</i>
SUBJ. } <i>je boive,</i>	<i>tu boives,</i>	<i>il boive ;</i>
Pres. } <i>nous buvions,</i>	<i>vous buviez,</i>	<i>ils boivent.</i>
Imp. } <i>je busse,</i>	<i>tu busses,</i>	<i>il bât ;</i>
	<i>nous bussions,</i>	<i>ils bussent.</i>

## 283. CONCLURE, TO CONCLUDE.

<i>Part. Pres. concluant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, conclu, m.; conclue, f.</i>	
IND. }	Je conclus,	tu conclus,	il conclut ;
Pres. }	nous concluons,	vous concluez,	ils concluent.
Imp. }	Je concluais,	tu concluais,	il concluait ;
	nous concluions,	vous concluiez,	ils concluaien.
Pret. }	Je conclus,	tu conclus,	il conclut ;
	nous conclûmes,	vous conclûtes,	ils conclurent.
Fut. }	Je conclurai,	tu concluras,	il conclura ;
	nous conclurons,	vous conclurez,	ils concluront.
COND. }	Je conclurais,	tu conclurais,	il conclurait ;
Pres. }	nous conclurions,	vous concluriez,	ils concluraient.
IMPER. }		conclus,	qu'il conclue ;
	concluons,	concluez,	qu'ils concluent.
SUBJ. }	que je conclue,	tu conclues,	il conclue ;
Pres. }	que nous concluions,	vous concluiez,	ils concluent.
Imp. }	que je conclusse,	tu conclusses,	il conclût ;
	que nous conclusions,	vous conclussiez,	ils conclussent.

(a) Conjugate in the same manner, *exclure* (to exclude).

(b) The verb *inclure* (to include) is also conjugated like *conclure*, except in the past participle, which is *inclus*, *incluse*.

## EXERCISE XCV.

I have the honour of *drinking* your health. — His best  
*de inf-1 à santé f.*  
 wine is *drunk*. — This paper *blots*. — They *drank* two bottles  
*vin m. boire bouteille*  
 of champagne. — I *shall drink* a glass of white wine. — Let us  
*verre m. 2 1*  
*drink* to the health of our friends. — Come, *drink*. — I never  
*santé f. Allons*  
*drink* wine. — Since he has not arrived, I *conclude* that he  
*154 Puisqu' est en*  
 will not come. — What do you *conclude* from all this? — They  
*Que 109*  
 have *concluded* the bargain. — He was *excluded* from the  
*marché m.*  
 assembly. — Are these conditions included in the deed? —  
*assemblée f. — f. dans acte m.*  
 No, but the seven articles which are included (in it)  
*Non, mais — m. qui 2 3 1y*  
 (will be sufficient).  
*suffiront.*

284. *CONDUIRE*, TO CONDUCT; TO LEAD.

<i>Part. Pres. conduisant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, conduit, m.; conduite, f.</i>	
IND. }	Je conduis,	tu conduis,	il conduit;
Pres. }	nous conduisons,	vous conduisez,	ils conduisent.
Imp.	Je conduisis,	tu conduisais,	il conduisait;
	nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils conduisaient.
Pre.	Je conduisis,	tu conduisais,	il conduisit;
	nous conduistmes,	vous conduisttes,	ils conduisirent.
Fut.	Je conduirai,	tu conduiras,	il conduira;
	nous conduirons,	vous conduirez,	ils conduiront.
COND. }	Je conduirais,	tu conduirais,	il conduirait;
Pres. }	nous conduirions,	vous conduiriez,	ils conduiraient;
IMPER.		conduis,	qu'il conduise;
	conduisons,	conduisez,	qu'ils conduisent.
SUBJ. }	je conduise,	tu conduises,	il conduise;
Pres. }	nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils conduisent.
Imp.	je conduisisse,	tu conduisisses,	il conduisît;
	nous conduisissions,	vous conduisissiez,	ils conduisissent.

## 285. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Construire,	to construct.	introduire,	to introduce.
cuire,	to cook, to bake.	produire,	to produce.
déduire,	to deduct.	reconduire,	to reconduct.
détruire,	to destroy.	réduire,	to reduce.
instruire,	to instruct.	traduire,	to translate.

286. *Nuire*, to hurt, is conjugated like *conduire*; but its past participle is *nui*, which has no feminine.

## EXERCISE XCVI.

This road leads to the town. — Moses conducted the  
chemin m. Moïse

people of Israel. — They built several ships. — This  
peuple m. Israël construire vaisseau m.

baker bakes twice a day. — Deduct what you have  
boulangier deux fois par ce que

received. — Time destroys everything. — The overflowing  
art. tout débordement m.

of the river destroyed his crop. — Those who instruct  
rivière f. récolte f.

youth, (must arm themselves) with patience. — I  
art. jeunesse f. doivent s'armer de —

shall inform his family of his conduct. — He introduced  
instruire famille f. conduite f.

me into the king's closet. — This country has produced  
dans <sup>2</sup> cabinet m. pays m.

many great men.—What book *are* you *translating*?—  
*beaucoup de* *livre m.* 157

This is well *translated*.—*Translate* this.—That affair *has*  
 109 84 *affaire*

*hurt* his reputation.  
*à*

### 287. CONFIRE, TO PICKLE, TO PRESERVE.

<i>Part. Pres. confisant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, confit, m.; confite, f.</i>	
IND. }	Je confis,	tu confis,	il confit ;
Pres. }	nous confisons,	vous confisez,	ils confisent.
Imp.	Je confisais,	tu confisais,	il confisait ;
	nous confisions,	vous confissiez,	ils confissaient.
Pret.	Je confis,	tu confis,	il confit ;
	nous confimes,	vous confîtes,	ils confirent.
Fut.	Je confirai,	tu confiras,	il confira ;
	nous confirons,	vous confirez,	ils confiront.
COND. }	Je confirais,	tu confirais,	il confirait ;
Pres. }	nous confirions,	vous confiriez,	ils confiraient.
IMPER.		confis,	qu'il confise ;
	confisons,	confisez,	qu'ils confissent.
SUBJ. }	je confisse,	tu confisses,	il confisse ;
Pres. }	nous confissions,	vous confissiez,	ils confissent.
Imp.	je confisse,	tu confisses,	il confit ;
	nous confissions,	vous confissiez,	ils confissent.

288. Conjugate in the same manner (except in the past participle) :—

*Suffire, to suffice, to be sufficient. Past Part. suffi* (no feminine).

*Circoncire, to circumcise. Past Part. circoncis* (often used figuratively).

Both *suffire* and *circoncire* are conjugated with *avoir*.

### EXERCISE XCVII.

I *shall preserve* some fruits this year. — *Will* you *preserve*  
 ——— *années f.*

these cherries with sugar or with brandy? — *Preserve*  
*cerise f. à art. art. eau-de-vie f.*

some apricots and peaches. — Have you *pickled* any  
*abricot m. 32 pêche f.*

cucumbers? — Little *suffices* to the wise.—A hundred  
*concombre m. Peu de bien s. \**

pounds a year *suffices* him for his maintenance.—  
*livres sterling par an 3rd pers. pl. subsistance f.*

If he lose that lawsuit, all his property *will not suffice*.—  
*perd procès m. y*

That would not suffice me.—That sum is not sufficient to  
*somme f. pour*  
 pay your debts.—Here are three thousand francs, will that  
*dette f. Voici*  
 be enough?—That is enough.—Do you like pickled walnuts?  
*suffire aimer art. 2 noix f.*

## 289. CONNAÎTRE, TO KNOW.

Part. Pres. <i>connaissant.</i>		Part. Past. <i>connu.</i>	
IND. }	Je connais,	tu connais,	il connaît ;
Pres. }	nous connaissons,	vous connaissez,	ils connaissent.
Imp. }	Je connaissais,	tu connaissais,	il connaissait ;
	nous connaissions,	vous connaissiez,	ils connaissaient.
Pret. }	Je connus,	tu connus,	il connut ;
	nous connûmes,	vous connûtes,	ils connurent.
Fut. }	Je connaîtrai,	tu connaîtras,	il connaîtra ;
	nous connaîtrons,	vous connaîtrez,	ils connaîtront.
COND. }	Je connaîtrais,	tu connaîtrais,	il connaîtrait ;
Pres. }	nous connaîtrions,	vous connaîtriez,	ils connaîtraient.
IMPER. }	connaissions,	connais,	qu'il connaisse ;
		connaissez,	qu'ils connaissent.
SUBJ. }	que je connaisse,	tu connaisses,	il connaisse ;
Pres. }	que nous connaissions,	vous connaissiez,	ils connaissent.
Imp. }	que je connusse,	tu connusses,	il connût ;
	que nous connussions,	vous connussiez,	ils connussent.

See No. 268, for Remark on *Savoir* and *Connaître*.

## 290. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Disparaître,	to disappear.	reconnaître,	to know again.
paraître,	to appear.	reparaître,	to appear again.

## EXERCISE XCVIII.

I know him perfectly. — He knows his (weak side.)—  
*parfaitement. faible m.*

We know nobody in this neighbourhood.—Do you know our  
 124 *voisinage m.*

house?—He knew me by my voice.—I would know him  
*à \* art. voix f.*

among a thousand.—The compass was not known to the  
*entre \* boussole f. de*

ancients.—At the approach of our troops, the enemy  
*approche f. pl.*

disappeared.—It seems you are wrong.—You do not  
*paraître que avoir tort.*

appear convinced.—Do you not recognise me?—I recognise  
*convaincu reconnaître*

you. — Do they *acknowledge* their errors? — He *knew* his horse again.  
*reconnaître*

CONTREDIRE, to contradict; see *Dire*.

### 291. COUDRE, TO SEW.

	Part. Pres. cousant.	Part. Past, cousu.
IND. } Je couds,	tu couds,	il coud ;
Pres. } nous cousons,	vous cousez,	ils cousent.
Imp. } Je cousais,	tu cousais,	il cousait ;
	nous cousions,	ils cousaient.
Pret. } Je cousis,	tu cousis,	il cousit ;
	nous cousîmes,	ils cousirent.
Fut. } Je coudrai,	tu coudras,	il coudra ;
	nous coudrons,	ils coudront.
COND. } Je coudrais,	tu coudrais,	il coudrait ;
Pres. } nous coudrions,	vous coudriez,	ils coudraient.
IMPER. } couds,	cousez,	qu'il couse ;
	cousons,	qu'ils cousent.
SUBJ. } je couse,	tu couses,	il couse ;
Pres. } nous cousions,	vous cousiez,	ils cousent.
Imp. } je cussisse,	tu cussisses,	il cussît ;
	nous cussions,	ils cussissent.

292. *Découdre*, to unsew, and *recoudre*, to sew again, are conjugated in the same manner.

### 293. CRAINDRE, TO FEAR.

	Part. Pres. craignant.	Part. Past, craint, m.; crainte, f.
IND. } Je crains,	tu crains,	il craint ;
Pres. } nous craignons,	vous craignez,	ils craignent.
Imp. } Je craignais,	tu craignais,	il craignait ;
	nous craignions,	ils craignaient.
Pret. } Je craignis,	tu craignis,	il craignit ;
	nous craignîmes,	ils craignirent.
Fut. } Je craindrai,	tu craindras,	il craindra ;
	nous craindrons,	ils craindront.
COND. } Je craindrais,	tu craindrais,	il craindrait ;
Pres. } nous craindrions,	vous craindriez,	ils craindraient.
IMPER. } crains,	craignez,	qu'il craigne ;
	craignons,	qu'ils craignent.
SUBJ. } je craigne,	tu craignes,	il craigne ;
Pres. } nous craignons,	vous craigniez,	ils craignent.
Imp. } je craignisse,	tu craignisses,	il craignît ;
	nous craignissions,	ils craignissent.

294. Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *aindre* and *oindre*; as, *plaindre*, to pity, and *joindre*, to join. — When *plaindre* is used reflectively, it signifies to

complain : *Je vous plains, mais JE ne ME PLAINS pas de vous* ; I pity you, but I do not complain of you.

## EXERCISE XCIX.

That girl *sews* well. — My sisters *were sewing* when I  
ind-2 m.  
came back. — Sew a button on this waistcoat. — That  
revenir ind-4 bouton m. à gilet m.  
is badly *sewed*. — His coat was torn, but his tailor *sewed*  
mal habit m. déchiré tailleur  
it again very neatly. — He is *afraid* of being discovered. —  
proprement. craindre d' inf-1 découvert  
He was a man who *feared* nothing. — I *pity* his family. — He  
C' ind-2 famille f.  
*complains* without cause. — They *were* always *complaining*. —  
se plaindre sujet. 2 toujours 1 ind-2  
They united their efforts. — Let us unite prudence with  
joindre — m. art. — f. à  
courage.  
art. — m.

## 295. CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

Part. Pres. croyant.		Part. Past, cru, m.; crue, f.	
IND. }	Je crois,	tu crois,	il croit ;
Pres. }	nous croyons,	vous croyez,	ils croient.
Imp.	Je croyais,	tu croyais,	il croyait ;
	nous croyions,	vous croyiez,	ils croyaient.
Pret.	Je crus,	tu crus,	il crut ;
	nous crûmes,	vous crûtes,	ils crurent.
Fut.	Je croirai,	tu croiras,	il croira ;
	nous croirons,	vous croirez,	ils croiront.
COND. }	Je croirais,	tu croirais,	il croirait ;
Pres. }	nous croirions,	vous croiriez,	ils croiraient.
IMPER.		crois,	qu'il croie ;
	croyons,	croyez,	qu'ils croient.
SUBJ. }	je croie,	tu croies,	il croie ;
Pres. }	nous croyions,	vous croyiez,	ils croient.
Imp.	je crusse,	tu crusses,	il crût ;
	nous crussions,	vous crussiez,	ils crussent.

## 296. CROÎTRE, TO GROW.

Part. Pres. croissant.		Part. Past, crâ, m.; crâe, f.	
IND. }	Je crois,	tu crois,	il croît ;
Pres. }	nous croissons,	vous croissez,	ils croissent.
Imp.	Je croissais,	tu croissais,	il croissait ;
	nous croissions,	vous croissiez,	ils croissaient.
Pret.	Je crâs,	tu crâs,	il crût ;
	nous crâmes,	vous crâtes,	ils crurent.



<i>Fut.</i>	Je <i>croîtrai</i> ,	tu <i>croîtras</i> ,	il <i>croîtra</i> ;
	nous <i>croîtrons</i> ,	vous <i>croîtrez</i> ,	ils <i>croîtront</i> .
COND. }	Je <i>croîtrais</i> ,	tu <i>croîtrais</i> ,	il <i>croîtrait</i> ;
<i>Pres.</i> }	nous <i>croîtrions</i> ,	vous <i>croîtriez</i> ,	ils <i>croîtraient</i> .
IMPER.		<i>crois</i> ,	qu'il <i>croisse</i> ;
	<i>croissons</i> ,	<i>croissez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>croissent</i> .
SUBJ. }	je <i>croisse</i> ,	tu <i>croisses</i> ,	il <i>croisse</i> ,
<i>Pres.</i> }	nous <i>croissions</i> ,	vous <i>croissiez</i> ,	ils <i>croissent</i> .
<i>Imp.</i>	je <i>crâsse</i> ,	tu <i>crâsses</i> ,	il <i>crât</i> ;
	nous <i>crâssions</i> ,	vous <i>crâssiez</i> ,	ils <i>crâssent</i> .

297. Conjugate in the same manner, *accroître*, to increase, and *décroître*, to decrease.

298. *Accru* and *décrû*, past participles of *accroître* and *décroître*, are written without any accent.—(*Acad.*)

### EXERCISE C.

I *believe* you. — She *believes* only what she sees. — Do  
*ne que ce qu'*  
 you *think* that I wish to deceive you? — He *thought*  
*croire vouloir subj-1 \* tromper ind-2*  
 to gain his lawsuit. — They *thought* they heard some cries. —  
*\* gagner ind-3 \* inf-1 cri m.*  
 I *should think* (I would be wanting) in my duty. — *Believe*  
*manquer à devoir m.*  
 nothing of all that. — He *thought* he was doing well. — The  
*ind-4*  
 vine does not *grow* in cold countries. — These plants  
*vigne f. art. 2 1 pays m. plante f.*  
 grow on the margin of streams. — His fortune *increases*  
*bord m. art. ruisseau m. — f. s'*  
 every day. — The river has *fallen* (five centimetres).† —  
*tous les jours. rivière f. décroître de centimètre m.*  
 After Midsummer, the days begin to *shorten*.  
*la Saint-Jean décroître*

### 299. DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.

	<i>Part. Pres. disant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. dit, m.; dite, f.</i>
IND. }	Je <i>dis</i> ,	tu <i>dis</i> ,
<i>Pres.</i> }	nous <i>disons</i> ,	vous <i>dites</i> ,
<i>Imp.</i>	Je <i>disais</i> ,	tu <i>disais</i> ,
	nous <i>disions</i> ,	vous <i>disiez</i> ,
<i>Pret.</i>	Je <i>dis</i> ,	tu <i>dis</i> ,
	nous <i>dîmes</i> ,	vous <i>dîtes</i> ,
<i>Fut.</i>	Je <i>dirai</i> ,	tu <i>diras</i> ,
	nous <i>dirons</i> ,	vous <i>direz</i> ,
		il <i>dit</i> ;
		ils <i>disent</i> .
		il <i>disait</i> ;
		ils <i>disaient</i> .
		il <i>dit</i> ;
		ils <i>dirent</i> .
		il <i>dira</i> ;
		ils <i>diront</i> .

† About two inches English.

COND. }	Je dirais,	tu dirais,	il dirait ;
Pres. }	nous dirions,	vous diriez,	ils diraient.
IMPER.		dis,	qu'il dise ;
	disons,	dites,	qu'ils disent.
SUBJ. }	je dise,	tu dises,	il dise ;
Pres. }	nous disions,	vous disiez,	ils disent.
Imp. }	je disse,	tu dissés,	il dit ;
	nous dissions,	vous dissiez,	ils dissent.

300. *Redire*, to say again, to find fault with, is conjugated like *dire* ; but

Contredire,	to contradict,	} make in the 2d pers. plur. of the pres. of the Ind. and of the Imper.	{ contredisez. dédisez. interdisez. médisez. prédisez.
dédire,	to disown,		
interdire,	to prohibit,		
médire,	to slander,		
prédire,	to foretell,		

301. *Maudire*, to curse, is conjugated like *dire*, except that it takes double *s* in the Part. Pres. *maudissant* ; in the IND. Pres. *nous maudissons*, *vous maudissez*, *ils maudissent* ; in the Imp. *je maudissais*, &c. ; in the IMPER. *qu'il maudisse*, *maudissons*, &c., and in the SUBJ. *que je maudisse*, *que tu maudisses*, &c.

## EXERCISE CI.

He tells all he knows.—Those who say : I shall not  
*ce qu' savoir Ceux*  
 work, are the most miserable.—Tell us which you would  
*travailler*  
 prefer.—You always contradict me.—That physician prohibits  
*préférer 3 2 1 médecin*  
 wine to all his patients.—He slanders everybody.  
*art. malade de tout le monde.*  
 —The makers of almanacs foretell rain and fine  
*faiseur almanach art. pluie f. art.*  
 weather. — Do not say : That man is of one people, and  
*temps m. Celui-là peuple m.*  
 I am of another people : for all people have had on  
*moi car art*  
 earth the same father, who was Adam, and have in  
*art. ind-2 —*  
 heaven the same father, who is God.  
*art. ciel m.*

DISSOUDRE is conjugated like *absoudre* ; see p. 160.

302. (a) *ÉCLORE*, to be hatched, as birds, or to blow like a flower, is used only in the present of the Infinitive; in the Part. Past, *éclos*, f. *éclose*, and in the third persons of the following tenses:—IND. Pres. *il éclôt*, *ils éclosent*; Imp. *il éclosait*, *ils éclosaient*; Fut. *il éclôra*, *ils éclôront*; COND. *il éclôrait*, *ils éclôraient*; SUBJ. Pres. *qu'il éclore*, *qu'ils éclosent*. But its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, are much in use.

(b) *CLORE*, to close, to shut.—Past Part. *clos*, *close*. IND. Pres. *je clos*, *tu clos*, *il clôt*—(no plural). Fut. *je clorai*, *tu cloras*, &c. COND. Pres. *je clorais*, &c. IMPER. *clos*. SUBJ. Pres. *que je close*, &c.

(c) *DÉCLORE*, to disclose, to uncloze, is conjugated like *clore*, but has no Imperative.

N.B.—*Éclore*, *déclore* and *enclore* are derived from *clore*.

(d) *ENCLORE*, to enclose, to surround.—Past Part. *enclos*, † *enclose*. IND. Pres. *j'enclos*, *tu enclos*, *il enclôt*, *nous enclosions*, *vous enclosez*, *ils enclosent*. Fut. *j'enclorai*, &c. COND. Pres. *j'encloirais*, &c.

Although the French Academy does not say so, this verb is also used in the Pres. Part. *enclosant*; in the Imperf. IND. *j'enclosais*, &c.; in the Imperative, *enclos*, *qu'il enclose*, *qu'ils enclosent*; and in the SUBJ. Pres. *que j'enclose*, &c.—(LITTRÉ.)

### 303. *ÉCRIRE*, TO WRITE.

	Part. Pres. écrivant.		Part. Past, écrit.
IND. }	J'écris,	tu écris,	il écrit;
Pres. }	nous écrivons,	vous écrivez,	ils écrivent.
Imp. }	J'écrivais,	tu écrivais,	il écrivait;
	nous écrivions,	vous écriviez,	ils écrivaient.
Pret. }	J'écrivis,	tu écrivis,	il écrivit;
	nous écrivîmes,	vous écrivîtes,	ils écrivirent.
Fut. }	J'écrirai,	tu écriras,	il écrira;
	nous écrirons,	vous écrirez,	ils écriront.
COND. }	J'écrirais,	tu écrirais,	il écrirait;
Pres. }	nous écririons,	vous écririez,	ils écriraient.
IMPER. }		écris,	qu'il écrive;
	écrivons,	écrivez,	qu'ils écrivent.
SUBJ. }	ne j'écrive,	tu écrives,	il écrive;
Pres. }	ne nous écrivions,	vous écriviez,	ils écrivent.
Imp. }	ne j'écrivisse,	tu écrivisses,	il écrivît;
	ne nous écrivissions,	vous écrivissiez,	ils écrivissent.

### 304. Conjugate in the same manner:—

Circonscrire,	to circumscribe.	proscrire,	to proscribe.
décrire,	to describe.	récrire,	to write again.
inscrire,	to inscribe.	souscrire,	to subscribe.
prescrire.	to prescribe.	transcrire,	to transcribe.

† *ENCLOS* The masculine form of the Past Part. of *enclore* is also used as a noun: *un enclos*, an enclosure,

## EXERCISE CII.

Silk - worms *are hatched* in the beginning of  
 art. *ver à soie* ind-1 à commencement m.

spring. — These flowers *will soon blow*. — That man  
 art. *printemps* m. <sup>2</sup>bientôt <sup>1</sup>

speaks well, but he *writes* badly. — Saint John *wrote* his  
*mal.* — ind-3

gospel at the age of ninety, and joined the attributes  
*évangile* m. *ans* ind-3 *qualité* f. s.

of an evangelist to those of an apostle and a prophet. —  
 \* *celle* s. \* *apôtre* de \*

I *shall write* to you from Naples. — *Write* that on a sheet  
*feuille* f.

of paper. — This poet *describes* a battle well. — His  
<sup>2</sup> *bataille* f. <sup>1</sup>

physician has *prescribed* to him another regimen. — Sylla  
*médecin* 102 *régime* m. —

*proscribed* three or four thousand Roman citizens. — He *does*  
 ind-3 <sup>2</sup> *romain* <sup>1</sup> *citoyen* m.

not *write* again, it is a sign that he is coming. — I *shall*  
*c' \* signe*

*subscribe* for that atlas. — I have *transcribed* several passages  
 — m.

from Cicero and Tacitus.

*Cicéron de Tacite.*

ENSUIVRE (s'), to follow from, to ensue; see Suivre.

ÊTRE, to be, is conjugated at length, p. 72.

## 305. FAIRE, TO DO, TO MAKE.

	Part. Pres. faisant.		Part. Past. fait.
IND. }	Je fais,	tu fais,	il fait ;
Pres. }	nous faisons,	vous faites,	ils font.
Imp. }	Je faisais,	tu faisais,	il faisait ;
	nous faisions,	vous faisiez,	ils faisaient.
Pre. }	Je fis,	tu fis,	il fit ;
	nous fîmes,	vous fîtes,	ils firent.
Fut. }	Je ferai,	tu feras,	il fera ;
	nous ferons,	vous ferez,	ils feront.
COND. }	Je ferais,	tu ferais,	il ferait ;
Pres. }	nous ferions,	vous feriez,	ils feraient.
IMPER. }	faisons,	fais,	qu'il fasse ;
	ne je fasse,	faites,	qu'ils fassent.
SUBJ. }	ne nous fassions	tu fasses,	il fasse ;
Pres. }	ne nous fissiez	vous fassiez,	ils fassent.
Imp. }	ne je fissie,	tu fisses,	il fît ;
	ne nous fissions,	vous fissiez,	ils fissent.

## 306. (a) Conjugate like faire :—

Contrefaire, to counterfeit, to mimic.	parfaire, to perfect, to complete.
défaire, to undo, to defeat.	refaire, to do again.
forfaire, to forfeit.	satisfaire, to satisfy.
méfaire, to do harm, to do evil.	surfaire, to exact, to overcharge.

(b) BIEN-FAIRE, to do good, has become obsolete ; used in INF. Pres., in Past Part. *bien-fait*, and in compound tenses.

(c) MALFAIRE, to do evil, is only used in the INF. Pres., in the Past Participle *malfait*, and in compound tenses.

(d) The masculine form of the Past Part. of *faire*, *bien-faire*, *forfaire*, *méfaire*, is used substantively : *un fait* (a fact), *un bienfait* (a kind act, a good office), *un forfait* (a crime), *un méfait* (a misdeed).

(e) The Present Participle of *bien-faire*, *malfaire*, *satisfaire*, is used adjectively : *un homme bienfaisant* (a benevolent man), *une plante malfaisante* (a noxious plant), *des raisons satisfaisantes* (satisfactory reasons).

(f) The Past Participle of *parfaire* is used adjectively : *un bonheur parfait* (perfect happiness), *une jouissance parfaite* (perfect enjoyment).

## EXERCISE CIII.

I do my duty ; do yours.—Everything she does, she  
*devoir m. Tout ce qu'*

does well.—Pliny relates that Cæsar took above  
*le Plinie rapporter faire ind-3 plus de*  
 800,000 prisoners.—The emperor has made him a knight  
*prisonnier \* chevalier*

of the legion of honour.—She mimics everybody.—What  
 22 (b) *Légion tout le monde. Ce que*

the one does, the other undoes.—Penelope undid, at night,  
*le Pénélope ind-2 \* art.*

the work she had done during the day.—The fleet  
*ouvrage m. qu' \* flotte f.*

of the enemy was completely defeated.—If it were to  
*pl. ind-3 complètement c' ind-2 à*

do again, I would not do it.—That scholar pleases all his  
*satisfaire*

masters.—You ask too much for your goods.  
*surfaire \* marchandise f.*

FEINDRE, to feign, is conjugated like *peindre*.

307. FRIRE, to fry, besides the Present of the Infinitive, is used only in the singular of the Present of the Indicative, *Je fris, tu fris, il frit* ; in the Future, *Je frirai, tu friras, il frira, nous frirons, vous frirez, ils friront* ; in the Conditional, *Je frirais, tu frirais, il frirait, nous fririons,*

*vous fririez, ils friraient*; in the second person singular of the Imperative, *fris*; and in the compound tenses, which are formed with the participle past, *frit, frite*.

To supply the persons and tenses which are wanting, we make use of the verb *faire* prefixed to the Infinitive *frir*; as, *Nous faisons frir, vous faites frir, ils font frir; je faisais frir, &c.*

## 308. LIRE, TO READ.

	<i>Part. Pres. lisant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, lu.</i>
IND. }	Je lis,	tu lis,	il lit;
Pres. }	nous lisons,	vous lisez,	ils lisent.
Imp.	Je lisais,	tu lisais,	il lisait;
	nous lisions,	vous lisiez,	ils lisaient.
Pret.	Je lus,	tu lus,	il lut;
	nous lûmes,	vous lûtes,	ils lurent.
Fut.	Je lirai,	tu liras,	il lira;
	nous lirons,	vous lirez,	ils liront.
COND. }	Je lirais,	tu lirais,	il lirait;
Pres. }	nous lirions,	vous liriez,	ils liraient.
IMPER.		lis,	qu'il lise;
	lisons,	lisez,	qu'ils lisent.
SUBJ. }	ne je lise,	tu lises,	il lise;
Pres. }	ne nous lisions,	vous lisiez,	ils lisent.
Imp.	ne je lusse,	tu lusses,	il lût;
	ne nous lussions,	vous lussiez,	ils lussent.

309. *Élire*, to elect, and *relire*, to read again, are conjugated like *lire*.

## 310. LUIRE, TO SHINE.

<i>Part. Pres. luisant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, lui, m. No feminine.</i>	
IND. }	Je luis,	tu luis,	il luit ;
Pres. }	nous luisons,	vous lueisez,	ils luisent.
Imp.	Je luisais,	tu luisais,	il luisait ;
	nous luisions,	vous luisiez,	ils luisaient.
(No Preterite Definite.)			
Fut.	Je luirai,	tu luiras,	il luira ;
	nous luirons,	vous luirez,	ils luiront.
COND. }	Je luirais,	tu luirais,	il luirait ;
Pres. }	nous luirions,	vous luiriez,	ils luiraient.
(No Imperative.)			
SUBJ. }	Que je luisse,	que tu lisses,	qu'il luisse ;
Pres. }	que nous lussions,	que vous lussiez,	qu'ils lussent.
(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)			

311. *Reluire*, to shine, to glitter, is conjugated like *luire*, but the participle present has never been used in a figurative sense.

MAUDIRE, to curse: see page 169.

## EXERCISE CIV.

Get that fish *fried*.—The soles are not yet *fried*.—  
*Faites* <sup>2</sup> <sup>2</sup>poisson m. <sup>1</sup>inf-1 — f. *encore*  
 I am reading the Roman history.—She reads well.—They read  
 157 <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>  
 distinctly. — What author do you read in your class?—  
*distinctement.* *auteur* m. *classe* f.  
 We are reading Don Quixote. — He is a man who has read  
 157 — *Quichotte.* *O'* <sup>2</sup>  
 (a great deal).—He can neither read nor write.—Read that  
<sup>1</sup>*beaucoup* *ne* 268 (1) *ni* *ni*  
 letter again.—They elected him for their representative.—We  
*ind-3* *représentant.*  
 shall elect the most worthy.—The sun shines for everybody.—  
*digne.* 118  
 Everything shines in that house.—All that glitters is not gold.  
 118 118 *ce qui*

## 312. METTRE, TO PUT.

	<i>Part. Pres. mettant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. mis.</i>
IND. } Je mets,	tu mets,	il met ;
Pres. } nous mettons,	vous mettez,	ils mettent.
Imp. } Je mettais,	tu mettais,	il mettait ;
	nous mettions,	ils mettaient.
Pret. } Je mis,	tu mis,	il mit ;
	nous mîmes,	ils mirent.
Fut. } Je mettrai,	tu mettras,	il mettra ;
	nous mettrons,	ils mettront.
COND. } Je mettrais,	tu mettrais,	il mettrait ;
Pres. } nous mettrions,	vous mettriez,	ils mettraient.
IMPER. } mets,	mettez,	qu'il mette ;
	mettons,	qu'ils mettent.
SUBJ. } que je mette,	tu mettes,	il mette ;
Pres. } que nous mettions,	vous mettiez,	ils mettent.
Imp. } que je misse,	tu missiez,	il mît ;
	nous missions,	ils missent.

## 313. Conjugate in the same manner :—

<i>Admettre,</i>	<i>to admit.</i>	<i>omettre,</i>	<i>to omit.</i>
<i>commettre,</i>	<i>to commit.</i>	<i>permettre,</i>	<i>to permit.</i>
<i>compromettre,</i>	<i>to compromise.</i>	<i>promettre,</i>	<i>to promise.</i>
<i>se démettre,</i>	<i>{ to resign ; to put</i>	<i>remettre,</i>	<i>{ to put again ; to</i>
	<i>out of joint.</i>		<i>put off.</i>
<i>émettre,</i>	<i>to issue, to emit, &amp;c.</i>	<i>soumettre,</i>	<i>to submit.</i>
<i>s'entremettre,</i>	<i>to intermeddle.</i>	<i>transmettre,</i>	<i>to transmit.</i>

## EXERCISE CV.

Put on your *hat*. — You have *put* (the cart before the horse). — I do not *admit* that principle. — They *committed* *bœufs*. — I shall not *compromise* you. — Diocletian *resigned* the empire. — I shall *omit* nothing that depends upon me to serve you. — The law of Mahomet does not *allow* wine. — *Allow* me to tell you. — He *promises* enough, but he *seldom* keeps his word. — Do not *defer* till to-morrow what you can do to-day. — They *submit* to your decision. — His actions *will transmit* his name to posterity. — The bank *issued* afterwards many other notes.

86 *billet* m.

## 314. (a) MOUDRE, TO GRIND (corn, coffee, &amp;c.)

Part. Pres. moultant.		Part. Past, moulu.	
IND. }	Je mouds,	tu mouds,	il moud ;
Pres. }	nous moulons,	vous moulez,	ils moulent.
Imp.	Je moulais,	tu moulais,	il moulait ;
	nous moulions,	vous mouliez,	ils moulaient.
Pret.	Je moulus,	tu moulus,	il moulut ;
	nous moulâmes,	vous moulâtes,	ils moulurent.
Fut.	Je moudrai,	tu moudras,	il moudra ;
	nous moudrons,	vous moudrez,	ils moudront.
COND. }	Je moudrais,	tu moudrais,	il moudrait ;
Pres. }	nous moudrions,	vous moudriez,	ils moudraient.
IMPER.		mouds,	qu'il moule,
	moulons,	moulez,	qu'ils moulent.
SUBJ. }	ne je moule,	tu moules,	il moule ;
Pres. }	ne nous moulions,	vous mouliez,	ils moulent.
Imp.	ne je moulusse,	tu moulusses,	il moulût ;
	ne nous moulussions,	vous moulussiez,	ils moulussent.

(b) Conjugate in the same manner :—

Émoudre, to grind (knives, razors, &c.) | rémoudre, to grind again  
 remoudre, to grind again (corn, &c.) | (knives, razors, &c.)



315. *NAÎTRE*, TO BE BORN, TO COME TO LIFE, &c.

	<i>Part. Pres. naissant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, né.</i>
IND. }	Je nais,	tu nais,	il nait ;
Pres. }	nous naissons,	vous naissez,	ils naissent.
Imp. }	Je naissais,	tu naissais,	il naissait ;
	nous naissions,	vous naissiez,	ils naissaient.
Pret. }	Je naquis,	tu naquis,	il naquit ;
	nous naquîmes,	vous naquîtes,	ils naquirent.
Fut. }	Je naitrai,	tu naitras,	il naitra ;
	nous naitrons,	vous naitrez,	ils naitront.
COND. }	Je naitrais,	tu naitrais,	il naitrait ;
Pres. }	nous naitrions,	vous naitriez,	ils naitraient.
IMPER. }		nais,	qu'il naisse ;
	naissions,	naissiez,	qu'ils naissent.
SUBJ. }	je naisse,	tu naisses,	il naisse ;
Pres. }	nous naissions,	vous naissiez,	ils naissent.
Imp. }	je naquisse,	tu naquisses,	il naquît ;
	nous naquissions,	vous naquissiez,	ils naquissent.

316. This verb takes the auxiliary *être* ; but *renaitre*, to be born again, has no participle past, and, therefore, no compound tenses.

*NUIRE*, to hurt (see Rule No. 286).

317. (a) *OINDRE*, to anoint.—Pres. Part. oignant ; Past Part. oint, ointe ; IND. Pres. *j'oins*, &c. This verb is conjugated in all its tenses like *joindre* (see Rule 294) ; its past participle is also used as a noun.

(b) *POINDRE*, to puncture, to dawn, to sting, is also conjugated like *joindre* (see Rule 294).

## EXERCISE CVI.

This mill does not grind fine enough.—Grind some  
*moulin m.* <sup>2</sup>*fin* <sup>1</sup>

pepper.—Are my scissors ground?—From labour  
*poivre m.* *ciseaux m. pl.* *art. travail m.*

springs health ; from health contentment, source of  
*naître art.* *art.* *art.* —

every joy.—Abraham was born about three hundred and  
*tout joie f.* — *ind-3 environ* \*

fifty years after the deluge.—Moses was born a hundred years  
*an m.* *Moïse* \*

after the death of Jacob.—Napoleon Bonaparte was born at  
 — *Napoléon* —

Ajaccio, in Corsica, on the 15th of August 1769.—They  
 — *en Corse* 77 (2) \*

were born on the same day. — Many diseases spring  
77 (2) *Beaucoup de maladie*

from intemperance. — Everything revives in spring. —  
118 *renaître* 77 (5)

(As soon as) the day shall dawn, our friends will overtake

*Dès que jour m. poindre ami m. rejoindre*

us. — The ancients used to anoint athletes before  
*anciens ind-2 art. athlète avant*

wrestling. — Kings and pontiffs are sometimes  
*art. lutte f. art. roi 31 pontife quelquefois*

called the Lord's anointed.

134 *du Seigneur* <sup>1</sup>m. pl.

### 318. PAÎTRE, TO GRAZE.

*Part. Pres. paissant.*

IND. }	Je pais,	tu pais,	il pait ;
Pres. }	nous paissions,	vous paissiez,	ils paissent.
Imp. }	Je paissais,	tu paissais,	il paissait ;
	nous paissions,	vous paissiez,	ils paissaient.

(No Preterite Definite.)

Fut. }	Je paîtrai,	tu paîtras,	il paîtra ;
	nous paîtrons,	vous paîtrez,	ils paîtront.
COND. }	Je paîtrais,	tu paîtrais,	il paîtrait ;
Pres. }	nous paîtrions,	vous paîtriez,	ils paîtraient.
IMPER. }		païs,	qu'il paise ;
	paissions,	paissiez,	qu'ils paissent.
SUBJ. }	Je paise,	tu paisses,	qu'il paise ;
Pres. }	nous paissions,	vous paissiez,	qu'ils paissent.

(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)

*⚡* The Past Participle *pu* is only used as a term of falconry.

319. *Repâître*, to feed, is conjugated in the same manner, and has, besides, a Preterite Definite, *je repus*, and an Imperfect of the Subjunctive, *que je repusse*.

*PARAÎTRE*, to appear, is conjugated like *Connaître*.

### 320. PEINDRE, TO PAINT.

*Part. Pres. peignant.*

*Part. Past, peint, m. ; peinte, f.*

IND. }	Je peins,	tu peins,	il peint ;
Pres. }	nous peignons,	vous peignez,	ils peignent.
Imp. }	Je peignais,	tu peignais,	il peignait ;
	nous peignions,	vous peigniez,	ils peignaient.
Pret. }	Je peignis,	tu peignis,	il peignit ;
	nous peignîmes,	vous peignîtes,	ils peignirent.
Fut. }	Je peindrai,	tu peindras,	il peindra ;
	nous peindrons,	vous peindrez,	ils peindront.
COND. }	Je peindrais,	tu peindrais,	il peindrait ;
Pres. }	nous peindrions,	vous peindriez,	ils peindraient.

IMPER.		peins,	qu'il peigne ;
	peignons,	peignez,	qu'ils peignent.
SUBJ. }	je peigne,	tu peignes,	il peigne ;
Pres. }	nous peignons,	vous peignez,	ils peignent.
Imp.	je peignisse,	tu peignisses,	il peignît ;
	nous peignissions,	vous peignissiez,	ils peignissent.

321. Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *eindre* ; as,

Astreindre, to bind, to subject.	éteindre, to extinguish, to put out.
atteindre, to attain, to reach.	feindre, to feign.

## EXERCISE CVII.

The sheep quietly feed on the grass  
*mouton m. 3tranquillement 1paître \* 2herbe h m.*  
 under the care of the shepherd and the dogs.—The  
*sous garde f. berger m. pr.*  
 flocks were grazing in the meadows.—He nourishes himself  
*troupeau m. prairie f. se repaître*  
 with vain hopes. — She paints from nature.— Joy  
*d' 2 1espérance f. d'après — art. se*  
 was painted in his eyes.—He has attained his fifteenth year.—  
*ind-2 année f.*  
 We shall reach that village before night.—Put out all  
*— m. art.*  
 the lights. — The fire is out.—He feigns to be sick. — He  
*lumière f. d' malade*  
 pretended not to see him.  
*feindre ind-3 de ne pas \**

## 322. PLAIRE, TO PLEASE.

	Part. Pres. plaisant.	Part. Past, plu.
IND. }	Je plais,	tu plais,
Pres. }	nous plaisons,	vous plaisez,
Imp.	Je plaisais,	tu plaisais,
	nous plaisions,	vous plaisiez,
Pret.	Je plus,	tu plus,
	nous plâmes,	vous plâtes,
Fut.	Je plairai,	tu plairas,
	nous plairons,	vous plairez,
COND. }	Je plairais,	tu plairais,
Pres. }	nous plairions,	vous plairiez,
IMPER.		plais,
	plaisons,	plaisez,
SUBJ. }	je plaise,	tu plaises,
Pres. }	nous plaisions,	vous plussiez,
Imp.	je plussse,	tu plussiez,
	nous plussions,	vous plussiez,

323. Conjugate in the same manner, *déplaître*, to displease, and *complaître*, to humour.

### 324. PRENDRE, TO TAKE.

	<i>Part. Pres. prenant.</i>	<i>Part. Past. pris.</i>
IND. }	Je prends,	tu prends,
Pres. }	nous prenons,	vous prenez,
Imp. }	Je prenais,	tu prenais,
	nous prenions,	vous preniez,
Pret. }	Je pris,	tu pris,
	nous prîmes,	vous prîtes,
Fut. }	Je prendrai,	tu prendras,
	nous prendrons,	vous prendrez,
COND. }	Je prendrais,	tu prendrais,
Pres. }	nous prendrions,	vous prendriez,
IMPER.		prends,
	prenez,	prenez,
SUBJ. }	je prenne,	tu prennes,
Pres. }	nous prenions,	vous preniez,
Imp. }	je prisse,	tu prisses,
	nous prissions,	vous prissiez,
		il prend ;
		ils prennent.
		il prenait ;
		ils prenaient.
		il prit ;
		ils prirent.
		il prendra ;
		ils prendront.
		il prendrait ;
		ils prendraient.
		qu'il prenne ;
		qu'ils prennent.
		il prenne ;
		ils prennent.
		il prit ;
		ils prissent

325. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Apprendre, to learn. [prehend.	se méprendre, to mistake.
comprendre, to understand, to comprehend.	reprendre, { to take back, to re-
désapprendre, to unlearn, to forget.	ply ; to censure.
entreprendre, to undertake.	surprendre, to surprise.

The *n* of the above verbs is always doubled, as in *prendre*, when it comes before the mute terminations *e*, *es*, *ent*.

### EXERCISE CVIII.

That painting *pleases* me more than the other.—*Let us*  
*tableau m.*

not give offence by airs of haughtiness. — He took  
*déplaître* 32 — *hauteur, h a.* 32

guides who conducted him.—I shall take a hackney-coach.—  
*fiacre m.*

Take the first street on the right.—The cat has caught a  
*rue f. à \* droite* *prendre*

mouse. — The place was taken.—*Let us learn* our lesson.—  
*souris f.* — *f. ind-2*

I do not understand these two words. — Philosophy  
*mot m. art.*

comprehends logic, ethics, physics, and  
*art. logique f. art. morale f. s. art. physique f. s.*

metaphysics. — They undertake (too many) things at  
*art. métaphysique f. s. trop de à*

once. — I took up my gun again. — You surprise me  
 art. fois f. \* fusil m.  
 very much by telling me that. — Virtue pleases everybody.  
 beaucoup en art. à

326. *RÉSoudre*, TO RESOLVE.

Part. Pres. <i>résolvant</i> .		Part. Past, <i>résolu, or résous</i> .	
IND. }	Je <i>résous</i> ,	tu <i>résous</i> ;	il <i>résout</i> ;
Pres. }	nous <i>résolvons</i> ,	vous <i>résolvez</i> ,	ils <i>résolvent</i> .
Imp.	Je <i>résolvais</i> ,	tu <i>résolvais</i> ,	il <i>résolvait</i> ;
	nous <i>résolvions</i> ,	vous <i>résolviez</i> ,	ils <i>résolvaient</i> .
Pret.	Je <i>résolus</i> ,	tu <i>résolus</i> ,	il <i>résolut</i> ;
	nous <i>résolûmes</i> ,	vous <i>résolûtes</i> ,	ils <i>résolurent</i> .
Fut.	Je <i>résoudrai</i> ,	tu <i>résoudras</i> ,	il <i>résoudra</i> ;
	nous <i>résoudrons</i> ,	vous <i>résoudrez</i> ,	ils <i>résoudront</i> .
COND. }	Je <i>résoudrais</i> ,	tu <i>résoudrais</i> ,	il <i>résoudrait</i> ;
Pres. }	nous <i>résoudrions</i> ,	vous <i>résoudriez</i> ,	ils <i>résoudraient</i> .
IMPER.		<i>résous</i> ,	qu'il <i>résolve</i> ;
	<i>résolvons</i> ,	<i>résolvez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>résolvent</i> .
SUBJ. }	que je <i>résolve</i> ,	tu <i>résolves</i> ,	il <i>résolve</i> ;
Pres. }	que nous <i>résolvions</i> ,	vous <i>résolviez</i> ,	ils <i>résolvent</i> .
Imp.	que je <i>résolusse</i> ,	tu <i>résolusses</i> ,	il <i>résolût</i> ;
	que nous <i>résolussions</i> ,	vous <i>résolussiez</i> ,	ils <i>résolussent</i> .

327. *N.B.*—When *résoudre* signifies to determine, to decide, the Part. Past, *résolu*, m. *résolue*, f. is to be employed ; but if it mean to change, to reduce, or turn one thing into another, then the Participle *résous* (without feminine), is to be used :

Ce jeune homme a *résolu* de  
 changer de conduite.  
 Le froid a *résous* le brouillard  
 en pluie.

This young man has resolved to  
 change his conduct.  
 The cold has turned the fog  
 into rain.

328. *RIRE*, TO LAUGH.

Part. Pres. <i>riant</i> .		Part. Past, <i>ri, m.</i>		<i>No feminine.</i>	
IND. }	Je <i>ris</i> ,	tu <i>ris</i> ,		il <i>rit</i> ;	
Pres. }	nous <i>riions</i> ,	vous <i>riez</i> ,		ils <i>rient</i> .	
Imp.	Je <i>riaais</i> ,	tu <i>riaais</i> ,		il <i>riaait</i> ;	
	nous <i>riions</i> ,	vous <i>riez</i> ,		ils <i>riaient</i> .	
Pret.	Je <i>ris</i> ,	tu <i>ris</i> ,		il <i>rit</i> ;	
	nous <i>rimés</i> ,	vous <i>rites</i> ,		ils <i>rient</i> .	
Fut.	Je <i>rirai</i> ,	tu <i>riras</i> ,		il <i>rira</i> ;	
	nous <i>rirons</i> ,	vous <i>rirez</i> ,		ils <i>riront</i> .	
COND. }	Je <i>rirais</i> ,	tu <i>rirais</i> ,		il <i>rirait</i> .	
Pres. }	nous <i>ririons</i> ,	vous <i>ririez</i> ,		ils <i>riraient</i> .	
IMPER.		<i>ris</i> ,		qu'il <i>rie</i> ;	
	<i>riions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,		qu'ils <i>rient</i> .	
SUBJ. }	que je <i>rie</i> ,	tu <i>ries</i> ,		il <i>rie</i> ;	
Pres. }	que nous <i>riions</i> ,	vous <i>riez</i> ,		ils <i>rient</i> .	
Imp.	que je <i>risse</i> ,	tu <i>risse</i> ,		il <i>rit</i> ;	
	que nous <i>rissons</i> ,	vous <i>risseriez</i> ,		ils <i>risseraient</i> .	

(a) *Rire* is also used with a double pronoun, in the sense of to laugh at, to ridicule; as, *JE ME RIS de ses menaces*, I laugh at his threats.

(b) *Sourire*, to smile, is conjugated in the same manner.

*SUFFIRE*, to suffice, to be sufficient; see No. 288.

## EXERCISE CIX.

We resolved to set out immediately. — Have they resolved  
ind-3 *de* *sur-le-champ*. *A-t-on*  
on peace or war? — Everybody is laughing at his  
\* art. art. 118  
expense. — She was laughing most heartily. — They were  
*dépens* m. pl. 157 *de tout son cœur*.  
laughing (in their sleeves). — They laughed even to tears. —  
*sous cape*. \* art. *larme*  
You make me laugh. — Fortune smiles on him. — She  
art. — f. \* *lui*  
smiled at my embarrassment. — He smiled to him, in sign of  
ind-2 *de* *embarras* m. ind-3 *en*  
approbation. — He came up to me smiling.  
— ind-3 *au-devant de moi en*

## 329. SUIVRE, TO FOLLOW.

	Part. Pres. suivant.	Part. Past. suivi.
IND. } <i>Je suis,</i>	<i>tu suis,</i>	<i>il suit;</i>
Pres. } <i>nous suivons,</i>	<i>vous suivez,</i>	<i>ils suivent.</i>
Imp. } <i>Je suivais,</i>	<i>tu suivais,</i>	<i>il suivait;</i>
	<i>nous suivions,</i>	<i>ils suivaient.</i>
Pret. } <i>Je suivis,</i>	<i>tu suivis,</i>	<i>il suivit;</i>
	<i>nous suivîmes,</i>	<i>ils suivirent.</i>
Fut. } <i>Je suivrai,</i>	<i>tu suivras,</i>	<i>il suivra;</i>
	<i>nous suivrons,</i>	<i>ils suivront.</i>
COND. } <i>Je suivrais,</i>	<i>tu suivrais,</i>	<i>il suivrait;</i>
Pres. } <i>nous suivrions,</i>	<i>vous suivriez,</i>	<i>ils suivraient.</i>
IMPER. } <i>suis,</i>	<i>suivez,</i>	<i>qu'il suive;</i>
	<i>suivez,</i>	<i>qu'ils suivent.</i>
SUBJ. } <i>Je suive,</i>	<i>tu suives,</i>	<i>il suive;</i>
Pres. } <i>nous suivions,</i>	<i>vous suiviez,</i>	<i>ils suivent.</i>
Imp. } <i>Je suivisse,</i>	<i>tu suivisses,</i>	<i>il suivît;</i>
	<i>nous suivissions,</i>	<i>ils suivissent.</i>

(a) Conjugate in the same manner, *poursuivre*, to pursue, to prosecute.

(b) *S'ensuivre*, to ensue, to result, follows the same conjugation, but is used only in the third persons singular and plural of every tense; as, *Un grand bien s'ensuivit*. — (ACAD.) | *Much good* resulted from it.

(c) *S'ensuivre* is also used impersonally, as in the following example:

*Il s'en est ensuivi de grands malheurs.* | *Great misfortunes* have been the consequence of it.

*SURVIVRE*, to survive, is conjugated like *Vivre*.

## 330. TAIRE, TO CONCEAL, TO KEEP SECRET.

Part. Pres. taisant.		Part. Past, tu, m.; tue, f.	
IND. }	Je tais,	tu tais,	il tait ;
Pres. }	nous taisons,	vous taisez,	ils taisent.
Imp. }	Je taisais,	tu taisais,	il taisait ;
	nous taisions,	vous taisiez,	ils taisaient.
Pret. }	Je tus,	tu tus,	il tut ;
	nous tâmes,	vous tâtes,	ils turent.
Fut. }	Je tairai,	tu tairas,	il taira ;
	nous tairons,	vous tairez,	ils tairont.
COND. }	Je tairais,	tu tairais,	il tairait ;
Pres. }	nous tairions,	vous tairiez,	ils tairaient.
IMPER. }	taisons,	taisez,	qu'il taise ;
	je taise,	tu taises,	qu'ils taisent.
SUBJ. }	nous taisions,	vous taisiez,	il taise ;
Pres. }	je tusse,	tu tusses,	ils taisent.
Imp. }	nous tussions,	vous tussiez,	il tût ;
			ils tussent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *se taire*, to be silent, to hold one's tongue.

## EXERCISE CX.

An ass-driver said : I am not what I follow, for if I were  
*dnier m. ce que car étais*  
 what I follow, I would not be what I am. — Trouble  
*art. embarras m.*  
*attends riches.* — Several princes of Germany  
*suivre art. richesses f. pl. — Allemagne*  
 follow the doctrine of Luther. — I shall follow you very  
*— f. — de fort*  
 closely. — Always follow the advice of your father. —  
*près 2 1 pl. avis m. monsieur*  
 Let us pursue our journey. — Well ! what (is the consequence)?  
*chemin m. Eh bien ! que s'ensuivre*  
 — I shall not conceal from you my way of thinking. — After  
*\* façon f. inf-1*  
 having said that, he held his tongue. — Let us be silent.  
*inf-1*

## 331. TRAIRE, TO MILK.

Part. Pres. trayant.		Part. Past, trait, m.; traite, f.	
IND. }	Je traie,	tu traie,	il trait ;
Pres. }	nous trayons,	vous trayez,	ils traitent.
Imp. }	Je trayais,	tu trayais,	il trayait ;
	nous trayions,	vous trayiez,	ils trayaient.
(No Preterite Definite.)			
Fut. }	Je trairai,	tu trairas,	il traira ;
	nous trairons,	vous trairez,	ils trairont.

COND. }	Je trairais,	tu trairais,	il trairait ;
Pres. }	nous trairions,	vous trairiez,	ils trairaient.
IMPER.		trais,	qu'il traie ;
	trayons,	trayez,	qu'ils traient.
SUPJ. }	je traie,	tu traies,	il traie ;
Pres. }	nous trayions,	vous trayiez,	ils traient.

(No Imperfect of the Subjunctive.)

### 332. Conjugate in the same manner :—

Abstraire, to abstract.	rentraire, to finedraw, to darn.
distraindre, to distract, to divert.	soustraire, to subtract.
extraire, to extract.	

(See Remarks on *Abstraire* and *Attraire*, p. 160.)

333. *TISTRE*, to weave, is obsolete except in the past participle *tissu*, *tissue*, the masculine of which is often used substantively. As a past participle or as an adjective, it is most often employed figuratively.

*N.B.*—The modern verb for to weave is *TISSER*.

### EXERCISE CXI.

Is the cow milked? — The least thing diverts his  
*vache f.* *moindre le \**  
attention.—He has extracted that passage from a dialogue of  
\* — m. — m.  
Plato. — Arithmetic teaches to add,  
Platon. art. *arithmétique f.* *enseigner à additionner*,  
*subtract*, multiply, and divide. — Did the  
pr. pr. *multiplier*, pr. *diviser*.  
cowherd milk the cows?—We subtracted three from twelve,  
*vacher m. ind-4 ind-4*  
which gave us nine for result. — How did those  
*ce qui ind-4 99 pour résultat. Comment*  
criminals elude punishment?—(Those are)  
*malfaiteur se soustraire ind-4 au châtement Voilà 32*  
beautiful tissues.—This article is a tissue of falsehoods.—  
*beau tissu m. — m. mensonge m.*  
He leads a life beset with difficulties and sorrows.—  
*mener vie f. 333 inf-4 de contrariété pl. 31 chagrin pl.*  
Why were the accused persons deprived of their natural  
ind-4 m. pl. \* *distraindre 2naturel*  
judge?—How inattentive you are, young ladies!  
<sup>1</sup>juge Que <sup>3</sup>distraindre <sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> *mesdemoiselles*



## 334. VIVRE, TO LIVE.

<i>Part. Pres. vivant.</i>		<i>Part. Past, vécu.</i>	<i>No feminine.</i>
IND. }	Je vis,	tu vis,	il vit ;
Pres. }	nous vivons,	vous vivez,	ils vivent.
Imp.	Je vivais,	tu vivais,	il vivait ;
	nous vivions,	vous viviez,	ils vivaient.
Pret.	Je vécus,	tu vécus,	il vécut ;
	nous vécûmes,	vous vécûtes,	ils vécurent.
Fut.	Je vivrai,	tu vivras,	il vivra ;
	nous vivrons,	vous vivrez,	ils vivront.
COND. }	Je vivrais,	tu vivrais,	il vivrait ;
Pres. }	nous vivrions,	vous vivriez,	ils vivraient.
IMPER.		vis,	qu'il vive ;
	vivons,	vivez,	qu'ils vivent.
SUBJ. }	que je vive,	tu vives,	il vive ;
Pres. }	que nous vivions,	vous viviez,	ils vivent.
Imp.	que je vécusse,	tu vécusses,	il vécut ;
	que nous vécussions,	vous vécussiez,	ils vécussent.

(a) So are conjugated, *revivre*, to revive ; and *survivre*, to survive.

(b) *Ils ont vécu*, in the sense of *ils sont morts* (they are dead), is an expression purely Latin : the Romans avoided, from superstition, the use of words reckoned inauspicious. We say more generally, *ils sont morts* ; however, *ils ont vécu* has become a French phrase, owing to its adoption by a great number of authors ; besides, it produces a finer effect than the expression for which it stands.

(c) To live *on* or *upon*, is expressed by *vivre DE* ; as, *Il vit DE légumes* (ACAD.), he lives upon vegetables.

C'est une fille accoutumée à *vivre DE* salade, *DE* lait, *DE* fromage et *DE* pommes.—(Molière.)

(d) *Vive le Roi !* is an exclamation to express that we wish the king long life and prosperity. *Vive* is also a term made use of to mark that we highly esteem a person, or set a great value upon something.

*Vive la liberté ! Vivent nos libérateurs !—(Acad.)*

Malgré tous les chagrins, *vive* la vie !—(Gresset.)

*Vivent* les gens d'esprit !—(Palissot.)

*Vivent* les gens qui ont de l'industrie !—(Pluche.)

(e) *Vive* or *vivent*, in the above and similar phrases, is the third person of the present of the Subjunctive of the verb *vivre*.—(ACAD., Féraud, Trévoux, &c.)

## EXERCISE CXII.

I live with economy. — He lives like a great lord. — She  
en \* seigneur.

lives upon her income. — We live in the country. — Those  
rentes f. pl. à

animals live upon herbs and roots.—Saint Louis (Louis IX.)  
herbe f. pr. racine f.

*lived* in the thirteenth century. — So good a prince *will*  
ind-2 à siècle m. 2 3 1

*live* for ever in history.—It is dear *living* in this  
éternellement dans art. fait inf-1 dans

town.—The people shouted, *Long live* the Emperor!—  
peuple m. crier ind-3

Fathers *live again* in their children. — He *will* never  
art. revivre dans

*survive* the loss of his reputation. — The husband has  
à perte f.

*survived* his wife. — He did not long *survive* a person who  
à ind-3 à f.

was so dear to him.—*Let us live* as good Christians.  
ind-2 102 en chrétien

## EXERCISE CXIII.

He was in great dejection of mind ; but the news  
ind-2 un accablement m.

which he has just received, have *revived* him. — Homer  
152 (3) inf-1 fait inf-1 Homère

*lived* probably about eight hundred and fifty years before  
ind-2 environ \* avant

the Christian era.—That man *lives on* little.—He *lives* from  
2 1 peu. au

hand to mouth.—She *lives on* bread and water.—They *live* at  
jour le jour. d'

the expense of others.—She *lived* more than a hundred years.  
dépens pl. 123 ind-4 \*

—The Latin tongue *will live* for ever.—*Long live* Champagne  
2 1 toujours.

and Burgundy for good wines.—They called out to him, *Who*  
119 crier

*goes there?* he replied, "France."—This work *will live*.  
vivre

335. LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS seldom used, some of them being law terms, others being obsolete, except in a few tenses and persons :—

1. APPAROIR, *to be evident*, a law term, impersonal verb ; only used in the INF. Pres. and in the IND. Pres. : *il appert* (it is evident).

2. **AVENIR** or **ADVENIR**, *to happen*, impersonal verb, often used in all tenses, conjugated like *venir*; takes *être* in its compound tenses:  
*il avient, qu'il advienne, il est advenu, &c.*  
(a) The Pres. Part. is used as a law term, in which case it precedes the actual subject of the sentence:  
*Avenant or advenant le décès de l'un deux* (in case *either should die*).  
(b) The Past Part. is also used, as in: *Acte nul et non advenu* (*a deed null and of no effect*).
3. **CHALOIR**, *to care for*, only, and but rarely, used impersonally in the third pers. sing. of the Pres. IND.; as in: *il vous en chaut* (*it is important for you, or it matters to you*).
4. **COMPAROIR**, *to appear*, a law term, only used in the INF. Pres.; as in: *être assigné à comparoir* (*to be summoned to appear*).
5. **SE CONDOULOIR**, *to condole*, is becoming obsolete; only used in the INF. Pres., as in: *se condouloir avec quelqu'un* (*to sympathise with some one*).
6. **COURRE**, *to run*, a hunting term; as in: *chasse à courre* (*hunting*); *courre le cerf* (*stag hunt*).
7. **DÉMOUVOIR**, *to cause to desist*, a law term; only used in the INF. Pres.
8. **DUIRE**, *to please*, antiquated familiar expression; used only in the following tenses and persons: INF. Pres. *duire*. IND. Pres. *il duit, ils duisent*. Imp. *il duisait, ils duisaient*. Fut. *il durira, ils duiront*. COND. Pres. *il duirait, ils duiraient*.
9. **S'EMBOIRE**, *to imbibe, to absorb*, a term used in painting; conjugated in all tenses like *boire*, but only in the third pers. sing. and plur. The term is also employed in melting, in which case it means *to besmear*.
10. **FORCLORE**, *to estop*, a law term; only used in Past Part.: *forclos, estoppé, foreclosed* (see *clore*); in the Pres. INF., the Pres. IND., and in compound tenses.
11. **OCCIRE**, *to slay*, obsolete; only used in Pres. INF. and in the Past Part.: *occis, occise*, in familiar jocular style, or conversation.
12. **RECLURE**, *to shut up*. Past Part. *reclus, recluse*. Only used in the INF. Pres. and in compound tenses. The Past Part. is used both substantively and adjectively: *un reclus, une recluse* (a recluse); *un pénitent reclus* (a sequestered penitent).
13. **RETRAIRE**, *to withdraw*, a law term; is conjugated like *traire*. Its Past Part. is used substantively.
14. **SOUDRE**, *to solve*; is used only in the INF. Pres., and very seldom.
15. **SOURDRE**, *to spring out, to result, to ooze out*. Pres. Part. *sourdant* (no Past Participle, and therefore no compound tenses). Pres. IND. *il sourd, ils sourdent*. Imp. *il sourdait, ils sourdaient*. Pret. *il sourdit, ils sourdirent*. Fut. *il sourdra, ils sourdront*. COND. Pres. *il sourdrait, ils sourdraient*. SUBJ. Pres. *qu'il sourde, qu'ils sourdent*. Imp. *qu'il sourdit, qu'ils sourdissent*. (Not employed in the other persons—often used figuratively.)

## CHAPTER VI.

## OF THE ADVERB.

336. The *Adverb* is an invariable word, so called because it is most frequently added to a verb, to express some quality, manner, or circumstance; as, *il écrit BIEN*, he writes well; *elle parle DISTINCTEMENT*, she speaks distinctly.

The adverb serves also to modify an adjective, and even another adverb; as, *il est TRÈS éloquent*, he is very eloquent; *elle chante FORT bien*, she sings very well.

Some adverbs consist of a single word, as *bien*, well; *toujours*, always; others are compound, and consist of two or more words, and are commonly called *adverbial expressions*; such are, *pêle-mêle*, promiscuously; *sur-le-champ*, immediately; *tout à coup*, suddenly.

## PLACE OF THE ADVERB.

337. (a) French adverbs are generally placed *immediately* after the verb, and *even before the object*, whether direct or indirect, when the verb is in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the past participle when the verb is in a compound tense; as,

Étienne aime assez cette couleur.	Stephen likes this colour pretty well.
Je vois rarement votre neveu.	I seldom see your nephew.
Jeanne a un peu parlé allemand.	Jane has spoken German a little.

(b) But adverbial expressions, long adverbs of manner derived from adjectives by the addition of *ment*, the adverbs of time (*hier, aujourd'hui, demain, après-demain, &c.*), the adverbs of place (*ici, là, dessus, dessous, &c.*), generally follow the object, whether the verb be in a simple or in a compound tense, or the past participle, if the verb has no object. Examples:

Vous jugez tout le monde à la hâte.	You judge everybody hastily.
Ils ont mené cette affaire adroitement.	They have cleverly managed that affair.
J'ai rencontré votre frère là-bas.	I met your brother yonder.
Émile a reçu le paquet hier.	Emilius received the parcel yesterday.
Mettez tout cela dessous.	Put all that under.
Ils sont partis avant-hier.	They started the day before yesterday.

(c) ~~Ad~~ Adverbs of quantity must *always precede* the noun they modify, and, therefore, in compound tenses they follow the past participle; as,

Nous avons reçu beaucoup d'argent.	We have received a great deal of money.
------------------------------------	---

## CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS

338. *Adverbs of Affirmation and Consent.*

assurément,	<i>assuredly.</i>	si fait (3),	<i>yes indeed.</i>
certainement,	<i>certainly.</i>	sans doute,	<i>undoubtedly.</i>
certes,	{ <i>certainly, in-</i> <i>deed.</i>	soit,	<i>be it so.</i>
oui (1)		volontiers,	<i>willingly.</i>
si (2)	{ <i>yes.</i>	vraiment,	<i>truly, indeed.</i>
		d'accord,	<i>done, agreed.</i>

339. (1) OUI answers to *yes* in reply to a question : *Avez-vous fini votre thème ? OUI, je viens de le finir* 152 (8).—Have you finished your exercise? *Yes*, I have just finished it.

(2) But SI is used for *yes* in replying contradictorily to a negative question or statement : *N'avez-vous PAS encore déjeuné ? SI, j'ai déjeuné à neuf heures.*—Have you *not* breakfasted yet? *Yes*, I breakfasted at nine o'clock.—*Mais ce N'est PAS vous qui avez fait cela ? SI, c'est bien moi.*—But, it was *not* you who did that? *Yes*, it was I certainly.

(3) SI FAIT is used for emphasis instead of SI, and means *yes indeed* : *Est-ce qu'il NE sait PAS l'anglais ? SI FAIT, il le sait très bien.*—Does he *not* know English? *Yes indeed*, he knows it very well.

340. *Adverbs of Denial and Doubt.*

Aucunement, nullement,	<i>by no means.</i>	non, non pas,	<i>no, not, &amp;c.</i>
ne, ne pas, ne point,	<i>not.</i>	peut-être,	<i>perhaps.</i>
pas du tout, point du tout,	<i>not at all.</i>	probablement,	<i>probably.</i>

341. (1) NON is the absolute French negation opposed to OUI : *Aimez-vous cette fable ? NON, j'aime mieux l'autre.*—Do you like this fable? *No*, I prefer the other.

(2) NON is used for *not* without a verb ; it may also be followed by PAS, either to make the negative stronger or to establish a comparison : *Vous allez lui écrire, sans doute ? NON PAS, c'est à lui de m'écrire.*—You are going to write to him, no doubt? *No indeed*, it is for him to write to me.—*J'appelle cela NON PAS de la poésie, mais de la prose rimée.* I call that rhymed prose, *not* poetry.

## EXERCISE CXIV.

That is *undoubtedly* a very fine action.—You wish it : *be it*  
*C'est là* — *f.*

*so.*—I *willingly* consent to that bargain.—*No, no*, I shall *not*  
*marché m.*

consent to it.—Will you give up your rights to him?—*By no*  
117 *céder* *droit m.*

*means.*—Do you fear his resentment?—*No, not at all.*—  
*ressentiment m.*

You *perhaps* think that he is one of your friends ; you are in  
croire \*

error. — He will *probably* succeed in his undertaking.  
art. erreur f. réussir

—Do you understand? — Yes, I do. — You shall not  
comprendre comprendre

go. — Yes, I shall. — He writes *not* as a man of  
339 (2) aller ind-7 non pas en \*

genius, but as a man of sense.  
génie en \* sens.

### 342. Adverbs of Interrogation.

Combien, { <i>how much? how many?</i>	jusqu'à quand, { <i>till when? how</i>
comment, <i>how?</i>	long?
où, <i>where?</i>	par où, <i>where? which way?</i>
d'où, <i>whence?</i>	pourquoi, <i>why?</i>
jusqu'où, <i>how far?</i>	quand, <i>when?</i>
	que (ne), <i>why (with negation).</i>

These are placed before the verb when it is used interrogatively.

### 343. Adverbs of Quantity.

**DE** must be used before the noun following adverbs of quantity, without article, except *bien*, which requires the article as well as *de*.

assez (1), suffi- samment, { <i>enough.</i>	combien (2), { <i>how much, how</i>
autant, { <i>as much, as</i>	que, { <i>many.</i>
tant, tellement, { <i>many.</i>	ne...guère (3), <i>but few, but little.</i>
beaucoup, bien, { <i>so much, so</i>	moins, <i>less, fewer.</i>
	peu, <i>little, few.</i>
	plus, <i>more.</i>
	trop, <i>too much, too many.</i>

(1) **ASSEZ** always precedes the word it modifies: *Assez de papier* (enough paper); *c'est assez bien* (it is pretty well).

(2) **COMBIEN DE** can be used both in interrogative and exclamatory sentences: *Combien d'hommes avez-vous vus?* How many men have you seen? — *Combien de projets il a formés!* How many schemes he has planned! But **QUE DE**, in the sense of *combien de*, can only appear in exclamations: *Que de projets il a formés!* What a number of schemes, &c.

(3) **GUÈRE** (original meaning, *much*) is only used in negative sentences, with **NE** before the verb. Example:—

*Il ne les connaît guère.* — He does not know them very well (or much).

### EXERCISE CXV.

*How far did you go? — How far is it from here? — How*  
ind-4 186 d'

*many verbs have you learned? — How is he? — Where*  
de verbe m. se porter

*do you live? — Whence do you come? — Why do you make*  
demeurer faire

so much noise?—*When* shall I have the pleasure of seeing  
 you again?—You have played *enough*.—Gentlemen, which  
 way (are you going)?—I do not know whether you have  
 money *enough*.—He has so many friends!—*Why* did you  
 not say so?—We have but few pears this year.—She  
 speaks much and reflects little.

## 344. Adverbs of Comparison, Preference, Scarcity, &amp;c.

Ainsi,	thus, so.	même,	even.	plus,	more.
aussi,	as, also.	mieux,	better.	plutôt,	rather.
autant,	{ as much, as	de mieux }	better and	plutôt,	sooner.
	{ many.	en mieux, }	better.	presque,	almost.
comme,	as, like.	moins,	less.	seulement,	only.
davantage,	more.	pis,	worse.	si,	so.
bien, fort,	{ very, very	de plus en }	more and	surtout,	above all.
très,	{ much.	plus,	more.	tant,	so much.

## EXERCISE CXVI.

I am very glad to meet you. — Science is estimable,  
 but virtue is much more so. — Almost all the philosophers  
 think so. — The president spoke thus. — That book has  
 merit; but there are others as good. — If he has done  
 that, I can do as much. — There were as many ladies  
 as gentlemen. — Don't read like him. — Women speak  
 better than they write. — She sings better and better. — Since  
 the invention of powder battles are less bloody  
 than they were. — His affairs are going from bad to  
 worse. — You do not offer enough, give something more. — I  
 was so far from them!

345. *Adverbs of Order or Rank.*

Premièrement,	<i>first.</i>	après,	<i>after.</i>
deuxièmement,	<i>secondly, &amp;c.</i>	ensuite,	<i>afterwards.</i>
secondement, &c.		avant, auparavant,	<i>before.</i>
d'abord,	<i>at first.</i>	aussitôt,	<i>immediately.</i>
cependant,	<i>in the mean time, however.</i>	encore,	<i>yet, still, again</i>
déjà,		enfin,	<i>at length.</i>
	<i>already.</i>	puis,	<i>then.</i>

346. *Adverbs of Place.*

Ailleurs, autre part,	<i>elsewhere.</i>	devant,	<i>before.</i>
alentour,	<i>around.</i>	environ,	<i>about.</i>
auprès,	<i>near.</i>	ici,	<i>here.</i>
autour,	<i>around.</i>	là,	<i>there.</i>
proche, tout proche,	<i>{ near, quite near.</i>	là-bas,	<i>yonder, over there.</i>
contre,		loin,	<i>far.</i>
dedans,	<i>against.</i>	nulle part,	<i>nowhere.</i>
dehors,	<i>inside.</i>	n'importe où,	<i>{ no matter where, anywhere.</i>
de part et d'autre,	<i>outside.</i>	partout,	
de toutes parts,	<i>on both sides.</i>	quelque part,	<i>everywhere.</i>
derrière,	<i>on all sides.</i>	où,	<i>somewhere.</i>
dessous,	<i>behind.</i>	près,	<i>where.</i>
dessus,	<i>under.</i>	y,	<i>near.</i>
	<i>above.</i>		<i>there.</i>

REMARK.—Y adverb must not be confounded with *y* pronoun (see No. 117).

## EXERCISE CXVII.

Do *first* what we have agreed upon. — Work *first*, you  
*ce dont* 171 (b) \* *d'abord*  
 will amuse yourself *afterwards*. — You will go before, and he  
*devant lui*  
*after*. — The painter had brought together in the same  
*ind-2 rassembler un*  
 picture several different objects : *there* a troop of bacchantes,  
*tableau m.* 2 1 *bacchante*  
*here* a group of young people ; *there* a sacrifice ; *here* a  
*gens* — *m.*  
 disputation of philosophers. — Alexander gave to Porus a  
*dispute f.* *Alexandre ind-3* —  
 kingdom larger than the one he had *before*. — Don't  
*plus grand celui qu'* *ind-2*  
 go *far*. — I have looked for it *everywhere*. — Will you go  
*chercher Vouloir*  
*there after dinner ? I shall go anywhere.*  
*y*



347. *Adverbs of Time.*

<i>Present.</i>			
Aujourd'hui,	<i>to-day.</i>	maintenant,	<i>now.</i>
<i>Past.</i>			
Autrefois,	<i>formerly.</i>	avant-hier,	{ <i>the day before yesterday.</i> <i>lately, but just now.</i>
dernièrement,	<i>lately.</i>	naguère,	
jadis,	<i>of old.</i>		
hier,	<i>yesterday.</i>		
<i>Future.</i>			
Demain,	<i>to-morrow.</i>	bientôt,	<i>soon, very soon.</i>
après-demain,	{ <i>the day after to-morrow.</i>	désormais,	<i>hereafter.</i>
		dorénavant,	<i>henceforth.</i>
<i>Indeterminate.</i>			
Alors,	<i>then.</i>	rarement,	<i>seldom.</i>
longtemps,	<i>long.</i>	souvent,	<i>often.</i>
quelquefois,	<i>sometimes.</i>	toujours,	<i>always.</i>
parfois,	<i>at times.</i>	jamais,	<i>ever, never.</i>
tantôt,	{ <i>now, sometimes, by and by, anon.</i>	tard,	<i>late.</i>
tôt ou tard,		tôt,	<i>soon.</i>
	<i>sooner or later.</i>	en retard,	<i>behind time.</i>

## EXERCISE CXVIII.

We expect him *to-day* or *to-morrow*. — *Formerly*, the *attendre*  
education of females was neglected, but *now* it is  
art. *femme* ind-2 *négligé* on \*  
very much (attended to). — He set out *the day before yesterday*.  
<sup>3</sup>*beaucoup* <sup>1</sup>*s'en* <sup>2</sup>*occupe* *est parti*  
— Let us be wiser *hereafter*. — Be more exact *henceforth*. —  
Where were you *then*? — He goes *sometimes* on foot,  
ind-2 *à*  
*sometimes* in a carriage. — That *seldom* occurs. — People *often*  
*en* \* *voiture.* *arriver* On  
deceive themselves by judging from appearances. — The  
*se tromper* *en* *sur* art. *apparence* f.  
wisest kings are *often* deceived. — The moon *always* revolves  
*tromper* *tourner*  
round the earth. — *Why* is Peter *always* *behind time*? —  
*autour de* *Pierre* 347  
Did you *ever* see anything like it? — No, I never saw  
157 *jamais* ind-4 <sup>2</sup>*rien de* *pareil* \* 153 ind-4  
such a thing *before*. — You come *very late*. — *Sooner or later*  
*pareil* \* *chose* f. *arriver* 347  
you will recognise your error. — At first he did not recognise  
*reconnaître* ind-7 78 345 ind-3  
s. — We live *sometimes* in town, *sometimes* in the country.  
9 *demeurer* *tantôt à la* *à la*

348. *Adverbs of Manner and Quality.*

Bien,	<i>well.</i>	à la mode,	<i>fashionably.</i>
mal,	<i>badly, ill.</i>	à tort,	<i>wrongfully.</i>
à la hâte,	<i>hastily.</i>	exprès,	<i>on purpose.</i>

To this class must be added the adverbs formed from adjectives, by annexing *ment*. There are, in French, few adjectives from which adverbs of this nature have not been formed. This termination in *ment* corresponds to the *ly* of the English.

These adverbs are formed from adjectives in the following manner:—

349. RULE I.—When the adjective ends with a vowel in the masculine, the adverb is formed by simply adding *ment* to it; as,

poli,	<i>polite;</i>	poliment,	<i>politely.</i>
sage,	<i>wise;</i>	sagement,	<i>wisely.</i>
vrai,	<i>true;</i>	vraiment,	<i>truly.</i>

(a) *Exception.*—*Impuni*, unpunished, makes *impunément*, with impunity.

(b) The six following adverbs take an *é* accented before the termination *ment*, instead of the *e* mute of the adjectives:—

Aveuglement,	<i>blindly.</i>	énormément,	<i>enormously.</i>
commodément,	<i>commodiously.</i>	incommodément,	<i>incommodiously.</i>
conformément,	<i>conformably.</i>	opiniâtement,	<i>obstinately.</i>

(c) *Bellement*, softly; *follement*, foolishly; *mollement*, effeminately; and *nouvellement*, newly, are formed from the adjectives, *bel*, *fol*, *mol*, *nouvel*, according to the following rule.

350. RULE II.—When the adjective ends with a consonant in the masculine, the adverb is formed from the feminine, by adding *ment* to it; as,

Franc, m.	franche, f.	frank;	franchement,	frankly.
heureux, m.	heureuse, f.	happy;	heureusement,	happily.
naïf, m.	naïve, f.	artless;	naïvement,	artlessly.

(a) *Exceptions.*—*Gentil*, makes *gentiment*, prettily; *bref*, *brèvement*, briefly; *traître*, *traîtreusement*, treacherously.

(b) The six following adverbs take an *é* accented, instead of the *e* mute of the feminine of the adjectives from which they are formed:—

Communément,	<i>commonly.</i>	obscurément,	<i>obscurely.</i>
confusément,	<i>confusedly.</i>	précisément,	<i>precisely.</i>
expressément,	<i>expressly.</i>	profondément,	<i>profoundly.</i>

351. RULE III.—Adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent* in the masculine, form their adverbs by suppressing the ending *nt*, and then adding *mment*; as,

Constant,	<i>constant;</i>	constamment,	<i>constantly.</i>
éloquent,	<i>eloquent;</i>	éloquemment,	<i>eloquently.</i>

(a) *Lent*, slow, *présent*, present, and *véhément*, vehement, are the only exceptions to this rule: they follow the second rule, making *lentement*, slowly, *présentement*, presently, and *véhémentement*, vehemently.

(b) *N.B.*—Most adverbs of manner, and a few of the other classes, have the three degrees of comparison, which are formed as in the adjectives.



## CHAPTER VII.

## OF THE PREPOSITION.

353. The *Preposition* is an invariable part of speech, so called because, as its Latin derivation implies, it is generally *placed before* the word whose relation to other words it points out.

It is by means of *prepositions* that we supply the *cases* which are wanting in the French language; for instance, the preposition *de* often corresponds to the genitive or ablative of the Latin. *Le livre DE Pierre.*—*Je viens DE Rome.*

Prepositions are either *simple* or *compound*. The simple consist of a single word; as, *à*, to; *de*, of; *avec*, with. Compound prepositions consist of two or more words; such are, *quant à*, as to; *vis-à-vis*, opposite; *à l'égard de*, with regard to.

The prepositions are divided into classes, according to the manner in which they express relation or connection.

## 354. To denote Place.

autour de,	round, around.	près,	} near.
chez,	at.	proche,	
dans,	in.	sous,	under.
devant,	before.	sur,	on, upon, over.
derrière,	behind.	vers,	towards.
entre,	between.		(Vers is also a prep.
hors,	out.		of time.)
jusque,	till, until.	vis-à-vis,	opposite.
parmi,	among.	voici,	behold, here is or are.
auprès de,	} near.	voilà,	behold, there is or are.
près de,			
proche de,			

## EXERCISE CXXI.

Chicanery prowls incessantly around justice, envy  
 art. *chicane* f. *rôder sans cesse* *Thémis* art.  
 around prosperity, calumny around virtue, error  
 art. art. art. art.  
 around the mind of man, and injustice around his  
*esprit* m. art. art. — f.  
 heart: what ravages do these monsters not commit  
 — m. \* *ne font-ils pas*  
 when once they can gain access!—*In* prosperity it is  
*une fois* *pénétrer!* art. *il*

agreeable to have a friend; in <sup>d'</sup> misfortune it is a <sup>art. malheur m. c'</sup>  
 necessity.—Write injuries <sup>besoin m.</sup> upon <sup>art.</sup> sand, and <sup>art.</sup> benefits <sup>art. bienfait m.</sup>  
 upon <sup>brass.</sup> — The loadstone <sup>art. aimant m.</sup> points <sup>se tourner</sup> towards the  
 north. — Paper was invented <sup>art.</sup> towards <sup>ind-4</sup> the end <sup>fin f.</sup> of the  
 fourteenth century; and <sup>siècle m.</sup> printing <sup>art. imprimerie f.</sup> towards <sup>milieu m.</sup> the middle  
 of the fifteenth century.—Go before me, and not behind him.

## 355. To denote Order.

Avant,	before.		depuis,	since.
après,	after.		dès,	from.

## 356. To denote Union.

Avec,	with.		outré,	besides.
durant,	during.		selon,	} according to.
pendant,	whilst, during.		suiwant,	

## EXERCISE CXXII.

Augustus began to reign forty-two years before Jesus  
*Auguste* ind-3 *Jésus*  
 Christ. — I fear God, and after God, I fear principally  
 —  
 those who do not fear Him. — Man from his birth has  
*ceux* art.  
 the feeling of pleasure and of pain. — The soldier  
*sentiment m.* art. *art. douleur f.*  
 defends his country with his sword; the man of letters  
 \* art. *patrie f.*  
 enlightens it with his pen.—It is during youth that we  
*éclairer* pendant art. *il*  
 must lay the foundations of an honourable and happy  
*faut poser* *fondement* 2 3 4  
 life.—The wise man acts according to the dictates of  
 1 \* *se conduire* *maxime f.*  
 reason. — Talents (are productive) according to their  
 art. art. — m. *produisent* \*  
 cultivation.  
 art. *culture f.*



in 1347, that (the drum was heard to beat) *for* the first  
*l'an* *l'on entendit battre le tambour*

time. — He has written to him *respecting* that business. — She  
*fois f.* *affaire f.*

charms everybody *by* her kindness and her gentleness. —  
*tout le monde* *bonté f.* *douceur f.*

They will succeed *by means of* your counsels. — The fleet  
*réussir* *avis m.*

cannot sail *on account of* contrary winds.  
*partir* *art.* *2* *1*

361. The preposition *à* is used to express several relations, the principal of which are :—

1. *Place* ; as, *aller à Paris*, to go to Paris ; *demeurer à Londres*, to live in London.
2. *Time* ; as, *se lever à six heures*, to rise at six o'clock.
3. *Matter* ; as, *bâtir à chaux*, to build with lime.
4. *Manner* ; as, *s'habiller à la française*, to dress after the French fashion.
5. *Cause* ; as, *un moulin à vent*, a windmill ; *des armes à feu*, fire-arms.
6. *Use, destination* ; as, *un moulin à papier*, a paper-mill ; *un sac à ouvrage*, a work-bag.
7. *Means* ; as, *peindre à l'huile*, to paint in oil.
8. *Possession* ; as, *ce livre est à Alfred*, this book belongs to Alfred.

### EXERCISE CXXV.

There are two railways from Paris to Versailles. —  
 186 *chemin de fer* —

How far is it from London to Edinburgh? — The neglect  
*Combien y a-t-il* *Édimbourg?* *oubli m.*

of all religion soon leads to the neglect of all the duties  
 — *f. bientôt* 284 *devoir m.*

of man. — Hypocrisy is a homage that vice  
*art.* *art.* *hommage m.* *art.* — *m.*

pays to virtue. — Come back at six o'clock. — We  
*rendre* *art.* *Revenir* *heure*

left him at (twelve o'clock). — That is at the rate of  
*quitter ind-4* *midi* *C'* *\* raison*

five per cent. — The walls of this ancient castle are  
*pour* *mur m.* *château m.*

built with lime and cement. — It is a steam-engine  
*bâtir* *prep. ciment.* *C'* *machine à vapeur f.*

of (twenty-horse power).  
*la force de vingt chevaux.*

362. The principal use of *DE* is to express—

1. *Place* ; as, *venir de Lyon*, to come *from* Lyons.
2. *Time* ; as, *il est parti de jour*, he went away *in* the day-time.
3. *Matter* ; as, *une table de marbre*, a marble table ; *une tabatière d'or*, a gold snuff-box.
4. *Possession* ; as, *le livre de Berthe*, Bertha's book.
5. *Subject* ; as, *parlons de cette affaire*, let us speak *of* that affair.
6. *Cause, motive* ; as, *je suis charmé de sa fortune*, I am happy *at* his fortune.

## EXERCISE CXXVI.

We come *from* Dublin, where we have spent a week very agreeably.—I intend to go *from* France to Switzerland ; and *from* Switzerland to Italy.—The seven wonders of the world were, the walls and gardens of Babylon ; the pyramids of Egypt ; the pharos of Alexandria ; the mausoleum which Artemisia erected for Mausolus, her husband ; the temple of Diana at Ephesus ; the statue of Jupiter Olympus, by Phidias ; and the colossus at Rhodes.

*où* *passer huit jours*  
*se proposer d'* *en Suisse*  
*Italie.* *merveille f.*  
*ind-2 muraille f.* *art.* *Babylone ;*  
*pyramide f.* *Égypte ;* *phare m.*  
*tombeau m.* *Artémise fit élever* *Mausole*  
*— m.* *Ephèse ;* *— f.*  
*Olympien,* *colosse m. de —*

363. (a) The preposition *EN* serves to mark the relations of *place, time, situation, &c.*, and is variously expressed in English :—

1. *Place* ; as, *voyager en Allemagne*, to travel *in* Germany ; *aller en Italie*, to go *to* Italy.
2. *Time* ; as, *en hiver*, *in* winter ; *en temps de paix*, *in* time of peace.
3. *Situation, manner* ; as, *être en bonne santé*, to be *in* good health ; *agir en maître*, to act *as* a master.

(b) REMARK.—The noun which follows *en* seldom admits of the article, whereas the noun which comes after *dans* is generally preceded by the article.

364. (a) *EN* is the *only* preposition that governs the present participle (in *ant*): *Il lisait EN DÉJEUNANT* (he was reading *while* breakfasting).

(b) The other prepositions govern the present or the



past of the Infinitive, with the exception, however, of *à*, which requires only the present, and of *APRÈS*, which governs only the past, of the same mood; as,

Il sortit <i>APRÈS</i> avoir écrit à sa mère.	He went out after he had written to his mother.
Elle est partie <i>SANS</i> voir son fils.	She went away without seeing her son.
J'aime <i>À</i> voir l'enfant courir.	I like to see the child run.

## EXERCISE CXXVII.

<sup>2</sup>(The same prejudices) <sup>1</sup>(are found) *in* Europe, *in* Asia, *in* préjugé m. on trouve — Africa, and even *in* America.—I have travelled *in* England, jusqu' Amérique.

Scotland, and Ireland.— Queen Elizabeth was born pr. Écosse pr. Irlande. art. Elisabeth naitre ind-3 in 1533, and died *in* 1603.—Narcissus was metamorphosed ind-3 Narcisse ind-3 métamorphosé into a flower.—He has acted, on this occasion, like a great \* agir dans — f. \* man.— Conscience warns us as a friend before punishing art. — f. avertir \* m. de inf-1 us as a judge.—My grandmother is alive and *in* good health. \*

## EXERCISE CXXVIII.

My father is *in* Russia, my brother *in* Prussia, and my Russie Prusse sister *in* Austria.—(It is computed) that there are *in* France Autriche On compte \* \* \* four hundred towns, and forty-three thousand villages.— I can go *in* one day from Edinburgh to London, and *in* pouvoir à two days from London to Geneva.—He spends the whole passer day in going from house to house, from street to street, and à inf-1 from place to place.—Her brother went away after he 213 ind-4 \* had tried to console her. essayer inf-2 de 103

## CHAPTER VIII.

## OF THE CONJUNCTION.

365. The *Conjunction* is an invariable part of speech, which serves to connect the different parts of an extended sentence. When I say:

Travaillons, *si* nous voulons acquérir des talents, *car* le temps s'enfuit, *et* persuadons-nous bien qu'il ne revient plus.

*Let us work, if we wish to possess acquirements, for time flies, and let us never forget that it returns no more.*

In this phrase the words *si*, if, *car*, for, *et*, and, *que*, that, are conjunctions, as they serve to unite the different parts of the sentence.

366. Some conjunctions are *simple*, that is, they consist of a single word; as, *ou*, or; *mais*, but; others are *compound*, that is, composed of two or more words; such are, *au reste*, besides; *à moins que*, unless.

367. TABLE OF THE CONJUNCTIONS MOST IN USE  
IN THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

Afin que,	{ <i>that, in order</i>	mais,	<i>but.</i>
pour que,	{ <i>that.</i>	néanmoins,	<i>nevertheless.</i>
ainsi,	{ <i>so, thus.</i>	ni,	<i>nor, neither.</i>
car,	{ <i>for.</i>	or,	<i>now, then.</i>
cependant,	{ <i>however, yet.</i>	ou,	<i>or, either.</i>
pourtant,	{ <i>that is to say.</i>	ou bien,	<i>or else.</i>
c'est-à-dire,	{ <i>as.</i>	sinon,	<i>or else, if not.</i>
comme,	{ <i>besides.</i>	parce que,	<i>because.</i>
d'ailleurs,	{ <i>moreover.</i>	pendant que,	<i>while, whilst.</i>
de plus,	{ <i>so that.</i>	pourvu que,	<i>provided that.</i>
de façon que,	{ <i>so that.</i>	puisque,	<i>since.</i>
de manière que,	{ <i>so that.</i>	bien que,	{ <i>though, although.</i>
de sorte que,	{ <i>so that.</i>	quoique,	
si bien que,	{ <i>then, therefore.</i>	quand,	{ <i>that.</i>
donc,	{ <i>and.</i>	quand même,	
et,	{ <i>till, until.</i>	que,	{ <i>namely, to wit, viz.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,	{ <i>till, until.</i>	savoir,	
lorsque,	{ <i>when.</i>	si,	<i>if.</i>
quand,	{ <i>when.</i>	soit,	<i>whether.</i>

## EXERCISE CXXIX.

I have brought this book *in order* to consult it.—To listen  
*livre m. Écouter*  
 with joy to a slanderer, *and* to applaud him, is to cherish  
 \* *médisant m. lui c' réchauffer*  
 the serpent that stings, *in order that* he may sting more  
 — *m. piquer*  
 effectually.—David was a king *and* a prophet.—All the  
*sûrement. — ind-2 \**  
 evils are (long ago) out of the box of Pandora, *but*  
*mal m. depuis longtemps hors botte f.*  
 hope is yet within.—The compass was not  
 art. *encore dedans. boussole f. n' ind-4 point*  
 invented by a mariner, *nor* the telescope by an  
*trouvée marin m. télescope m.*  
 astronomer, *nor* the microscope by a (natural philosopher), *nor*  
 — *m. physicien m.*  
 printing by a man of lettres, *nor* gunpowder  
 art. *imprimerie f. homme de lettres art. poudre à canon f.*  
 by a military man.  
 \*

## EXERCISE CXXX.

Which of the two was most intrepid, Cæsar *or*  
*ind-3 le*  
 Alexander?—The memory of Henry IV. is *and* always will  
*Henri*  
 be dear to the French, *because* he placed his glory *and*  
*pl. mettre ind-2 81*  
 happiness in rendering his people happy. — *Provided* you  
*à inf-1 qu'on*  
 know the ruling passion of any one you are sure to  
*sache <sup>2</sup>dominant <sup>1</sup>— f. quelqu'un, on assuré de*  
 please him.—The Gauls worshipped Apollo, Minerva,  
*lui Gaulois adorer ind-2 Apollon,*  
 Jupiter, *and* Mars; they believed *that* Apollo kept off  
 — — *ind-2 chasser ind-2*  
 diseases, *that* Minerva presided over works, *that*  
 art. *maladie f. ind-2 à art. travail m.*  
 Jupiter was the sovereign of heaven, *and* Mars the arbiter  
*ind-2 art. pl.*  
 of war.—*If* you wish to be happy, love virtue.  
 art. 276 \*

## CHAPTER IX.

## OF THE INTERJECTION.

368. The *Interjection* is a word which serves to express some sudden emotion of the mind.

The interjections most commonly used in French are :—

I. *For Joy.*

Ah !     *ah!*  
bon !    *well!*

II. *For Grief and Pain.*

Ah !     *ah!*  
aïe !    *ay! oh dear!*  
hélas !   *alas!*

III. *For Fear.*

Ah !     *ah!*  
hé !     *oh!*

IV. *For Aversion, Contempt,  
and Disgust.*

Fi !     *fie!*  
fi donc ! *fie! fie!*

V. *For Derision.*

Oh !     *oh!*  
hé !     *hah!*  
zest !    *pshaw!*  
bah !     *nonsense!*

VI. *For Surprise.*

Oh !     *oh!*  
ha !     *ha!*

VII. *For Admiration.*

Oh !     *oh!*  
ah !     *ha!*

VIII. *For Silence.*

Chut !   *hush!*  
st !     *hist!*

IX. *For Encouraging.*

Ça !     *{ now! well!*  
oh ça !   *{ go on!*

X. *For warning.*

Gare !    *take care!*  
holà !    *hold!*  
hem !     *hem!*  
oh !     *oh!*

XI. *For Calling.*

Holà !    *holloa!*  
hé !     *eh! ho!*

XII. *O* (with a circumflex accent) is an interjection which serves to express various emotions of the mind ; it is seldom used but in conjunction with a substantive.

(a) Although several of the preceding interjections are the same for different emotions, yet they vary much in the utterance,

(b) Certain words and phrases that are not interjections in their nature, become such when expressed with emotion, and in an unconnected manner: as *paix!* peace! *courage!* cheer up! *tout beau!* gently! not so fast! Such are also many words used by the great French dramatist Molière; as, *morbleu!* *parbleu!* *corbleu!*

## EXERCISE CXXXI.

*Ah!* how glad I am to see you!—*Ah!* the cowards,  
                   que <sup>1</sup>*aise* <sup>1</sup> de *lâche*  
 exclaimed Pompey.—*Oh!* you hurt me!—*Alas!* I have  
                   s'écrier *Pompée.* *blessé*  
 lost everything.—*Ha!* you (are there).—*Oh, ho!* I  
                   <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>*tout* *voilà.*  
 thought the contrary.—*Hush!* some one is coming.—  
                   croire ind-2 *quelqu'un*  
*Holloa!* who is there?—*O* my son, adore God.—*O* supreme  
                   là?  
 pleasure to practise virtue!—Come, my friends, cheer up!  
                   de pratiquer art. *Allons,*

## EXERCISE CXXXII.

*Ha!* how beautiful that is!—*Now!* do tell me what  
                   que <sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup>*cela* <sup>2</sup> \* *ce que*  
 you think.—*Hush!* peace!—*Hah!* I think your lordship  
                   penser *croire que*  
 (is making game) of me.—*Holloa!* where are you?—*Ah* my  
                   se moque  
 friend! why dost thou wish to undertake that fatiguing  
                   vouloir \* <sup>2</sup>*fatigant*  
 journey?—Beware of the bomb!—*Fie!* what infamy!  
                   <sup>1</sup>*voyage m.* \* *bombe f.*  
 plague take the rogue, to wish to beat his wife.—*Fie!* *fie!*—  
                   soit du coquin de \*  
*Gently,* Sir! speak of him with more respect.—*Courage,* soldiers!  
                   lui 343  
 fear nothing.

See Appendix, p. 484, for Etymology.

# PART II.

## OF SYNTAX.

369. The word *Syntax* comes from a Greek word which means *arrangement, construction*. *Syntax* teaches the regular construction of the different parts of speech, conformably to the rules of grammar and the genius of a language.

### CHAPTER I.

#### OF THE ARTICLE.

370. GENERAL PRINCIPLE.—The article is to be used, in French, before every *common* noun, taken in a *determinate sense*, unless there be another word performing the same office ; but it is not to be used before nouns taken in an *indeterminate sense*.

#### CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS TO BE USED.

371. RULE I.—The article is used, in French, before all nouns employed in a general sense, or in the full extent of their signification, although not used in English ; as,

L'homme est mortel.  
La guerre est un fléau.

|      *Man is mortal.*  
*War is a scourge.*

*Man* is here employed in a general sense for all mankind, and *War* is taken for war in general, and not for any particular war.

## EXERCISE CXXXIII.

*Ladies* have always revered *fashion*. — *Liberty* is the  
*révéler* *mode* f.  
 natural state of *man*. — *Heroes* have their moments of fear,  
<sup>2</sup> *état* m. *héros* *crainte*,  
 and *cowards* their moments of bravery. — *Children* owe  
*lâche* *bravoure*. *doivent*  
 respect to their masters. — *Fear* and *ignorance* are the sources of  
*maître* —  
*superstition*. — *Interest* is the touchstone of *friendship*.  
 — f. *intérêt* m. *pierre de touche* f.  
 — *Honour* is badly guarded, when *religion* is not at the  
*honneur* h m. *mal gardé, lorsque*  
 outposts. — *Contentment* prolongs *life*. — *Vice* is odious.  
*avant-postes*. *prolonger* m. *odieux*.

## EXERCISE CXXXIV.

*Bread* is the staff of *life*. — *Necessity* is the mother of  
*soutien* m. f.  
*invention*. — *Custom* is the legislator of *languages*. —  
*usage* m. *législateur* m. *langue* f.  
 Shall we have *peace* or *war*? — There is nothing that *man*  
*paix* f. *guerre* f. *Il* *que*  
 gives so liberally as *counsel*. — *Inoculation* passed  
*aussi libéralement que conseil* pl. — f. *passer* ind-3  
 from Constantinople to London in 1721, and to Paris in 1755.  
*à* *en*  
 — The Persians who worshipped *fire*, and the Egyptians  
*Perse* *qui adorer* ind-3 *Égyptien*  
 who worshipped *crocodiles*, were idolaters.  
 — m. ind-2 *idolâtre*.

372. RULE II.—The article is used in both languages before nouns denoting a particular thing or object, one particular individual or class; as,

LA terre tourne autour du soleil, et	The earth turns round the sun, and
LA lune tourne autour de la terre.	the moon turns round the earth.
L'homme dont vous parlez, est un	The man of whom you speak is a
de mes amis.	friend of mine.

## EXERCISE CXXXV.

*The diseases of the mind are more difficult to cure than*  
*maladie f. dme f. difficile guérir que*  
*those of the body.—The empire of Alexander was divided*  
 107 — m. ind-3 *partage*  
*among his generals.—The Parthenon was in the citadel of*  
*entre Parthénon m. ind-2 citadelle f.*  
*Athens.—The city of Rome was founded 753 years before*  
*Athènes. ville f. a été fondé an m.*  
*Jesus Christ.—Fabius was appointed dictator in the war*  
*Jésus-Christ. — ind-3 nommé dictateur*  
*against Hannibal.—The Roman empire extended from the*  
*Annibal. s s'étendait depuis*  
*Western Ocean to the Euphrates.—(According to)*  
<sup>2</sup>*occidental* <sup>1</sup>*Océan m. jusqu'à Euphrate. Selon*  
*the poets, the car of Venus was drawn by doves.*  
*poète m. char m. Vénus ind-2 attelé de colombe f.*

## EXERCISE CXXXVI.

*The birth of JESUS CHRIST is the era of the Christians,*  
*naissance f. ère f.*  
*and the flight of Mahomet is that of the Mahometans,*  
*fuite f. 107 mahométan*  
*commonly called the hegira. — The first year of the*  
<sup>2</sup>*ordinairement* <sup>1</sup>*appelée hégire h m. année f.*  
*hegira corresponds to the year 622 of the Christian era.—In*  
*répond 2 52 1 De*  
*the time of Philip the Fair,† there were only the dukes, the*  
 29 *Philippe-le-Bel, il n'y avait que duc*  
*counts, and the barons whose ladies had the right*  
*comte — dont art. femme eussent droit m.*  
*to (treat themselves) with four gowns a year. — The*  
*de se donner \* robe f. par an.*  
*invention of the barometer is due to Pascal.*  
 — f. *baromètre m. —*

373. RULE III.—The article is used, in French, before the names of arts, sciences, virtues, vices, metals; and also before adjectives, infinitives, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, used substantively; as,

---

† Ascended the throne in 1285; died in 1314.



L'ivrognerie est un vice affreux.		<i>Drunkenness is a dreadful vice.</i>
Le vert plaît aux yeux.		<i>Green pleases the eye.</i>
Le savoir a son prix.		<i>Knowledge has its value.</i>

374. *N.B.*—(a) Adjectives, verbs, adverbs, &c., used substantively, are masculine in French—see No. 21 (d); as, *le oui, le non, le beau, le vrai, le boire, le manger, &c.*

(b) Adjectives used as names of languages take no capitals in French; as, *le français et l'anglais sont deux langues fort utiles.* (English and French are two very useful languages).—(See No. 389, and *N.B.*)

### EXERCISE CXXXVII.

Before studying navigation and fortification (it is necessary to)  
*Avant d'étudier* — f. — f. *il faut*  
 know mathematics. — Grammar teaches to speak correctly,  
 265 *mathématiques pl.* *apprendre à* *correctement*  
*rhétorique* to speak elegantly. — Chronology and geography  
*rhétorique f.* *élégamment.* *chronologie f.* *géographie f.*  
 are the eyes of history.—Faith, hope, and charity are  
*yeux art.* *foi f.* *espérance f.*  
 cardinal virtues.—Intemperance and idleness are the two  
*des théologale* <sup>1</sup>  *paresse f.*  
 most dangerous enemies of life.—The principal metals  
*plus* *ennemi m.* *art. f.*  
 are: gold, silver, copper, tin, iron, and lead.—  
*or m.* *argent m.* *cuivre m.* *étain m.* *fer m.* *plomb m.*  
 He knows Latin and French.—She (is fond of) blue.—Eating,  
*savoir* *aime* *bleu* *manger*  
 drinking, and sleeping, are necessary to man.  
*boire* *dormir* *art.*

375. RULE IV.—The article is put before the names of countries, provinces, islands, mountains, rivers, and winds; but countries having the same name as their capitals do not take the article; as,

L'Angleterre et LA France sont		<i>England and France are two</i>
deux états puissants.		<i>powerful states.</i>
Naples est un pays délicieux.		<i>Naples is a delightful country.</i>

### EXERCISE CXXXVIII.

*Europe* contains the following states: on the north,  
*contenir* <sup>2</sup>*suivant* <sup>1</sup>*état m.* *à* *nord m.*  
*Sweden* and *Norway,* *Denmark,* *Russia,* and the  
*Suède f.* *Norvège f.* *Danemark m.* *Russie f.*

*British Islands*; in the middle, *France, Belgium,*  
*Britanniques* <sup>1</sup>les à milieu m. — f. *Belgique* f.  
*Holland, Germany, Switzerland, Austria and Hungary*;  
*Hollande* f. *Allemagne* f. *Suisse* f. *Autriche* f. *Hongrie* f. h a.  
 on the south, *Spain, Portugal, Italy, Greece, and*  
 à midi m. *Espagne* f. — m. *Italie* f. *Grèce* f.  
*Turkey* in Europe. — *Lapland* is the country of the  
*Turque* f. d' *Laponie* f. patrie f.  
 reindeer. — *Burgundy* produces excellent wine. — *Sicily*  
*renne* m. *Bourgogne* f. produire d' *Sicile* f.  
 is the granary of *Italy*. — *Touraine* is the garden of *France*.  
*grenier* m. — f.

## EXERCISE CXXXIX.

*France* is separated from *Italy* by the Alps, and from  
*séparé* *Alpes* f. pl.  
*Spain* by the Pyrenees. — The principal rivers of *Europe*  
*Pyréneés* f. pl. *rivière* f.  
 are: the Volga, the Dnieper or Boristhenes, the Don or  
 — m. *Dniéper* m. *Borysthènes* — m.  
 Tanaïs, in Russia; the Danube, the Rhine, and the Elbe,  
 — en — m. *Rhin* m. — m.  
 in Germany; the Vistula, in Poland; the Loire, the Seine,  
*Vistule* f. — f. — f.  
 the Rhone, and the Garonne, in France; the Ebro, the  
*Rhône* m. — f. *Èbre* m.  
 Tagus, and the Douro, in Spain; the Po, and the Tiber,  
*Tage* m. — m. *Pô* m. *Tibre* m.  
 in Italy; the Thames, the Mersey, and the Severn, in England;  
*Tamise* f. — f. *Saverne* f.  
 and the Shannon, in Ireland. — The first pheasants came  
 — m. *Irlande*. *faisan* m. sont venus  
 from the banks of the Phasis, a river of Colchis.  
*bord* m. *Phase* m. \* *fleuve* m. *Colchide* f.

## EXCEPTIONS AND REMARKS.

376. (1) The article is not used before the names of countries when they are preceded by the preposition *en*; as, *Demeurer en Angleterre*, to live in England; *Aller en Allemagne*, to go to Germany.

With the names of towns, the preposition *d'*, and not *en*, is used; as, *Demeurer à Londres*, to live in London; *Être à Paris*, to be in Paris.

377. (2) When the name of a country preceded by *de* is used adjectively—*i.e.*, to express origin, nationality, or qualification, the article does not appear; as, *le roi d'Espagne*, the king of Spain; *vins de France*, French wines; *laine d'Angleterre*, English wool.

(a) This rule is not to be applied when the name of a country is accompanied by an adjective of quality, or some other qualifying words; as, *les villes de la Turquie d'Europe* (the towns of Turkey in Europe); *les manufactures de la Grande-Bretagne* (the manufactories of Great Britain); *les déserts de l'Arabie Pétrée* (the deserts of Arabia Petrea).

(b) ~~The~~ The omission of the article, in all cases, is of much more frequent occurrence with *feminine* names of countries; for the article seems to be generally used before names of countries and provinces in the masculine: *le duc de Normandie*, f. (the Duke of Normandy); *le comte du Maine* (the Count of Maine); *histoire d'Angleterre* (history of England); *histoire du Languedoc* (history of Languedoc); *les montagnes d'Ecosse* (the Scottish Highlands).

378. (3) The article is generally omitted before names of countries after *aller*, *arriver de*, *sortir de*, *venir de*, *revenir de*, &c.: *J'arrive de France*; *nous revenons d'Italie*; *vous allez en Allemagne* (No. 376).

379. (4) Names of countries out of Europe always require the article when they are masculine, in which case the prepositions *à* and *de* coalesce with the article; as in: *Je vais au Mexique* (I am going to Mexico); *les fleuves du Canada* (the rivers of Canada); *porcelaine du Japon* (Japanese porcelain); *il arrive du Congo* (he arrives from Congo); *ils demeuraient au Sénégal* (they lived in Senegal).

(a) *N.B.*—When the names of countries out of Europe are feminine, the rules given above (376, 377, 378) hold good. *Il est allé en Chine* (he has gone to China); *ils sont revenus d'Arménie* (they have returned from Armenia).

(b) ~~Inde~~ *Inde* is an exception, for although feminine this name always requires the article, and is frequently used in the plural: *Je viens de l'Inde* (I come from India); *mes neveux sont allés aux Indes* (my nephews have gone to India); *un châle de l'Inde* (an Indian shawl).

#### EXERCISE CXL.

*In Norway*, they cover the houses with the bark of the  
*En* on couvrir avec écorce f.  
 birch-tree. — We intend going to Switzerland and  
*bouleau m.* se proposer d' inf-l en  
*Italy.*—Three English miles are a little more than—  
*d'Angleterre* <sup>1</sup>mille m. font plus d'

<sup>five</sup>  
~~four~~ French kilometres.—My brother will soon return *from*  
<sup>2de France</sup> <sup>1kilomètre</sup> *revenir*

Russia. — I sailed *from* Holland for the Cape of  
*partir* ind-3 *cap* m.

Good Hope. — We had set out *from* Africa, when he  
*Bonne-Espérance.* ind-2 *partir*

arrived there. — He is gone *to* Australia. — Chocolate was  
ind-3 *y* *aller* *Australie* f. *chocolat* m. ind-3

brought *from* Mexico *to* Europe by the Spaniards.  
*apporter* *Mexique* m. *en* *Espagnol.*

380. RULE V.—Nouns used in a *partitive* sense must be preceded in French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according to the gender and number of the noun ; as,

Donnez-moi <i>du</i> pain, <i>de la</i> viande et <i>des</i> légumes.	Give me some bread, meat, and vegetables.
A-t-il <i>de</i> l'argent ou <i>des</i> amis ?	Has he any money or any friends ?

(1) But if the noun in the *partitive* sense is preceded by an adjective of quality, the preposition *de* only is used instead of *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des* ; as,

Donnez-moi <i>de</i> bon pain, <i>de</i> bonne viande, et <i>de</i> bons légumes.	Give me some good bread, good meat, and good vegetables.
--	---

(2) If, however, a noun and an adjective are so united as to form but one compound expression, the *partitive* article must be used according to Rule V. So we say and write, *des petits pois* (green peas), *des petits pains* (rolls), *des bons mots* (jokes), *des petits-maitres* (fops), *des grands seigneurs* (great lords), *des jeunes gens* (young men), *des petits pâtés* (patties), *des petits garçons* (boys), *des petites filles* (girls), *des beaux esprits* (wits), &c.

(3) But should these compound expressions be preceded by an adjective of quality, the article would not be used ; *de* only would appear ; as, *vous avez là de bons petits pois* (those green peas of yours are good).

(4) The article must be preserved also before a noun preceded by an adjective of quality when we particularise something by adding a qualifying statement ; as,

Avez-vous encore <i>du</i> bon fromage que vous avez reçu <i>de</i> la cam- pagne ?	Have you still any of the good cheese that you received from the country ?
Apportez-nous <i>des</i> belles pêches qui sont dans l'office.	Bring us some of the fine peaches that are in the pantry.

381. *De* alone is used before a noun completing an active verb in a negative statement, or a negative and interrogative sentence ; as, *Je n'ai pas DE pain*, I have no bread ; *n'avez vous pas D'argent ?* have you not any money ?

(1) But the article is required when the sense of a negative interrogation is emphatically *affirmative*; as, *Comment peut-il s'ennuyer? N'a-t-il pas DES livres instructifs et amusants?* (How can he feel weary? Has he not instructive and amusing books?)

(2) The article is also required when the noun completing a negative sentence is determined by an adjective or particularised by some incidental clause; as, *Je n'ai pas DES habits aussi beaux que les vôtres* (I have not such fine clothes as yours), *je n'écrirai pas DES lettres auxquelles on ne répond jamais* (I shall not write letters to which no one ever replies).

## EXERCISE CXLI.

I have bought *some* books.—Have you *any* change?—  
monnaie f.

Provence and Languedoc produce *oranges, olives, almonds,*  
— f. — m. *produire* — f. — f. *amande* f.

*chesnuds, figs, peaches, apricots, and grapes.* — He asks  
*châtaigne, f. figue f. pêche f. abricot m. raisin m.*

for red wine. — To write well, one must have *good paper, good*  
\* 2 1 *Pour* 2 1 *il faut* \*

*ink, and good pens.*—A great heart, said a king of Persia,  
*encre f. cœur m. ind-2 Perse*

receives *little presents* with one hand, and makes *large ones*  
*d' en faire grand \**

with the other.—(He is always seen) with *wits or great*  
*de On le toujours 1510 bel esprit grand*

*lords.* — Has the baker brought any rolls? — Here are  
*seigneur. 161 boulanger apporter petit pain*

little boys playing at marbles. — I have no change. —  
380 (2) *qui jouent aux bille* 381

Why do you not eat? — Have you not bread, meat, and wine?  
165 381 (1)

— Do not ask me for impossible things. — Give me  
*demandeur \* 1381 (2) Donnez-moi*

some of the excellent mustard that you have just received.  
380 (4) *moutarde f.* 152 (3)

382. RULE VI.—In mentioning the prices of goods, &c., the French use the *definite* article *le, la*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number, whereas the English make use of the *indefinite* article *a, an*; as,

Cinq francs *le* litre.

Deux francs cinquante centimes  
*le* mètre.

Trois shillings *la* douzaine.

*Five francs a* litre.

*Two francs and a half a* metre.

*Three shillings a* dozen.

383. But in speaking of time, or in specifying what is charged or paid per *head, lesson, person, week, day, year, &c.*, *PAR* is used without article; as,

Deux leçons *par* semaine.

Un dîner à cinq francs *par* tête.

Tant *par* personne.

*Two lessons a week.*

*A dinner at five francs a head.*

*So much each.*

## EXERCISE CXLII.

Butter sells at three francs *a* kilo. — The best  
371 *beurre* m. *se vend* \* — — — m.  
French wines sell for ten shillings *a* bottle. — That  
<sup>2</sup>*de France* <sup>1</sup> *se vendent* \* *bouteille* f.  
grocer sells very good tea at nine francs *a* kilo. —  
*épici* m. *vend* 380 (1) *thé* m.  
The rent of this house is seventy-five pounds, or  
*loyer* m. *de* *livres sterling*  
eighteen hundred and seventy-five francs *per* annum. — How  
\* *par*  
much *a* dozen? — Here are new-laid eggs at sixteen francs  
*douzaine* f. <sup>2</sup>*frais* <sup>1</sup>*œuf* pl.  
*a* hundred. — He gives him a hundred pounds *a* year; it is  
\* *c'*  
more than eight pounds *a* month.  
*de*

384. RULE VII. — The article *le, la, l', les*, is repeated before *every* noun taken in a determinate sense. Ex. : —

J'ai vu hier *le* roi, *la* reine, et *les* | *I* saw the king, queen, and  
princes. | *princes* yesterday.

*N.B.* — (1) If, however, two plural nouns are closely connected in the sentence, and form, so to speak, but one expression, the article is only used before the first; as, *LES arts et métiers* (arts and trades); *l'école DES ponts et chaussées* (the institution of civil engineers); *LES lettres et paquets* (the letters and parcels); *LES tenants et aboutissants* (the surroundings or adjoining properties, &c.) — (ACAD.)

(2) Usage also seems to sanction the suppression of the plural article before the second noun to mark relationship, analogy, &c.; as, *LES frères et sœurs* (the brothers and sisters); *LES pères et mères* (the fathers and mothers); *LES officiers, sous-officiers et soldats* (the officers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers).

*NOTE* This is *never* done with nouns in the singular.

*NOTE.* — This remark applies to other determinative words as well as to the article; as *SES frères et sœurs* (his or her brothers and sisters); *NOS parents et amis* (our relatives and friends); *SON frère et SA sœur* (his or her brother and sister); *MON oncle et MA tante* (my uncle and aunt).

## EXERCISE CXLIII.

The gentleman and lady are gone. — Gold, silver,  
*monsieur dame partis. art.*  
 health, honours, and pleasures, cannot make a man happy  
*santé f. ne peuvent rendre f*  
 without virtue. — Self-love and pride are  
*art. art. amour-propre m. orgueil m.*  
 always the offspring of a weak mind. — Innocence of  
*partage m. <sup>2</sup>faible <sup>1</sup>esprit m. art. — f.*  
 manners, sincerity, and abhorrence of vice inhabit  
*art. mœurs pl. horreur h m. art. — m. habiter*  
 this happy region. — Poetry, painting, and music are  
*région f. art. poésie f. peinture f. musique f.*  
 (sister arts).—The love that we owe to our father† and  
*sœurs. amour m. que l'on doit ses*  
 mother, that is to say, filial love, is the basis of every  
*c'est à dire <sup>2</sup>— <sup>1</sup>(373) base f. tout*  
 virtue.—The city of Andrew and Peter.  
*art. pl. ville f. 612*

385. RULE VIII.—When two or more adjectives are united by a conjunction, the article *is* or *is not* repeated, according to the sense of the context.

(1) The article is only used once if the adjectives qualify the same noun; as, *LE sage et pieux Fénelon* (the wise and pious Fénelon); *LES courageux mais vains efforts de ce peuple* (the courageous but vain efforts of that people); *LA belle et infortunée Marie Stuart* (the beautiful and unfortunate Mary Stuart).

(2) If the adjectives express, on the contrary, ideas of a different order, or separate designations, the article must be repeated before each adjective, for each qualifies a separate noun, whether expressed or understood; as, *LA bonne et LA mauvaise fortune* (good and bad luck); *les parents DU premier, DU second et DU troisième degré* (relatives of the first, second, and third degree); i.e., *LA bonne fortune, LA mauvaise fortune, &c.*

(3) The above rule is not always observed, however, WITH NOUNS IN THE PLURAL, and the article sometimes is not repeated when there is no doubt, and the contradictory meaning of each adjective shows sufficiently that dissimilar things are mentioned: as, *LES lois divines et humaines* (divine and human laws)—(ACAD.); *LES historiens anciens et modernes* (ancient and modern historians)—(MONTESQUIEU); *LES caractères vertueux ou méchants* (virtuous or wicked dispositions)—(VOLTAIRE); *LES oiseaux domestiques et sauvages* (domestic and wild birds)—(BUFFON).

† See footnote, page 272.

386. (a) When two or more adjectives are used, *without any conjunction*, before the noun which they qualify, the article or other determinative word used before the first adjective appears before each of those following ; as,

LE beau, LE grand, LE magnifique <i>spectacle!</i>	What a beautiful, great, magnifi- cent spectacle !
À l'aspect DU grave, DE L'inflexible <i>vieillard.</i>	At the sight of the grave and in- flexible old man.

(b) But if a conjunction unites the adjectives, the article or determinative is not repeated, whether the adjectives precede or follow the noun ; and we should say : LE beau, grand, et magnifique spectacle ; à l'aspect DU grave et inflexible vieillard ; CE véritablement pieux, grand, sage et courageux Israélite (BOILEAU) (that truly pious, great, wise, and courageous Israelite) ; C'est Dieu qui dispense LES succès bons et mauvais (it is God who grants successes both good and bad).

(c) ~~See~~ The rules on repetition or non-repetition of the article apply to the other determinatives, such as *mon, ton, son, ce, cet, ces*, &c.

## EXERCISE CXLIV.

The first *and* the second volume. — The first *and* the fourth  
—— m.

class.—The fifteenth *and* the sixteenth century were marked  
*classe f.* *siècle m. ind-4 marque*

by great discoveries. — The faults of Peter the Great  
380 (1) *découverte f.* *défaut m.* *Pierre*

tarnished his great *and* admirable qualities.—Can any one  
*ternir ind-4* *qualité f.* *Peut-on*

contemplate the heavens without being convinced that  
*contempler ciel m. sing.* *inf-1 convaincre*

the universe is governed by a supreme *and* divine Intelligence?  
*gouverner* —— *f.*

—Homer has described men such as they were, with *their*  
*Homère peindre tel qu' ind-2*

good *and* bad qualities.—My brother and sister are going to  
*qualité f.*

Pau.—Your relatives and friends.—The civil and military  
*parent 384 (2) ami* *2civile 385 (3) 3 78*

authorities. — The magnanimous and intrepid soldier. —  
*1autorité f.* *1magnanime* *2intrépide 3soldat*

(What a) pure, sweet, noble enjoyment !

La —— 386 *doux 46 —— jouissance f.*



## CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS NOT USED.

387. RULE I.—The article is omitted before substantives, when, in using them, nothing is said as to the extent of their signification.

## EXAMPLES.

Un tyran n'a ni <i>parents</i> ni <i>amis</i> .	<i>A tyrant has neither relations nor friends.</i>
Les chemins sont bordés de <i>lauriers</i> , de <i>grenadiers</i> , de <i>jusmins</i> , et d'autres <i>arbres</i> toujours verts et toujours fleuris.—( <i>Fénélou</i> .)	<i>The highways are bordered with laurels, pomegranates, jessamines, and other trees which are always green, and always in bloom.</i>

It follows from this rule that the article is not used before substantives :—

388. (1) When they are in the form of a title or an address ; as,

OBSERVATIONS sur l'état de l'Europe.	<i>Observations on the situation of Europe.</i>
Il demeure RUE Piccadilly, QUARTIER Saint-James.	<i>He lives in Piccadilly, St James's.</i>

389. (2) When they are governed by the preposition *en* ; as, *Vivre EN prince*, to live like a prince ; *être EN paix*, to be at peace.

*N.B.*—This rule applies to names of languages ; as, *il s'exprime bien EN français* (he expresses himself well in French). After *parler* the article is also not used before names of languages ; as, *je PARLE italien* ; but even after *parler* the article is used when there is *comparaison* or *special qualification* ; as, *vous PARLEZ LE français aussi bien que L'anglais* (you speak French as well as English), *peu de gens PARLENT LE français du siècle de Louis XIV.* (few people speak the French of the age of Louis XIV.)—(See No. 374 (b).)

*EN* The preposition *EN* does not admit of the definite article before the noun which follows it except in a few expressions, such as, *EN l'air* (in the air), *EN l'an mil huit cent* (in the year 1800).—(See Rule 614.)

390. (3) When they are used as an apostrophe or interjection ; as,

*Courage, soldats, tenez ferme ! | Courage, soldiers, stand firm !*

We say, however, to a person whom we do not know, and with whom we are on no ceremony : *Écoutez, l'homme !* Hark ye, my man !—*La fille, arrêtez !* Stop, girl ! &c.—(*Dict. de l'Élocution française.*)

391. No article is used, but simply the preposition *de*, after the words *sorte*, *genre*, *espèce*, *mélange*, and suchlike ; as, *une sorte DE fruit*, a kind of fruit.

## EXERCISE CXLV.

(We see there) neither *marble*, nor *columns*, nor *pictures*, nor  
*On n'y voit* *marbre* *colonne* *tableau*  
*statues*.—The fleets of Solomon, under the conduct of the  
*flotte f.* *Salomon* *conduite f.*  
 Phœnicians, made frequent voyages to the land of Ophir and  
*Phénicien* ind-2 — m. *terre f.* —  
 Tharsis, in Ethiopia, whence they returned at the end  
*de — en* *d'où* *revenir* ind-2 *bout m.*  
 of three years, laden with *gold*, *silver*, *ivory*, *precious stones*,  
*chargé de* *ivoire m.* <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>  
 and other *kinds* of merchandise.—I will pay you *in* gold.—  
*espèce f.* *marchandises.* *en*  
 He lived and died *like a* philosopher.—Come, *children*,  
*vivre* ind-3 ind-3 *Allons*  
 work.—That *kind* of work does not please everybody.—  
*genre m.* *ouvrage* *plaire à tout le monde.*  
*History* of the Roman emperors.  
<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>

392. RULE II.—No article is used before proper names of individuals, towns, villages, deities, &c.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Racine</i> est mon poète favori.	<i>Racine</i> is my favourite poet.
<i>Rome</i> est la capitale de l'Italie.	<i>Rome</i> is the capital of Italy.
<i>Courbevoie</i> est un village des environs de Paris.	<i>Courbevoie</i> is a village in the environs of Paris.
<i>Jupiter</i> et <i>Vénus</i> étaient des divinités païennes.	<i>Jupiter</i> and <i>Venus</i> were heathen divinities.

Some proper names of individuals, towns, &c., always keep the article as an inseparable part of the name; as, *La Fontaine*, *La Harpe*, *la Rochelle*, *la Flèche*, *la Haye*, *la Mecque*, *le Havre*, *le Poussin*, *Le Tellier*, &c.

393. Proper names, however, take the article—(1) When they are preceded by an adjective of quality or by a word showing title, dignity, profession, &c.; (2) When they are accompanied by some explanatory or peculiar distinction; as,

<i>Le vieux Londres.</i>	<i>Old London.</i>	<i>La reine Victoria.</i>	<i>Queen Victoria.</i>
<i>La Nouvelle-Orléans.</i>	<i>New Orleans.</i>	<i>Le prince Arthur.</i>	<i>Prince Arthur.</i>
<i>Le jeune Robert.</i>	<i>Young Robert.</i>	<i>Le docteur Maurice.</i>	<i>Dr Maurice.</i>
<i>La petite Alice.</i>	<i>Little Alice.</i>	<i>Le fermier Jarry.</i>	<i>Farmer Jarry.</i>

*L'Athalie* de Racine.

*Le Don Quichotte* de Cervantes.

*Le Moïse* de Michel-Ange.

*Le Dieu* d'Abraham, d'Isaac et de Jacob.

*Racine's Athalie.*

*Cervantes' Don Quixote.*

*The Moses of Michael Angelo.*

*The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.*

394. *Observation.*—In imitation of the Italians, the French use the article before the following names of Italian poets and painters: *le Tasse*, *le Dante*, *l'Arioste*, *le Corrège*, *le Titien*, *le Guide*, *le Tintoret*, *l'Albane*, *le Dominiquin*.

#### EXERCISE CXLVI.

*La Fontaine's* fables are masterpieces of style.—*Paris*  
 ——— 418 32 *chef-d'œuvre* 387 ———  
 is situated on the Seine, and *Brussels* on the Senne.—*King*  
*situé* ——— f. *Bruzelles* ——— f. 393  
*Alfred* founded the university of Oxford.—*Professor*  
*fonder* ind-3 78 ——— 393, 78  
*Faraday* died in 1867.—*Plato*, *Aristotle*, *Homer*, *Demosthenes*,  
 ind-4 *Platon*, *Aristote*, *Démosthène*,  
*Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Livy* are classical authors.—  
*Cicéron*, *Virgile* *Tite-Live* des <sup>2</sup>classique 1  
*Achilles* is the hero of the *Iliad*; *Æneas* is the hero  
*Achille* héros h asp. *Iliade* f. *Énée*  
 of the *Eneid*.—*Helen* was the ruin of *Troy*.—*Bucephalus*  
*Énéide* f. *Hélène* ind-4 *Troie*. *Bucéphale*  
 (would carry none but) *Alexander*.—*Carthage* was the rival  
*ne voulait porter qu'* ind-3 *rivale* f.  
 of *Rome*.—*Dante*, *Tasso*, and *Ariosto*, hold the first rank  
*tenir* *rang* m.  
 among the Italian poets.  
*parmi* 2 1

395. *RULE III.*—The article is not used, in French, before the ordinal numbers *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, &c., when they come after the name of a sovereign, or after the words *book*, *chapter*, or suchlike; as,

Édouard premier.

Richard trois.

Livre premier.

Edward the first.

Richard the third.

Book the first.

*N.B.*—Do not forget that the *cardinal* number is used, in French, instead of the *ordinal*, in mentioning sovereigns and the days of the month, with the exception of *premier* (No. 76).

396. The article is used—(1) Before *ordinal* numbers when they precede the noun: *LE huitième numéro* (the eighth number); *LA quinzième année* (the fifteenth year).

(2) Before *ordinal* numbers used alone, either as occasional substantives or to determine a noun understood : *LE dixième de son revenu* (the tenth part of his income); *Charles est LE troisième* (Charles is the third); *Marie est LA huitième* (Mary is the eighth); *Je demeurais AU second* (étage understood) (I was living on the second floor). (3) Before *numerals* in quoting the day of the month : *LE premier juin* (the first of June); *LE vingt-cinq mars* (the 25th of March).

397. The cardinal or ordinal numbers are indifferently used, the *first* excepted, after the words *livre*, *chapitre*, *page*, or suchlike. We say, *livre premier*, *section première*, and not *livre un*, *section une*. But we say either *livre huit* or *huitième*; *chapitre dix* or *dixième*; *page trois* or *troisième*; *tome second* or *tome deux*, &c.—(ACAD.)

## EXERCISE CXLVII.

Pope Leo *the tenth* and Luther were contemporaries.—  
art. *pape Léon* ——— *contemporain*

William *the third* married the princess Mary, daughter  
*Guillaume épouser ind-3 Marie*

of James *the second*, and granddaughter of Charles *the first*.—  
*Jacques 76 petite-fille 395*

Louis *the eleventh* had a Scotch guard. — Louis *the fifteenth*  
*ind-2 2<sup>e</sup> écossais 1<sup>re</sup> garde f.*

was the great-grandson of Louis *the fourteenth*. — Book *the*  
*ind-2 arrière-petit-fils*

sixth, chapter *the fifth*. — Volume *the third*, section *the seventh*,  
—— *f.*

article *the first*. — Rule *the fourth*, page *the ninth*.  
*règle f.*

398. RULE IV.—No article is used before nouns preceded by any of the possessive, demonstrative, or indefinite adjectives *mon*, *ton*, *son*, *notre*, *votre*, *leur*, *ce*, *nul*, *aucun*, *chaque*, *tout* (used for *chaque*), *certain*, *plusieurs*, *tel*, nor before those which are preceded by a cardinal number; as,

<i>Mon frère et ma sœur apprennent la géographie.</i>	<i>My brother and sister are learning geography.</i>
<i>Cette montre est bonne; donnez-la à votre sœur.</i>	<i>This watch is good; give it to your sister.</i>
<i>Tout homme peut mentir, mais tout homme ne ment pas.</i>	<i>Every man can lie, but every man does not lie.</i>
<i>J'ai trois chevaux.</i>	<i>I have three horses.</i>

(See Rules 80 to 95, pp. 43 to 50.)

## EXERCISE CXLVIII.

It is *my* turn to speak.—Give me the number of *his*  
*C' à tour m. à numéro m.*  
 house.—The Seine has *its* source in Burgundy, and *its*  
*f. — f. en*  
 mouth at Havre-de-Grâce.—All the husbands were at  
*embouchure f. au mari ind-2*  
 the ball with *their* wives.—*These* ladies (are waiting for)  
*bal m. femme dame attendant*  
*their* carriages.—Those *two* boys have lost *their* hats.—  
*voiture f.*  
 The Saracens occupied Spain during *several* centuries.—  
*Sarrasins ont occupé pendant siècle m.*  
 The city of Troy sustained a siege of *ten* years.—The  
*ville f. Troie 248 ind-3 an m.*  
 pound sterling (is worth) about *twenty-five* francs.  
*272 environ*

399. RULE V.—The indefinite article *a* or *an*, used in English before nouns expressing *title, profession, trade, country*, or any attribute of the noun preceding it, is omitted in French ; as,

Le duc d'York, prince du sang.	<i>The Duke of York, a prince of the blood.</i>
Je suis médecin.	<i>I am a physician.</i>
Il est libraire.	<i>He is a bookseller.</i>
Êtes-vous Français ?	<i>Are you a Frenchman ?</i>
Je viens de Caen, ville de Normandie.	<i>I come from Caen, a town of Normandy.</i>

400. (a) But when an adjective is joined to the noun, or when it is specified by some circumstance, then *a* or *an* must be expressed in French ; as,

Je suis UN prince infortuné.	<i>I am an unfortunate prince.</i>
M. Walewski est UN Polonais d'une illustre maison.	<i>M. Walewski is a Pole of an illustrious family.</i>

(b) *A* or *an* is also expressed in French after *c'est* ; as,  
*C'est UN évêque. He is a bishop.*

401. RULE VI.—The English indefinite article *a* or *an* is omitted in French after *quel, quelle, what*, used as an exclamation ; as,

Quel malheur !	<i>What a misfortune !</i>
Quelle belle maison !	<i>What a beautiful house !</i>
Quel coquin de valet !	<i>What a rogue of a servant !</i>

*N.B.*—This last example shows that when another *a* occurs between two nouns, the French merely use *de* without any article.

## EXERCISE CXLIX.

Napoleon was (at once) *an* emperor, a warrior, and a  
 ind-2 *à la fois* *guerrier*,  
 statesman. — Socrates was philosopher; Apelles, a  
*homme d'état.* *Socrate* ind-2 *Apelle*  
 painter; Phidias, a sculptor; Cicero, *an* orator; Livy, *an*  
*peintre* — *Tite-Live*  
 historian; and Virgil, a poet.—His father was a barrister.—  
*historien* *poète.* ind-2 *avocat.*  
 I am *an* Englishman, and a merchant.—The best coffee  
*négociant.* *café m.*  
 comes from Mocha, a town of Arabia Felix. — I am *an*  
*Moka,* 377 (a) *heureuse.*  
 unhappy Spaniard, who seek an asylum, where I may  
*malheureux Espagnol,* *cherche* *asile m.* *où il puisse*  
 end my days in peace.—He is *an* officer.—He is a captain.—  
*finir ses* *en* *C'* *officier.* *Il*  
 What a noise you make!—What a beautiful morning!—  
*bruit m.* *matinée f.*  
 What a droll fellow this commercial traveller is!  
*drôle de corps* *que ce commis-voyageur* \*

402. RULE VII.—No article is used, but only the preposition *de*, after the following adverbs:—

assez,	<i>enough.</i>	moins,	<i>less, fewer.</i>
autant,	<i>as much, as many.</i>	pas or point,	<i>no.</i>
beaucoup,	<i>{ much, very much,</i>	peu,	<i>little, few.</i>
	<i>many.</i>	plus,	<i>more.</i>
combien,	<i>{ how much, how</i>	rien,	<i>nothing.</i>
que,	<i>many.</i>	tant,	<i>so much, so many.</i>
jamais,	<i>never.</i>	trop,	<i>too much, too many.</i>

## EXAMPLES.

Beaucoup DE nations.	<i>Many nations.</i>
Plus D'effets et moins DE paroles.	<i>More deeds and fewer words.</i>
Trop DE peine.	<i>Too much trouble.</i>

(a) *Bien*, in the sense of *beaucoup*, is the only adverb of quantity which, besides the preposition *de*, requires the article; as,

Elle a bien DE L'esprit.	<i>She has a great deal of wit.</i>
Il a bien DES amis.	<i>He has many friends.</i>

(b) But, should the substantive that comes after the adverb be particularised by what follows, it requires the article; as,

J'ai encore beaucoup DE L'argent que j'ai apporté de France.	<i>I have still a good deal of the money which I brought from France.</i>
---	---

## EXERCISE CL.

I have *enough* money.—The elephant has *much* intelligence.  
*éléphant* — f.

—For one Plato in opulence, *how many* Homers and  
*dans* — f. *Homères* h m.

*Æsops* in indigence!—The honest man is esteemed, even  
*Æsopes dans* — f. *honnête* *estimé*

by those who have *no* probity.—There is *no* church  
*de* *pas* *Il n'y a point* *église*

(that can be) compared with Saint Peter's at Rome.—He  
*qu'on puisse* *inf-l* *à* *\* de*

has *few* friends.—Fathers and mothers have often *too much*  
 371 384 (2)

indulgence for their children.— Study presents *so many*  
 — f. 371 *étude* f. *offrir*

advantages that one cannot (give himself up to it) with  
*avantage* m. *on ne saurait* *s'y livrer*

*too much* ardour.

403. RULE VIII.—No article is used before nouns joined to verbs with which they express but one idea, and form idiomatical expressions ; as,

Ajouter foi, to give credit.

Avoir besoin, to want, to be in  
*need of.*

— carte blanche, to have full  
*power.*

— chaud, to be warm.

— froid, to be cold.

— compassion, to commiserate.

— dessein, to intend.

— envie, to wish.

— faim, to be hungry.

— soif, to be thirsty.

— honte, to be ashamed.

— patience, to have patience.

— peur, to be afraid.

— pitié, to pity.

— raison, to be in the right.

— tort, to be in the wrong.

Avoir soin, to take care.

Donner carte blanche, to give  
*full power.*

Faire attention, to attend, to  
*mind.*

— peur, to frighten.

— plaisir, to do a favour.

— semblant, to pretend, to  
*feign.*

— tort, to wrong.

— voile, to set sail.

Mettre fin, to put an end.

Parler allemand, to speak Ger-  
*man.*

— anglais, to speak English.

— français, to speak French.

Porter bonheur, to bring good  
*luck.*

Porter malheur, <i>to bring bad luck.</i>	Prendre patience, <i>to take patience, to bear or wait patiently.</i>
— envie, <i>to bear envy.</i>	— plaisir, <i>to delight.</i>
Prendre courage, <i>to take courage, to cheer up.</i>	— racine, <i>to take root.</i>
— garde, <i>to take care, to mind.</i> †	Rendre visite, <i>to pay a visit.</i>
— jour, <i>to appoint a day.</i>	Tenir tête, <i>to cope with one, to oppose.</i>

(a) In a few expressions, referring to the weather, the French use the verb FAIRE followed by the *partitive* article and a noun, as in :

<i>Il fait DU vent</i> (it is windy).	<i>Il fait DE LA poussière</i> (it is dusty).
<i>Il fait DU soleil</i> (the sun shines).	<i>Il fait DE LA boue</i> (it is muddy).
<i>Il fait DES éclairs</i> (it lightens).	&c. &c. &c.

(b) In a few other expressions, the *indefinite* article appears: *Il fait UN temps superbe* (it is beautiful weather); *il fait UNE tempête affreuse* (it is terribly stormy).

(c) In other expressions the verb FAIRE appears with an adjective used adverbially:

*Il fait* CHAUD (it is hot).      |      *Il fait* SEC (it is dry).  
*Il fait* FROID (it is cold).      |      *Il fait* HUMIDE (it is damp).

404. REMARK.—The article is sometimes omitted before substantives, in order to render the language more striking and expressive. When we say, *Pauvreté n'est pas vice ; Contentement passe richesse*, we express ourselves with more life than if we were to say, *La pauvreté n'est pas un vice ; Le contentement passe la richesse*. See also this phrase of FLÉCHIER : *Citoyens, étrangers, ennemies, peuples, rois, empereurs, le plaignent et le révèrent*. It has much more liveliness, energy, and grace, than it would have by re-establishing the articles : *Les citoyens, les étrangers, &c., le plaignent et le révèrent*.

### EXERCISE CLI.

I want a hat.—We intend to travel.—We must always  
*d' de Il faut*  
 pity the unfortunate.—I (do not know) who is in the wrong.  
*de malheureux pl. ne sais qui*

† *Prendre garde de* means TO TAKE CARE NOT TO: *Prenez garde de tomber*, mind you do not fall.



—The king has *given full power* to that general.—That man  
*général.*

*pretends* to sleep.—The night *put an end* to the battle.—  
*de ind-3 combat m.*

*Take care* to write.—He will come in a moment, *have*  
*Avoir d' 303 ind-7 dans prendre*

*patience.*—*Towers, spires, trees, flocks, huts, houses,*  
*Tour f. clocher m. troupeau m. cabane f.*

*palaces,* everything was swallowed up by the waves of the  
*tout ind-3 englouti flot m.*

sea.—It was *windy* this morning.—I think it will  
*mer f. (403 (a) ind-2) matin m. pense qu' 403 (c)*

*be fine* to-morrow.  
*beau demain*

## EXERCISE CLII.

You are wrong, it is he who is right.—The fox sometimes  
*c' lui*

*feigns* to be dead.—*Speak French* to us.—She *speaks Italian,*  
*d'*

*Spanish, German, and English.*—Let us say no ill of  
*espagnol, de mal*

Boileau, said Voltaire; that *brings bad luck.*—My vine wants  
*cela*

*cutting.* —Are you cold? I am neither cold nor warm.—  
*d'être taillée. ni*

Are you hungry, my boy? No, but I am very thirsty.—  
*mais*

*Mind* what he says to you.—We must not *wrong* our  
*à Il à son*

neighbour.—The service that I have rendered him seems to  
*prochain m. sembler \**

have brought me good luck.—Vice cannot take root  
*art. — m. ne saurait*

in a heart like his.—It is frightful weather.—It is  
*comme 105 403 (b) 2affreux 1temps m. 403 (a)*

very muddy.—It is a splendid night.  
*beaucoup de boue f. 403 (b) 2magnifique 1nuit f.*

## CHAPTER II.

## OF THE SUBSTANTIVE OR NOUN.

## § I. FUNCTIONS OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

405. The Substantive is either the subject of the verb, or is governed by the verb, in which case it is called the *regimen*.

(a) In this phrase : *la mère aime ses enfants*, the mother loves her children ; *la mère* is the subject, or nominative case ; and *enfants* is the regimen, object, or accusative case. *Ses enfants* is also called the *regimen direct*, because there is no preposition intervening between it and the verb *aime*.

(b) In *les enfants obéissent à la mère*, the children obey the mother ; *les enfants* is the subject, and *à la mère* is the regimen ; and this regimen is called *indirect* because it has a preposition (*à*) before it.

## § II. OF THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

406. We have already said (p. 10) that there are in French only two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

(a) The masculine gender expresses the male kind, and the feminine gender denotes the female kind.

(b) The French language has no neuter ; consequently, inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine.

407. Generally speaking, French substantives have but one gender ; a few of them, however, are masculine in one signification, and feminine in another.

(1) The following denote *persons* in the masculine, and *actions* in the feminine :—

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
AIDE, † . . .	male assistant, helper,	the action of helping.
CRITIQUE, . . .	critic, . . .	criticism.
ÉLÈVE, † . . .	male pupil, or animal reared,	{ the action of breeding, rearing.
GARDE, † . . .	a male keeper, a guard,	{ keeping, watching, body of troops.
MANŒUVRE, . . .	a labourer, a workman,	drill, manœuvre.
PANTOMIME, . . .	a pantomime actor,	dumb-show.
STATUAIRE, . . .	a sculptor, . . .	the art of making statues.

† *Aide, élève, and garde* are feminine if applied to *female* assistants, pupils, or keepers.

(2) The following denote one thing in the *masculine*, and another in the *feminine*:—

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
AIGLE, . .	a male eagle, a man of genius,	a female eagle, a standard.
AUNE, . .	alder, . . . . .	ell (measure).
BARBE, . .	Barbary horse, . . . . .	beard.
COUPLE, . .	{ a married couple, a pair (of people),	{ a brace, two.
CRÊPE, . .	crape, . . . . .	a pancake.
ENFANT, . .	a male child, . . . . .	a female child.
N.B.— <i>Enfant</i> in the plural is only masculine.		
ENSEIGNE, . .	ensign, midshipman, . . . . .	signboard, flag.
EXEMPLE, . .	example, . . . . .	a copy to write from.
(when used figuratively, as: <i>un foudre de guerre</i> (a great warrior); <i>un foudre d'éloquence</i> (a great orator),		
FOUDRE, . .	{	{ lightning, thunderbolt.
GREFFE, . .	registry-office (of a tribunal),	grafting.
GUIDE, . .	a guide, . . . . .	reins.
HYMNE, . .	a national song, hymn, . . . . .	church hymn.
LIVRE, . .	a book, . . . . .	pound (coin and weight).
MANCHE, . .	a handle, . . . . .	{ a sleeve, also <i>la Manche</i> (the English channel).
MÉMOIRE, . .	{ a bill, a note, a memorial, memoirs,	{ memory.

N.B.—*Mémoire* (a bill) is only said of bills of large amount, such as *builders', architects', upholsterers', &c.*

MODE, . .	mood, mode, . . . . .	fashion.
MOULE, . .	a mould, . . . . .	a mussel.
MOUSSE, . .	a cabin-boy, . . . . .	moss.
ŒUVRE, . .	a great composition, . . . . .	in all other cases. "work."
OFFICE, . .	office, duty, . . . . .	pantry, larder, &c.
PAGE, . .	a page (boy), . . . . .	a page (of a book).
PAILLASSE, . .	a clown, . . . . .	a straw-mattress.
PARALLÈLE	{ a comparison, a parallel (latitude circle),	{ a parallel line, a trench (in fortification).
PENDULE, . .	a pendulum, . . . . .	a clock, time-piece.
PÉRIODE, . .	acme, highest pitch, . . . . .	period (duration).
PERSONNE, . .	indefinite pronoun (124),	a person (either sex).
PIQUE, . .	spade (at cards), . . . . .	a pike (arm), quarrel.
POêle, . .	a stove, a pall, . . . . .	a frying-pan.
POSTE, . .	situation, military station, . . . . .	post (for letters, &c.)
RELÂCHE, . .	relaxation, interruption, . . . . .	putting into a harbour.
REMISE, . .	hackney-carriage, . . . . .	coach-house, remittance.
SOLDE, . .	balance of accounts, . . . . .	soldiers' pay.
SOMME, . .	nap, slumber, . . . . .	sum of money.
SOURIS, . .	smile (more often <i>sourire</i> ), . . . . .	mouse.
TOUR, . .	a tour, turn, trick, lathe, . . . . .	tower.
TROMPETTE, . .	trumpeter, . . . . .	trumpet.
VASE, . .	a vase or vessel, . . . . .	slime, mud.
VOILE, . .	a veil, . . . . .	a sail (of a ship).

(3) The three nouns AMOUR, love; DÉLICE, delight; and ORGUE, organ (musical instrument), are always *masculine* in the singular, but are

generally *feminine* in the plural. Examples: UN *grand délice*, de *grandes délices*; UN *ardent amour*, ses *premières amours*; UN *bel orgue*, de *belles orgues*.

(4) **GENS** (people) requires the adjectives which precede it to be in the *feminine*, and those which follow in the *masculine*: *les VIEILLES gens sont SOUPÇONNEUX; TOUTES les MÉCHANTES gens.*

However, *tous* must be used if it is the only adjective that precedes *gens*, or if it is used with an adjective ending in *e* mute in the masculine. Examples: *TOUS les gens heureux* ; *TOUS les honnêtes gens*.

(5) CHOSE (a thing) is *feminine*, but the expression QUELQUE CHOSE DE is *masculine*. Examples: c'est *UNE* bonne chose; c'est *quelque chose de BON*.

*Quelque chose* (something) is masculine, *quelque chose que* (whatever thing) is feminine. (See footnote, p. 48.)

**Observe** the idiomatic use of *de* between *quelque chose* and the following adjective. This use of *de* is also required after *rien, ceci, cela, que, quoi, personne, aucun, pas un, quelqu'un*. (Il n'y a rien de nouveau.) See p. 345.

(For the gender of some particular words, see pp. 10, 11, 12, 22, 23, 24.)

### EXERCISE CLIII.

Several Roman *eagles* were taken by the Germans, after the  
ind-3 *Germanis*

defeat of Varus, in the reign of Augustus. — A couple  
défaite f. — sous règne m. *Auguste.*

of sheep which they roasted themselves, composed the  
*mouton m. qu' faisaient rôtir* ind-2

feasts of the heroes of Homer.—We have shot a brace of  
festin m. héros d' tue

pheasants.—Dear *child*, said a mother to her daughter, without  
ind-2

thee there is no happiness for me.—What wicked *people!*—  
*toi il n' point* *Quel méchant*

They are the best people in the world. — Young people are

Ce de art.

often lazy.— Military men wear *crape* (round their) arm.  
art. \* *porter* art. *au*

### EXERCISE CLIV.

We have eaten excellent *pancakes*.—This *book* is stereotyped.  
stéréotypé.

—At Paris and in the greatest part of France, the  
partie f. art.

*pound* was sixteen ounces. — The *Memoirs* of Sully are  
ind-2 de

(very much) esteemed. — That passage is at the bottom of  
*fort* *bas m.*

page 164.—*Nobody* is more unhappy than a miser. — Have  
 art. qu' avarice m.  
 you seen the *person* that I sent to you?—I will give  
que 2ai 3envoyée \*  
 you *something* good. — The *tower* of Cordouan serves as a  
de \*  
 lighthouse at the mouth of the Gironde.—The *vase* fell  
phare embouchure f. f. — m. ind-3  
 into the *mud*.

### § III. OF NUMBER IN SUBSTANTIVES.

408. Although there be plurality in the idea, certain French substantives do not take the mark of the plural; these are:—

409. (1) Proper names; as, *l'Espagne s'honore d'avoir vu naître les deux SÉNEQUE. Les deux CORNEILLE sont nés à Rouen.* Except when they are used as *common nouns*, that is to say, to designate individuals similar to those whose name is employed; as, *la France a eu ses CÉSARS et ses POMPÉES*; that is, generals such as Cæsar and Pompey. *Les Corneilles et les Miltons sont rares*; that is, poets such as CORNEILLE and MILTON.

(a) REMARK.—It sometimes happens that poets and orators place the article *les* before proper names which designate but one individual. This is an irregularity, or at least a licence, which can only be tolerated when productive of a fine effect, as in the following phrase of *Voltaire*:

*Il manque à CAMPISTRON ces expressions heureuses qui font l'âme de la poésie et le mérite des HOMÈRE, des VIRGILE, des TASSE, des MILTON, des POPE, des CORNEILLE, des RACINE, des BOILEAU.*

You discover that there is unity in the idea when the sense permits to suppress the article *les*; here we might say: *le mérite d'Homère, de Virgile &c.*

(b) ~~As~~ Although a proper name cannot, in French, take the mark of the plural, with the exception of the case in which it is used as a common noun, yet we write with the sign of the plural *les Stuarts, les Bourbons*, and some others, for the same reason that we say *les Allemands, les Italiens*, because these words are no longer the proper name of an individual, but the proper name of a class of individuals.

(c) *N.B.*—Proper names of countries take the mark of the plural: *les Flandres; les deux Amériques; les Indes.*

410. (2) Words taken from the Latin, or from any foreign language, and which have not been naturalised by frequent use; as,

*Des alibi, des intérim, des andante, des forte, des crescendo, des requiem, des credo, des gloria, des Te Deum; des exequatur, des veto,*

des *ecce-homo*, des *nota bene*, des *vade-mecum* (hand-books), des *post-scriptum* (postscripts), des *in-folio* (folio volumes), des *in-quarto* (quarto volumes), des *in-octavo* (8vo volumes), &c.

Some, however, have become quite French by frequent use, and take *s* in the plural; such are *accessit* (honourable mention), *album*, *autodafé*, *examen* (examination), *opéra* (opera), *pensum* (task imposed for punishment), *spécimen*, *adagio*, *quiproquo* (a quid pro quo, a strange mistake), *solo*, *duo* (a duet), *oratorio*, *verso* (back page of a book), *recto* (right-hand page of a book) *maximum*, *minimum*, *déficit*, *exeat* (a pass, leave to go out), *quatuor* (a quartet), &c. Examples: des *accessits*, des *albums*, des *solos*, des *quiproquos*, des *pensums*, des *autodafés*.

411. (3) Words naturally invariable, and which are only accidentally employed as substantives; such as, les *pour-quoi*, les *car*, les *oui*, les *non*, les *on dit*, &c.

To these may be added: the letters of the alphabet, the notes of the musical scale, the numeral cardinal adjectives which do not take *s* in the plural, when used substantively: *ces a sont mal faits* (these *a*'s are badly done); *ces ré*, *ces mi* et *ces fa* sont faux (these *re*'s, *mi*'s, and *fa*'s are out of tune); *effacez tous les sept et tous les neuf* (strike out all the 7's and all the 9's).

## EXERCISE CLV.

Spain is proud of having produced Lucan, Martial, the  
*s'honore* inf-1 *Lucain*, —  
 two *Senecas*, etc. — The first of the four *Williams* came  
*Sénèque*, *Guillaume* est venu  
 from Normandy. — *Ciceros* and *Virgils* will always  
 art. art.  
 be scarce. — The *mistakes* of apothecaries are very  
*rare* *quiproquo* m. *apothicaire* sing. *très*  
 dangerous. — After the victory, they sung *Te Deum* in all the  
 on ind-3  
 churches. — It was Cardinal Mazarin who introduced in  
*église* f. *C'est* art. ind-3  
 France the taste for *operas*. — That violinist performed  
*goût* m. *de* art. *violiniste* m. *a exécuté*  
 several *solos* at the last concert. — He puts *postscripts* to all  
 — m. 32  
 his letters. — Where shall we now find *Bonapartes* and  
*trouver*  
*Wellingtons*? — He was the friend of the *Bourbons*. — Your  
*fours*, *eights*, and *fives* are badly done. — His *b*'s  
 486 486 *mal fait* m. pl.  
 and *f*'s are too small.  
 486 *trop* m. pl.

# § IV. OF THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

412. Compound substantives which are not yet written IN ONE WORD, that is to say, whose distinct parts are connected by a hyphen, are written in the singular or in the plural, according as the nature and particular sense of the words of which they are composed require the one or the other number.† Such is the general principle, whose application will be facilitated by the following rules.

413. RULE I.—When a word is composed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural ; as,

<i>un petit-maitre,</i>	<i>a dandy,</i>	pl. <i>des petits-maitres.</i>
<i>une chauve-souris,</i>	<i>a bat,</i>	— <i>des chauves-souris.</i>
<i>une basse-cour,</i>	<i>a poultry-yard,</i>	— <i>des basses-cours.</i>
<i>du blanc-manger,</i>	<i>some blanc-mange,</i>	{ — <i>des blancs-mangers.</i>

(See Rule 34.)

(a) To this rule there are a few exceptions; as, *UNE grand'mère*, plural *DES grand'mères*.

(b) ~~LE~~ *GRAND*, without apostrophe, always agrees in gender and number with its substantive, but *GRAND'* is always invariable.

414. RULE II.—When a compound word is formed of two substantives placed immediately one after the other, both take the mark of the plural ; as,

<i>un chef-lieu,</i>	<i>a county town,</i>	pl. <i>des chefs-lieux.</i>
<i>un chou-fleur,</i>	<i>a cauliflower,</i>	— <i>des choux-fleurs.</i>
<i>un oiseau-mouche,</i>	<i>a humming-bird,</i>	— <i>des oiseaux-mouches.</i>

The exceptions to this rule are but few, among which is *UN Hôtel-Dieu* (un hôtel de Dieu), a name given to the principal hospital, or infirmary, of several towns in France ; plural *DES Hôtels-Dieu*.

415. RULE III.—When a compound word is formed of two substantives joined by a preposition, the first only takes the mark of the plural ; as,

<i>un arc-en-ciel,</i>	<i>a rainbow,</i>	pl. <i>des arcs-en-ciel.</i>
<i>un chef-d'œuvre,</i>	<i>a masterpiece,</i>	— <i>des chefs-d'œuvre.</i>

(a) ~~LE~~ Observe also that in some compound nouns in which the preposition is *understood*, the first noun only takes the mark of the plural: *un timbre-poste* (a postage-stamp); *des timbres-poste* (some postage-stamps), i.e., *des timbres de la poste*.

† In compound nouns, the only words susceptible, by their nature, of taking the mark of the plural, are the *substantive* and the *adjective*.

(b) EXCEPTIONS.—UN *tête-à-tête*, a conversation or interview between two persons; plural DES *tête-à-tête*. UN *coq-à-l'âne*, an unconnected, nonsensical speech, passing from one thing to another quite opposite, as from a *cock* to an *ass*; plural DES *coq-à-l'âne*.

## EXERCISE CLVI.

Those two men are *brothers-in-law*. — I know his two  
*beau-frère*

*grand-fathers*.—There are in France eighty-six *capitals* of  
*grand-père* Y avoir *chef-lieu* m.

departments.— *Rainbows* are formed by the reflection of the  
sing. art. *réflexion* f.

(rays of the sun) in the clouds. — In warm countries  
*rayons solaires* dans *nuage* m. Dans art. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>*pays* m.

<sup>2</sup>*silk-worms* <sup>1</sup>(are reared) upon (mulberry trees). —  
art. *ver à soie* on élève sur des *mûrier* m.

The great nightshade (originally came) from Mexico. —  
*belle-de-nuit* pl. sont originaires art. *Mexique* m.

He is always making *cock and bull stories*.

\* fait 32 *coq-à-l'âne*

416. RULE IV.—When a compound word is formed of a substantive joined either to a verb, a preposition, or an adverb, the substantive only takes the sign of the plural, if there be plurality in the idea. So we write with an *s* in the plural:—

<i>un avant-coureur,</i>	<i>a forerunner,</i>	pl. <i>des avant-coureurs.</i>
<i>un contre-coup,</i>	<i>a counter-blow,</i>	— <i>des contre-coups.</i>
<i>une garde-robe,</i>	<i>a wardrobe,</i>	— <i>des garde-robes.</i>
<i>une arrière-pensée,</i>	<i>mental reservation,</i>	— <i>des arrière-pensées.</i>

(a) But we write without an *s* in the plural, because the expressions are elliptical, and there is unity in the idea:

<i>Des réveille-matin</i> (clocks which awake in the morning),	} <i>alarm-clocks.</i>
<i>Des abat-jour</i> (shades to throw down the light),	
	} <i>shades (for lamps, &amp;c.)</i>

(b) Finally, the mark of the plural *is* or *is not* put to the noun, in such compound substantives (whether in the singular or plural), according as we mean to express *unity* or *plurality*: UN COUVRE-PIEDS (a counterpane which covers *the feet*; UN ESSUIE-MAIN (a towel), if we mean *for the hand*, or UN ESSUIE-MAINS, *for the hands*. But it is preferable to show the difference between the singular and plural form of the substantive, whenever sense will allow it: UN *essuiemain*, DES *essuiemains*; UN *garde-cendre* (an ash-pan), DES *garde-cendres*, or DES *garde-cendres*.



417. RULE V.—When a compound substantive contains only such parts of speech as the *verb*, *preposition*, or *adverb*, none of its components take the mark of the plural ; as,

*un passe-passe,*      *a sleight of hand,*      pl. *des passe-passe.*  
*un passe-partout,*   *a master-key, a pass-key,*   — *des passe-partout.*

#### EXERCISE CLVII.

The Cossacks are generally the *scouts* of the Russian  
*Cosaque ordinairement avant-coureur*      <sup>2</sup>*russe*  
 armies.—Rear-admirals are below vice-admirals.—  
<sup>1</sup> *contre-amiral*      *au-dessous de art. vice-amiral*  
*Snow-drops* bear flowers in the midst of the  
*perce-neige f. porter de art.*      *à milieu m.*  
 rigours of winter.—In time of war, the savages of  
*rigueur f. art.*      *En*      *sauvage m.*

America are armed with *tomahawks*. — Gold is the  
*art.*      *de casse-tête* 416 (b)

surest of all *pass-keys*.—These (are mere) *hearsays*.  
 \* *art.* 417      *Ce ne sont que de art. ouï dire*

#### § V. OF THE POSSESSIVE OR GENITIVE CASE :—

*The king's palace ; the queen's crown, &c.*

418. This form of the possessive or genitive case is rendered in French in an inverted manner, the last word coming first, as if it were *the palace OF THE king, le palais DU roi ; the crown OF THE queen, la couronne DE LA reine.*

#### EXERCISE CLVIII.

(Here are) Joséphine's gloves and Alfred's hat.—Where is  
*Voici*

John's book ?—My uncle's house. — The mayor's authority.—  
*maison f.*      *maire autorité f.*

The king of England's palaces. — The queen's presence of  
*palais m.*

mind. — Helen's beauty (was the cause of) Troy's  
*esprit*      *Hélène h m.*      *causa*      *Troie*

destruction.—Have you read Milton's *Paradise Lost* ?— Will  
*Paradis m.*      *Vouloir*

you lend me La Fontaine's *Fables* ?—Are you going to Mrs.  
*prêter*      — *f.*

Bell's party ?—Paul's sister's son entered into the castle.  
*soirée f.*      *dans*      *forteresse f.*

### § VI. OF INVERSION IN CERTAIN COMPOUND WORDS:—

*Ear-rings ; dining-room, &c.*

419. These are a kind of compound words, the order of which is likewise inverted in French. *Boucles d'oreilles*. *Salle à manger*.

Here also, two different prepositions are used, *à* and *de*, the choice of which depends upon the nature of the expression.

(1) *De* is used when *of, of the, made of, composed of, coming from,* can be understood.

**Boat-builder, i. e., builder of boats,    Constructeur de bateaux.**

*The house-door, i. e., the door of the house,* } *La porte de la maison.*

*Silk-stockings*, i.e., stockings made of silk, } Bas de soie.

*Madeira wine, i. e., wine coming  
from Madeira,* } Vin de Madère.

### EXERCISE CLIX.

The *golden age* is one of the (most agreeable) fictions  
*âge m.* <sup>2</sup>*les plus agréables* <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_

of mytholgy.—He has bought a *country-house*.—He is a  
art. *campagne*

*wine-merchant.*—The *garden-seat* is broken.—My uncle has  
*marchand* *banc m.*

given me a *gold watch*, and a *silver chain*. — Do you like  
*chaîne f.*

*Newfoundland cod? — I like Burgundy wine.—The English*  
*Terre-Neuve morue f. Bourgogne*

import a great quantity of *Malta oranges* and *Turkey figs*.  
*importer* *Malte* *figue f.*


(2)  $\lambda$  is used in compound words, when *for*, *for the purpose of*, *by means of*, *with*, may be understood. Examples :—

*Paper-mill*, i.e., mill for the purpose of } Moulin à papier.  
making paper,

*Steam-boat*, i.e., boat moved by means of steam, } Bateau à vapeur.

*Three-thread stockings, i. e., stockings  
with three threads,* } Bas à trois fils.

*The milk-jug*, i.e., where milk is usually kept, } *Le pot au lait.*

(3)  The definite article is required as a rule with the preposition *à* when the SECOND NOUN expresses something contained or usually kept in the first, or something sold or dealt in at a place; also a peculiarity of appearance or dress, &c. Examples:—*La boîte aux lettres* (the letter-box), i.e., in which letters are usually put; *l'homme à la jambe de bois* (the man with a wooden leg); but we would say: *le pot aux confitures*, or *un pot à confitures*; the first expression meaning a jar in which preserves are usually kept, and the second a jar suitable for preserves.

*N.B.*—The *indefinite* article is never used in this case with a noun followed by the preposition *à* and the definite article. Consequently, we say : *LA bouteille à l'huile* (the oil-bottle), or *UNE bouteille à huile* ; but never *une bouteille à l'huile*.

(4) In compound expressions formed with *de*, the article is used to designate objects more precisely: *la vie DE L'homme* (in general) *est courte* (man's life is short); *une vie D'homme* (of any man) *n'y suffirait pas* (a man's life would not suffice for it); also, *les rayons DU soleil* (the rays of the sun); and *un rayon DE soleil* (a sunbeam).

### EXERCISE CLX.

The inventor of *gunpowder* was a German monk, named  
*canon poudre f. ind-2* <sup>2</sup> *l'moine*  
Schwartz.—I have always *firearms* in my *bed-room*. — Give  
*coucher chambre f.*  
me a *wine-glass*, and a *soup-spoon*. — The *hay-market* †  
*verre m.* *cuiller f.* *au foin marché m.*  
is on your left, and the *horse-fair* † is before you.—There  
*à gauche* *aux pl. foire f.* *devant* .  
are (a great many) *windmills* in France. — Have you ever  
*beaucoup de* *jamais*  
seen a *steam-mill*? No; but I have seen several *water-mills*.  
*mais* *plusieurs eau*  
—Honour to the inventor of the *steam-engine*! — I like  
*Honneur* *machine f.*  
*rice-soup*. — Take the *coffee-cups* into the *dining-room*. —  
*au riz* *Porter* *café tasse* *manger salle f.*  
Where is my sister's *work-box*? — My brother has given  
*Où* *ouvrage boîte f.*

† Refer to No. 419 (3).

me a penknife *with* an ivory handle. — The waiter has  
*canif* m.                   \* *ivoire* manche m

broken the milk-jug.  
 419 (3)

## PECULIARITIES OF NUMBER IN CERTAIN NOUNS.

☞ There are in French, as in English, some nouns which are never used in the plural, and others which are never used in the singular.

420. The following are *never* used in the plural :

(a) The names of the four cardinal points: *le nord* (north), *le sud* ou *midi* (south), *l'est* (east), *l'ouest* (west).

(b) The names of metals: *l'argent* (silver), *l'or* (gold), *le platine* (platinum), *l'acier* (steel), *le fer* (iron), *le plomb* (lead), *le cuivre* (copper), *l'étain* (tin), *le zinc* (zinc), *le bronze* (bronze), &c.

*Note.*—When the names of metals are used to express marketable goods or manufactured articles, they are used in the plural: *Les aciers, les fers, les cuivres, &c., ont augmenté de prix* (the price of steel, iron, copper, &c., has increased).—*J'ai acheté les cuivres de cet ouvrage* (I have bought the engraved copper-plates of that work).—*Il y avait de très beaux bronzes à l'Exposition* (there were some very fine bronzes at the Exhibition).

\* \* But this is never done in reference to the three precious metals, *or, argent, and platine.*

### (c) Abstract nouns generally:

<i>l'abstinence</i> , abstinence.	<i>l'indolence</i> , indolence.	<i>la pudeur</i> modesty.
<i>l'activité</i> , activity.	<i>l'innocence</i> , innocence.	<i>la reconnais-</i> } gratitude.
<i>l'adolescence</i> , adolescence.	<i>la jeunesse</i> , youth.	<i>sance,</i>
<i>le bonheur</i> , happiness.	<i>la modestie</i> , modesty.	<i>la santé</i> , health.
<i>la bonté</i> ,† kindness.	<i>l'obéissance</i> , obedience.	<i>le silence</i> , silence.
<i>la charité</i> , charity.	<i>l'odorat</i> , { sense of	<i>la vieillesse</i> , old age.
<i>le courage</i> , courage.	{ smelling.	<i>la volonté</i> ,¶ will.
<i>le désespoir</i> , despair.	<i>l'oisiveté</i> , idleness.	<i>la vue</i> ,** sight.
<i>la douceur</i> ,‡ gentleness.	<i>l'orgueil</i> , pride.	<i>le zèle</i> , zeal.
<i>l'enfance</i> , childhood.	<i>l'ouïe</i> ,   { sense of	&c. &c.
<i>l'esprit</i> ,§ mind, wit.	{ hearing.	
<i>la fierté</i> , haughtiness.	<i>la paresse</i> , idleness.	

† *Bontés* (in the plural) means kind attentions.

‡ *Douceurs* (in the plural) means *pleasure, sweets*: *Les douceurs du pouvoir* (the sweets of power).

§ *Esprits* (in the plural), *spirits*; also *men*: *Les esprits furent troublés par ces mesures impolitiques* (*men's minds were disturbed by those impolitic measures*).

|| *Ouïes* (in the plural) means *the gills of a fish*; also *the holes in a violin, &c.*

¶ *Volontés* (in the plural) means *wishes*.

\*\* *Vues* (in the plural) means *views*.

(d) Adjectives used substantively and expressing abstract ideas: *le beau* (the beautiful), *le grand* (the grand), *le noble* (what is noble), *le sublime* (what is sublime), *l'utile* (what is useful), *l'agréable* (what is agreeable), &c.

(e) A few infinitives accidentally used substantively: *le manger* (eating), *le boire* (drinking), *le dormir* (sleeping), *le toucher* (sense of touch).

(f) The names of arts and sciences: *la musique* (music), *la peinture* (painting), *l'astronomie* (astronomy), *la physique* (natural philosophy), *la chimie* (chemistry), *la géométrie* (geometry), &c. &c.

\* \* However—(1) *Mathématiques* (mathematics) is only used in the plural; (2) *fortification* (in the singular) is the science of fortifying; (3) *fortifications* (in the plural) means the works erected to defend a place.

**33** *Témoin* (witness) does not take the mark of the plural when preceding the noun to which it refers: *TÉMOIN ces quatre hommes* (witness these four men). It does not take the mark of the plural, either, when used adverbially, in the expression *prendre à témoin* (to offer as witness, to call upon any one to give evidence): *Je les prends à TÉMOIN* (I give them as witnesses, I call upon them to come forward as witnesses).

421. The following nouns are *not* used in the singular:—

<i>Abais</i> , at bay; <i>être aux abais</i> , to be at bay.	<i>ciseaux</i> , †	scissors.	<i>manes</i> ,	{ manes,
<i>aguets</i> , watch; <i>être aux aguets</i> , to be on the look-out.	<i>confins</i> ,	{ borders,	<i>matériaux</i> ,	{ shades,
	<i>décombres</i> ,	{ frontiers.	<i>mathéma-</i>	{ materials.
	<i>dépens</i> ,	{ rubbish.	<i>tiques</i>	{ mathemat-
<i>alentours</i> ,	<i>entrefaites</i>	{ cost, ex-	<i>mœurs</i> ,	{ manners,
{ neighbour-	(sur ces)	{ pense.	<i>mouchettes</i> ,	{ morals.
<i>annales</i> ,	<i>environs</i> , †	{ in the mean-	<i>obseques</i> ,	{ snuffers.
{ records, an-	<i>entrailles</i> ,	{ while.	<i>pénates</i> ,	{ funeral obse-
<i>appas</i> ,	<i>entraves</i> , §	{ environs.	<i>pincettes</i> ,	{ quies.
{ charms, at-	<i>fastes</i> ,	{ bowels.	<i>pierreries</i> ,	{ penates.
<i>archives</i> ,	<i>flançailles</i> ,	{ shackles,	<i>pleurs</i> ,	{ tongs.
{ public rec-	<i>font de</i>	{ fetters.	<i>proches</i> ,	{ precious
<i>armoires</i> ,	<i>baptême</i> ,	{ annals, rec-	<i>ténèbres</i> ,	{ stones.
{ coat of	<i>funérailles</i> ,	{ ords, fasti.	<i>thermes</i> ,	{ tears.
<i>arrérages</i> ,	<i>lunettes</i> ,	{ betrothal.	<i>vêpres</i> ,	{ kinsmen.
{ arrears,		{ baptismal	<i>vivres</i> ,	{ darkness.
<i>arrhes</i> ,		{ font, for-		{ bathing es-
{ earnest-		{ tifications.		{ tablishment
<i>assises</i> ,		{ costs, ex-		{ vespers.
<i>atours</i> ,		{ pense.		{ food, pro-
<i>broussailles</i> ,		{ funeral.		{ visions.
<i>catacombes</i> ,		{ spectacles.		

† *Ciseau* (singular) is a *chisel*.

‡ *Environ* (without *s*) is an adverb meaning *nearly, about*.

§ *Entrave* (singular), *impediment, obstacle*.

|| *Lunette* (singular) means a *telescope, a spying-glass*.

## CHAPTER III.

### OF THE ADJECTIVE.

#### I. CONCORD OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE NOUN.

422. **GENERAL RULE.**—The Adjective, in French, must be of the same gender and number as the noun or pronoun to which it relates, for which purpose it often changes its termination. In English, on the contrary, the adjective is never varied on account of gender or number.

##### EXAMPLES.

Le BON père.	The GOOD father.
La BONNE mère.	The GOOD mother.
De BEAUX jardins.	FINE gardens.
De BELLES fleurs.	FINE flowers.

*Bon* is masculine singular, because *père* is masculine, and in the singular; *bonne* is feminine singular, because *mère* is feminine, and in the singular.

*Beaux* is masculine plural, because *jardins* is masculine and plural; *belles* is feminine plural, because *fleurs* is feminine and plural.

(For the formation of the feminine, and plural of the adjectives, see pp. 25 to 29.)

##### EXERCISE CLXI.

The *formidable* empire which Alexander conquered, *avait conquis*  
 (did not last) longer than his life, which was very *short*.  
*ne dura pas plus longtemps* f. ind-3 *court*  
 —The victory which Cæsar obtained on the plains  
 f. *remporter* ind-3 *dans* *plaine* f.  
 of Pharsalia was *baneful* to his country, *pernicious* to the  
*Pharsale* ind-3 *funeste* *pays* m. *pernicieux*  
 Romans, and *disastrous* to mankind. — (It is believed)  
*Romain* *désastreux* pour art. *genre humain* m. *On croit*  
 that the *first* bayonets were made at Bayonne. — That  
*baïonnette* f. ind-3 *fabriquer*  
 custom is very *ancient* among us. — It is a *mere* evasion, for  
*coutume* f. *parmi* O' *franc* *défaite* f. *car*  
 the thing is *public*. — Give these *fine* roses to those *good* girls.

423. 1st REMARK.—When the adjectives *demi*, half, *nu*, bare, are placed *before* a substantive, and when the adjective *feu*, late, comes *before* the article or a pronominal adjective, they always remain invariable; as, *une DEMI-livre*, half a pound; *il va NU-pieds*, he goes bare-footed; *FEU la reine*, the late queen. But the agreement takes place, if *demi* and *nu* be placed *after* the substantive, and *feu* after the article or pronominal adjective; as, *une livre et demie*, one pound and a half; *il a les pieds nus*, his feet are bare; *la feuë reine*, the late queen; *ma feuë nièce*, my late niece.

(a) *Observation*.—The adjective *demi*, placed after the substantive, never takes the mark of the plural; because it does not agree with the substantive which precedes it, but with a substantive following, which is understood, and which is always of the singular number. This phrase: *Il a étudié quatre ans et demi*, he has studied four years and a half, is equivalent to this: *Il a étudié quatre ans et un demi an*, he has studied four years and one half-year.

(b) *Un, une* is placed before *demi* when this adjective precedes the noun, whereas *a, an*, comes after the word *half*: *un demi-cercle* (a semi-circle); *une demi-heure* (half an hour).

(c) *A*, placed before *half* when this word follows the noun, is not expressed in French: *four miles and A half* (quatre milles et demi).

424. 2<sup>nd</sup> REMARK.—Adjectives used adverbially are invariable, that is to say, remain always in the masculine singular; as, *Ces dames parlent BAS*, those ladies speak low; *ces fleurs sentent BON*, these flowers smell nice.

**EXERCISE CLXII.**

[illegible]

I have heard your late sister say that her daughter and

I (were born) the same year. — The late princess was  
*moi naitre ind-4* *année f.* *ind-3*  
 universally regretted. — She sings (*out of tune*). — They spoke  
*faux* *fem. ind-3*  
*loudly.* — Mary speak low. — What o'clock is it? — It is  
*haut* *heure f.* *il*

half past three o'clock. — I (have been waiting)  
<sup>3</sup>423 (c) \* 1 <sup>2</sup>heures 1 attendre ind-1 depuis  
 half an hour for you.  
 423 (b) \* 2

## PARTICULAR RULES ON THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

425. (1) An adjective referring to two or more substantives singular, of the same gender, must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender ; as,

Le riche et le pauvre sont égaux	The rich and the poor are equal
devant Dieu.	before God.
La rose et la tulipe sont belles.	The rose and the tulip are beautiful.

426. If the substantives are of *different* genders, the adjective is to be put in the masculine plural ; as,

Ma sœur et mon frère sont attentifs.	My sister and brother are attentive.
Il a montré une prudence et un courage étonnants.	He has shown astonishing prudence and courage.

427. REMARK.—When the substantives are of *different* genders, and the adjective qualifying them has not the same termination for the masculine and feminine, the ear requires that the masculine substantive should be placed last in French, that is to say, immediately before the adjective ; so it is better to say: *la bouche et les yeux OUVERTS*, than *les yeux et la bouche OUVERTS*.

## EXERCISE CLXIII.

Pilpay and Confucius are very celebrated among the nations  
 ————— célèbre parmi peuple m.  
 of Asia.—Uprightness and piety are (very much) esteemed,  
 art. †droiture †piété f. très  
 even by the wicked. — Ignorance and self-love are  
 même de méchant pl. †— f. amour-propre m.  
 equally presumptuous.—The inhabitants of (Davis' Strait)  
 présomptueux habitant art. détroit de Davis m.  
 eat their flesh and their fish raw.—The room and  
 viande f. poisson m. cru chambre f.  
 the closet are open, but the window and the drawer are  
 cabinet m. ouvert fenêtre f. tiroir m.  
 shut. — His sister and brother are very polite.  
 fermé poli



428. (2) The adjective placed after two or more substantives agrees with the last—

1st, When the nouns are synonymous or nearly so; 2nd, when they follow each other so as to form a climax. Examples:—

Toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation CONTINUELLE (*his whole life has been nothing but continual labour and occupation*)—(MASSILLON).—Mais le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute PRÊTE (*but the sword, the band, the flame is all ready*)—(RACINE).

N.B.—The agreement of the verb in sentences similar to the last shows whether the adjective is to be *singular* or *plural*. (See Rule 523.)

429. (3) When substantives are united by the conjunction *ou* (or), the adjective agrees either with the *last noun* or with the *two nouns*, according as the quality applies to *one* exclusively or to *both*. Examples:—

1. La confiance ou l'estime publique (*confidence or public esteem*).
2. Ils ne se nourrissent que de *chair* ou de poisson crus (*their only food is raw flesh or fish*)—(BUFFON).
3. On demande un homme ou une femme âgés (*wanted an elderly man or woman*).

N.B.—In the first example, the adjective *publique* is made to qualify *estime*, to the exclusion of the first noun. In the second, on the contrary, it is evident that whether *fish* or *flesh* be eaten, *they are eaten raw*. In the third example, too, *elderly persons only* are wanted, whether man or woman.

430. REMARKS.—(1) An adjective preceded by two nouns united by *comme*, *de même que*, *ainsi que*, *aussi bien que*, &c., agrees with the noun that occupies the first rank in the mind of the speaker or writer:—

L'autruche a la tête, ainsi que le cou, garnie de duvet (*the head of the ostrich, as well as its neck, is covered with down*)—(BUFFON).

(2) When an adjective is preceded by two nouns united by the preposition *de*, it can only agree with one of them, and the sense of the adjective will show to which of the nouns it relates:—

Des boutons de *métal blanc* (*white metal buttons*); des boutons de *métal ronds* (*round metallic buttons*); des tables d'acajou massif (*solid mahogany tables*); des tables d'acajou carrées (*square mahogany tables*).

#### EXERCISE CLXIV.

Our Queen honours literature with that attachment and  
   *les lettres de m. attachement \* de*  
 patronage capable of <sup>2</sup>making <sup>1</sup>it flourish. — Birds  
 cette protection f.   inf-1 † *les fleurir. oiseau m.*

† It is only when *les* is an *article* that the contraction of *de les* into *des* takes place. The same rule applies to *de le*, and to *à le*, *à les*.

build their nests with <sup>3</sup>admirable <sup>1</sup>art and <sup>2</sup>address.  
*construire nid m. avec un 428 art une adresse f.*  
 —The demi-gods of the ancients were only men who  
*ancien m. ind-2 ne que des*  
 (had distinguished themselves) by <sup>4</sup>extraordinary <sup>1</sup>valour  
*s'étaient distingués une*  
<sup>2</sup>or <sup>3</sup>virtue. — Louis XIV. had in France an <sup>3</sup>absolute  
*une ind-2 un absolu*  
<sup>1</sup>power and <sup>2</sup>authority.  
*pouvoir \* une*

## § II. PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

431. Some adjectives are placed before the noun, and some after it; others are either put before or after, according as taste or ear may dictate; but most adjectives are placed AFTER the noun.

## ADJECTIVES WHICH ARE PLACED BEFORE THE NOUN.

432. (1) *Adjectives* of one syllable, as *beau, bon, grand, gros, &c.*, generally precede their substantive. We say, *un BEAU jardin, un BON ouvrage, un GRAND chapeau, un SAINT personnage, &c.*

433. (2) *Plural Adjectives* generally unite harmoniously with substantives beginning with a vowel; as, *BRILLANTS atours*; also those *adjectives* which, although in the singular, end with *s* or *x*, which is carried forward (with the sound of *z*) to the initial vowel of the following noun; as in: *le BAS Empire* (the Lower Empire); *HEUREUX artifice* (lucky stratagem), &c.

This, however, is far from being an absolute rule, for we say: *un homme COURTOIS* (a courteous man); *un homme VERTUEUX* (a virtuous man), &c.; *des enfants PEUREUX* (timorous children); *des enfants DÉLICATS* (dainty children), &c.

~~Ad~~ Adjectives which must absolutely precede the noun are repeated when there are several nouns, and agree with each:—

De GRANDS événements et de GRANDES révolutions suivirent la mort de César.	GREAT events and revolutions followed the death of Cæsar.
--	--

## EXERCISE CLXV.

Have you seen the *beautiful* lake of Geneva?—The Loire  
*lac m. Genève*  
 is a *fine* river. — You arrive at a *good* moment. — The Turks  
*rivière f. le — m. Turc*

make a *great* use of opium. — The *big* fishes eat the  
*usage* m. — *gros poisson* m.  
 little ones. — What a *holy* man father Bernard is! —  
 \* \* *saint* †*que* art. \*  
 He is an *old* soldier. — My *dear* friend, you are mistaken. —  
 O' *vieux* *cher* *se méprendre*  
 He is in *continual* alarms. — That child has *fine* eyes.  
 Il *dans de* *alarme* f. 380 (1)

### ADJECTIVES WHICH ARE PLACED AFTER THE NOUN.

434. The *adjectives* which are placed after the substantive are:—

1st, Those of *nationality*; as, *le gouvernement ANGLAIS* (the English government); *la révolution FRANÇAISE* (the French revolution).

435. REMARK.—(a) French *adjectives* are *never* written with a capital letter, and those expressing nationality are no exception to this rule.

(b) However, when adjectives of nationality are used substantively and *refer to persons*, they take a capital.

(c) It follows that names of languages, which are only adjectives of nationality used as common nouns, are *not* written with a capital. Examples:—*La nation FRANÇAISE* (the French nation); *un ANGLAIS* (an Englishman); *cet ESPAGNOL parle très-bien FRANÇAIS* (this Spaniard speaks French very well.—(ACAD.)

### EXERCISE CLXVI.

*English* bravery; *Spanish* gravity; *Italian* policy; *Roman*  
*bravoure* f. f. *politique* f.  
*beauty*; *German* music; *Dutch* manners; *Prussian*  
 f. *hollandais mœurs* f. pl. *prussien*  
*troops*; *Swedish* soldiers; *Chinese* ceremonies.—The *French*  
*troupe* f. *suédois* *soldat* *chinois* f.  
*monarchy* began under Pharamond, in the year 420.—That  
*monarchie* f. ind-3 *en l' an*  
 young *German* requests you to inscribe your name in his  
*prier d' inscrire sur*  
 album.—Paul spoke to them in the *Hebrew* tongue.—I have  
 — m. 102 *en \* hébraïque*  
 seen *Moscow* with its *Chinese* pagodas, its *Italian* terraces, and  
*Moscou* *pagode* f. *terrasse* f.

† See No. 502 (b) 227, page 282, on idiomatic use of QUE.

its *Dutch* farms. — Nothing stops the *Russian* coachman, his  
*ferme f.* *n'* *russe cocher*  
 driving is a steeple-chase; ditch, hillock, overturned tree,  
*course f.* *course au clocher fosse tertre 1renversé 1*  
 he leaps over everything. — Long live the *Irish* nation!  
*franchir tout. 335 irlandais — f.*

436. 2dly, *Adjectives* denoting colour are placed after the noun; as, *un habit NOIR*, a black coat; *une robe BLANCHE*, a white dress; *un ruban BLEU*, a blue ribbon.

(a) In poetry, and in a figurative sense, *Noir* may be placed before the substantive; as, *un NOIR attentat*, a black crime.

(b) Some words, as *rouge-gorge*, a Robin-redbreast; *du blanc-manger*, blanc-mange, can scarcely be considered as exceptions to this rule, as they are compound substantives.

## EXERCISE CLXVII.

She has *blue* eyes. — The Spanish soldiers wear a *red*  
*art. porter*  
 cockade. — (Here is) a beautiful statue of *white* marble. —  
*cocarde f. Voici — f. blanc marbre m.*  
 The marigold is a *yellow* flower. — Saddle my *black* horse. —  
*souci m. jaune Seller*  
 I shall put on my *brown* coat, and my *American* boots. —  
*mettre \* brun américain botte f.*  
 Almost all the trees of *Florida*, particularly the  
*arbre m. art. Floride f. en particulier*  
 cedar and the *green* oak, are covered with a *white* moss.  
*cèdre m. vert chêne m. d' mousse f.*

437. 3dly, *PRESENT* Participles used adjectively are *generally* placed after the noun, but *PAST* participles used adjectively are *always* placed after their nouns, except *prétendu*, which is placed before its noun. Examples:—

Des images *riantes* (or de }  
*riantes images*).

Un ouvrage *divertissant*.

La mode *régnante*.

Un homme *instruit*.

Des provinces *envahies*.

Le *prétendu* médecin.

La *prétendue* marquise.

*Cheerful images.*

*An entertaining work.*

*The reigning fashion.*

*A well-informed man.*

*Invaded provinces.*

*The pretended physician.*

*The pretended marchioness.*

438. 4thly, *Adjectives* and *adverbs* are generally placed after the verb in exclamatory sentences beginning with *QUE* (how, what): *QUE cet homme est ENNUYEUX!* (how

tiresome that man is !); *QUE ces fleurs sentent BON !* (how nice those flowers smell !); *QUE votre nièce est JOLIE !* (how pretty your niece is !)

## EXERCISE CLXVIII.

(That is) an *amusing* book. — The *smiling* images of  
*Voilà* *riant* — f.  
 Theocritus, Virgil, and Gessner, excite in the soul a gentle  
*Théocrite* † † — *porter* *doux*  
 feeling. — There are *striking* examples of English  
*sensibilité* f. *des frappant*  
 generosity. — *Grateful* people are like those  
 78 f. art. *reconnaissant* *personne* f. *ressemblent à*  
 fruitful lands which give more than they receive. — He has  
<sup>2</sup>*fertile* <sup>1</sup>f. *rendre* *ne*  
 made *astonishing* progress. — An *affected* simplicity is a  
*des étonnant* *progrès* m. pl. *affecté* f. 78  
 refined imposture. — She is a *well-informed* woman.  
<sup>2</sup>*délicat* <sup>1</sup> — f. C'

439. 5thly, *Adjectives* are placed after the substantive when expressing some physical or natural quality, such as *chaud*, hot; *froid*, cold; *humide*, damp; and when expressing form, as *une table carrée*, a square table.

440. 6thly, *Adjectives* of several syllables seldom go well before substantives of one syllable; so, instead of saying *les champêtres airs*, rural airs; *les imaginaires lois*, imaginary laws; say, *les airs champêtres*, *les lois imaginaires*.

441. 7thly, When two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, they are almost always placed after that noun. So, instead of adopting the English construction, *ces deux rivales et guerrières nations*, those two rival and warlike nations, say: *ces deux nations guerrières et rivales*.

(a) However, when a noun is qualified by several adjectives which as a rule are always placed before the noun, or which may be placed before or after it, those adjectives are all placed before; as, *un BRAVE et HABILE général* (a brave and skilful general); *une BELLE et NOBLE pensée* (a beautiful and noble thought); *un JOLI PETIT enfant* (a pretty little child).

(b) If the noun is qualified by some adjective which is always placed before, and by some other always placed after, the noun stands between the two; as, *une GRANDE table CARRÉE* (a large square table); *elle a de BEAUX GRANDS yeux BLEUS* (she has beautiful large blue eyes).

## EXERCISE CLXIX.

Will you give me some *warm* water?—Bring me some *cold*  
*chaud*

milk.—Put it on the *round* table.—Never sleep in a *damp*  
*lait m. rond coucher*

room.—<sup>2</sup>Arts <sup>1</sup>(are divided) into *liberal* Arts and *mechanical*  
*art. on divise en m. mécanique*

Arts.—The king of Spain is styled the *Catholic* king.—She  
*appeler catholique Elle*

has an *harmonious* voice.—She is a *good* and *charitable* woman.  
*voix f. C'*

—He is an *amiable* and *virtuous* man. Do you not know him?  
*C' vertueux 289*

—Denmark is, in general, an *agreeable* and *fertile* country.  
*375 pays m.*

442. Finally, many French adjectives assume a different meaning according as they are placed *before* or *after* certain nouns.

(a) Any adjective modified by an adverb of manner ending in *ment* goes after its noun: *un arbre extrêmement* BEAU (an extremely beautiful tree).

(b) The meaning of an adjective (whatever its place in a sentence) mainly depends on the context.

N.B.—As a matter of course, the following list is only given for reference: it must not be taken as an infallible guide, or studied systematically.

ANC:EN, .	{ old, former: <i>mon ancien maître</i> (my former master); <i>notre ancienne maison</i> (our old house),	ancient: <i>une famille très-ancienne</i> (a very ancient family); <i>l'histoire ancienne</i> (ancient history).
BON, . . .	{ 1, good; 2, silly, simple: <i>un bon homme</i> (a good sort of man; a simple, easy man),	1, virtuous: <i>un homme bon</i> . 2, kind: <i>avoir l'air bon</i> (to have a benevolent, kind appearance).
BRAVE, †. .	{ honest, worthy, obliging: <i>c'est un bien brave homme</i> (he is a very worthy man),	brave, courageous: <i>c'est un homme brave</i> (he is a brave man).
CERTAIN, .	{ certain, some: <i>on m'a dit certaines choses</i> (I have been told certain things),	sure, undoubted: <i>c'est un fait certain</i> (it is an undoubted fact); <i>la chose est certaine</i> (the thing is sure).
CHER, . . .	{ dear (beloved): <i>mon cher ami</i> (my dear friend); <i>mes chères sœurs</i> (my dear sisters)	dear (costly): <i>du vin cher</i> (some dear wine); <i>des objets fort chers</i> (some very costly articles).
COMMUN, .	{ unanimous: <i>tous, d'une commune voix</i> (all, with a unanimous voice),	common (vulgar): <i>des gens communs</i> (vulgar people).

† The nouns *homme, femme, garçon, &c.*, alone require *brave* to follow, in the sense of *courageous*; for we must say: *un brave soldat, un brave capitaine*.

CRUEL, . . .	{ <i>un cruel homme</i> (a tiresome man),	<i>un homme cruel</i> (a cruel man).
DERNIER, . . .	{ <i>le dernier dimanche du mois</i> (the last Sunday in the month); <i>ma dernière lettre</i> (my last letter); <i>son dernier soupir</i> (his last breath); &c.,	<i>l'année dernière</i> (last year); <i>le mois dernier</i> (last month); &c. N.B. — <i>DERNIER</i> precedes its noun unless applied to a period of time ( <i>year, month, week, &amp;c.</i> ) just elapsed. †
DIFFÉRENT, . . .	{ various, sundry: <i>différents objets</i> (sundry articles); <i>différentes choses</i> (various things),	not the same: <i>des objets différents</i> (different articles); <i>des choses différentes</i> (different things).
DIGNE, . . .	{ worthy: <i>quel digne homme!</i> (what a worthy man!)	dignified: <i>qu'il a l'air digne!</i> (what a dignified mien he has)
FAUX, ‡ . . .	{ generally precedes the noun, excepting such as are mentioned in opposite column: <i>une fausse clef</i> (a false key); <i>un faux ami</i> (a false friend). N.B. — Although we say, <i>une pièce fausse</i> , we must say, <i>de la fausse monnaie</i> (base coin),	<i>cœur faux</i> (false heart); <i>esprit faux</i> (wrong mind); <i>âme faussee</i> (treacherous soul); <i>pensée faussee</i> (misguided thought); <i>chose faussee</i> (untruth); <i>personne faussee</i> (deceitful person); <i>pièce faussee</i> (imitation stone); <i>pièce faussee</i> (counterfeit piece of money).
FOU, . . .	{ foolish: <i>un fol espoir</i> (a foolish hope) (Rule 58 (a)), mere, sheer, downright, accomplished: <i>un franc scélérat</i> (a downright villain); <i>une franche défaite</i> (a mere pretext),	mad, insane: <i>un homme fou</i> (an insane man).
FRANC, . . .	{ extraordinary, huge: <i>une furieuse dépense</i> (a prodigious expense),	open, sincere: <i>un cœur franc et loyal</i> (an open and loyal heart); <i>une physionomie franche</i> (an open countenance).
FURIEUX, . . .	{ gentlemanly, civil, honest, sociable: <i>c'est un galant homme</i> (he is a perfect gentleman),	furious, raging: <i>la mer furieuse</i> (the raging sea); <i>un fou furieux</i> (a raving madman).
GALANT, . . .	{ great: <i>un grand homme</i> (a great man),	polite, attentive to ladies: <i>un homme galant</i> (a ladies' man).
GRAND, § . . .	{ honest, comfortable: <i>un honnête homme</i> (an honest man); <i>une honnête aisance</i> (comfortable circumstances),	tall: <i>un homme grand</i> (a tall man).
HONNÊTE, . . .	{ scanty: <i>un maigre repas</i> (a scanty meal),	polite: <i>un homme honnête</i> (a polite man); <i>une réponse honnête</i> (a civil answer).
MAIGRE, . . .	{ mean, vulgar: <i>un mauvais air</i> (a mean appearance),	lean, thin, &c.: <i>un chien maigre</i> (a lean dog); <i>un jour maigre</i> (a fast-day).
MAUVAIS, . . .	{ wretched, worthless: <i>une méchante épigramme</i> (a wretched epigram),	sinister, ill-natured: <i>comme ils ont l'air mauvais!</i> (what a sinister look they have!)
MÉCHANT, . . .	{ gloomy, atrocious: <i>un noir attentat</i> (a dark deed, an atrocious outrage),	bitter, malicious: <i>une satire méchante</i> (a malicious satire).
NOIR, . . .		black (in colour): <i>une robe noire</i> (a black dress); <i>des yeux noirs</i> (dark eyes).

† Examples: — *la dernière année que je passai en Italie* (the last year I spent in Italy); *j'étais en Italie l'année dernière, à cette époque-ci* (I was in Italy last year, at this period).

‡ *Un faux air* means somewhat like, looking like, having a certain likeness to.

§ Tall man should be expressed by *grand homme* if there is another adjective: *un grand homme blond* (a tall fair man). With any other noun *grand* always precedes: *un grand arbre* (a large tree); *une grande femme* (a tall woman).

NOUVEAU,	novel, other, fresh : <i>une nouvelle méthode</i> (a different system); <i>un nouveau gouvernement</i> (another government),	new, new-fashioned, newly made or brought out : <i>une méthode nouvelle</i> (a new method); <i>un habit nouveau</i> (a new-fashioned coat).†
PARFAIT,	consummate : <i>un parfait idiot</i> (a consummate idiot),	perfect : <i>un ouvrage parfait</i> (a perfect work).
PAUVRE,	worthless, poor : <i>un pauvre poète est un poète sans mérite</i> (a poet without genius); <i>ce pauvre monsieur est bien malade</i> (this poor gentleman is very ill),	needy : <i>un auteur pauvre est un auteur sans fortune</i> (a needy author).
PETIT,	little, short : <i>un petit homme</i> (a little man),	mean : <i>un homme petit</i> (a mean-spirited man).
PLAISANT,	ridiculous, queer, impertinent : <i>voilà un plaisant personnage</i> (there is a queer character),	amusing, laughable : <i>quelle histoire plaisante!</i> (what an amusing story!)
PLEIN,	open, complete : <i>en plein air</i> (in the open air); <i>une pleine victoire</i> (a complete victory),	full : <i>un verre plein</i> (a full glass); <i>une carafe pleine</i> (a full decanter).
PROPRE,	own, identical : <i>je l'ai fait de mes propres mains</i> (I made it with my own hands); <i>les propres termes</i> (the identical words),	1, clean; 2, proper : <i>a-t-il les mains propres?</i> (are his hands clean?); <i>c'est l'expression propre</i> (it is the proper expression).
PUR,	sheer, mere : <i>pur accident, pure illusion</i> (mere accident, mere delusion),	pure, spotless : <i>cœur pur</i> (pure heart); <i>vie pure</i> (spotless life); <i>eau pure</i> (pure water).
SAIN,	orthodox, genuine : <i>la saine doctrine</i> ,	wholesome, healthy : <i>nourriture saine</i> (wholesome food).
SEUL,	only, one, single, very : <i>un seul mot</i> (one word); <i>une seule pensée</i> (a single thought); <i>la seule idée</i> (the very idea),	alone : <i>un homme seul</i> (a man alone); <i>sa position seule l'a sauvé</i> (his position alone saved him); <i>le vrai seul est aimable</i> (truth alone is lovely).
SIMPLE,	common, mere : <i>un simple soldat</i> (a private soldier); <i>la simple nature</i> (common nature),	1, artless, silly; 2, simple : <i>un homme simple</i> (a man easily imposed upon, a simpleton); <i>un corps simple</i> (a non-compound body).
TRISTE,	mean, paltry : <i>un triste dîner</i> (a poor dinner); <i>un triste sire</i> (a contemptible fellow),	dull, sad, melancholy : <i>un temps triste</i> (dull weather); <i>une femme triste</i> (a sad woman).
VÉRITABLE, VRAI,	1, real, sincere; 2, downright; 3, excellent : <i>un véritable ami</i> (a sincere friend); <i>un vrai soldat</i> (an excellent soldier); <i>une véritable histoire</i> (a downright story); <i>un vrai flou</i> (a thorough cheat),	true, veracious : <i>c'est une histoire véritable</i> (it is a true story); <i>ce sont des choses vraies</i> (they are positive facts).

## EXERCISE CLXX.

He opened the cupboards with false keys.—As an actor ind-3 *armoire f. de* was walking on tiptoe to represent the *marcher ind-2 la pointe des pieds pour* great Agamemnon, they cried out to him that he was making on ind-3 \* 102

† NEUF (meaning newly made, not used, or only used for a very short time since made) is never placed before its noun : *un habit neuf* (a newly-made coat); *des maisons neuves* (newly-built houses), &c.



him a *tall* man, and not a *great* man.—He has (got on)  
 116 *non pas* *mis*  
 a *new-fashioned* coat.—A lady, seeing Chapelain and Patru,  
 said that the first was an author *without genius*, and the second  
 ind-3 ind-2 *auteur* *pauvre*  
 a *poor* author.—I (am making use) of the *identical* words.  
*se servir* ind-1 *terme m.*

### § III. COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

Some French adjectives have a *complete* meaning in themselves, such as *courageux*, *invincible*; *un soldat courageux*; *une armée invincible*. But other adjectives, such as *sujet*, *enclin*, &c., require to be completed by some word (noun, pronoun, or verb) with the aid of a preposition. *Un homme sujet* . . . does not make a complete sense, but if we add *à la colère*, or *à se fâcher*, the meaning of the adjective is complete. The prepositions required by such adjectives are *à*, *de*, *en*, *envers*, &c.

443. The ADJECTIVES WHICH REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION *à* express *aptness*, *inclination*, *habit*, *opposition*, &c., such as,

Accessible à,	accessible to.	lent à,	slow to, in.
accoutumé à,	accustomed to.	naturel à,	natural to.
adonné à,	addicted to.	nécessaire à,	necessary to.
âpre à,	greedy, eager for.	nuisible à,	injurious to.
ardent à <sup>(1)</sup> ,	ardent in.	odieux à,	odious, hateful to.
assidu à <sup>(2)</sup> ,	assiduous in, to.	opposé à,	{ opposed, contrary to.
bon à <sup>(3)</sup> ,	fit to be.	pareil à,	{ similar to, like.
cher à,	dear to.	porté à,	{ inclined, induced to, &c.
comparable à,	comparable to.	précieux à,	precious to.
conforme à,	conformable to.	préférable à,	preferable to.
contraire à,	contrary to.	prêt à,	ready to.
convenable à,	suitable to.	prompt à,	{ prompt in, quick at.
difficile à,	difficult to.	propre à,	fit for, suited to, &c.
doux à,	sweet, soft to.	redevable à <sup>(8)</sup> ,	indebted to.
égal à,	equal to.	redoutable à,	formidable to.
enclin à,	inclined, prone to.	semblable à,	similar to, like.
exact à,	exact, accurate in.	sensible à,	sensible of, to.
facile à,	easy to.	sévère à <sup>(9)</sup> ,	{ stern, severe to, towards.
fidèle à <sup>(4)</sup> ,	faithful, true to.	sourd à,	deaf to.
formidable à,	formidable to.	sujet à,	{ subject to, dependent upon.
funeste à,	fatal to.	utile à,	useful to.
heureux à <sup>(5)</sup> ,	happy at, in.		And others.
impénétrable à,	impervious to.		
inaccessible à,	inaccessible to.		
inférieur à <sup>(6)</sup> ,	inferior to.		
ingénieux à <sup>(7)</sup> ,	ingenious in.		
insensible à,	insensible to.		

(a) ~~NE~~ Observe that **DE** (and not **À**) must be used if any of the above adjectives are preceded by the verb **ÊTRE** used impersonally, as *il est, il était, &c.* Example:—*Cette eau est bonne À boire* (this water is fit to drink); *IL EST bon DE boire quand on a soif* (it is proper to drink when one is thirsty); *c'est une chose facile À faire* (it is an easy thing to do); *IL EST facile DE faire tout cela* (it is easy to do all that). (See Rule 447.)

(b)—(1) **Ardent DE liberté, DE combats** (eager for freedom, for battles); (2) **Assidu AUPRÈS D'elle** (attentive to her); (3) **Bon POUR, or bon CONTRE** (with a noun); *bon POUR le mal de tête* (good for the headache); (4) **Fidèle EN tout** (faithful, exact in all things); *fidèle DANS le malheur* (faithful in adversity); (5) **Heureux AU jeu** (lucky at play); *heureux DE peu* (satisfied with little); (6) **Inférieur EN nombre** (not so numerous); (7) **Ingénieux À faire** (ingenious in doing); *ingénieux POUR le bien* (endowed with a genius for doing good); (8) **Redevable À** means *indebted TO*; **redevable DE** means *indebted FOR*; (9) **Sévère À, POUR or ENVERS.**

## EXERCISE CLXXI.

Your intentions are *conformable* to my wishes. — He is *slow*  
*désir m.*

to punish, and *prompt* in rewarding. — Are you *ready* to go out?  
*récompenser sortir*

—He is *fit* for (anything). — He is *deaf* to remonstrances. —  
*tout art. remontrance f.*

Sicily is *subject* to great earthquakes. — That man is  
*Sicile f. † m. tremblement de terre.*

*useful* and *dear* to his family. — That is *easy* to say. — It is  
*famille f. Cela facile Il*

ridiculous to put oneself in a passion against objects which  
*ridicule de se ‡ en \* colère § objet m.*

are *insensible* to our anger. — Your dress is *like* mine.  
*colère. robe f.*

444. The ADJECTIVES WHICH REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION **DE** express *plenty* and *scarcity*, *pleasure* and *displeasure*; and in general most of those followed in English by the preposition *of*, *from*, or *with* (and sometimes *by*) also require **de** in French; such as,

Absent de,	absent from.	aise de,	glad to.
affamé de,	{ eager for, thirst-	ambitieux de,	ambitious of.
affranchi de,	{ ing with.	ami de,	friendly to.
	freed from.	avide de,	greedy of.

† Rule No. 380 (1).

‡ Place of *Se*, Rule No. 104.

§ No. 380.

béni de,	blessed by.	gonflé de,	{ puffed up with,
capable de,	able to.		{ elated with.
chargé de,	loaded with.	gros de,	big, swollen with.
charmé de,	delighted with.	heureux de,	happy to.
chéri de,	beloved by.	honteux de,	ashamed of, to.
comblé de,	overwhelmed with.	ignorant de,	ignorant of.
complice de,	a party to.	impatient de,	eager to.
connu de,	known to.	inconsolable de,	inconsolable at.
consterné de,	amazed at.	inquiet de,	uneasy about.
content de,	pleased with.	inséparable de,	inseparable from.
coupable de,	guilty of.	ivre de,	intoxicated with.
couronné de,	crowned with.	jaloux de,	{ jealous of, mind-
couvert de,	covered with.		{ ful of.
curieux de,	curious to.	joyeux de,	glad to.
dénué de,	{ destitute of, want-	las de,	{ weary of, tired
	{ ing in.		{ with.
désireux de,	desirous of.	libre de,	free from, to.
digne de,	worthy of.	mécontent de,	dissatisfied with.
enchanté de,	delighted with.	orgueilleux de,	proud of.
ennuyé de,	weary of.	plein de,	full of.
entouré de,	surrounded with.	prodigue de,	lavish of.
envieux de,	envious of.	ravi de,	enraptured with.
esclave de,	{ bound by, a slave	reconnaissant de,	grateful for.
	{ to.	rempli de,	full of, filled with.
étonné de,	astonished at.	responsable de,	answerable for.
exempt de,	exempt from.	satisfait de,	satisfied with.
fatigué de,	tired with.	soigneux de,	careful to.
fier de,	proud of.	sûr de,	sure of.
fou de,	{ mad with, doting-	tributaire de,	tributary of.
	{ ly fond of.	triste de,	sad, melancholy to
furieux de,	furious at.	vain de,	vainglorious of.
gai de,	merry with.	vide de,	empty of, void of.
glorieux de,	{ glorified by, proud	voisin de,	bordering on.
	{ of, &c.		&c.

(a) *N.B.*—When it is necessary to add to an adjective some particular circumstance, various prepositions may be used. For instance, *Un homme peut être CÉLÈBRE par ses vertus, pour sa bienfaisance, dans son art, entre ses rivaux : il peut être PRODIGE de son bien, par vanité, sans motif, avec gloire, envers les malheureux, &c.* (a man may be renowned for his virtues, his beneficence, in his profession, amongst his rivals or competitors; he may be a free giver of his property, through vanity, without motive, with glory, to the poor, &c.)

(b) Adjectives which require different prepositions cannot have the same complement. We could not say: *il est utile et chéri DE ses parents*, because *utile* requires *À* and *chéri* requires *DE*. The correct phrase would be: *il est utile À ses parents et il EN est chéri* (he is useful to, and beloved by his parents).

(c) Some adjectives require the preposition *EN*: *abondant en* (abounding with); *fécond en*, *fertile en* (productive of, rich and prolific in); *fort en* (skilled in, clever in); *expert en* (skilful in); *riche en* (rich in). *Ignorant* may be followed by *EN* before nouns expressing sciences: *il est fort ignorant en géographie* (he is very ignorant of geography).

## EXERCISE CLXXII.

I am very glad to see you in good health. — Voltaire was  
*bien* *santé f.* *ind-3*  
 always greedy of praise. — The vine is loaded with  
*louange pl.* *vigne f.*  
 grapes. — I am pleased with your answer. — Virtuous  
*raisin (sing.)†* *réponse f.* *art. 2vertueux*  
 men are always worthy of esteem. — I am tired with running  
<sup>1</sup> *estime.* *fatigué* *inf-1*  
 after him. — A heart free from cares enjoys the greatest  
*soin m.* *jouir de*  
 felicity possible. — He is very grateful for the services you  
*f.* *fort* — *que*  
 have rendered him. — Here is a purse full of twenty franc  
<sup>2</sup> *rendus* <sup>1</sup> *bourse f.* <sup>2de</sup> 420 *pl.*  
 pieces. — I am satisfied with my lot. — Are you pleased with  
*pièce f.* *sort m.*  
 your horse? — This country is rich in corn. — Is Richard  
*pays m.* *fertile 444 (3)* *blé m.* —  
 skilled in music? — I am indebted for my life to  
*fort 444 (3)* *musique* *redevable de* *vie f.*  
 your brother's courage.  
 — *m.*

445. French adjectives expressing *kindness* or *unkindness*, *courtesy* or *discourtesy*, &c., are often followed by the preposition *ENVERS* (towards); as,

Affable,	<i>affable.</i>	just,	<i>just.</i>
bon,	<i>good, kind.</i>	libéral,	<i>liberal.</i>
charitable,	<i>charitable.</i>	officieux,	<i>obliging.</i>
clément,	<i>merciful.</i>	poli,	<i>civil, courteous.</i>
coupable,	<i>guilty.</i>	reconnaissant,	<i>grateful.</i>
dur,	<i>harsh.</i>	respectueux,	<i>respectful.</i>
généreux,	<i>generous.</i>	responsable,	<i>responsible.</i>
indulgent,	<i>indulgent.</i>	sévère,	<i>severe.</i>
ingrat,	<i>ungrateful.</i>	&c.	&c.

Il faut être *poli* *ENVERS* tout le monde. | We must BE civil TO everybody.

446. Adjectives expressing gladness or regret at a thing,

† Grappes de raisin (*bunches of grapes*).

such as *aise, charmé, enchanté, fâché, contrarié, &c.*, require the infinitive with *DE*, or the subjunctive mood; as,

Je suis bien *aise* d'être de re-  
tour à temps.

Je suis bien *aise* que vous soyez  
de retour.

*I am very glad that I have re-  
turned in time.*

*I am very glad that you have re-  
turned.*

In the first example, there is only one subject, *je*, and the second verb is in the infinitive.

In the second example, there are two subjects, *je* and *vous*; the verb, therefore, is put in the subjunctive mood.

447. (a) When an adjective is accompanied (*i.e.*, preceded or followed) by the verb *être* used impersonally, the adjective requires *de* before an infinitive:

*Il est important d'y veiller* (it is important to see to it); *l'important est d'y mettre ordre* (the chief point is to set the matter right); *il est plus sûr DE partir, or le plus sûr est DE partir* (the safest plan is to leave).

(b) *À* is used after *c'est, c'était, &c.*, before an infinitive which ends the sentence, and generally *DE* when the infinitive requires other words to complete its meaning:—

*C'est bon à savoir* (this is worth knowing); *c'est bien beau à entendre* (it is very pleasing to hear); but we say: *c'est bon DE boire quand on a soif* (it is agreeable to drink when one is thirsty).†

\* \* Compare with Rule 443 (a).

### EXERCISE CLXXIII.

We must be charitable to the poor. — I do not like people  
*Il faut* 445 *pauvre pl.* *aimer ceux*  
who are cruel to animals.—Scipio Africanus was respectful  
445 *Scipion l'Africain ind-2 respectueux*  
to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to his servants, just  
*domestique juste*  
and affable to everybody.—He will be delighted to see you.—  
*enchanté*

I am very sorry you cannot come.—It is agreeable to  
*bien fâche* *pouvoir subj-1* *Il*  
live with one's friends.—It is noble to die for one's country.—  
*vivre ses* *Il beau* *sa patrie.*

This is painful to see and to hear. — Be kind to everybody.  
*C' pénible* *entendre.* *obligeant*

—It is easy to prove it to you.—That is easy to be proved.  
*C'* *prouver*

† *C'est* is sometimes used before the infinitive instead of *il est* simply for emphasis.

## § IV. ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

(The numbers are given at full length, page 36.)

448. (1) Of all the *cardinal* numbers, *un* is the only one that takes an *e* for the feminine: UN *homme*, UNE *femme*.

449. (2) *Unième*, first, is never used but after *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, *quatre-vingt*, *cent*, and *mille*. *C'est la vingt et UNIÈME fois*, it is the twenty-first time.

450. (3) We say *second* or *deuxième*, but we cannot say *vingt-second*, *trente-second*; we must say *vingt-deuxième*, *trente-deuxième*, *quarante-deuxième*, &c.

451. (4) We say, *vers LES une heure*; *sur LES onze heures* (about one o'clock; about eleven o'clock). These are elliptical expressions (used instead of: *vers LES moments qui précèdent ou suivent une heure—onze heures*), and the article (*les*) is used in the plural even before *une*, although its noun (*moments*) is not expressed. In this case the final *s* of the article is not carried forward either to *une* or to *onze* (see No. 14).

452. (5) When a cardinal number is preceded by the pronoun *en*, the *adjective* or *participle* which follows that number must be preceded by the preposition *de*; as,

Sur mille habitants, il n'y EN a		Of one thousand inhabitants, there
pas un DE riche. †		is not a rich one.

453. (6) A determinate number serves sometimes to express a vague indeterminate quantity; as,

*Je vous l'ai dit CENT fois* (I have told it to you a great many times); *j'ai DEUX mots à vous dire* (I have a few words to say to you); *il demeure à QUATRE pas d'ici* (he lives close by).

*MILLE l'ont déjà fait*, *MILLE pourraient le faire*—(CORNEILLE)—i.e., *Hundreds* have done it before, and *hundreds* could do it.

For several important Remarks on Nouns and Adjectives of Number, see pp. 35 to 39.

## EXERCISE CLXXIV.

One of the nine Muses is called Terpsichore.—It was in the  
                                   — f. *s'appeler*                                    — Ce ind-3

*thirty-first* year after the peace, that war (broke out again).  
                   *année* f.                                    *paix* f.                                    *se rallumer* ind-3

† Refer to Rule No. 613, on idiomatic use of *DE*.

—William, surnamed the Conqueror, king of England and  
*Guillaume, surnommé Conquérant,*  
 duke of Normandy, was one of the greatest generals of the  
 ind-3

*eleventh* century. — Of ten thousand combatants, there were  
*siècle m. Sur combattant il y EN eut*  
 one thousand *killed*, and five hundred *wounded*.—The admiral  
 \* *blessé*

showed me a *thousand* civilities.—About *eleven* o'clock.  
*faire \* politesses*

### § V. ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

454. Adjectives of dimension, such as *haut*, high; *long*, long; *large*, wide or broad; *épais*, thick; *profond*, deep; which come after the word of measure in English, come before it in French, and are followed by the preposition *de*; as,

Un mur *haut* DE sept pieds.

Une chambre *longue* DE vingt  
 pieds.

A wall seven feet high.

A room twenty feet long.

Another construction, frequently used, is to let the words remain in French as in English, and to put *de* both before the number and before the word of measure or dimension. In this case, the substantive of dimension is often used instead of the adjective; as,

Un mur DE sept pieds DE haut,  
 or DE hauteur.

Une chambre DE vingt pieds DE  
 long, or DE longueur.

A wall seven feet high.

A room twenty feet long.

455. The English manner of expressing *dimension* is to use the verb *to be*; but the French, in general, make use of the verb *avoir*. In this case, *de* is left out before the number, and the phrase is rendered thus:—

Ce mur A sept pieds de haut,  
 or de hauteur.

That wall is seven feet high.

### EXERCISE CLXXV.

The walls of Babylon *were* two hundred feet *high* and  
*Babylone avaient* †  
 fifty *broad*.—The great wall, on the north of China,  
*largeur. muraille f. à Chine f.*  
*is* about twelve hundred miles *long*.—The highest of the  
*a environ* †

† See Remarks on *Cent*, Nos. 73 and 74.

pyramids of Egypt is, at least, five hundred feet high.—  
*pyramide f. a au moins †*

The Monument of London is a round pillar two hundred  
 — m. *rond pilier m. †*

feet high.—The Tiber is three hundred feet wide at Rome.—  
*a † largeur*

The famous mine of Potosi, in Peru, is more than fifteen  
 — f. *§ Pérou m. a de*

hundred feet deep.  
*† profondeur.*

## § VI. ADJECTIVES IN THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

456. (1) By, after a comparative, is expressed by *DE* as,

*Il est plus grand DE deux pouces. | He is taller BY two inches.*

457. (2) In English, when the adverbs *more* and *less* are repeated to express a comparison, they are preceded by the article ; as, *THE MORE difficult a thing is, THE MORE glorious it is to do it well.* But in French the article is omitted, and the adverb *plus* or *moins* is separated from the adjective by the subject and its verb ; as, *PLUS une chose est difficile, PLUS il est glorieux de la bien faire.*

## § VII. ADJECTIVES IN THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

458. (1) An adjective in the superlative degree requires the preposition *DE* ; as,

*Le plus grand empire DU monde. | The greatest empire in the world.*

459. (2) When the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the article ; but the substantive takes no article if the superlative goes first ; as,

*Les gens les plus habiles. } The most able men.*  
*Les plus habiles gens. }*

460. (3) The article placed before *plus* and *moins* is always invariable, when there is no comparison ; as, *La lune ne nous éclaire pas autant que le soleil, même quand*

† See Remarks on *Cent*, Nos. 73 and 74.

† See No. 439, p. 244.

§ See Rule No. 879 (4), p. 210.



*elle est LE PLUS brillante* (the moon does not light us so much as the sun, even when it shines brightest). But the article takes gender and number when there is a comparison; as, *La lune est LA PLUS brillante de toutes les planètes* (the moon is the most brilliant of all the planets).

## EXERCISE CLXXVI.

She is taller than her sister *by* the whole head. — *The more*  
<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> *tout tête f.*  
 one reads La Fontaine, *the more* one admires him. — Seneca  
*on* *Sénèque*  
 was *the richest* man in the empire. — *The highest* mountains  
 ind-2 <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> *montagne f.*  
 are the reservoirs (from which) issue *the largest* rivers. —  
*réservoir m. d'où sortir grand fleuve m.*  
 Those whom I have always seen *most struck* with the writings  
*Ceux que vus frapper de écrit m.*  
 of Homer, Virgil, Horace, and Cicero, are minds of the first  
<sup>†</sup> <sup>†</sup> <sup>\*</sup> <sup>†</sup> *des esprit m.*  
 order. — Although the Chinese boast of being *the most ancient*  
*Quoique Chinois se vanter inf-1* <sup>2</sup>  
 nation, they are far from being *the most enlightened*.  
<sup>1</sup> — *f. loin inf-1 éclairé*

## EXERCISE CLXXVII.

That man is the best creature *in* the world. — That is the  
*f. Voilà*  
 cleverest boy *in* the school. — His father is the most learned  
*habile savant*  
 man *in* the kingdom. — His mother is the most sensible  
*spirituel*  
 woman *in* the whole town. — Her grandfather is the richest  
 82  
 merchant *in* London. — *The more* you study, *the more* you  
*negociant* 119 119  
 learn. — Astronomy is one of the sciences which do *most*  
*f.*  
 honour to the human mind.

## CHAPTER IV.

## OF PRONOUNS.

## § I. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

*Place of Personal Pronouns.*

461. THE Personal Pronouns, whether *subjects* or *objects*, are placed before the verb in simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses; except, 1st, When the pronouns take a preposition before them in French; 2dly, In interrogative sentences; 3dly, When the verb is in the imperative *affirmative* (the third persons excepted). Such is the general principle of the position of personal pronouns, which will be fully developed in this chapter.

(See what has already been stated on this subject, p. 51.)

## OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS.

462. (1) The *personal* pronouns, *I, thou, he* or *it, she* or *it, we, you, they*, are expressed in French by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils* m., *elles* f., when they are the subjects or nominatives of the verb; as,

*Je* parle, I  *speak*; *il* chante,  
he  *sings*.

*Elle* danse, she  *dances*; *nous*  
jouons, we  *play*.

463 (2). *I, thou, he, they* m. are rendered by *moi, toi, lui, eux* :—

1st, When used as subjects of a verb *understood*; as,

(a) In answering a question without repeating the verb:

Qui a fait cela? *Moi.* | Who has done that? I.

(b) Also when the verb of the second clause is not expressed:

Il veut la paix, et moi la guerre. | He wants peace, and I war.

(c) When they follow a comparative without the verb being repeated:

Elle est plus riche que lui, | She is richer than he, they, and I.  
qu'eux et moi.

(d) ~~JE~~ Observe that if, in the answer, the verb were repeated, or used after the comparative, the pronouns would be used in the nominative: *Étiez vous ici hier? Oui, j'y étais* (were you here yesterday? Yes, I was). *Elle est plus âgée que JE ne le suis* (she is older than I am).

2nd, When the verb has several subjects, whether they are all pronouns, or nouns and pronouns, with or without conjunction; as in—

*Vous, votre frère, LUI, et MOI sommes chacun d'une opinion différente* (you, your brother, he, and I, are each of a different opinion).—*TOI et EUX, vous avez tort* (thou and they are wrong).

3rd, When they appear in exclamatory sentences as subjects of a verb used, for the sake of emphasis, in the infinitive (present or past) instead of the proper tense and mood; as in—

*EUX! nous commander! jamais!* | They! command us! never!  
*LUI! ne pas vous avoir écrit!* | He! not to have written to you!

4th, When followed by a parenthetical clause, introduced by a relative pronoun (with the verb expressed or understood), or by a present or past participle; or again, when they precede an adjective; as in—

*MOI, QUI suis son fils* (I who am his son).—*EUX QUE j'aimais tant!* (They whom I loved so much).—*TOI, DONT j'admirais la vertu* (thou, whose virtue I admired).—*EUX, COURAGEUX et dévoués comme toujours, y allèrent sans tarder* (they (who were) courageous and devoted as usual, went without delay).—*EUX, VOYANT qu'ils avaient tort* (they, seeing that they were wrong).—*LUI PARTI, vous serez seul* (he (being) gone, you will be alone).—*LUI SEUL respecte la vertu* (he alone respects virtue).

5th, When they mark opposition or distinction, or point out the part taken in an action by different persons; as,

*EUX l'ont relevé et LUI l'a pansé* (they raised him up, and he dressed his wounds).

6th, When following the verb *être* preceded by *ce* (or *c'*), whether used affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively:—

*C'est MOI* (it is I).—*C'est LUI* (it is he).—*Est-ce TOI?* (Is it thou?)—*Ce sont EUX* (it is they, *m.*)—*Ce peut être LUI* (it may be he).—*Ce doit être TOI* (it must be thou).—*N'est-ce pas moi qui?* &c. (Is it not I who? &c.)

7th, *Moi, toi, lui, eux* (with or without the word *même*) are used expletively in apposition with *je, tu, il, ils*, either for the sake of emphasis or to mark strong opposition. The reduplication of *nous, vous, elle, elles*, takes place for the same reasons. Examples:—

*Allez-y VOUS-MÊME, MOI, JE n'irai pas* (go yourself, I shall not go).—*Qu'IL y aille LUI-MÊME, mais NOUS, NOUS ne pouvons pas y aller* (let

him go *himself*, but *we* cannot go).—LUI, IL est Anglais, mais ELLE, ELLE est Française (*He* is English, but *she* is French).—MOI, JE vous déclare que je ne veux pas le faire! (*I do* declare to you that I will not do it).—TOI, TU es un grand fourbe! (*Thou* art indeed an arrant knave.)

## EXERCISE CLXXVIII.

*I* come from Dover. — *You* like the town, and *I* the Douvres.

country. — Who read last? *He*. — *I* am not so tall  
campagne f. ind-4 le dernier fem. si grand

as your sister, but *she* is older than *I*. — *They* alone have  
que âgé seul

fought the enemy; *they* alone deserve to be rewarded. —  
combattre mériter d' récompensé

*He*, perceiving their intentions, gave up his project. —  
s'apercevoir de abandonner projet m.

Your uncles and your brother take charge of the enterprise;  
se charger

*they* find the money, and *he* will manage the work. —  
fournir fonds pl. conduire ind-7 travail pl.

Was it *he* that was singing? No, it was *I*. — *I* shall  
ind-2 ce qui ind-2 c' ind-2 463 (7th)

bring wine and biscuits, and *they* (m.) will bring  
apporter 32 32 — 463 (7th) 32

cold meat and salad.

<sup>2</sup>froid <sup>1</sup>viande f. 32 salade f.

464. (3) Personal pronouns used as *subjects* are placed after the verb in interrogative sentences, and also in the following instances:—

1st, When the verb is in the present or imperfect of the Subjunctive without any conjunction being expressed. In such a case, the final *e* of the first person is marked with an acute accent, for the sake of euphony; as,

Puissé-je de mes yeux, &c. (CORNEILLE.)	May I with my eyes, &c.
Dussé-je mourir! (RACINE.)	Were I to die!

2nd, When the verb is preceded by any of these words, *aussi*, *peut-être*, *encore*, *en vain*, *du moins*, *au moins*, *à peine*, *ainsi*, *toujours*, &c.; as,

Peut-être avez-vous raison.	Perhaps you are right.
En vain prétendons-nous.	It is in vain that we pretend.

We might also say: *Peut-être* vous avez raison;—*en vain* nous prétendons, but then the expression possesses neither the same grace nor the same energy.

3rd, When the sentence is introduced by a subordinate clause, and sometimes in exclamation; as,

Où allez-vous? lui dis-je.

Je le veux bien, lui répondit-il.

Est-elle drôle!

Where are you going? said I to him.

I am very willing, replied he to him.

How odd she is!

N.B.—Observe that in the foregoing examples a hyphen is put after the verb when followed by the pronoun its subject.

### EXERCISE CLXXIX.

(Oh that I may) see him! — (Though you were) more  
*Puissé-je* *Fussiez-vous*

numerous, you will meet with resistance. — This  
*nombreux* *éprouver* ind-7 32

lace is beautiful, (but then) it is dear. — The rose  
*dentelle* f. *aussi* *coûter* † ‡ — f.

is the queen of flowers; therefore it is the emblem of  
*art.* *aussi* 464 *emblème* m.

beauty. — Perhaps I shall go. — You were hardly gone  
*art.* *Peut-être* ind-2 à peine partir

when your brother arrived. — What would you have? said  
*que* ind-3 ind-1 \*

he to me. Life, replied I. — Scarcely had I arrived. — How  
*art.* *repondre* 171 (a) ind-6 \*

ugly this dog is!  
*laid* 161-464 (3rd).

465. (4) Personal pronouns, when subjects or nominatives, must be repeated:—

1st, When we pass from negation to affirmation; as,

JE ne plie pas et JE romps (I do not bend and I break). But we can say: JE plie et JE ne romps pas, or je plie et ne romps pas, the first verb being in the affirmative.

2nd, When the verbs are used interrogatively; as,

Partirons-NOUS et reviendrons-NOUS le même jour? (Shall we set out and come back the same day?)

3rd, When the verbs are connected with conjunctions; as  
 VOUS le saluez, donc VOUS le connaissez (you are bowing to him, therefore you know him).

NOUS vous aiderions si NOUS le pouvions (we would help you if we could).

ELLE doit être contente, car ELLE a obtenu le premier prix (she must be pleased, for she has obtained the first prize).

† See No. 160 (8), p. 96.

‡ See No. 424, p. 238.

(a) ~~NE~~ However, with the conjunction NI (*nor, neither*) the pronoun subject MUST NOT be repeated :—

JE *ne veux, ni ne dois, ni ne puis obéir* (neither will I, *nor* must I, *nor* can I obey).

(b) The pronoun subjects may be either repeated or not, in any other case, according as the harmony, energy, and especially the perspicuity of the sentence may require; also where the verbs are connected by the conjunctions ET (*and*), OU (*or, either*), MAIS (*but*). Example :—

J'*entends* et JE *comprends*, or J'*entends* et *comprends* (I hear and understand).

## EXERCISE CLXXX.

You earn nothing, and you spend (a great deal).—I  
gagner dépenser beaucoup.

(am not ignorant) that one cannot be happy without virtue,  
n'ignore pas on ne saurait art.

and I (am firmly resolved) always to practise it.—We detest  
me propose bien de \* 2 1

the wicked, because we fear them.—He is learned although  
méchant parce que craindre quoique

he is very young.—I wish to see you happy, because I am  
subj-1 bien désirer \*

attached to you.—You will be truly esteemed, if you are wise  
attaché \* vraiment

and modest.—You are not happy, and you have saved Rome.  
modeste

## OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

466. A Personal pronoun, when the regimen† or object of the verb, is either *direct* or *indirect*. A pronoun is the direct object of the verb when it is governed by the verb without any preposition, either expressed or understood; as, *Je la vois*, I see her.

467. (I.) When personal pronouns are in the accusative, or in other words, the *direct objects* of the verb, they are expressed in French thus: me, by *me*; ‡ thee, by *te*; him, it, by *le*; her, it, by *la*; us, by *nous*; you, by *vous*; them, by *les*, *m.* and *f.*, and placed *before the verb* in simple tenses,

† See Rules 528 to 532.

‡ When *me, te, se, le, la*, come before a vowel or *h* mute, the elision of the *e* or *a* takes place, as explained in the chapter "Of the Apostrophe," page 9, No. 12.

and *before the auxiliary* in compound tenses, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative; as,

Il *me* flatte.  
 Vous ne *la* surprendrez pas.  
 Ils *nous* ont trompés.  
 Ne *les* connaissez-vous pas ?

He flatters *me*.  
 You will not surprise *her*.  
 They have deceived *us*.  
 Do you not know *them* ?

REMARK.—However, when a verb has several direct objects, whether they be all pronouns, or nouns and pronouns, and when the verb is used with *ne . . . que*, they are all *placed after the verb* in simple tenses, and *after the past participle* in compound tenses; and in this case the English pronouns given above are expressed in French by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*; as,

Je vois *lui* et *elle*.  
 Nous avons rencontré *lui* et sa sœur.

I see *him* and *her*.  
 We met *him* and his sister.

### EXERCISE CLXXXI.

You suspect *me* (without reason).—He has rewarded *me*  
*soupçonner mal à propos récompenser*  
 generously. — God is a father to those who love *Him*, and a  
*généreusement le de ceux le*  
 protector to those who fear *Him*.—(As soon as) my sister  
 78 *de craindre Dès que*  
 (shall have) arrived, I will go and see *her*. — Vice often  
*sera ind-7 \* art.*  
 deceives *us* under the mask of virtue.—We shall go and  
*masque m. art. \**  
 see *you* after dinner. — Do you not see *them*? — Whoever  
*après dîner. 120*  
 flatters his masters betrays *them*.—I know *it*.—We hear *her*  
*maître trahir 268 (1) entendre*  
 and her brother.—Have you observed the baroness and *him*?  
*observer*  
 —We know neither *them* nor *you*.—They have suspected  
*connaître ni m. ni m. soupçonner*  
*you, them, him, and even me*.—They fear *thee* and *us*.—  
*f. f. craindre.*  
 I love only *thee*.

468. (II.) When a personal pronoun is the *indirect object* of a verb, it is governed by a *preposition*, which may be either expressed, as in *Je parle POUR lui* (I speak *for* him), or simply understood, as in *Je lui parle* (I speak *to* him).

(a) The prepositions which are not expressed when they govern a personal pronoun are *à* and *de*. (See for exceptions Rule 469.)

(b) Personal pronouns, when governed by *à* understood, are placed before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in compound tenses, as if they were direct objects (whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative), and expressed as follows: to me, by *me*; to thee, by *te*; to him, to her, by *lui*; to us, by *nous*; to you, by *vous*; to them, by *leur*; as,

*Elle ME parle, mais je ne LUI répondrai pas* (she speaks to me, but I will not reply to her).—*LUI avez-vous donné son argent?* (Have you given HIM (or HER) his (or her) money?)—*Ne LEUR écrirez-vous pas?* (Will you not write to them?)

(c) ~~Le~~ The relative pronoun *Y* (which is chiefly used in the third person) may, however, supply any personal pronoun, or a noun, when the verb requires the preposition *à*, which is never expressed with *Y* in connection with the same verb. Examples:—

*Je parle souvent de vous, mais j'Y pense encore plus* (I often speak, but still oftener do I think of you).—*Je connais cet homme; je ne m'Y fie pas* (I know that man; I do not trust him). Because we say in French: *penser à*, *se fier à*.

(d) ~~Le~~ The preposition *DE* may not be expressed with any of the personal pronouns when both the preposition and the personal pronoun are rendered by the relative pronoun *EN*, which precedes the verb; this pronoun, however, is chiefly used in the third person. Ex.:

*Avez-vous parlé d'eux à votre associé? Oui, je lui EN ai parlé!* (Did you speak of them to your partner? Yes, I did (speak of them to him).)

469. (III.) With a preposition expressed, the personal pronouns are rendered by *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles*. In this case the construction is as in English—i.e., the pronouns follow the preposition, which is placed after the verb; as in, *Je pensais à lui* (I was thinking of him); *nous dînerons SANS toi* (we shall dine without thee); *ces livres sont POUR eux* (these books are for them).

(a) The preposition *à* must be expressed, when it governs a personal pronoun, with the following verbs:—

*Aller* (to go), *courir* and *accourir* (to run to), *marcher* (to walk), *penser* and *songer* (to think), *venir* (to come), *viser* (to aim at), *être* (in the sense of to belong), *avoir* (to have, used with the words *affaire*, *égard*, *rapport*, *recours*, &c.), *prendre intérêt* (to take an interest), *appeler* (to call), *rappeler* (to call again), *attirer* (to attract, in its literal sense). † Examples:—

*Votre frère vint à nous* (your brother came to us).—*Ce livre est à moi* (this book belongs to me).—*Je prends intérêt à lui* (I take an interest in him).

(b) *À* must also be expressed when a verb has two or more indirect objects, and likewise with all reflected verbs; as,

*Je parle à lui et à elle* (I speak to him and to her).—*Il s'adressa à moi* (he applied to me).

† In a figurative sense this verb (*attirer*) does not require the preposition *à* to be expressed: *cette conduite LUI attira le mépris de tous* (this conduct brought upon him the contempt of everybody).



(c) Also, 1st, When the verb is used with *ne . . . que*; 2nd, When the objective pronouns (direct and indirect) are of the first and second person; or, 3rd, When the pronoun used as direct object is one of the first or of the second person:—

Je n'écris qu'à lui (*I only write to him*).—Il me donne à vous (*he gives me to you*).—Mon frère t'a envoyé à moi (*my brother has sent thee to me*).—Elle te donne à lui (*she gives thee to him*).—Mon père m'abandonna à eux (*my father abandoned me to them*).

(d) Taste also allows the change of *me, te, lui, &c.*, into *à moi, à toi, à lui, &c.*, in elevated style:—

Il faut que chacun de vos auditeurs s'imagine que vous parlez à LUI en particulier—(FÉNÉLON). (Each of your hearers must be made to think you are addressing him personally.)

## EXERCISE CLXXXII.

Do you not speak to her, when you meet her?—Few  
 quand rencontrer Peu  
 people are wise enough to prefer the blame that is useful  
 de gens pour  
 to them, to the praise which betrays them.—They came to us  
 louange f. trahir  
 when we (were not thinking) of them.—That horse was  
 ne pensions pas à ind-2  
 formerly mine, but I sold it to your cousin.—If you don't  
 autrefois à moi ind-4 f

behave better, you will have to do with me.—He speaks  
 se conduire affaire à  
 to you and to him.—We trust to them.—She applied to him.—  
 se fier

You speak only to her.—My uncles send me to you.—Why do  
 469 (c) oncle 204 469 (c)  
 they prefer us to him?  
 m. 196 469 (c)

470. (IV.) When the personal pronoun, whether direct or indirect object, accompanies a verb in the imperative mood affirmative, in the first person plural, or in the second person singular or plural, it is put in French, as in English, immediately after the verb, and *moi, toi* are used instead of ME, TE.

(a) But if a negation attends the imperative, the pronoun follows the general rule, and is placed before the verb, and again ME, TE are used. Examples:—

Affirmatively.	Negatively.
Aimons-les, Let us love them.	Ne les aimons pas, Let us not love them.
Sauvez-moi, Save me.	Ne me sauvez pas, Do not save me.
Dites-lui, Tell him.	Ne lui dites pas, Do not tell him.

(b) ~~est~~ If a preposition is required before the pronoun object (469, a, b, c, d), it always follows the verb, whether *affirmative* or *negative*:—  
*Ne songez pas à eux* (do not think of them).—*Pensez à lui* (think of him).

471. REMARKS.—(1) With two imperatives used affirmatively and joined by a conjunction (such as *et, ou*), French writers, for the sake of elegance or emphasis, sometimes place the pronoun object before the second verb; as in this line of Boileau's *Art Poétique*:—

*Polissez-LE sans cesse et LE repolissez* (polish and repolish it incessantly).

But this construction is never used in familiar conversation.

472. (2) When an imperative has two pronouns for regimens, one direct and the other indirect, the direct regimen is expressed first; as,

Donnez-le-moi.

Prêtez-le-lui.

Give it me.

Lend it to him.

Negatively, we would say, *Ne me le donnez pas; Ne le lui prêtez pas.*

473. (3) When *moi, toi*, are placed after the imperative, and followed by the pronoun *en*, they are changed into *m', t'*; as,

Donnez-m'en, Give me some. | Retourne-t'en, Go back.

NOTE.—Observe again how a hyphen is introduced in the foregoing examples. The rule is thus laid down by *Beauzée* and *Féraud*. When the first and second persons of the imperative have for complement (or regimen) one of these words: *moi, toi, nous, vous, le, la, lui, les, leur, en, y*, they are joined together by a *hyphen*, and a second *hyphen* is introduced when there are two of those words as complement of the imperative. Examples: *Donnez-moi, dépêchons-nous, accordez-la-leur, rendons-la-lui.*

But we write: *faites-moi lui parler*, and not *faites-moi-lui parler*, because *lui* is the regimen of *parler*, and not of *faites*; *venez me parler*, because *me* is not governed by *venez*, but by the infinitive *parler*.

### EXERCISE CLXXXIII.

Whatever thing (you have promised), give it. — Listen

94 (b) *que vous ayez promise,* *Écouter*

to me; do not condemn me without a hearing. — Tell me

\* *condamner* *m'entendre.*

the truth.—Don't speak to me.—Repeat to them continually,

*vérité f.* *Répéter* *sans cesse*

that, without honesty, one can never succeed in the world.—

*on* *réussir*

Don't repeat to *them* the same things.— Take *them*, or leave  
*Prendre* *laisser*  
*them*, it is (all one) to me.—My innocence is the only good  
*cela* *égal* — f. *seul bien m.*  
 that remains to me : leave *it* to me.  
*qui*

474. (V.) Personal pronouns, whether direct or indirect objects, are repeated, in French, before every verb ; except, however, when it is in a compound tense, in which case neither the auxiliary nor the pronoun is repeated. Ex. :—

Il vous estime et vous honore.	<i>He esteems and honours you.</i>
Son visage odieux m'afflige et me	<i>His odious face torments and</i>
poursuit.—(RACINE.)	<i>haunts me.</i>
Je l'aurais aimé, honoré et estimé.	<i>I would have loved, honoured, and</i>
	<i>esteemed him.</i>

## EXERCISE CLXXXIV.

He beseeches and entreats *me* not to do it.—I say and  
*prier* *conjur* *de*  
 declare to *you*.—The idea that they believe him guilty,  
 \* *pensée f.* *on* *croire* *coupable*  
 pursues, torments, and overwhelms *him*.—He wearies and  
*poursuivre, tourmenter, accabler ennuyer*  
 torments *us* incessantly. — A <sup>2</sup>well brought-up <sup>1</sup>son never  
*obséder sans cesse. bien élève*  
 rebels against his father ; he loves, honours, and respects  
*se révolter respecter*  
*him*.—We have listened to, heard, and understood *them*.—  
<sup>2</sup> *écoutés* \* *entendus* *compris* <sup>1</sup>*m.*  
 Where is his letter ? I have read, sealed, and sent *it*.  
*Où lettre f.* <sup>2</sup> *lue cachetée envoyée* <sup>1</sup>*P*

475. (VL) The pronouns *it, they, them*, which the English use with reference to animals and inanimate things, are expressed in French by *il, elle, ils, elles*, when they are the subject or nominative of the verb, and by *le, la, les*, when they form the accusative or direct object of the verb.

Be careful to make these pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer. It is almost unnecessary to repeat that the French language has no neuter gender, consequently inanimate objects are either masculine or feminine ; so, in speaking of the *rose*, which is feminine, we say *ELLE est belle*, it is beautiful ; and of a book, *livre*, which is masculine, *vous a-t-il amusé ?* has it amused you ?

476. REMARK.—When these pronouns come after a preposition, they are usually left out in French; then the preposition becomes an adverb, and conveys the idea sufficiently; as,

Approchez-vous du feu.—Je suis tout auprès. | Come near the fire.—I am quite near it.

## EXERCISE CLXXXV.

Look at that magnificent building; it unites grace  
*Regarder \* magnifique bâtiment m. réunir art. grâce f.*  
 with beauty, and elegance with simplicity.—Where  
*à art. art. à art.*  
 is my pen? It is upon the table.—Give it me.—Never  
*plume f. sur*  
 judge from appearances, for they are often deceitful.—  
*juger sur art. apparence f. car trompeur*  
 (There is) a good book, read it.—My house is new; I will  
*Voilà maison f. neuf*  
 not sell it; but I will let it.—His cottage was  
*ind-7 louer ind-7 cabane f. ind-2*  
 solitary; near it flowed a spring of pure water.  
*isolé couler ind-2 source f. 2<sup>ve</sup> 1*

477. (VII.) When *to it*, *to them*, relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *y*; as,

Ce tableau est très-bon; | That picture is very good;  
 mettez-y un cadre. | put a frame to it,

But when the pronouns *it*, *them*, are in the dative case, that is, used for *to it*, *to them*, and have reference to animals, plants, and ideal substances, in which we suppose an active principle, such as some virtues and vices, or are preceded by the verb *to owe*, or *to be indebted*, they are translated by *lui* for the singular, and *leur* for the plural; as,

Ce chien a faim, donnez-LUI du pain. | That dog is hungry, give IT some bread.  
 Ces orangers vont périr, si vous ne LEUR donnez point d'eau. | These orange-trees will die, if you do not give THEM water.

(For the proper place of *y*, see p. 61.)

## EXERCISE CLXXXVI.

I study botany, and apply myself seriously to it.  
*art. botanique f. pron. s'appliquer sérieusement*  
 —History and geography are his delight, he (gives himself up  
 373 *délices pl. se livre*

to them entirely. — I leave you the care of that goldfinch ;  
*entièrement laisser soin m. chardonneret m.*  
do not forget to give it water. — When virtue appears in all  
*oublier de paraître dans*  
its beauty, we cannot refuse it our homage and respect. —  
*ne pouvons refuser — m.*  
This book cost me (a great deal), but I (am indebted) to it for  
*coûte cher dois \**  
my knowledge. — Bring my horses, and give them some hay.  
*instruction f. Amener foin m.*

478. (VIII.) The pronoun *le*, which makes *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural of both genders, may supply the place of a substantive, or an adjective, or even of a part of a sentence.

When this pronoun supplies the place of a substantive or an adjective used substantively, it takes the gender and number of that substantive or adjective used substantively. In such a case, the English equivalent is almost always understood. Examples:—

Êtes-vous madame de Genlis?—Je ne <i>la</i> suis pas.	Are you madame de Genlis?—I am not.
Êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant? —Oui, je <i>la</i> suis.	Are you the mother of that child? —Yes, I am.
Êtes-vous la malade?—Je <i>la</i> suis.	Are you the patient?—I am.
Mesdames, êtes-vous les parentes de monsieur?—Oui, nous <i>les</i> sommes.	Ladies, are you the relations of this gentleman?—Yes, we are.

#### EXERCISE CLXXXVII.

Are you Dr Kitto's sister? Yes, I am.—Are you Marshal  
*sœur marechal m.*  
Ney's daughter? No, I am not.—Are you Lady Melville?  
*Non Lady†*  
Yes, I am.—Are you the mistress of this house? I am.—Are  
*maitresse*  
you the king's ministers? We are.—Madam, are you the  
*ministre*  
bride? Yes, I am.—Are those your gloves? Yes, they are.  
*mariée -ce là gant m. ce*  
Give them to me.—Are you my sister's dressmaker? I am.  
*couturière f.*

† Mot emprunté de l'anglais. On prononce *Lédi*.—(ACAD.)

479. (IX.) The pronoun *le* remains invariable when it has reference to a verb, an adjective, or a substantive used adjectively. The English equivalent, which is generally so or *it*, is almost always understood.

Madame, êtes-vous malade ?—Oui, monsieur, je *le* suis.

Êtes-vous mère ?—Je *le* suis.

Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous prêtes ?—Oui, nous *le* sommes.

Madam, are you ill ?—Yes, sir, I am.

Are you a mother ?—I am.

Young ladies, are you ready ?—Yes, we are.

## EXERCISE CLXXXVIII.

Madam, are you pleased with that speech ? Yes, I am.—  
444 discours m.

Madam, are you married ? Yes, I am.—Are you mistress of  
mariée maîtresse

your actions ? I am not.—Ladies, are you glad to have  
bien aise

seen the little Princess ? Yes, we are.—Have we ever been  
princesse jamais

so quiet as we are ?—Do you know if they are rich ?  
tranquille que 265 riche

No, they are not.—The poor will not always be so.  
pauvre pl.

OF THE PRONOUNS *se, soi.*

(For the various meanings, see No. 104.)

480. The pronoun *se* (*s'* before a vowel) is of both numbers and genders ; it always precedes the verb, whether as direct or indirect regimen, when governed by the preposition *à* understood. *Il se trompe* (he is mistaken) ; *elle s'en fait gloire* (she glories in it).

Les yeux de l'amitié *se* trompent rarement.—(VOLTAIRE.)

The eyes of friendship are rarely deceived.

481. The pronoun *soi* is used in the singular for both genders, after *on*, *chacun*, *personne*, *quiconque*, *tout le monde*, &c. Also frequently after an infinitive or an impersonal verb. *Soi* even appears instead of *lui*, *elle*, &c., to avoid ambiguity.

CHACUN *ne* pense qu'à *SOI* (each one thinks only of himself).—ON *ne* doit pas toujours PARLER de *SOI* (one must not always talk of one's self).—L'avare qui a un fils prodigue n'amasse ni pour *SOI* ni pour *LUI* (the miser who has a spendthrift son hoards up wealth neither for HIMSELF nor for HIM—i.e., his son).

## EXERCISE CLXXXIX.

They lost *themselves* in the wood.—This flower is fading.—  
*s'égarer* ind-3 *fleur* *se flétrir*  
 These trees are dying.—A good deed carries its reward  
*se mourir* *bienfait* m. *porter* *récompense* f.  
 with *itself*.—Frankness is good of *itself*, but it has its excesses.  
*avec* *franchise* f. *en* *excès* m.  
 —When a man loves nobody but *himself*, he is not fit for  
*Quand* \* *on* n' \* *que* *on* *propre* 443  
 society.—To be too much dissatisfied with *ourselves* is a  
 \* 444 *soi*  
 weakness; but to be too much pleased with *ourselves* is a  
*faiblesse* f. \* 444  
 folly.—It always depends on *ourselves* to act honourably.  
*sottise* f. *de* *d'*

## RESPECTIVE PLACES OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

482. When a verb (the imperative *affirmative* excepted) governs two or more pronouns as *direct object*, and as *indirect object with preposition implied* though not expressed, they are always placed before it, and before its auxiliary in compound tenses, in the following order:—

(1) If the pronouns used as direct and indirect objects are of different persons, they are placed in the order of the persons—viz., the pronoun of the 1st or of the 2nd person before that of the 3rd. Examples:—

*Il* ME LE *donnera*; *il* ne VOUS L'*enverra pas* (he will give it to me; he will not send it to you).—*Mon ami* VOUS LES a *promis*, *n'est-ce pas*? (my friend has promised them to you, has he not?)

(2) If the pronouns, direct and indirect objects, are both of the 3rd pers., the direct object goes first:—

LE LUI *direz-vous* ou ne LE LUI *direz-vous pas*? (will you or will you not tell him? (or her?))—*Nous* LES LUI *donnerons demain* (we shall give them to him (or her) to-morrow).

(3) The pronoun Y comes last, except when EN is in the sentence, in which case *en* is last:—

*Ayez soin de* ME LES Y *envoyer* (take care to send them to me there).—*Je* LEUR EN *enverrai* (I will send them some).—*Je* VOUS Y EN *porterai* (I will take some to you there).

N.B.—In negative sentences *ne* separates the subject from the pronoun object, and therefore begins the sentence in interrogation.

\* \* As to the order of personal pronouns with an imperative, see Rules 471, 472, 473.

483. When the sentence is not interrogative, the pronoun which is the subject of the verb is always placed at the head ; as,

Vous ne *me le* conseillez pas.  
Je ne *le lui* dirais pas.  
Nous *les en* avertirons.  
Nous *lui en* parlerons.  
Ils ne *s'y* soumettront pas.

*You do not advise me so.*  
*I would not tell it him.*  
*We shall warn them of it.*  
*We will speak to him about it.*  
*They will not submit to it.*

484. We have seen (No. 473) that *moi* and *toi* after an imperative are changed into *m'* and *t'* before the pronoun *en*. The same elision should take place before *y* ; but the Academy rejects such expressions as *Attendez-m'y*, *menez-m'y*.

*Note.*—Some grammarians have recourse to a transposition of words and say, *Attendez-y-moi*, *menez-y-moi*. Still it would be better to use some other form of phrase,—for instance, *attendez-moi là*, *menez-moi à cet endroit*.

#### EXERCISE CXc.

Do not say to a friend, who asks something of you : Go,  
407 (5) \*  
and come again to-morrow, and I will give *it you* ; when you  
*revenir* *demain* \* *lorsque*  
can give *it him* immediately.—It is certain that old  
*pouvoir* *lui* *sur-le-champ*. art.  
Géronte has refused his daughter to Valère ; but because he  
*parce qu'*  
does not give *her to him*, (it does not follow) that he will give  
*il ne s'ensuit pas*  
*her to you*.—I will give *you some*.—I have a letter for you.  
*en* *lettre f. pour*  
Your brother has sent *it to me* to bring *it to you*. Give *it me*.  
*envoyée* *pour*

#### § II. OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

485. *Possessive adjectives* agree in gender and number with the noun to which they are joined.

*N.B.*—They are generally put before the names of relatives when addressing them in French. Example: *Comment vous portez-vous, MON oncle ?* (how do you do, uncle?)



486. They are repeated before every noun of the same sentence ; as, *MON père, MA mère,† et MES frères sont venus* (my father, mother, and brothers have come).

487. *Possessive adjectives* are or are not repeated (according to the sense of the context) before two or more adjectives of quality united by a conjunction, and which do not qualify the same noun. Thus we say: *MON grand et MON petit appartement*, which is equivalent to: *mon grand APPARTEMENT et mon petit APPARTEMENT*. But with a noun in the plural and adjectives connected by the conjunction *ou*, the possessive adjective, *also in the plural*, may not be repeated; as in this phrase: *Chacun sera jugé selon ses bonnes ou mauvaises œuvres* (Acad.) (every one shall be judged according to his good or bad actions). Because in such instances the contradictory meaning of each adjective sufficiently indicates that dissimilar things are meant.

(See what is said upon the repetition of the Article, Nos. 384, 385, and 386.)

### EXERCISE CXCI.

**Cyrus knew all the soldiers of *his* army, and could**

— ind-2                *soldat*    83   *armée f.*    *pouvoir* ind-2

designate them by *their* names.—<sup>2</sup>Four <sup>3</sup>things <sup>1</sup>(are required)  
*désigner* *nom m.* *on demande*

of a woman: that virtue (should dwell) in *her* heart; that  
à femme que 371 habite dans

modesty (should shine) on *her* forehead ; that gentleness  
371 *brille* *front* m. 371 *douceur* f.

(should flow) from *her* lips; and that work (should occupy)  
*découle* *lèvre f.* 371 *travail m.* *occupe*

*her hands.—Her father and mother are dead.—My uncle and*

aunt are in Paris.—He (showed him) both *his* fine and ugly  
*tante* *lui a montré* \* *beau* *vilain*

clothes. — She showed them *her* beautiful and rich dresses.  
*habits m.* *robe f.*

† *Mes père et mère, ses père et mère*, instead of *mon père et ma mère, son père et sa mère*, are phrases now admitted by custom, and in constant use. We say: *il a encore ses père et mère; il faut honorer ses père et mère*, &c. This remark applies to all possessive plural adjectives, whether the nouns be used in the singular or plural: *NOS, VOS, OR LEURS père et mère*.

sh make use of the article, and not of the  
re, when the sense clearly points out who  
as,

p de feu AU		<i>I have a pain in MY head.</i>
		<i>Peter has received a shot in HIS</i>
		<i>right arm.</i>

doubt as to whose head is aching, and whose arm  
the French deem the article sufficient.

ubiguity, I must say,

as enfle.		<i>I see my arm is swelling.</i>
argent.		<i>Peter has lost his money.</i>

say, *Je vois que LE bras enfle; Pierre a perdu*  
not know whether it is my arm or that of  
elling, or whether it is his own money or John's

adjective is also used in speaking of an habitual  
he person spoken to; as,

repris.		<i>My headache has returned.</i>
mente.		<i>His gout torments him.</i>

generally remove all ambiguity; as,

LA main.		<i>I have hurt my hand.</i>
ns.		<i>I wash my hands.</i>

the possessive adjective would here be an error;  
thorises a few familiar expressions in which the  
is redundant; as, *Je me suis tenu toute la journée*  
*se tient ferme SUR SES PIEDS.*

h use the article, not the possessive ad-  
oun forming the regimen, when a personal  
the indirect regimen, sufficiently supplies  
possessive; as,

LE bras.		<i>You have broken his arm.</i>
main.		<i>You hurt my hand.</i>

## EXERCISE CXCH

creatures, man is the only one who (has not)

f.	<i>seul *</i>	<i>n'ait pas</i>
----	---------------	------------------

wards the earth; he walks with *his* eyes

ers	<i>marcher *</i>	<i>m.</i>
-----	------------------	-----------

heaven, as if to indicate the superiority

*ciel m. comme pour indiquer*

gout does not allow me a moment's repose.

<i>laisser</i>	<i>repos.</i>
----------------	---------------

your finger. — A cannon-ball

er	<i>doigt m.</i>	<i>boulet de canon m.</i>	<i>lu</i>
----	-----------------	---------------------------	-----------

carried off his arm.—Our carriage passed over his  
*emporter* ind-3 *voiture* f. *lui* ind-3 *sur*  
 body, and bruised his right shoulder.  
*corps* m. *lui* *meurtrir* ind-3 *droit* *épaule* f.

490. (a) When *its* and *their* relate to inanimate objects, they are expressed by the pronoun *EN* before the verb and the *article* before the noun, when the *noun of the possessor* is not in the same clause as *that of the object possessed*; unless, however, *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs* should be required to avoid ambiguity. Examples:—

<i>J'habite la campagne ; j'EN admire</i> <i>LES beautés.</i>	I live in the country ; I admire its beauties.
<i>La mer sortit de SON lit ; SES eaux</i> <i>couvrirent toute la terre.</i>	The sea overflowed its banks ; its waters covered the whole earth.

(b) REMARK.—As, however, the pronoun *EN* cannot relate to a noun governed by a preposition, and as writers and orators often personify inanimate objects, the possessive adjectives *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, are often used in speaking of things. Thus Pascal has said : *Nous anticipons l'avenir comme pour hâter SON cours* (we anticipate the future as if to hasten its advent).

(c) *Its* and *their* are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*:—

1st, To indicate a relation of possession between the thing *possessed* and the *subject* in the same clause, or the same relation between two nouns following one another:—

<i>Le soleil répand SA chaleur.</i>	The sun spreads its heat.
<i>Londres et SES environs me</i> <i>plaisent beaucoup.</i>	London and its suburbs please me very much.

2nd, To show a relation of possession with the *object* of the verb in the same clause:—

<i>J'aime la ville et SES plaisirs</i> <i>variés.</i>	I like town and its varied amuse- ments.
<i>Il donne aux fleurs LEUR ai-</i> <i>mable peinture.</i> —(RACINE.)	He gives to flowers their lovely colours.

3rd, When the *noun of the object possessed* is governed by a preposition: *La maison AVEC SON toit d'ardoises* (the house with its slated roof).—*Quant à ces événements et à LEURS causes, &c.* (as for those events and their causes). And, speaking of a town: *J'admire la grandeur DE SES rues* (I admire the width of its streets).

### EXERCISE CXCIH.

A new custom was a phenomenon in Egypt: (for which  
*coutume* f. ind-2 *prodige* m. *en* *aussi*  
 reason) (there never was) a people that preserved so long  
*n'y eut-il jamais de* *conserver* subj-3

ts ceremonies.—The pyramids of Egypt  
pyramide f.

by the enormity of *their* bulk, and by the  
t et masse

proportions.—The Thames is a magnificent  
superbe

s so wide and so deep below London  
large au-dessous de

thousand vessels lie at their ease in it.  
millier de etre l' 117

—1. *A friend of mine ; a book of yours*,  
manner in French, *un de mes amis ; un*  
f it were, one of my friends, one of your  
with all other phrases of the same kind.

hers, ours, yours, theirs, are rendered in French  
à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles, after *to be*,  
belong. Examples :—

hers.		Cette maison est à elle.
mine.		Ce livre est à moi.

gn of possession ('s) joined to a noun following  
belong, is expressed in French by the preposi-  
the noun (*À Paul, À mon frère, À Julie, À ma sœur*,  
:—

!—No, it is		Cette plume est à Fanny.
		Cette ombrelle est-elle à vous ?
		—Non, c'est à ma sœur.

y own, &c., may also be translated by *à moi, à*  
ning is *belonging to me, to thee, &c.* Example :—  
his own. | Il a une maison à lui.

erson of his relatives we generally use, as a mark  
ss, the words *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle*,  
*mesdemoiselles*, before the possessive adjective ; as,  
R votre père | I have met your father with your  
aunte. | aunt.

# EXERCISE CXCIV.

a old acquaintance of ours. — That  
ancienne connaissance f.

tion of mine.—I am going to dine with  
ent \*

ister of hers is dead.— Is this house yours

or *his*? It is not *mine*. It is *my uncle's* or *my mother's*.—  
*oncle*

Is *your sister* in London? No, she is in the country, with  
 161 *à* *à*

a cousin of *mine*.—These keys are *his* or *hers*.—They are  
*f.* *clef f.*

not *mine*, they are *my father's* or *my mother's*.—Do you dine  
*in town* to-day? No, I shall stay at home.  
*en ville aujourd'hui* *rester (548) à la maison*

### § III. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

492. *Ce* before *être* requires this verb to be in the singular, except when it is followed by a noun in the plural or by a third person plural. So we say:—

*C'est moi, c'est toi, c'est lui, c'est elle, c'est nous, c'est vous; c'est Paul, c'est sa sœur.* But we must say: *ce sont, c'étaient, ce furent, ce seront eux, elles, les parents qui, &c.*

(a) With a plural noun, however, some respectable authors use the verb *être* sometimes in the plural and sometimes in the singular:—

<i>Quand ce SERAIT, or quand ce SERAIENT les Romains.</i>	} Though it were the Romans.
<i>Ce n'ÉTAIT que festins, or ce n'ÉTAIENT que festins.—ACAD.</i>	
	} It was nothing but feasts.

(b) But this verb remains in the singular if used interrogatively, although followed by a pronoun of the 3rd pers. plural: *Est-ce eux* (or *elles*)? (is it they?)

(c) Also if followed by two or more nouns, when the first is in the singular:—

<i>C'EST le grand-père et ses petits- fils.</i>	It is the grandfather and his grandsons.
---	---

493. (a) The English pronouns *he, she, it, they*, as subjects of *to be*, when referring to persons or things mentioned before, and also *it*, when used impersonally as subject of the same verb, or in reference to a previous clause, are expressed in French by *CE* when the verb is followed—

1st, By one or several proper names, in which case the verb always remains in the singular:—

<i>C'EST Henri.</i>	It is Henry.
<i>C'ÉTAIT Pierre et Marie.</i>	It was Peter and Mary.

2nd, By an adjective referring to a previous statement:—

<i>Je crois que vous vous trompez.</i>	I think you are mistaken.—It is
<i>—C'EST vrai.</i>	true, I am.

3rd, By a noun preceded by a definite, indefinite, or partitive article, a possessive or a demonstrative adjective:—

*C'EST mon frère* (he is my brother); *c'EST un négociant* (he is a mer-

*eurs de votre ami* (they are your friend's sisters); they are soldiers); *O'ÉTAIT ce livre-là que je voulais* (wanted); *C'EST un César* (he is a Cæsar); *C'EST un* (p).

jective in the *superlative* degree, or by a *relative*, or a demonstrative pronoun:—

*parce que CE SONT les plus belles* (I select these are the finest); *CE SONT eux* (it is they); *EST-CE i* (is it you?—Yes, it is I); *EST-CE elles qui vous* (who have told you?)—*Oui, CE SONT elles qui* (they who have told me); *quelle est cette ombrelle?* (at parasol is this?—It is mine); *quels sont ces leurs* (what gloves are these?—They are theirs); *lequel est à vous?*—*C'EST celui-là* (of these two—It is that one); *CE SONT ceux que j'ai vus ce* (I saw this morning).

rb of quantity, or a preposition:—

*plus*; *C'EST trop* (I have 200 francs; it is too much); *colère!* (it is too much anger); *à qui est cette* (whose house is this?—It is mine); *pour qui est* *EST pour vous* (for whom is this purse?—It is for

en the verb *être* is followed by an adjective by a noun used adjectively, referring to names mentioned in the foregoing clause, must be employed:—

et Cicéron;	<i>Read Demosthenes and Cicero;</i>
quents.	<i>they are very eloquent.</i>
L EST magni-	<i>I have seen the Louvre; it is beau-</i>
l'une grande	<i>tiful, and worthy of a great na-</i>
	<i>tion.</i>

#### EXERCISE CXCV.

ave restored tranquillity.—*It is* you, brave  
*rétablir*

ht gloriously.—*It was* the Egyptians  
*être ind-4 ind-3 Egyptiens*

served the course of the stars, regulated  
*ind-3 cours m. astre m. régler*

mented arithmetic.—Read attentively Plato  
*Lire Platon*

are the two philosophers of antiquity, who  
*philosophe*

the most sound and luminous) <sup>1</sup>ideas upon  
*sain lumineux idée f.*

seen the city of Edinburgh; *it is beautiful.*  
*ville f.*

494. *Ce qui*, as the subject, and *ce que*, as the object, are much used in the sense of *what, that which, that thing which*.

(a) When *ce qui* or *ce que* begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* must be repeated in the second part of the sentence, if it begins with the verb *être*; as,

<i>Ce qui</i> m'attache à la vie, c'EST vous.	What keeps me attached to life, is you.
<i>Ce que</i> je désire le plus, c'EST d'aller vous voir.	What I wish most, is to come and see you.

(b) The repetition of *ce* is not indispensable when the verb *être* is followed by a substantive singular. Thus, we may say,

<i>Ce qui</i> mérite le plus notre admiration, c'EST or EST la vertu.	That which deserves our admiration most, is virtue.
---	---

Even in this case, however, it is better, in general, to repeat *ce*, which gives more energy to the expression.

(c) But when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective or a past participle without a noun, the demonstrative *ce* is not repeated; as,

Ce que vous dites EST vrai.	What you say is true.
-----------------------------	-----------------------

#### EXERCISE CXCVI.

*What I fear is to displease you.—What pleases in the  
Ce que craindre de déplaire Ce qui dans  
ancients, is that they have painted nature with a noble sim-  
ancien peindre  
plicity.—What we justly admire in Racine, are those  
Ce qu' on avec justice dans  
characters always natural and always well sustained.—  
caractère m. dans la nature \* soutenu  
That which sustains man in the midst of the greatest reverses,  
Ce qui soutenir à milieu m.  
is hope. — What I say is true.—What is true is beautiful.  
espérance f. beau.*

495. *Celui, celle, ceux, celles*, are frequently used with the relatives *qui, que, dont, auquel, à laquelle*, in the sense of *he who, she who, they who, whoever, whichever, &c.*; as,

Heureux celui qui craint le Seigneur!	Happy is he who fears the Lord!
Celle qui aime la vertu est heureuse.	She who loves virtue is happy.

#### EXERCISE CXCVII.

Happy is *he who* lives contented with his lot! — *He who* has  
\* vivre content 444 sort m.  
never been acquainted with adversity, says Seneca, has seen  
\* éprouvé \* art. Sénèque n'a vu

the side.—*She who* did it was punished.—  
*côté m.* ind-4 ind-4  
 of nobody but himself), excuses others  
*qu'à lui-même dispenser les autres*  
 him.—*He who* renders a service should  
*rendre doit*  
 receives it, remember it.  
*s'en souvenir.*

and very familiar style, *cela* is often con-  
*Donnez-moi ça*—(ACAD.) (give me that).  
 applied to persons, are either used in contempt  
 od-humour:—

<i>de madame!</i>		She puts on the airs of a lady!
		He does not know <i>a</i> from <i>b</i> .
<i>pauvres en-</i>		How they do sleep, the poor children!
		I saw <i>him, her, or them</i> , quite a baby (or babies).

## F RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

ve pronouns *who*, *which*, and *that*, are  
 when they are the subject or *nomina-*

(the man who speaks); *les dames QUI chantent*  
*la pluie QUI tombe* (the rain which falls).

*which*, and *that*, are expressed by *que*  
 the *accusative* (or in other words, the  
 object of a verb), and have an ante-

*is* (the man whom I see); *les chevaux QUE j'ai*  
*which I have bought*; *le champ QUE vous voyez*

is expressed by *qui*, when it has no an-  
 ns *what person*; as,

lez dire.		Whom do you call?
		I know whom you mean.

t is preceded by a preposition *with* or  
 ; as,

(of whom do you speak?)—*Le peintre AVEC*  
*anglais* (the painter with whom I travelled is



(c) ~~SE~~ QUI, used in the accusative without antecedent, or with a preposition, is *only applied to persons*.

(d) WHICH, with a preposition, and referring to inanimate objects or to animals, is rendered by LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, LESQUELS, LESQUELLES; as,

*Le chien AVEC LEQUEL j'ai chassé hier* (the dog with which I went shooting yesterday).—*La maison DANS LAQUELLE ils demeurent est à moi* (the house in which they live is mine).

(e) ~~SE~~ Remember that the *e* of *que* is cut off before a vowel; *qui* is never changed.

(f) OBSERVATION.—Should *qui* or *que* be divided from its antecedent by a noun, and any uncertainty arise as to which of the two nouns it may relate, use *lequel, laquelle*, instead of *qui*; as,

C'est un effet de la Providence,		<i>It is an effect of Providence</i> which
LEQUEL attire l'admiration.		<i>draws forth admiration.</i>

Here *lequel* is preferable to *qui*, as a doubt might arise whether it was *effect* or *Providence* to which it related.

### EXERCISE CXCVIII.

Pythagoras was the first among the Greeks *who* took the  
*Pythagore est d'entre ait pris*  
 name of philosopher. — <sup>2</sup>Synonymous <sup>1</sup>terms are words  
 art. *synonyme terme des mot*  
*which* signify the same thing. — (You must have) a man  
*signifier Il vous faut*  
*who* loves (nothing but) truth and you, and *who* (will speak)  
*n' que vous dise*  
 the truth (in spite of) you. — Here is a lady *whom* you  
*malgré Voici*  
 know. — Where is the horse *that* he has bought? —  
*connaître acheter*  
*Whom* shall we invite?

500. The relative pronoun *qui* is always of the gender, number, and person of its *antecedent*; that is, of the noun or pronoun to which it relates.

Moi *qui* suis estimé.  
 Elle *qui* est estimée.  
 Nous *qui* sommes estimés.  
 Vous *qui* riez.

I *who* am esteemed.  
 She *who* is esteemed.  
 We *who* are esteemed.  
 You *who* laugh.

(a) On the same principle we say: *Vous parlez comme un homme QUI ENTEND la matière* (you speak like a man who understands the subject), and not, *QUI ENTENDEZ la matière*—because the relative *qui* does not represent the pronoun *vous*, but represents the substantive *homme* which immediately precedes *qui*.

jective, or a cardinal number, cannot serve as an  
e pronoun; so, instead of saying: *Nous étions*  
*deux* (we were two who were of the same  
: *Nous étions deux qui étions du même avis*,  
subject of the preceding verb, the antecedent of

e pronoun ought to be placed (as much  
antecedent, so as to avoid ambiguity.  
ver, separated by verbs and adjectives :

*peu duré, et QUI vont être éternellement consolées*  
ons which lasted but little time, and which  
l).

*amoureuse QUE ses enfants chérissent* (the loving and  
er children cherish).

ne relative pronoun may be separated  
;—

*mes mains QUI n'oblige personne* — (CORNEILLE)  
who do not oblige anybody).

separating the relative pronoun from its  
eral words, an inversion may be em-

*où se trouvaient renfermés les BIJOUX QU'il croyait*  
e box in which were contained the jewels which

*provinces, une foule d'USAGES QUI sont ridicules*  
nces many customs that are ridiculous); instead  
ages dans ces provinces qui, &c.

## EXERCISE CXIX.

med.—We *who* study. —I *who* believe the  
*étudier* *croire*

greatest men *who* were the ornament  
ind-4 *ornement m.*

ece, Homer, Pythagoras, Plato, even  
*même*

went to learn wisdom in Egypt.—  
ind-3 \* *apprendre sagesse f. en*

s *who* attack the ancients, are children  
*n attaquer ancien des*

urse.—I see only us *two who* are  
*survivre. ne que* subj-1

alone *who* am guilty. — We were *ten who*  
*seul coupable.* ind-2

were of the same opinion.—You *who* have spoken so well.—  
ind-2                      avis m.                      3                      1                      2

There are several pages in those manuscripts which are  
186 (e) — f. 501 (b) *manuscript m.*

illegible.—Many are caught who thought they  
*illisible* *Tel sing.* *est prendre* inf-4 *croire* ind-2 \*  
 would catch others.  
 \* *prendre* inf-1 \*

502. (a) The relative pronouns, *whom*, *that*, *which*, and also the conjunction *that*, are frequently understood in English, but *que* is always expressed in French ; as,

L'homme <i>que</i> nous avons vu.	<i>The man (whom or that) we saw.</i>
Le vin <i>que</i> nous avons bu.	<i>The wine (that or which) we drank.</i>
Je crois <i>que</i> vous parlez français.	<i>I think (that) you speak French.</i>

(b) ~~NE~~ QUE is sometimes required in certain French sentences when there is no expression for it in English:—

*Est-ce une belle ville QUE Dublin? (Is Dublin a fine city?)—Quel vilain défaut QUE l'envie! (What a bad fault envy is!)—C'est un bien brave homme QUE votre voisin (your neighbour is a very worthy man).*

### EXERCISE CC.

The lady you have married is my cousin.—The tea we  
*femme* *épousée* *thé m.*

drink is very good.—I shall never forget the favour you  
*prendre oublier grâce f.*

have done me.—Have you received the letter I wrote to  
*faite* *ai écrite*

you?—I think he will come.—Titus spent eighty millions  
*croire dépensa* —

in the <sup>2</sup>public <sup>1</sup>games he <sup>2</sup>once <sup>1</sup>gave to the Roman  
*dans* *jeu m.* *une fois*

people. — I thank you for the trouble you have taken.  
*peuple m.                      de                      peine f.                      prise.*

503. WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH, are generally expressed in French by *dont*, both in speaking of persons and things; as,

Le ciel, dont le secours est nécessaire.	<i>Heaven, whose assistance is necessary.</i>
L'homme dont il se plaint.	<i>The man of whom he complains.</i>
La maison dont vous parlez.	<i>The house of which you speak.</i>

relative requires to be separated from its antecedent, we use *duquel* and *de laquelle* in speaking of

*de laquelle*, | *The Thames, in the bed of which,*  
 &c.

persons, it is generally a matter of indifference  
 or *duquel, de laquelle*; as,

ON DE QUI OU | *The prince to whose patronage I*  
 fortune. | *owe my fortune.*

NT can only be used when the antecedent  
 in the beginning of an interrogative  
*from whom*, would be rendered by DE  
*from which*, by DUQUEL, DE LAQUELLE,

*cette lettre?* | Of whom do you speak?  
 | From whom have you received this  
 | letter?  
*vous?* | Of which do you complain?  
 | Which is the one concerned?

used without reference to a noun ex-  
 plies the word *person* understood.

ged into *of whom*, it is expressed by *de qui*; as,  
 s fils? | Whose son are you? i.e., of whom  
 | are you the son?

changed into *to whom*, it is expressed by *à qui*; as,  
 peau? | Whose hat is this? i.e., to whom  
 | does this hat belong?

# EXERCISE CCI.

gentleman whose horse has won the  
*monsieur* *gagner*

e is a man of whom I have a good  
 \*

ly of whom you are speaking is gone. —  
*ne* ind-1 *partir*

of which you made me a present.—The  
 ind-4 \* *présent.*

s gave a thread to Theseus, (by means)  
 ind-3 *fil m. Thésée au moyen*

out of the labyrinth. — The people  
 ind-3 *labyrinthe m. gens*

*from whom* you expect so many services deceive you. —  
*attendre tant de — tromper*  
*Whose* daughter is she?—*Whose* house is that?

506. (a) When the pronouns *WHOM* or *WHICH* come after any preposition (except *of*), *whom* is expressed by *qui*, and *which* by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*; as,

Le monsieur à QUI j'écris est très riche.	<i>The gentleman to whom I write is very rich.</i>
Il y a un Dieu, par QUI tout est gouverné.	<i>There is a God, by whom all things are governed.</i>
Le cheval sur LEQUEL il est.	<i>The horse on which he is.</i>
La disposition dans LAQUELLE il est.	<i>The disposition in which he is.</i>
Le bonheur après LEQUEL j'aspire.	<i>The happiness after which I aspire.</i>

(b) It follows from the foregoing rule, that *qui*, preceded by a preposition, is never said of things, but only of persons. So we can say: *La personne à qui j'ai donné ma confiance*; but we cannot say: *Les sciences à qui je m'applique*. We must say: *Les sciences auxquelles je m'applique*. (See Rule 499 c, d.)

#### EXERCISE CCII.

The man *for whom* you speak is gone to Paris.—He is a  
*aller C*  
 friend *in whom* I put my confidence.—There are two things  
*en mettre confiance f. y avoir*  
*to which* we must (accustom ourselves) under pain of finding  
*falloir s'accoutumer peine inf-1*  
 life insupportable: the injuries of time and the injustices of  
*injure f. —*  
 men.—Regulus, in his expedition against Carthage, had to  
*Régulus — ind-3*  
 combat a prodigious serpent, *against which* it was necessary  
*combattre — m. falloir ind-3*  
 to employ <sup>2</sup>the <sup>1</sup>whole Roman army.  
 \*

#### § V. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—See p. 62.

507. The pronoun *ON* is generally followed by a masculine singular; as,

*ON n'est pas toujours HEUREUX.* | *People are not always fortunate.*

(a) Yet, when it is quite evident that a female is spoken of, *on* should be followed by a *feminine* singular; as,

*ON n'est pas toujours JEUNE et* | *A woman cannot be always young*  
*JOLIE.*—(ACAD.) | *and pretty.*

is followed by an adjective or substantive *plural*, indicates that this pronoun relates to several; *ever*, remains singular; as,

*épépérés.* | They fought like desperate men.  
(*Inscription sur la porte d'un cimetière.*)

is repeated before every verb of which it is the nominative; as,

On le loue, ON le loue. | They praise, threaten, and caress  
l'on fasse, | him; but whatever they do, they  
out. | cannot master him.

*ON* is used with reference to a plural noun excluded in French by *ils* or *elles*, and not by *on*.

In conversation and letter-writing, *ON* is frequently used for personal pronouns, and even of a noun, when it is the subject:—

*ne vous a vu* (I have not seen you for an age).—  
(you silence me).—*ON l'écoula* (she listened to  
at heures (we get up at 8 o'clock).—*ON ne voulut*  
ter would not listen to me).

*ON* is used instead of *on*:—

*la parole, ils vous regardent du haut de leur*  
*vous faire sentir votre néant* (if you presume to  
k down on you with supreme hauteur, as if to  
your littleness).

*ON* has an indefinite manner of expression, and means of the *indefinite* pronoun *IT*, expressed by *ON*, at the same time changing the passive into the active sense; as,

*rapporte.* | It is said. It is thought. It is reported.

*ON* is used in French as the subject of an active verb, where the passive voice is used in English.

as the English; *I am deceived*;—*I*  
French say: *On me trompe*;—*On m'a*  
*They deceive me*;—*They have told me*.

See also No. 537 (b), p. 296.)

*each, every one.* This pronoun is often used to relate (in a distributive sense) to the subject of a verb:—

*six francs CHACUN* (these volumes cost six francs respectively).

When a possessive adjective follows, it may be referred either to the *plural* subject (its form

being *leur, leurs*), or to *chacun* (with the form *son, sa, ses*).  
Examples :—

*Ils ont apporté chacun LEUR offrande* (each of them has brought his offering).—*Ils apportèrent des offrandes au temple, CHACUN selon SES moyens*—(ACAD.) (they brought offerings to the temple, every one according to his means).

(c) The *singular* (SON, SA, SES) must be used if we consider *chacun* in a distributive or separate sense, or if it forms an incidental clause with some regimen of its own :—

*Le vainqueur et le vaincu SE retiraient, CHACUN dans SA ville*—(MONTESQUIEU) (both victor and vanquished retired, each to his own city).—*Ils allaient de leur œuf manger CHACUN SA part*—(LA FONTAINE) (they were going to eat their egg, each his share).

(d) The *plural* (LEUR, LEURS) is used when *chacun* is simply inserted in a sentence to give a collective meaning to the plural subject :—

*Les LANGUES ont chacune LEURS bizarreries*—(BOILEAU) (every language has its oddities).—*Ils s'en allèrent chacun de LEUR côté*—(ACAD.) (each of them went his own way).

(e) NOTE.—*Ils s'en allèrent CHACUN de SON côté*, would be quite correct also, if we attributed to *chacun* a distributive and principal idea. Thus we say :—

*Donnez à CHACUN SA part* (give each one his share).—*Remettez CHACUN de ces livres à SA place* (put back each of these books in its place).

(f) Used in correlation with NOUS and VOUS, as a consequence of the above rules, CHACUN may be followed by NOTRE and NOS, VOTRE and VOS, and even by SON, SA, SES :—

*NOUS avons pris CHACUN NOTRE chapeau*, or *NOS chapeaux*, or *SON chapeau* (we each took our hats).—*VOUS apporterez CHACUN VOTRE ardoise*, or *VOS ardoises*, or *SON ardoise* (you will each bring your slates).

### EXERCISE CCIII.

When a woman is handsome, she (is not ignorant of it).—

*Quand \* on on ne l'ignore pas.*

*We are not slaves, to endure such ill treatment.—In*  
*On des pour endurer de si mauvais pl.*

*that house, they laugh, play, dance, and sing.—It is believed*  
*rire danser \**

*that peace (will be made) this year. — We have been much*  
*se fera année f. bien*

*deceived. — He is said to have succeeded. — Return those*  
*trompés. réussi. Remettre*

*medals, each to its place. — <sup>2</sup>Each <sup>1</sup>(of them has fulfilled)*  
*médaille f. Ils ont rempli*

*his duty.*

## CHAPTER V.

## OF THE VERB.

the VERB with its SUBJECT or NOMINATIVE.

RULE. — A verb must agree with its and person ; as,

<i>lisez.</i>		<i>We read ; you read.</i>
<i>et l'amitié</i>		<i>Hatred is awake, and friend-</i>
		<i>ship is asleep.</i>

2. — When a verb has more than one the plural ; as,

*ent français.* | *My brother and he speak French.*

3. — When the verb has more than one subject, the verb must agree with the first person, or with the first person in preference to the other two, and with the second person in preference to the other two. In this case, the pronoun *nous* (not *vous*) is generally placed before the verb, if one of the subjects is the first person ; and the pronoun *vous* if the second person ; without a first person ; as,

<i>avons fait</i>		<i>You and I have done our duty.</i>
<i>(RAD.)</i>		
<i>et votre frère</i>		<i>I have heard that you and you</i>
<i>ôt. — (Ibid.)</i>		<i>brother were soon to set out.</i>

4. — The verb is sometimes understood, as in this sentence *moi ADMIRIONS la bonté des dieux* (Narbal and I admired the goodness of the gods).

## EXERCISE CCIV.

*attract* friends, and poverty *keeps* them  
*attirer* art. *éloigner*

*atches* over <sup>2</sup>secret <sup>1</sup>crimes ; the laws *watch*  
*iller* — m.

es. — Virgil, Horace, and Tibullus *were*  
— *Tibulle* ind-2

*will go* to the country with my father.  
*campagne* f.

, and I, *have* each a <sup>2</sup>different <sup>1</sup>opinion.—  
122 — f.

*accompany* me to the botanical garden.  
*accompagner*



## EXCEPTIONS AND REMARKS.

514. When two subjects singular are joined by the conjunction *OU* (or, either), the verb is put in the singular or in the plural according to the idea one wishes to express:—

*Jean OU Jacques le FERA.*

John or James will do it.

*Vous OU moi PARLERONS.*

You or I shall speak.

(a) ~~est~~ When, however, *OU* is used with its *disjunctive* meaning, the verb agrees with the last of the subjects:—

*La peur OU la misère lui A fait commettre cette faute.*—(ACAD.)

Either fear or misery caused him to commit this fault.

(b) If, on the contrary, *OU* is used with its *copulative* meaning, and if the subjects, acting alternately, would produce a similar result, the verb is put in the plural:—

*La peur OU la misère lui ONT fait commettre bien des fautes.*—(ACAD.)

Fear or misery (or both) caused him to commit many faults.

*N.B.*—This is generally the case with subjects of *different* persons, and then Rule 513 is applicable.

515. (a) *L'UN ET L'AUTRE* as an indefinite *adjective* being joined to a noun singular, requires the verb in the singular:—

*L'UNE ET L'AUTRE saison EST favorable*—(ACAD.) (both seasons are favourable).

(b) But *L'UN ET L'AUTRE* used absolutely, as an indefinite *pronoun*, requires the verb either in the singular or in the plural, according to the idea that prevails:—

*L'UNE ET L'AUTRE EST bonne, OR SONT bonnes*—(ACAD.) (both are good).

—*On ne sait que trop combien L'UNE ET L'AUTRE EST faible*—(BOURDA-LOUE) (it is but too well known how weak both are).—*L'UN ET L'AUTRE ONT le cerveau troublé*—(BOILEAU) (both are wrong in their head).

516. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* (neither, neither the one nor the other), and all subjects joined together by *ni* repeated, require the verb in the plural; as,

*J'ai lu vos deux discours; ni l'un ni l'autre ne SONT bons.*

*I have read your two speeches: neither the one nor the other is good.*

*Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux.*—(LA FONTAINE).

*Neither gold nor greatness makes us happy.*

(a) *Exception.*—When one of the words united by *ni* can alone perform the action expressed by the verb, the verb is then put in the singular; as,

*Ni l'un NI l'autre n'EST ton père* (neither the one nor the other is thy father).

(b) The Academy admits of both numbers, in certain cases, according to the sense:—

*Ni l'un NI l'autre ne VIENDRA, OR ne VIENDRONT* (neither will come).

(c) ~~est~~ Observe that *NI*, and *NI l'un NI l'autre* take *NE* before a verb.

## EXERCISE CCV.

...t or Fox who *said* that.—*Either* mildness,  
ind-4 *douceur* f.

I have seen A. and B., *either* the one or the  
274

ou.—It was either he or I that *did* that.—  
ind-1 \* ind-4

servants, *both* are honest. — *Neither* has  
*domestique* *honnête*

*Neither* of them *shall* marry my daughter.  
\* \* *épouser*

...ready seen (No. 33, c, d) that there are  
...tive nouns: the *collective general*, and  
...tive.—The *collective general* are those  
...totality of the persons or things of which  
...mée, the army; *la foule*, the crowd; or  
...ber of those same persons or things; as,  
—The *collective partitive* are those which  
...rtial number; as, *une quantité*, a quan-  
...rowd.

...s *s'est introduite* (the gang of thieves got in).—  
...se *sont introduits* (a gang of thieves got in). In  
...e is a *collective general*; in the second it is a

When a *collective general* is followed by  
(of) and a noun, the adjective, pronoun,  
...agree with the *collective general*; as,

...entière-	The army of the <i>infidels</i> was en- tirely destroyed.
...RE d'exem- ACAD.)	He has furnished the number of copies agreed upon.

When a *collective partitive* is followed by  
(of) and a noun, the adjective, pronoun,  
...agree with the *collective* or with the last  
...y, with the word that, in our mind, we  
important. We must therefore say—

...N MANGÉ à	A portion of the bread eaten at our
...IT <i>sustenté</i>	breakfast would have sustained
...at <i>plusieurs</i>	this unfortunate man for several
	days.

2. UNE PARTIE du pain MANGÉE | A portion of the bread (*having*  
*avant le dîner* a empêché que le | *been*) eaten before dinner pre-  
*reste nous ait suffi.*—(LITTRÉ.) | vented the remainder being suf-  
| ficient for us.

N.B.—In the first example, we think of the *bread eaten*; in the second, we think of the *portion* eaten before dinner.

520. *Observations.*—(1) Adverbs of quantity, as *peu*, few; *beaucoup*, many; *assez*, enough; *plus*, more; *trop*, too many, &c., are considered as collectives partitive. Consequently we write—

Peu de gens *négligent* leurs intérêts. | *Few people neglect their interests.*  
 Beaucoup de monde *était* à la pro- | *Many people were walking.*  
 menade.

521. (2) When PEU, BEAUCOUP, LA PLUPART, &c., are used by themselves, their *complement* is understood, and it is with the latter (singular or plural) that the verb agrees:

Mais, dit Machiavel, PEU SONT | But, says Machiavelli, few *people*  
*corrompus* par PEU.—(MON- | are bought by little (*money*).  
 TESQUIEU.)

PEU me SUFFIT (*i.e.*, *peu de chose*). | I am satisfied with little.

PEU s'en FAUT. | Little is wanting.

COMBIEN PEU ONT *assez de vie* pour | How very few live long enough to  
*jouir de toute leur gloire et de toute* | enjoy all their glory and in-  
*leur influence!*—(LA HARPE.) | fluence!

LA PLUPART ONT *fait la même* | Most of them made the same mis-  
*erreur.* | take.

#### EXERCISE CCVI.

It was with James the First that *began that series* of  
 C<sup>o</sup> ind-1 à 395 *que* ind-1 *chaîne* f.

misfortunes which *gave* to the house of Stuart the title of  
*malheur* ind-4 *titre* m.

unfortunate.—A *troop* of nymphs, crowned with flowers,  
*infortuné* *troupe* f. *nymph* f. *de*

*swam* behind her car.—*Few* men *reason*, and all wish to  
 ind-2 *derrière* *char* m. *raisonner* *vouloir* \*

decide.—*Most* were of that opinion.—An infinite number of  
 ind-3 *avis* m.

birds *made* those groves resound with their sweet songs.  
 2 3 1 *de* *chant* m. s.

#### ADDITIONAL REMARKS UPON THE GENERAL RULE.

522. (1) When the words forming the subject are synonymous, the verb agrees, in French, with the last noun; as,

<i>éprouvé</i> ÉTONNE (DOMERGUE.)	His courage, his intrepidity astonishes the bravest.
<i>notre substance</i> (SUET.)	If our being, if our substance be nothing.
<i>politesse</i> EST la <i>qu'ils affectent.</i>	Politeness and affability are the only distinction which they assume.

verb agrees also with the last noun only, nouns be not synonymous, if we dwell more than upon the others, either because it preceding nouns—is more energetic, or is of the others are forgotten ; as,

deau, la flamme EST tout prête.—(RACINE.)
Potose, Alzire EST sa conquête.—(VOLTAIRE.)
Compare with Rule 428, p. 240.

verb is put in the singular, although pre- when there is an expression which sums into one, such as *tout, rien, personne, nul*, the conjunction *mais* is placed before the his noun is in the singular ; as,

<i>out</i> EST charme (FONTAINE.)	Words and looks, everything is a charm in you.
<i>ne m'a retenu.</i>	Neither fear nor dangers, nothing could restrain me.
<i>ses richesses,</i> <i>tu s'évanouit.</i>	Not only all his riches, but all his virtue vanished.

on two subjects are joined by the follow- conjunctions, *comme, de même que, ainsi que*, the verb agrees with the first subject, the subject of a verb understood ; as,

<i>tant d'autres,</i> (—(VOLTAIRE.)	<i>That battle, like so many others,</i> <i>decided nothing.</i>
<i>bien que Mé-</i> <i>les Grecs.</i>	<i>Aristophanes, as well as Menan-</i> <i>der, delighted the Greeks.</i>

s, however, when these conjunctions are used with meaning—i.e., in the sense of ET (and), and not to n—the verb is put in the plural:—

<i>a fortune, RE-</i> <i>teurs à ceux qui</i> (—(MONT-ÉVREMONT.)	Health and fortune both withdraw their favours from those who abuse them.
<i>ercule ÉTAIENT</i> <i>DIEUX.—(VOL.)</i>	Bacchus and Hercules also were acknowledged as demi-gods.

## EXERCISE CCVII.

Vanity, says Pascal, is so rooted in the <sup>ancré</sup> human heart, that <sup>de l'homme</sup>  
 a scullion, a porter even <sup>boasts</sup>, and <sup>wishes</sup> to have  
*marmiton* *crocheteur* \* *se vanter* *vouloir* \*  
 his admirers. — Games, conversation, shows, *nothing*  
*admirateur* 404 *jeu* *spectacle*  
 diverts her.—The strength of the mind, *like* that of the  
*ne distraire* *force f.* *dme f.*  
 body, is the fruit of temperance.—Alcibiades, *as well as*  
*art.* *Alcibiade*  
 Plato, *was* among the disciples of Socrates.  
*au nombre de*

## § II. PLACE OF THE SUBJECT OF THE VERB.

526. RULE.—The subject or nominative is generally placed *before* the verb, in French, as in English; as,

<i>Le maître enseigne, et l'écolier</i>	The master teaches, and the
<i>apprend.</i>	scholar learns.
<i>Nous irons vous voir.</i>	We shall come and see you.

527. There are a few cases in which the subject is placed *after* the verb; they are the following:—

1st, When, in any interrogative sentence, the subject is a *personal pronoun*, or *CE* or *ON*. Examples:—

<i>Quand viendra-t-ELLE?</i>	When will she come?
<i>Qui est-CE?</i>	Who is it?
<i>En est-ON sûr?</i>	Are they sure of it?

(a) ~~But~~ But if the subject is a noun (Rule 161) or any word other than a *personal pronoun*, *CE* or *ON*, the subject is placed before the verb, and *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, according to the gender and number of the subject, is placed with a hyphen after the verb, to indicate the interrogation!—

<i>Votre FRÈRE parle-t-IL français?</i>	Does your brother speak French?
<i>TOUT LE MONDE est-IL arrivé?</i>	Has everybody come?
<i>CELA vous étonne-t-IL?</i>	Does that surprise you?
<i>TOUT vous appartient-IL?</i>	Does all belong to you?
<i>CELLE-CI est-ELLE meilleure?</i>	Is this one better?
<i>QUELQUE CHOSE lui a-t-IL déplu?</i>	Has anything displeased him?

(b) When an interrogative sentence has for subject *QUI*, this word is placed before the verb, or before the auxiliary if in a compound tense, without the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, being used:—

<i>QUI veut venir avec moi?</i>	Who wishes to come with me?
<i>QUI a prêté de l'argent à Étienne?</i>	Who lent money to Stephen?

as *direct* object of an interrogative sentence, it is the verb when the subject is either a personal pronoun or if the subject is not one of these words, *QUI*, *QUEL*, and the subject is placed between *qui* and the pronouns, *il*, *ils*, *elle* or *elles*, is placed after the

<p><i>Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait ?</i>  <i>Qu'est-ce qu'il cherche-t-il ?</i></p>	<p>Whom do I see yonder?          Whom have they punished for that?          Whom is your guardian looking for?</p>
---	---

A relative sentence introduced by the relative pronouns *OU*, *QUAND*, *COMMENT*, *COMBIEN*, or by a noun preceded by *QUEL*, or by a preposition preceding the subject, whatever it is, may be placed *after* the verb, or *after the past participle*, in a compound sentence, when the verb has a noun for object direct or indirect, or by an adverb or an adverbial clause. Examples:—

<p><i>Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait ?</i>  <i>Qu'est-ce que vos neveux ?</i>  <i>Qu'est-ce que le Hongrois ?</i>  <i>Qu'est-ce que les objets ?</i>  <i>Qu'est-ce que votre père part ?</i>  <i>Qu'est-ce qu'ils ont-ils tant ?</i></p>	<p>What is your brother-in-law doing?          Whence comes that?          What were your nephews busy about?          Where does the admiral live?          With whom did the Hungarian come?          How much did these articles cost?          When will your father start for Algiers?          For whom did your brothers work so much yesterday?</p>
--	---

In English, we quote the words of another sentence is not introduced by its principal

*Alémanque.* | *What shall I do?* said Telemachus.

subjunctive mood is used without any expression; as,

<p><i>Je vous prie</i>  <i>Je prie</i></p>	<p><i>Heaven grant you may be happy!</i>  <i>Should I perish there, I will go.</i></p>
--	--

expression has more vivacity than if we had said: *Je vous prie que vous soyez heureux.* *QUOIQUE* *je dusse y*

A sentence begins with any of the words *et*, *alors*, *après*, *comme*, *comment*, *ici*, *là*, *tel*, the clause is introduced by a relative pronoun when a verb is used impersonally for the infinitive, in which case the impersonal subject *il*

precedes the verb which is followed by the real subject ; thus : *IL EST ARRIVÉ d'heureux changements*—i.e., *D'heureux changements SONT ARRIVÉS* (happy changes have occurred).

*AINSI finit la comédie.*

*TEL fut le résultat de sa folie.*

*ICI fleurit jadis une ville opulente.*

*L'anecdote QUE m'a racontée votre commis.*

*Ce sont des expressions DONT se sert cet auteur.*

Thus ended the play.

Such was the result of his folly.

Here an opulent city flourished formerly.

The anecdote which your clerk related to me.

Those are expressions used by that author.

5th, When the subject is followed by several words which depend upon it, and is antecedent to a relative pronoun which must not be separated from it, in which case the sentence will be introduced by one of the words mentioned in 4th Rule above ; as in this sentence of Fénelon :—

*LÀ coulent mille RUISSEAUX QUI distribuent partout une eau claire.*

There flow a thousand rivulets that carry everywhere a clear water.

6th, The interrogative form is sometimes used to show supposition :—

*Parait-il un épervier dans l'air, la poule devient intrépide.*

*Un citoyen avait-il de la popularité? C'était un rival du prince qui pouvait susciter une guerre civile.*—(CAMILLE DESMOULINS.)

If a sparrow-hawk appears in the air, the hen becomes intrepid.

If a citizen had any popularity, he was a rival of the monarch and one who might raise a civil war.

#### EXERCISE CCVIII.

The violet is the emblem of modesty.—Are *they* gone ?  
violettes f.                      emblème m.                      partir

—Does your *cousin* often come to see you ?—Is your governess  
venir

English or French ?—What will posterity think ?—You are  
ind-7                      avoir

wrong, said her father to her. — May you succeed in your  
tort                      Pouvoir                      réussir

projects !—<sup>2</sup>(Great misfortunes) <sup>1</sup>(have happened).—So goes the  
malheur m.

world. — Such was his advice.—On one side was seen a river  
monde m.                      avis m. D'                      on ind-2

(from which) sprang islands lined with lime-trees in bloom.  
où se former                      bordé de tilleul fleuri

## VERNMENT OF VERBS.

*regimen*, or *complement* of a verb, is a  
 states the idea begun by the verb.

two sorts of regimens, the one called  
*direct*.

*regimen* denotes the immediate object  
 the verb, without the help of any prepo-  
 sitions to the question *qui?* (whom?) for  
 persons; and *quoi?* (what?) for things; as, *J'aime mon*  
*père. J'aime, QUI? mon père.—Il aime*  
*l'étude. Il aime, QUOI? l'étude. Mon père*  
*est le direct regimen of the verb aimer,*  
*without the help of any preposition,*  
*the verb.*

*indirect regimen* completes, in an *indirect*  
 begun by the verb; that is, it completes  
 a preposition expressed or understood;  
 questions *à qui?* *de qui?* *pour qui?*  
 persons; and *à quoi?* *pour quoi?* *de*  
 things; as, *Il parle à son frère*, he speaks  
*à son frère, à QUI? à son frère. À son*  
*frère, direct regimen of parler, and completes*  
*the idea begun by that verb, by means of the pre-*

*regimen* corresponds to the *accusative*;  
*à* to the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative* of

When a verb has two regimens, the one  
 direct and the other indirect, the shorter must be placed

<i>le vice des</i> <i>des dehors</i> <i>les plus</i> <i>odieux.</i>	<i>Hypocrites deck vice with the ex-</i> <i>terior of virtue.</i> <i>Hypocrites deck with the exterior</i> <i>of virtue the most shameful and</i> <i>odious vices.</i>
--	--

If the regimens are of equal length, the  
 shorter must be placed first; as,

<i>présent à</i> <i>l'avenir, l'ambition sacrifie</i> <i>le présent à</i> <i>l'avenir, le plaisir sacrifie</i> <i>le présent à</i> <i>l'avenir.</i>	<i>Ambition sacrifices the present to</i> <i>the future, but pleasure sacrifices</i> <i>the future to the present.</i>
--	--



## EXERCISE CCIX.

He has sent a circular to all his correspondents. — He  
*circulaire f.* *correspondant m.*  
 devotes his talents to the defence of <sup>2</sup>public <sup>1</sup>liberty.—Give  
*consacrer* *pl.*  
 to study all the time that you can.—I delivered the letter  
*étude f.* *remettre ind-4*  
 to the tutor of the prince.—Show your governess the  
*précepteur* *à*  
 letter that you have written.—I have given a ring to my  
*f.*  
 sister.—Alexander, in dying, said that he left his empire “to  
*ind-3* *ind-2*  
 the most worthy.”—Have you lent my brother any money?

535. RULE III.—*Passive* verbs require *de* or *par* before the noun or pronoun which they govern.

536. *De* is used, when the verb expresses an action *wholly of the mind*; as,

L'honnête homme est estimé, même | *An honest man is esteemed, even*  
 DE ceux qui n'ont pas de probité. | *by those who have no probity.*

537. *Par* is required, when the *bodily faculties* participate in the action; as,

Carthage fut détruite PAR les Ro- | *Carthage was destroyed by the*  
*mains.* *Romans.*

(a) REMARK.—*Par* is also used to avoid the repetition of *de* in the same sentence; as, *Son ouvrage a été censuré D'une manière sévère PAR les critiques.*

[Remember Rule 167, p. 101.]

(b) ~~28~~ Besides the *active* form (see Rule 510), the French often prefer the *pronominal* to the *passive* form. Ex.: *Cette règle se trouve à la page 285* (that rule is found at page 285); *ces mets se mangent froids* (those viands are eaten cold).

## EXERCISE CCX.

Your brother is honoured and respected *by* all who know  
*honorer* *ceux*  
 him.—He is loved *by* all his masters.—Misers are  
*371 avare*  
 tormented *with* the fear of losing what they have.—  
*crainte f.* *perdre inf-1* *ce qu'*  
 Bombs were invented *by* Gallen, a bishop of Munster,  
*371 bombe f. ind-3* *399*

the 16th century.—The city of Troy  
*ville f.*

ed, and destroyed *by* the Greeks, 1184  
*détruire*

This event has been celebrated *by*  
*événement m.*

ts of Greece and Italy.  
art. 31

many verbs which are transitive in  
itive in English; others which are  
ch, but transitive in English; others  
ve for direct object the *thing* spoken  
the direct object is the *person*; others  
transitive in both languages, but require  
prepositions from those required by the  
sh verbs. Examples:—

<i>écouter à leurs</i>	Listen <i>to</i> this fable. Children must obey their parents.
<i>patience.</i>	You abuse my patience.
<i>demander à votre</i>	I have asked <i>your brother for</i> this book.
<i>révérence.</i>	Think <i>of</i> your children.
<i>chose.</i>	I thank them <i>for</i> this attention. Do not laugh <i>at</i> such a thing.

positions (excepting *EN*) the French use  
nt or past), and not the present par-  
t, *a, b*); as,

<i>faire.</i>	<i>Do you like reading?</i> <i>He hinders me from doing it.</i>
---------------	--

position that can be followed by the present


<i>merchant.</i>	<i>We shall talk as we walk.</i>
<i>partant.</i>	<i>He gave that order in going away.</i>
<i>ant.</i>	<i>By reading and writing.</i>

Following are amongst the verbs which  
infinitive:—

*given for reference; not for systematic study.)*

<i>admettre à,</i>	<i>to admit to.</i>	<i>animer à,</i>	<i>to excite to.</i>
<i>s'adonner à,</i>	<i>to indulge in.</i>	<i>s'appliquer à,</i>	<i>to apply to.</i>
<i>aider à,</i>	<i>to assist in.</i>	<i>apprendre à,</i>	<i>to learn to.</i>
<i>s'amuser à,</i>	<i>{ to amuse</i>	<i>s'apprêter à,</i>	<i>to get ready to.</i>
	<i>one's self</i>	<i>aspirer à,</i>	<i>to aspire to.</i>
	<i>with.</i>	<i>assigner à,</i>	<i>to summon to.</i>

assujettir à, to subject.	engager à, to induce to.	persévérer à, { to persevere in.
s'attacher à, { to attach one's self to.	enhardir à, { to embolden to.	persistir à, to persist in.
s'attendre à, to expect to.	enseigner à, to teach to.	se plaisir à, § to delight in.
autoriser à, to authorise to.	s'entendre à, { to know how to.	se plier à, { to bend one's self to.
avoir à, to have to.	être à, to be . . .	porter à, { to carry, to incite to.
balancer à, to hesitate to.	s'étudier à, to study to.	pousser à, to impel to.
chercher à, to seek to.	s'évertuer à, to strive to.	se prendre à, to begin.
se complaire à, { to take pleasure in.	exceller à, to excel in.	prendre plaisir à, { to take pleasure in.
concourir à, { to co-operate in.	exciter à, to excite to.	préparer à, to prepare to.
condamner à, to condemn to.	exercer à, to exercise in.	procéder à, to proceed to.
condescendre à, { to condescend to.	exhorter à, to exhort to.	provoquer à, to incite to.
consister à, to consist in.	exposer à, to expose to.	recommencer à, { to begin again to.
conspire à, to conspire to.	former à, to form to.	reduire à, to reduce to.
contribuer à, { to contribute to.	gagner à, to gain by.	se refuser à, to refuse to.
convier à, to invite to.	hésiter à, † to hesitate to.	renoncer à, to renounce to.
décider à, † to induce to.	instruire à, to instruct in.	répugner à, § { to be repugnant to.
dépenser à, to spend in.	s'intéresser à, { interest in.	se résoudre à, to resolve to.
destiner à, to destine to.	inviter à, † to invite to.	rester à, to remain.
se déterminer à, { to resolve upon.	jouer à, to play at.	réussir à, to succeed in.
se dévouer à, to devote to.	se mettre à, { to set to, to begin.	servir à, § to serve to.
dresser à, to train to.	montrer à, to show how to.	songer à, to think of.
s'égosiller à, { to make one's self hoarse with.	s'obstiner à, to persist in.	soumettre à, to submit to.
employer à, to use to.	s'offrir à, to offer to.	suffire à,    to suffice to.
encourager à, { to encourage to.	s'opiniâtrer à, { to be stubborn in.	tarder à, § to be long in.
	parvenir à, to succeed in.	tendre à, to tend to.
	passer à, to spend in.	travailler à, to work for.
	pencher à, to incline to.	viser à, to aim at.
	perdre à, to lose in.	se vouer à, { to devote one's self to.

(b)  Some French verbs may govern *à* or *de* before the infinitive; such are the following:—

1. *Aimer*, to like; *commencer*, to begin; *consentir*, to consent; *continuer*, to continue; *contraindre*, *forcer*, and *obliger*, ¶ in the sense of to compel; *convier*, to invite; *demander*, to ask; *s'efforcer*, to try, to

† *s'Attendre DE*, *hésiter DE*, *inviter DE*, were frequently used formerly; but *À* is now generally preferred.

‡ *Décider DE*, *résoudre DE*, mean to resolve upon; but when these verbs are used reflectively, we say *se décider À*, *se résoudre À*. Example: *Nous avons décidé de le faire*; *nous nous sommes décidés À le faire* (we have resolved upon doing it).

§ *Plaire*, *répugner*, *servir*, *suffire*, and *tarder*, take *DE* when used impersonally: *S'il vous plaît DE rester* (if you prefer to stay); *il ne me répugne pas DE sortir* (I do not mind going out); *À quoi vous servira-t-il d'être ministre?* (what will be the good of your being a minister?) *Il me suffit DE savoir qu'il vous tarde DE revoir votre famille* (it is enough for me to know that you long to see your family).

|| *Suffire* often takes *pour*: *La vie suffit POUR être bon chrétien*—(NICOLE) (life suffices to be a good Christian). (See above note.)

¶ *Obliger* (to oblige—i.e., to do a service), and generally when used in a passive sense, takes *DE*:—

*Obligez-moi DE dire à Pierre, &c.*

*La haine, obligée DE se renfermer au dedans.*—(MASSILLON.)

Oblige me by saying to Peter, &c.

Hatred, when compelled to contain itself inwardly.

*der*, to venture; *oublier*, to forget; *refuser*, to refuse; *se laisser* (to weary, to tire), require *à* to show EFFECT or RESULT (in the sense of *to feel*

<i>dire.</i>	I weary in telling you.
<i>us répéter.</i>	I am tired of repeating to you.
busy with); <i>s'occuper de</i> (to look after), &c. :—	
<i>per à jouer</i> (LEAU.)	It is better to occupy one's self in playing than in slandering.
<i>ela aussitôt</i>	I shall look into that as soon as possible.
<i>uer</i> (to accustom), take <i>à</i> ; also <i>s'accoutumer</i> and <i>habitude</i> , <i>je m'habitue à le voir</i> (I am becoming used to it). AVEC is often used with a noun or pronoun : <i>notre frère, AVEC lui</i> (I am becoming used to your brother). Enter verbs in compound tenses they require DE :	
<i>à DE dissi-</i> (CORN.)	I am not in the habit of concealing my faults.
<i>habitué DE</i>	Accustom yourselves to obey.
	The places where he was wont to come.

*de* (to be eager to); but *s'empreser* (to hasten) *s'empreser DE venir* (he hastened to come). *Je ne DE le faire* (I do not dislike doing it).

# EXERCISE CCXI.

to justify myself.—He likes to be flattered.  
*se justifier.*

f with making <sup>2</sup>chemical <sup>1</sup>experiments.  
*32 de chimie expérience*

with many difficulties.—I have to thank  
*\* bien des*

erstand.—Liberality consists less in giving  
*apprendre.*

ing seasonably.—He is asking to come in.—  
*à propos. entrer.*

to continue.—The example of his ancestors  
*ancêtre*

quish himself.—I offer to serve you.  
*distinguer.*

Il refuse DE partir parce qu'on lui a refusé à dîner (he declined giving him a dinner).

541. The following are amongst the verbs which require *DE* before the infinitive :—

(N.B.—*This list is only given for reference.*)

s'Abstenir, to abstain	détester, to detest.	se mêler, { to interfere,
accuser, to accuse.	détourner, to turn from.	take to, &c.
achever, to finish.	dire, to say, to tell.	menacer, to threaten.
affecter, to affect.	discontinuer { to discon-	meriter, to deserve.
s'affliger, to grieve.	tinuer.	mourir, to die.
ambitionner { to be ambi-	disconvenir, to disown.	négliger, to neglect.
tious.	dispenser, { to dispense	nier, to deny.
appartenir, to belong.	with.	notifier, to notify.
s'apercevoir, { to become	dissuader, to dissuade.	obtenir, to obtain.
aware.	écrire, to write.	omettre, to omit.
appréhender to fear.	s'effrayer, to be afraid.	ordonner, to order.
arrêter, { to stop, to	empêcher, to prevent.	oublier, to forget.
prevent, &c.	enjoindre, to enjoin.	pardonner, to forgive.
attrister, to sadden.	s'enorgueil-	parler, to speak of.
avertir, to warn.	lir, to be proud.	permettre, to permit.
s'aviser, to think of.	enrager, { to be in a	persuader, to persuade.
avoir l'ambition de, l'art	rage.	pétiller, { to be full, to
de, l'avantage, &c., to	entreprendre, to undertake.	boil.
have the ambition, the	épargner, to spare.	se piquer, { to pride one's
art, the advantage, &c.,	s'étonner, { to be aston-	self, &c.
and generally AVOIR	ished.	plaindre, to pity.
idiomatically used with	éviter, to avoid.	se plaindre, to complain.
a noun (181).	excuser, to excuse.	prendre, to take care
blâmer, to blame.	exempter, { to exempt	garde, { not to.
brûler, { to be an-	from.	prescrire, to prescribe.
xious.	s'empresser, to hasten.	presser, to urge.
censurer, to censure.	feindre, to pretend,	présumer, to presume.
cesser, to cease.	feign.	priser, to request.
charger, to charge, &c.	féliciter, to congratulate.	priver, to deprive.
se charger, { to take upon	finir, to finish.	projeter, to intend.
one's self.	se flatter, { to flatter one's	promettre, to promise.
choisir, to choose.	self.	proposer, to propose.
commander, to command.	frémir, to shudder.	se proposer, { to have the
conjuré, to beseech.	gager, to wager.	intention
conseiller, to advise.	se garder, { to forbear, to	of.
se consoler, { to console	take care	protester, to protest.
one's self.	not to.	punir, to punish.
se contenter, { to be satis-	gémir, to groan.	se rappeler, to remember.
fied with.	gêner, to incommode	recommander, { to recom-
convenir, to agree.	se glorifier, to glory.	mend.
conclure, to conclude.	gronder, to scold.	refuser, to refuse.
craindre, to fear.	se hâter, to hasten.	regretter, to regret.
décourager, to dishearten.	imputer, to impute.	se réjouir, to rejoice.
dédaigner, to disdain.	s'indigner, { to be indig-	remercier, to thank.
se dédire, to retract.	nant.	se repentir, to repent.
défendre, to forbid.	s'ingérer, to interfere.	réprimander to chide.
défler, { to defy, chal-	inspirer, to inspire.	reprocher, to reproach.
lenge.	interdire, to interdict.	se ressou-
dégoûter, { to give a dis-	juger à pro-	venir, { to remember
like.	pos, juger { to think	résoudre, to resolve.
délibérer, to deliberate.	proper.	rire, to laugh at.
se dépêcher, to make haste.	bon, to swear.	risquer, to risk.
déshabituer, { to disaccus-	justifier, to justify.	rougir, to blush.
tom.	louer, to praise.	scandaliser, { to scandal-
désespérer, to despair.	mander, to inform, &c.	ise, &c.
se désister, to give over.	méditer, to meditate.	sommer, to summon.
déterminer, to determine.		se soucier, to care.
		soupçonner, to suspect.

supplier,	to entreat.	trembler,	to tremble.
tâcher,	to endeavour.	se vanter,	to boast.
tenter,	to attempt.		

off), essayer (to try), take *à* or *DE*: *J'ai différé à vous* (I have delayed answering you); *essayez DE lui faire* (ask him listen to reason).

in one's duty: *MANQUER DE* is to forget to do some-  
 &c.: *Manquerait-elle à se venger?* (J.-J. ROUSSEAU  
 herself?); *je ne manquerai pas d'écrire* (I shall not fail

to), *REFUSER DE* (to refuse to). These verbs require *à*  
*offert DE venir avec nous*, or *Il s'est offert à venir avec*  
 with us).

ge) *SOUFFRIR* (to suffer) take *à* or *DE*: *Je m'engage à le*  
 to it); *je souffre DE vous voir ainsi* (I suffer to see you

*se rappeler* (to remember), may be used with or with-  
 le dire, or *je préfère vous le dire* (I prefer telling you);  
 , or *d'avoir vu cela* (I remember seeing that).

## EXERCISE CCXII.

uring your enemies.—The courtiers of  
*uire à* sing. *courtisan*

riel of having violated the laws of the  
 — 539 (a) *violier*

other *will* never *cease* to think of you.—  
 ind-7 538 (5)

ed me to come and tell you that . . .—  
 \* *que* . . .

o love Him.—I *would advise* you to speak  
*conseiller*

rbids us to commit an injustice.—Who  
 — f.

—He has *undertaken* to translate Homer  
*traduire*

## EXERCISE CCXIII.

do what you wish. — I *ordered* him to  
 b) *ce que* *vouloir* ind-4

You *forgot* to come this morning.—They  
 ind-4 *matin m. On*

to marry. — I *promise* to observe what  
*se marier.*

—We should *blush* to commit faults,  
*Il faut* *commettre* 32

but not to acknowledge them.—I will *endeavour* to satisfy you.  
*non avouer tâcher*

—*Make haste to breakfast.*—I *congratulate* myself on having  
*me 539 (a)*

made so good a choice. —The king *orders* me to set out with  
*choix m. partir*

the fleet.—*Recommend* your children to shun vice, to love  
*à fuir m.*

virtue. —General Desaix *contributed* to the gaining of the  
*ind-3 gain m.*

battle of Marengo.—I *thank* you for your kindness.  
*bataille f. 538 (6) bonté f.*

542. REMARKS.—(I.) The preposition required by a verb before the infinitive is often the same as would be required before a noun :—

<i>Il faut s'accoutumer à obéir—à l'obéissance.</i>	One must accustom one's self to obey—to obedience.
<i>Il se prive DE danser—DE la danse.</i>	He deprives himself from dancing—he denies himself dancing.

(II.) But this Rule is far from being a general one ; for instance, we say—

<i>Il aime le jeu ; il aime à jouer.</i>	He likes gaming ; he likes to play.
<i>Il enseigne la vertu ; il enseigne à bien vivre.</i>	He teaches virtue ; he teaches how to lead a good life.
<i>Il craint une chute ; il craint DE tomber.</i>	He is afraid of a fall ; he is afraid of falling, &c., &c.

(III.) Some verbs with a direct regimen require an indirect regimen either governed by *à* (as : *accoutumer, aider, amuser, apprendre, apprêter, condamner, décider, refuser, &c., &c.*), or governed by *de* (as : *absoudre, accabler, accuser, avertir, blâmer, charger, combler, conjurer, louer, &c., &c.*)

<i>On a loué LE VAINQUEUR DE sa modération.</i>	The conqueror was praised for his self-restraint.
<i>On a décidé LE ROI à cette guerre désastreuse.</i>	The king was led into this disastrous war.
<i>On refuse LEUR PARDON à ces malheureux.</i>	Pardon is denied to these unfortunate men.
<i>J'accuse RAOUL DE cette imprudence.</i>	I accuse Ralph of this imprudence.

(IV.) Some verbs with a direct regimen, or with *à* before an indirect regimen, govern the infinitive with *de*, others with *à* :—

ANS D'avoir	The peasants are suspected of having stolen the corn.
chaises.	I know how to make chairs.
SOLDATS À	It is necessary to accustom soldiers to marching.
DE ne pas	I told the clock-maker not to come.

the verbs *croire*, † *affirmer*, *avouer*, *dire*, *nier*, *penser*, *prétendre*, *vouloir*, &c., &c., clause with a verb in a personal mood, be used with elegance provided both the SAME SUBJECT. Examples: *Il croit* (he thinks he writes better than you) *aujourd'hui*—(ACAD.) (*I hope to see*

infinitive is used in the same manner: *Il* (ACAD.) (*he confessed he had done it*). (546.)

require no preposition in French before a preposition be used in English or following:—

(list is only intended for reference.)

espérer, §	to hope.	regarder,	to look at
faire,	{ to cause, to	retourner,	to go back.
	make.	revenir,	to come back.
falloir,	{ to be neces-	savoir,	{ to know how
	sary.		to.
s'imaginer,	to fancy.	sembler,	to seem.
laisser,	to let, to allow.	sentir,	to feel.
oser,	to dare.	souhaiter, §	to wish.
paraître,	to appear.	soutenir,	to maintain.
penser,	{ to think, to	valoir	{ to be better.
	expect.	mieux, †	
prétendre, ¶	{ to pretend,	venir, **	to come.
	to intend.	voir,	to see.
pouvoir,	to be able.	vouloir,	{ to like, to
reconnaître,	{ to acknow-		wish, to be
	ledge.		willing.

required after these verbs before the infinitive, except *espérer*, which is used with or without *de*.

*Je voudrais*, followed by two verbs in the infinitive, require the infinitive: *J'aimerais mieux mourir que de faire une si* (he wished to die than do such a bad action).

*Je compte*, sometimes govern *de*: *Il compte de se retirer* (he intends retiring to a village); *il espéra de réussir* (he hoped he would satisfy his ambition); *il souhaite de réussir* (he wishes to succeed); *il a souhaité de faire du bruit* (he wished to make a noise in the world).

meaning *to think of*: *Avez-vous pensé à offrir à Dieu* (have you thought of offering these sufferings to God?) the sense of *to aspire to*: *Sans prétendre à leur plaisir* (without desiring to please them).

(see No. 152 (§), p. 90).



## EXERCISE CCXIV. (FIRST PART.)

I like better to pardon than to punish you.—She is going to  
 vous †  
 sing.—When do you intend to go?—A man of honour ought to  
 Quand partir ind-1  
 keep his word.—I hope to see you often.—I will show you  
 parole f. faire voir  
 all the curiosities of the town.—He appeared to hesitate, but  
 curiosité f. ind-2  
 we encouraged him.—My sister wishes very much to go to  
 ind-3  
 France.—It is better to work than to beg.—Caesar ordered  
 mendier. ind-3  
 Labienus to come and join him.—She will not stay.  
 à 542 (IV.) \* rester.

REMARKS ON THE APPLICATION OF RULES  
 Nos. 538 to 543.

544. The latter of two verbs may be used in the  
 INFINITIVE present or past—

(a) When the second verb has the same subject as the first, whether  
 a preposition is or is not required; as,

JE crois le VOIR.

Je pense l'AVOIR VU.

ILS crurent ENTENDRE des cris.

J'aime À ENTENDRE sa voix.

I think I see him.

I think I have seen him.

They thought they heard cries.

I like to hear his voice.

(b) When the second verb has for its subject the object (direct or  
 indirect) of the first verb, whether or not a preposition is required, and  
 whether the object is expressed or understood; as,

Votre père n'aime pas à voir CET

ENFANT COURIR dans la rue.

La pluie m'a empêché DE SORTIR.

La chanson que j'ai entendu  
 CHANTER est belle.

Your father does not like to see  
 that child run in the street.

The rain prevented me from going  
 out.

The song I heard sung is beau-  
 tiful.

N.B.—In the latter sentence, the object *quelqu'un* is understood: *La chanson*  
*que j'ai entendu QUELQU'UN chanter, &c.*

Cela ne L'empêche pas D'AVOIR  
 RÉUSSI.

J'ai dit À VOTRE AMI D'ENTRER.

That does not prevent his having  
 succeeded.

I told your friend to come in.

(c) After ÊTRE used impersonally, and after the impersonal verbs *il*  
*convient, il faut, il importe, il sied, il messied, &c.* :—

ER.	It is useless to insist.
E.	It is proper to wait.
A.	It would be necessary to continue.
maison.	He must sell his house.
maison.	We must sell him the house.
ÉRI à son	It becomes a son to obey his father.
ne de bien	It is not becoming in an upright
t.	man to fear death.

repositions POUR, AFIN DE, AVANT DE, can be used only when the two verbs act :—

lui rien	They sent him away without giving him anything.
PLAIRE.	I did it in order to please you.
ACQUÉRIR	He works in order to acquire wealth.
e avant de	They finished their exercise before they set out.

bs have not the same subject, QUE is added to *fin, avant, sans*, and the second verb is put in

QU'IL eût	They sent him away without his having obtained anything.
sache.	I say it in order that he may know it.
ettre AFIN	He sent me this letter in order that I should deliver it to you.
te.	
AVANT QUE	They had gone before I wrote.

ÈS follows the same rules as those mentioned e, but it requires the past infinitive, or (when the compound tenses of the indicative :—

INÉ.	He went out after he had dined.
PRÈS qu'il	We only dined after he had arrived.
ses bijoux	She will show you her jewels
frère sera	after your brother shall have come home.

(*present participle* used with EN) represents performing two actions at the same when so employed, cannot refer to the

PROMENANT (she was reading while walking).

rticiple may be used *without* EN in reference

*Nous avons vu des HOMMES CHAS-* | We saw some men shooting on  
*SANT sur votre propriété.* | your estate.

(b) In this case the present participle might be replaced by the infinitive (see 544(b)): *Nous avons vu des hommes CHASSER sur votre propriété.*

## EXERCISE CCXIV. (SECOND PART.)

I wish to know the cause of all this noise. — Edward  
*vouloir* 543 *savoir* — f. *bruit* m. *Édouard*  
 has promised us (he would) come back soon. — We hope  
*ind-4* 468 (b) 544 (a) *de revenir bientôt.* *espérer*  
 (we shall not be) late. — Do you think you understand  
 543-153 (c) *en retard* *croire* *comprendre*  
 these rules? — No, I do not think I understand them  
*règle* *Non,* 153 *croire* \* 2 1  
 perfectly. — It is useless to repeat constantly the same  
*parfaitement* *inutile* † *répéter sans cesse*  
 thing. — Are you sure you saw the same men the other  
*chose* f. m. s. *sûr d'* inf-2  
 day? — Martha does not like to see her brothers run amongst  
*Marthe* *à voir* *courir parmi*  
 her flowers. — Nothing will prevent me going to see them. —  
*fleur* 124 (b) 2 *empêcher d'* 1 m' inf-1 543 467  
 It will be necessary to gather the cherries. — They punished  
*falloir* \* *cueillir* *cerise* *On* ind-4  
 him without telling him why. — He composed this  
 467 *sans* 545 468 (b) *pourquoi* *composer* ind-4  
 little play (in order to) amuse his children. — I had read  
*comédie* f. *pour* *amuser* *enfant* ind-6  
 his letter before I left. — Your nieces had gone before  
*avant de* \* *partir* *nièce* *partir* ind-6 *avant que*  
 (I had returned home). — They (came back) to England after  
 m. *rentrer* subj-4 m. *revenir* ind-3 *en Angleterre après*  
 having travelled for five years. — We were singing while  
 545 (b) *voyager pendant* *ans.* *chanter* *en*  
 working. — I met the farmers leading their horses  
*travailler* *rencontrer* ind-4 *fermier conduire* *cheval*  
 to market. — We heard your sisters sing this duet  
*art. marché* m. ind-4 *duo* m.  
 (a fortnight ago).  
*il y a quinze jours*

† See Rule 447 (a).

re an infinitive, is expressed by *POUR*, meaning is *in order to* (whether ex-  
od):—

<p><i>ingratitude</i> DER TO be</p>	<p>Nous sommes réunis ici <i>POUR</i> le complimenter. Parlez plus haut <i>POUR</i> être en- tendu de tous.</p>
---	---

o say: *AFIN DE le complimenter; AFIN D'être*

nt participle, preceded by the preposition *FOR*,  
pressed in French by the PAST INFINITIVE pre-  
is sentence:—

VOIR MENTI (he was expelled for telling lies).  
*sent Infinitive* is sometimes used with the same

<p>OUR AVOIR —LITTRÉ.</p>	<p>More to oblige her than because I want her.</p>
-------------------------------	--

# EXERCISE CCXV.

to deceive me.—He will do anything to  
*tout*

going to write to you to ask a favour of  
52 (2) *grâce f.*

money to buy a horse.—I have not <sup>2</sup>money

—I shall do it *in order* not to displease you.  
*déplaire*

could) to gain his friendship.—He was  
*a possible* ind-3

for having robbed on the highway.  
*voler* *grand chemin.*

observe that after verbs of motion (*aller, venir, courir, mener, retourner, &c.*) the infinitive is very often used  
*POUR* (OR *AFIN DE*) is then understood: *Allez mettre vos*  
*re* (go and put on your gloves); *vous reviendrez me*  
*re, vous reviendrez (pour) me dire, &c.* (you will come  
have seen).—It may happen, however, that by ex-  
e sense is somewhat modified. Thus: *Je viens voir*  
(I come to see Edmund by his invitation); *je viens*  
*ne sais pas s'il est chez lui* (I come *expressly* to see  
w whether he is at home). The use of the preposi-  
*intention* of the agent without implying its actual

## § IV. MOODS AND TENSES.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

548. The INDICATIVE mood simply declares a thing ; as, *Elle CHANTE bien*, she sings well ; or it asks a question ; as, *CHANTE-t-elle bien ?* does she sing well ? This mood has eight tenses—the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *preterite definite*, the *preterite indefinite*, the *preterite anterior*, the *pluperfect*, the *future absolute* (or *simple*), and the *future anterior*.

(a) The PRESENT tense expresses something doing or existing at the present time ; as, *J'écris*, I am writing ; *Nous sommes*, we are. It is also used to express a *habit* or *custom* ; as, *Il fume*, he smokes.

(b) In historical narration, the *present* tense is used for the *past*, in order to awaken the attention, and make the thing, as it were, present ; as,

César quitte la Gaule, passe le Rubicon, et entre en Italie avec cinq mille hommes.	César leaves Gaul, crosses the Rubicon, and enters Italy with five thousand men.
---	--

(c) The *present* is also sometimes used to express a *future* near at hand ; as,

Je SUIS de retour dans un moment. Où ALLEZ-VOUS ce soir ?	I shall be back in a moment. Where are you going this evening ?
--	--

549. *N.B.*—In English there are three different ways of expressing the PRESENT : *I speak, I do speak, I am speaking* ; but in French there is only one way, *Je parle*. There is likewise but one expression in French for any other tense, when the verb *to be* is used with the present participle ; thus, *I shall be writing*, must be rendered by *j'écrirai*, and *I should be doing* by *je ferais*. The verb which is in the present participle is thus put in the tense expressed by the auxiliary *to be*. (Refer to No. 157.)

## EXERCISE CCXVI.

My sister is in her room, where she is reading the celebrated  
où

discourse of Bossuet on Universal History.—Everybody  
discours m. art. 2 1

thinks that either <sup>2</sup>your <sup>4</sup>brother <sup>2</sup>or <sup>1</sup>you have written that  
penser \*

ins in Egypt.—Seamen *smoke* a great deal.  
*en marin beaucoup.*

and immediately a cloud of arrows  
*aussitôt nuée f. trait m.*

l covers the combatants.—I shall be with  
*à*

I set out to-morrow for the country.  
*partir*

ECT (*je parlais*, I was speaking, I spoke,  
 to speak) expresses a thing having been  
 t that another took place; as,

quand vous | I was thinking of you, when you  
*came in.*

ect is also used when we wish to denote  
 which we speak was *habitual*, or has been

je me PRO- | When I was in Paris, I generally  
 ent dans les | walked in the Champs-Élysées.

uvent des | I often met Englishmen there.

e *Imperfect* is used in describing the  
 or things, the *state*, *place*, and *disposi-*  
 were in a *time past*, but without fixing  
 tion; as,

i. | Alfred was a great king.  
 d de la mer. | Carthage was on the sea-coast.

lent may sometimes be in doubt whether such  
 e, are to be translated by the French *Imperfect*  
*nite*. If the context will allow these expressions  
 to speak, I used to write, or into I was speak-  
 IMPERFECT is to be used in French.

## EXERCISE CCXVII.

d over the Mexicans, when Fernando  
*r lorsque Fernand-*  
 ico.—Socrates, wishing to harden himself,  
*s'endurcir*

the depth of winter.—In <sup>2</sup>ancient <sup>1</sup>times  
*plus fort ancien*

those who *were* taken in war *lost* their liberty and *became* slaves.  
à devenir

—Among the Romans, the plebeians *attached* themselves, under  
Chez plébéien s'

the name of clients, to some patrician whom they *called* their  
— quelque patricien

patron.—The temple of Delphi *had* for an inscription this  
Delphes \*

maxim : KNOW THYSELF. — The pyramids of Egypt *were*  
Connais-toi toi-même.

intended as burying-places for the kings.  
destiner à art. sépulture f. s. de

554. The PRETERITE DEFINITE, also called the HISTORICAL TENSE (*il chanta, elles revinrent*), serves to express something done at a time completely past, and of which no part remains unexpired : the time may be expressed or understood, but cannot be part of the period at which the action is mentioned. The *Preterite Definite* must NOT be used, therefore, when speaking of anything done during the present day, week, month, year, &c. :—

*Guillaume le Conquérant* PRIT la  
ville de Mantes et la réduisit  
en cendres.

Ils ARRIVÈRENT bientôt au pied  
d'une montagne.

Les Normands DÉBARQUÈRENT à  
Pevensey le 28 septembre 1066.

William the Conqueror *took* the  
town of Mantes and *reduced* it  
to ashes.

They soon *reached* the foot of a  
mountain.

The Normans *landed* at Pevensey  
on the 28th September 1066.

555. As the events related in history are considered as facts completed in a time entirely elapsed, the *Preterite Definite* is principally used in that style ; as,

Les Juifs quittèrent l'Égypte  
sous la conduite de Moïse.

The Jews left Egypt under the  
conduct of Moses.

#### EXERCISE CCXVIII.

Amenophis *conceived* the design of making his son a  
dessein m. inf-1 de

conqueror. He *set about* it after the manner of the Egyptians,  
conquérant s'y prendre à manière f.

ideas. All the children who were† born  
*pensée f.* \* \* (585)  
 Sesostris, *were* brought to court, by order  
*amener art. cour f.*  
 them educated as his own children, and  
*élever inf-l*  
 as Sesostris. When he *was* grown up,  
*l. que* *grand*  
 his apprenticeship in a war against the  
*apprentissage m. par*  
 prince *learned* there to bear hunger  
*y supporter faim f.*  
 subdued that nation, till then invincible.  
*mettre jusqu'*  
 sacked Libya, and conquered it.  
*Libye f.*

## EXERCISE CCXIX.

esses, Sesostris *formed* the project of  
*ccès m.*  
 whole world. In consequence of this,  
*entier En* \* \*  
 opia, which he *rendered* tributary. He  
*opie se rendre*  
 s in Asia. Jerusalem *was* the first to feel  
*Jérusalem f.* à  
 rms : the rash Rehoboam *could* not  
*rme f. téméraire Roboam*  
 stris *carried away* the riches of Solomon.  
*enlever richesse pl. Salomon.*  
 the Indies farther than Alexander *did*  
*Indes ne*  
 ythians obeyed him as far as the Tanais :  
*scythe lui jusqu'à Tanais*  
 locia *were* subject to him. In a word,  
*doce f. soumises En mot m.*  
 re from the Ganges to the Danube.  
*m. depuis Gange m. jusqu'à*

metimes the other *personal* tenses of *être* preceded by  
 often left out before a past participle, to give more  
*la lettre, PARTIE à quatre heures* (i.e., *qui était partie*)  
 e at four o'clock); *ARRIVÉS à l'hôtel, &c.* (i.e., *Étant*  
 the hotel, &c.) † (Rule 375).



556. The PRETERITE INDEFINITE (*j'ai parlé*) is the past tense most used in French.

(1st) It expresses something done during a past portion of the time (*day, week, month, year, &c.*) in which we are when speaking.

(2nd) In familiar correspondence and ordinary conversation, the *Preterite Indefinite* is also used in reference to events that have occurred *recently*, although during a period entirely over, such as *hier* (yesterday), *la semaine dernière* (last week), *l'année dernière* (last year), &c.

1. J'AI REÇU *cette semaine la visite de monsieur votre père.*

I have this week received a visit from your father.

2. J'AI RENCONTRÉ *mademoiselle votre sœur hier au Bois de Boulogne.*

I met your sister yesterday in the Bois de Boulogne.

Nous les AVONS VUS *le mois dernier.*

We saw them last month.

⚡ This use of the *Preterite Indefinite* for recent events has become quite general, and tends to supersede that of the *Preterite Definite*, which in such instances would sound affected.—*Le Vicomte de Launay, Lettres parisiennes, 1844, Lettre X. (M<sup>ME</sup>. EMILE DE GIRARDIN).*

557. (1) The *Preterite Indefinite* is also used in speaking of an action having occurred in a time *not specified*, or in mentioning *definite* past action but *indeterminate* time; as,

J'AI VENDU *mon cheval.*

I have sold my horse.

AVEZ-VOUS VOYAGÉ *en Allemagne?*

Have you travelled in Germany.

(2) ⚡ The English use the compound PAST tense whilst the French use the PRESENT tense to express an action or state still going on at the time it is mentioned; as,

*Have you been long here?*

Y a-t-il longtemps que vous ÊTES ici?

*I have been waiting for you these two hours.*

Voilà deux heures que je vous ATTENDS.

(3) The *Preterite Indefinite* is sometimes used instead of the *future*; as,

Attendez, j'AI FINI *dans un moment—i.e., j'aurai fini.*

Wait, I shall have done in a moment.

558. The PRETERITE ANTERIOR (*j'eus parlé*) denotes a thing past and done before another also past, and is, for this reason, called *anterior*. It is used when the two actions expressed by the verbs depend upon one another, and is generally preceded by a conjunction, or an adverb of time, such as *quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que*; as,

Quand j'EUS RECONNU mon erreur, j'en fus honteux.

When I had seen my error, I was ashamed of it.

Note.—There is another *preterite*, called the *preterite anterior indefinite*: *J'ai eu parlé, tu as eu parlé, &c.*, but it is little used.

PERFECT (*j'avais parlé*) represents a thing  
 another event happened, when the actions  
 verbs *do not* depend on one another; as,  
 and il entra (*I had dined when he came in*).

the Imperfect, serves to describe, and to express  
 custom; as,

*né j'allais à* | *As soon as I had dined, I went*  
*fishing.*

ct is used in French in cases in which the English  
 show that an action or a state *had been going on*  
 mentioned in the sentence; as,

*ing two hours* | *Nous ATTENDIONS depuis deux*  
*heures quand il est arrivé.*

## EXERCISE CCXX.

house) this morning; I *saw* your brother,  
*ous*

—We *have written* to him to-day. — The  
*aujourd'hui.*

*egan* on the first day of the year 1801, and  
 \* *année f.*

st day of the year 1900.—He *resided* six  
*demeurer*

—When I *had done* that, I set out.—I *had*  
*partir*

when he arrived. — During his stay in  
 556 (2) *Pendant séjour m. à*

a as he *had breakfasted*, he went hunting.—We

last month.—I (*have been living*) here  
 2 art. 1 2 *demeurer* 557 (2)

— (*Had you been waiting long*)  
*Y avait-il longtemps que vous attendre* (550)

arrived?

556 (2)

URE ABSOLUTE (*je parlerai*, I shall or will  
 the action as yet to come; as, *Je vous*  
 write to you.

UTURE ANTERIOR (*j'aurai parlé*) intimates  
 be done before another takes place; as,

thème avant | I shall have finished *my exercise*  
*before your return.*

(b) The FUTURE ANTERIOR is also often used in French to express a *surmise*, instead of the Perfect Indicative, which is employed in English. Example:—

*J'aurai mal compris sa lettre ; je vais la relire.* | *I have probably misunderstood his letter ; I will read it over again.*

\*.\* This form does not affirm positively ; the affirmation is reserved till the certainty of the fact is beyond doubt.

562. *N.B.*—The English often use the *present* tense after *when, as soon as, after*, or similar words, when they want to express a thing to come : the FUTURE, however, must always be used in French ; as,

*Passez chez moi, quand vous serez prêt.* | *Call on me when you are ready.*

#### CONDITIONAL MOOD.

563. The CONDITIONAL mood has two tenses, the *present* and the *past*.

564. The *Conditional present* (*je parlerais*, I should or would speak) expresses that a thing would be done on a certain condition ; as,


*J'IRAIS avec vous si j'avais le temps.* | *I would go with you if I had time.*

565. The *Conditional past* (*j'aurais parlé*, or *j'eusse parlé*†) expresses that a thing *might, could, would, or should*, have happened, at a time now past, if another thing had taken place ; as,

*Le ministre lui AURAIT DONNÉ cette place, s'il l'avait demandée.* | *The minister would have given him that place, if he had asked for it.*

566. REMARKS.—(a) When *si* (if) signifies *supposé que* (suppose that), the French use the present indicative instead of the future, and the imperfect instead of the conditional ; as,

*J'irai demain à la campagne, s'IL FAIT beau.* | *I shall go to the country to-morrow, if it be fine weather.*  
*SI J'ALLAIS en France, je vous en préviendrais.* | *If I should go to France, I will let you know.*

(b)  But if *si* expresses indecision (*whether*), the *future* or the *conditional* (as the case may be) must be used ; as,

† Some writers often use this form, but the student will do well to follow the first.

à la cam-	I do not know <i>whether</i> I shall go into the country to-morrow.
NTIRAIT au	Do you know <i>whether</i> he would consent to his daughter's marriage?
vous la RE-	She wished to see <i>whether</i> you would recognise her.

nal (*Present* or *Past*, as the case may be)  
in French when the speaker or writer  
wishes to vouch for the truth or accuracy  
makes. Examples:—

ouvelles, on	According to the latest news, a
ngement de	change of ministry is to be ex-
	pected.
si, la guerre	If what they say is true, war has
	already been declared.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

IMPERATIVE mood commands, exhorts, en-  
It has only one tense.

### EXERCISE CCXXI.

rou till six o'clock.—*When I have done,*  
*jusqu'à heure*

ll call on you, as soon as I have dined.—  
*passer chez aussitôt que*

uld.—I should have found him (at home),  
*chez lui*

little sooner.—*If he should come, what*  
*plus tôt.*

n?—Do good, if you wish to be  
*art. bien m. vouloir*

you wish that your memory should be  
*subj-1*

if you wish that heaven should open to  
*art. subj-1*

es.—Do you know *whether* this discourse  
*discours m.*

He (*has probably been*) ill in the night,  
*561 (b) malade cette nuit*

yet.—According to the London  
*encore D'après Londres 419 (1)*

shah of Persia *will arrive* to-morrow.—  
*ah 377 (2) Perse 566 (c)*

If (I am to believe) what I was told yesterday in Paris, <sup>Mr D.</sup>  
*J'en crois*                      *on m'a* 299                      361  
 fell from his horse on Monday last and broke his leg.  
 566 (c)                      \*                      77 (2)                      †                      art. *jambe* f.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

568. The INDICATIVE is the *mood* of affirmation, and the SUBJUNCTIVE that of doubt and indecision. Both these moods, and also the CONDITIONAL, in their various tenses, are used in subordinate or completive clauses. Examples :

<i>Je maintiens que vous AVEZ raison.</i>	I maintain that you are right.
<i>Je veux qu'il PARTE maintenant.</i>	I desire him to go now.
<i>Jepense qu'elle vous PARDONNERAIT.</i>	I think she would forgive you.
<i>Il dit que vous l'AVEZ INSULTÉ.</i>	He says you insulted him.
<i>Il faut qu'ils AIENT ÉTUDIÉ sérieusement.</i>	They must have studied in earnest.
<i>Charles dit qu'il VIENDRA demain.</i>	Charles says he will come to-morrow.

569. (I.) The SUBJUNCTIVE is used after verbs expressing fear, doubt, wish or will, command, consent, prohibition, surprise, impediment, regret, joy, sorrow, necessity, indignation, displeasure, preference, liking, denial, and dubitable interrogation ; because then those verbs denote nothing affirmative, nothing positive with regard to the following verb. Examples :—

Il craint, il veut, il désire, il s'étonne, il regrette, il est content, il s'indigne	} que nous sortions. que vous y alliez.	<i>He is afraid, he wishes, he desires, he wonders, he regrets, he is pleased, he is indignant</i>	} that we should go out. that you should go there.
Il commande, il défend, il préfère, or il aime mieux		<i>He commands, he forbids, he prefers</i>	
(?) Pourquoi ne veut-il pas	}	(?) <i>Why does he not wish</i>	} you to go there.

570. (II.) The SUBJUNCTIVE is used after a verb employed negatively or interrogatively, provided there is doubt or uncertainty on the part of the speaker ; as,

<i>Croyez-vous qu'il VIENNE ?</i>	Do you think he will come ?
<i>Je ne crois pas qu'il VIENNE.</i>	I do not think he will come.

*Note.*—Of course it would be perfectly correct to say : *Croyez-vous qu'il VIENDRA d'aussi bonne heure qu'hier ?* (do you think he will come as early as he did yesterday ?), because there would not be any doubt implied about his coming, but only a question as to the time of his arrival. (See 571 (a).)

—Sometimes an interrogation is used deny with more energy. In this case, put in the *Indicative*, because there is no doubt; as,

Les Limousins | *Do you think that the Limousins are blockheads?*

*Are you simple enough to believe that, &c.*

From what precedes, that, if there is no uncertainty, use the *Indicative* or the *Conditional* (as the case may be)

que Berthe | You do not say that Bertha is coming back to-morrow.

d'un discours | Do you not think that there would  
sière AURAIT | be a noble and amiable simplicity  
de simplicité? | in a discourse made in that way?

considérer, réfléchir, the assertion is always positive, whether affirmative, negative, or interrogative, so that use either in the *Indicative* or in the *Conditional*.

la chose EST | Do you consider that the matter is a very difficult one?

il se PERD. | He does not reflect that he is ruining himself.

est que vous | Do they even think that you would punish them?—i.e., they DO NOT, &c.

The Subjunctive is used after impersonal verbs (used impersonally) which express *apprehension, doubt, &c.* (or any of the feelings mentioned in § 9)—also after CE with *être* followed by a noun with the conjunction QUE, and used with the personal pronoun IL. Examples:—

Il faut que | *It is proper that he should come.*  
qu'il SOYEZ. | *It is of importance that you should be there.*

Il faut que | *I must go (188 b).*  
qu'ils SOIENT par- | *It is unfortunate they left so hurriedly.*

Il est bon que | *It is a good thing that this should have happened.*

Il est pitié que | *Is it not a pity that George should be so obstinate?*

Il est étonnant que | *It is a wonder he extricated himself so easily from there.*

—*Il semble*, accompanied by a personal pronoun, forms an indirect regimen, *il est certain, clair,*

*évident, &c.* ; *il y a, il paraît, il résulte, &c.*, and similar impersonal verbs which express certainty or probability, require the INDICATIVE. Examples :—

*Il me semble qu'il a raison.*

It seems to me that he is right.

*Il vous semble que cela est vrai.*

It seems to you that that is true.

*Il paraît } que nous sommes*

It appears } that we are

*Il est clair, &c. } battu.*

It is clear, &c. } beaten.

(a) If, however, the impersonal verbs are accompanied by a *negation* or preceded by the conjunction *si*, which gives them an expression of *doubt*, or if they are used *interrogatively*, they require the SUBJUNCTIVE (according to Rule 570). Examples :—

*Il ne résulte pas de là que j'aie tort.*

It does not follow therefrom that I am wrong.

*Il n'arrive pas toujours qu'ils soient contents.*

It does not always happen that they are satisfied.

*Était-il certain que l'ennemi eût été battu ?*

Was it certain that the enemy had been beaten ?

*S'il vous semble que cela soit.*

If it seems to you that it is so.

(b) *Il semble* (although used without a personal pronoun) has sometimes the force of *on dirait*, and in this case requires the *Indicative* :—

*Il semble qu'ils veulent regagner par les censures ce qu'ils perdent par la soumission.*—(MASSILLON.)

One would think they wish to make up in reprimands for what they lose by submission.

#### EXERCISE CCXXII.

*I tremble lest he should come.*—*I wish you may succeed.*—  
qu' ne souhaiter

*I consent that you do it.*—*Do you think it will rain to-day ?*—  
croire

*I do not think it will rain much.*—*Although the wicked*  
Quoique

*sometimes prosper, do not think that they are happy.*—  
penser

*Do you believe that the guilty man sleeps tranquilly, and*  
coupable \* tranquille

*that he can stifle the remorse with which he is racked ?*—  
étouffer remords pl. dont déchirer

*It is enough that you order me.*—*I think I see him.*  
suffire commander Il me semble

*—It often happens that we are deceived.*  
arriver on

574. (IV.) The Subjunctive is used WHEN WE WISH TO IMPLY SOME DOUBT OR UNCERTAINTY, after the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont, où, &c.*, whether used by themselves, or followed by *peu*, or by an adjective in the *super-*

ree. Among such adjectives are included *le premier, le dernier* ; as,

<i>qui</i> me RENDE	<i>I seek some one who may render me that service.</i>
<i>que</i> je PUISSE	<i>I solicit a place which I may be able to fill.</i>
<i>où</i> je SOIS	<i>I shall retire to a place where I may be quiet.</i>
<i>qui</i> SACHENT	<i>There are few men who can bear adversity.</i>
<i>à</i> vous	<i>It is the only place to which you can aspire.</i>
<i>que</i> qu'un roi	<i>The best retinue that a king can have is the love of his subjects.</i>
<i>et</i> le cœur de	

*Indicative* is used after the relative pronoun, *où*, &c., or after a *superlative relative*, as *le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier*, &c. *POSITIVE, CERTAIN* ; as,

<i>un</i> qui me	<i>I have found some one who will render me that service.</i>
<i>que</i> je PUIS	<i>I have obtained a place which I am able to fill.</i>
<i>argent</i> seul ne	<i>The only thing which money alone cannot do.</i>
(MONTESQUIEU.)	
<i>le</i> prix que me	<i>But this was nothing to what her rage kept in reserve for me.</i>
(RACINE.)	

Examples show that the change of mood completely Again, if I say, *C'est l'homme LE PLUS riche QUE je vois*, I mean that there is not a richer man to my view. *C'est LE PLUS riche QUE je CONNAIS* (*indicative*), I know one of them, and he is the richest.

*Subjunctive* is required after *quel que, quelque, qui, que, quoi, que* ; as,

<i>quels</i> talents.	<i>Whatever your talents may be.</i>
<i>quels</i> SOYEZ.	<i>However rich you may be.</i>
<i>qui</i> , parlez.	<i>Whoever you be, speak.</i>
<i>un</i> ânon ne deviendra qu'un âne.—(GROZELIER.)	

(See Rules on *Quelque*, p. 48.)

*Subjunctive* is required after certain conjunctions. Chapter VIII.

# EXERCISE CCXXIII.

man who lives in that manner.—The example  
*de la sorte.*

is the best lesson that one can give to  
*on*





ent, and the *Pluperfect* instead of the  
condition is expressed after the second

que vous *étudiassiez* maintenant, demain,  
si l'on ne vous y contraignait.

*t, whether you would study now, to-morrow,  
were not compelled so to do.)*

que vous *eussiez étudié* hier, si l'on ne vous  
y eût contraint.

*t, whether you would have studied yesterday  
had not been compelled so to do.)*

*perfect* of the Subjunctive is also used  
and future of the Indicative, when the  
relating to a time past, represents the  
t it took place ; as,

since <i>vécût</i> poque que tez.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} I \text{ do not} \\ \text{assert} \\ I \text{ will not} \\ \text{assert} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>that this monarch was living at the period you mention.</i>
---	---	--

#### EXERCISE CCXXIV.

*I am your friend ?—Does he think I shall*

*t think you have learned* mathematics.  
art.

*you are ready. — She will wish* your  
*vouloir que*

*e party.—I shall always doubt that you*  
*partie f.*

*deavours.—Do you think I might speak*  
*effort m.* *pouvoir*

*go now ?—I doubt whether my brother*  
*2* *que*

*had it not been for) your assistance.*  
*sans*

After the Imperfect, the Pluperfect, or  
reterites or Conditionals, we use the  
subjunctive, if we mean to express some-  
*occurred yet ;* but to express a thing  
the *Pluperfect* :—

Je voulais	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{qu'il restât au-} \\ \text{jourd'hui (PRES.)} \\ \text{qu'il payât dès} \\ \text{demain (FUT.)} \\ \text{qu'il fût parti la} \\ \text{semaine dernière} \\ \text{(PAST).} \end{array} \right.$	I was wishing	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that he might stay} \\ \text{to-day.} \\ \text{that he should pay} \\ \text{no later than to-} \\ \text{morrow.} \\ \text{that he should} \\ \text{have left last} \\ \text{week.} \end{array} \right.$
Je voulais		I wished	
J'ai voulu		I have wished	
J'avais voulu		I had wished	
Je voudrais		I should wish	
J'aurais voulu		I should have wished	

(a) Although the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Subjunctive should be used in the cases and after the tenses mentioned above, yet, if the first verb is in the *Preterite Indefinite of the Indicative* and followed by the conjunctions *afin que, pour que, de crainte que, de peur que, quoique, bien que, encore que*, the second verb must be in the **PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**, when the action it expresses is to take place at some *future time*; as in,

Je lui AI ÉCRIT aujourd'hui POUR QU'IL REÇOIVE ma lettre demain.	I wrote to him to-day in order that he may receive my letter to- morrow.
J'AI RÉSOLU de le faire QUOIQUE Julie REVIENT lundi prochain.	I have resolved to do it although Julia will return on Monday next.

(b) *N.B.*—According to LITTRÉ, when the verb of the principal clause, although in the conditional, does not express a condition, but merely a *wish, a desire*, the **PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE** is preferable:—

Je voudrais QU'IL VIENNE, OR QU'IL VINT.	I wish he would come.
Il me serait agréable QUE CELA SE FASSE, OR SE FÎT.	It would please me if that were done.
Je désirerais QUE VOUS PASSIEZ chez moi—not passassiez.	I should like you to call at my house.

581. REMARKS.—(a) When we intend to express a permanent fact, a thing which is or may be done at all times, we use the **PRESENT** of the **SUBJUNCTIVE**, whatever may be the tense of the principal verb; as,

Dieu A ENTOURÉ les yeux de tuni- ques fort minces, transparentes au dehors, afin que l'on PUISSE voir à travers.	God has surrounded the eyes with very thin films, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them.
---	--

(b) The **PRETERITE** of the **SUBJUNCTIVE** is used when we wish to express something past, even when the principal verb is in the *Present* or in the *Future Indicative*; as,

Je doute qu'ils AIENT RÉUSSI.	I doubt whether they have suc- ceeded.
Je ne croirai jamais qu'ils AIENT REÇU ma lettre.	I shall never believe that they have received my letter.
Il a fallu qu'il se SOIT DONNÉ bien de la peine.	He must have given himself a great deal of trouble.

## EXERCISE CCXXV.

Will I should be ready.—*Would* you wait till  
*que*

—Sparta was sober before Socrates  
*Sparte avant que*

; before he had praised virtue, Greece  
*avant qu'*

as men.—William III. left, at his death,  
*laisser*

great politician, although he had not been  
*politique*

general (to be feared), although he had lost  
*à craindre,*

must have had (a great deal) of patience.  
*a fallu beaucoup*

## THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

*at Participle* always terminates in *ant*,

les hommes | *A man* reading ; *men* reading.

des femmes | *A woman* reading ; *women* read-  
*ing.*

ants ; une | Obliging *men* ; a charming wo-  
*man.*

ants, *charmante*, are not here present participles ;  
*es.*

rbal adjectives those adjectives which  
 verbs ; as, *charmant*, *menaçant*, &c.  
 ways agree in gender and number with  
 they qualify.

simply expresses a *quality* ; the present parti-  
*n.*

—Although certain French present parti-  
 cles to designate persons and things, as  
 volant ; *un volant*, a shuttlecock ; *des*  
 combattants, &c. ; yet *present participles*  
 are never used substantively in French,  
 as in English.

(a) In such cases the English present participle should be expressed in French either by a noun, as in

Le jeu et la chasse sont la ruine de bien des gens.		Gaming and hunting are the ruin of many people.
--	--	--

(b) Or, if a noun cannot be used, by an infinitive,† or by a verb in a personal mood, as in

Je le vois venir à nous.		I see him coming towards us.
Ils iront sans que vous le leur disiez.		They will go without your telling them.

#### EXERCISE CCXXVI.

David <sup>1</sup>is <sup>2</sup>often <sup>3</sup>represented *playing* on the harp.—She is  
on ind-1 de  
a woman of a good disposition, *obliging* her friends, whenever  
caractère m. quand  
an occasion (presents itself.)—Those men *foreseeing* the danger,  
† s'en présente. prévoir  
put themselves on their guard.—Those *foreseeing* men have  
pl.  
perceived the danger.—The *ruling* passion of Cæsar was  
apercevoir dominant  
ambition.—Your sister is *charming*; how *obliging* she is!—  
que  
Her *singing* was much admired.  
chant m. ind-3 fort

#### § II. OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

585. (I.) The *Past Participle* employed without an auxiliary, agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number, with the noun or pronoun to which it relates; as,

Les méchants ont bien de la peine à demeurer UNIS.—(FÉNELON.)		The wicked have much difficulty in remaining united.
Que de remparts DÉTRUITS! que de villes FORCÉES!—(BOILEAU.)		How many destroyed ramparts! how many ransacked cities!

(a) ~~As~~ The past participles *approuvé, certifié, inclus, joint, passé, vu,* &c., are excepted from this rule. When they precede the noun, they remain invariable, but agree with it if they come after:—

EXCEPTÉ la vertu } tout passe comme		Except virtue, everything passes
La vertu EXCEPTÉE } un songe.		away like a dream.

586. (II.) The *Past Participle*, accompanied by the auxiliary verb *être*, agrees with its subject or nominative in gender and number; as,

† Refer also to Rule 539 (b), page 297.

<i>venu.</i>	<i>My brother is come.</i>
<i>venue.</i>	<i>My sister is come.</i>
<i>venus.</i>	<i>My brothers are come.</i>
<i>venues.</i>	<i>My sisters are come.</i>
<i>vaincue.</i>	<i>The army has been conquered.</i>
<i>at été vaincus.</i>	<i>The enemies have been conquered.</i>

When the subject is placed after the participle, but this does not alter the agreement of the participle :—

<i>où étaient REN- dres d'Hippias, ent de larmes.—</i>	When he saw the urn in which were contained the ashes of Hippias, he shed a flood of tears.
--	--

Participles may be used as nouns in French, as they are in English in the singular, as *les accusés*, the accused ; *un mort*, a dead man ; *les blessés*, the wounded. They may also be used as nouns before inanimate objects, in which case they are of either gender, masculine or feminine : *l'entrée*, the entrance, *la sortie*, the exit, *un fait*, a fact, *des reçus*, receipts, *une*

When the *Past Participle* follows the verb, it agrees with its *subject* ; as,

<i>écrit.</i>	<i>My father has written.</i>
<i>écrite.</i>	<i>My mother has written.</i>
<i>écrit.</i>	<i>My brothers have written.</i>
<i>écrit.</i>	<i>My sisters have written.</i>

# EXERCISE CCXXVII.

The dog has always a *torn* ear.—The ceiling  
*l' déchirer* *plafond m.*

The temple was *painted* blue.—That letter is  
*en*

The city of London, having been *burnt* in  
*ville f.*

It has become in three years, more beautiful and more  
*an m.*

He was *persuaded* that the ancient Greeks were *persuaded* that  
*persuader*

It is to Jenner that <sup>2</sup>(the discovery of  
*découverte f.*

The French monarchy lasted more than  
435 78 f. *durer ind-4 plus de*

The Amazons have *acquired* celebrity.—  
*Amazone 32*

He executed the orders of Your Excellency.—

It never varies. We say *il* or *elle a été*, he or she has been ;  
they have been.

After six o'clock the bank will be closed. — The  
*Passé* 585 (a) *heures* *caisse* f. *fermé*

enclosed letter was addressed to me in error.

<sup>2</sup>*ci-joint* <sup>1</sup>*lettre* f. ind-4 *adressé* *par* 78.

§ To make a right application of the following rules, the student must distinguish well a *direct regimen* from an *indirect regimen*, for this is the pivot on which turn the principal difficulties of the *past participle*. For the meaning of *regimen*, see Nos. 528 to 532.

588. (IV.) The *Past Participle*, accompanied by the auxiliary *avoir*,† always agrees with its *direct regimen*, when that regimen is placed *before* the auxiliary; as,

La lettre *que* vous avez écrite.  
 Voici les lettres *que* j'ai reçues.

The letter which you have written.  
 Here are the letters which I have received.

Où est votre livre?—Je l'ai perdu.  
 Où est votre plume?—Je l'ai perdue.  
 Où sont vos livres?—Je les ai perdus.

Where is your book?—I have lost it.  
 Where is your pen?—I have lost it.  
 Where are your books?—I have lost them.

Ils m'ont félicité.

They have congratulated me.

Il nous a félicités.

He has congratulated us. [taken?]

Quelle affaire avez-vous entreprise?  
 Que de désagréments ils m'ont causés!

What business have you undertaken?  
 What vexations they have caused me!

Combien de livres avez-vous lus?

How many books have you read?

(a) These examples show that the direct regimen which precedes the participle is expressed either by one of these pronouns *que*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *me*, *nous*, *te*, *vous*, *se*, or by a noun preceded by *quel*, *que de*, or *combien de*.

In the first example *écrite* agrees with *que*, of which the antecedent is *lettre*, feminine and singular. In the fifth example, *perdus* agrees with *les*, which stands for its antecedent *livres*, masculine and plural.

(b) A lady would say: *Ils m'ont FÉLICITÉÉ* (they have congratulated me). *Félicitée* would then agree with *me* (fem. sing.) because representing a female speaker.

*The same analysis applies to the other and similar cases.*

(c) § Observe that the rule says *direct regimen*, for although we write, *Il nous a vus*, he has seen us; we could not write, *Il nous a DITS cela*, he has told us that; we must write *il nous a DIT cela*, because *nous* is here used for *à nous*, and is an *indirect regimen*.

† § The past participle of *avoir* when used as an auxiliary verb is invariable: *La fable que vous auriez eue apprise* (the fable which you would have had learnt). But the past participle of *avoir* as an active (or transitive) verb does agree: *Les choses qu'il a eues*—(ACAD.) (the things which he has had).

EXERCISE CCXXVIII.

answer which I have received.—The sciences  
*ponse f.* — f.

studied, will prove infinitely useful to you.—  
*être*

ars often said, that the two <sup>2</sup>(most lively)  
*vif*

1 *felt* in his life, had been the first  
ind-2 *ressentir* ind-2

had obtained at college, and the first victory  
ind-2

gained over the enemy.—Where is my  
*emporter*

not seen it.—They have *deceived* us.—What  
*tromper*

given you ?—How many enemies has he not  
*faire*

house which her father has bought.  
*que*

er the auxiliary *avoir*, the *Past Participle*  
le when the *direct regimen* is placed AFTER  
when there is no direct regimen :—

<i>otre lettre.</i>		<i>We have received your letter.</i>
<i>s livres.</i>		<i>They have lost their books.</i>
<i>es fils.</i>		<i>I have rewarded my sons.</i>

re takes place, because the direct regimens *votre*  
*es fils* are placed *after* the participles *reçu, perdu,*

.(a) It follows from the foregoing Rules  
the past participle of a *neuter* or *intransi-*  
ated with AVOIR, and that of an *active* or  
aving no direct object, never agree ; so we  
rying the participle :—


<i>é.</i>		<i>She laughed much.</i>
<i>notre attente.</i>		<i>We have sung.</i>
		<i>They have answered our expect-</i>
		<i>tation.</i>

the past participle of a neuter verb conjugated with  
d *répondu* having no direct object, cannot agree.

ned above, the past participle of neuter  
with *avoir* never varies, since that class of



verbs has no direct regimen. Thus in *Les cinq heures QUE j'ai DORMI* (the five hours that I have slept); *les dix ans QU'il a VÉCU* (the ten years that he has lived), the past participles *dormi*, *vécu* do not vary; and although the relative *que* which precedes them presents itself under the form of a direct object, it is in reality only an *indirect* object, having in English the force of *during which*—i.e., *Les cinq heures PENDANT LESQUELLES j'ai dormi*; *les dix ans PENDANT LESQUELS il a vécu*.†

(c)  *Coûter* (to cost) and *valoir* (to be worth) being neuter verbs conjugated with *avoir*, their past participle does not vary, and, although no preposition appears, they can only have an indirect object. So we write without agreement: *Ce cheval ne vaut pas les cinq cents francs qu'il vous a COÛTÉ*, et *il ne les a jamais valu* (this horse is not now, nor was it ever, worth the five hundred francs it cost you).

\*.\* It is easy to see that these two verbs (*coûter*, *valoir*) are intransitive, for they cannot be used in the passive voice.

(d) When *coûter* and *valoir* are used figuratively, in the sense of *causer*, *donner*, *procurer*, they are treated as active verbs, and their past participle agrees:—

*La gloire QUE ses exploits lui ont*  
VALUE—i.e., PROCURÉE.—(ACAD.)

The glory which his heroic deeds  
procured him.

*Il mérite surtout les pleurs QU'il m'a*  
COÛTÉS—i.e., CAUSÉS.—(VOLT.)

He deserves above all the tears  
which he caused me to shed.

(e) An *active* verb may be used *intransitively*, and then its past participle is treated accordingly. So we write—

*Les marchandises QUE j'ai PESÉES*  
*sont parties.*

The goods I have weighed are  
gone.

*Des soixante livres que cet enfant*  
*a PESÉ, il faut retrancher ce qu'il*  
*a perdu par sa maladie.*

From the 60 lb. which that child  
weighed (i.e., the weight of the  
child) must be deducted what he  
lost through his illness.

(f) Sometimes *neuter* verbs are employed *actively*, then their past participle agrees, if preceded by a direct regimen; as,

*La langue QUE Cicéron a PARLÉE* (the language which Cicero has spoken).

† The pronouns *le*, *la*, *les* are also sometimes used with similar verbs, and are then indirect objects expressing duration: *Les quelques années qu'il avait encore à vivre, il LES a vécu dans ce lieu sauvage*—i.e., *il a vécu PENDANT CES ANNÉES-LÀ*, &c. (during the few years that he had still to live, he lived in that wild spot).

## EXERCISE CCXXIX.

and no answer.—He has *named* several persons.  
*plusieurs*

governed England under the title of Protector.—  
 ind-4

reaped the fruit of happiness from the tree of  
*cueillir sur*

the Romans *triumphed* successively over the  
 ind-4 *successivement de*

nations.—They *danced* a great deal at the  
 f. ind-4

have *laughed* heartily. — We must deduct  
*de bon cœur. Il retrancher*

ours we have *slept*. — Where are the bags  
 on *sacs m.*

the porter has weighed?—From the seventy-  
*facteur pesé*

s which they weighed before (we must deduct)  
 m. ind-4 *auparavant il faut déduire*

es have eaten.—I cannot tell you all the  
*mangé. 267-543 pl.*

which this affair has caused.—Forty pounds!  
*affaire f. coûté livres*

no never was worth it.

— m. 153 *valoir ind-4 les*

The verb *être* being used instead of *avoir* in  
 reflected verbs, the participle of these verbs  
 the same rules as the participle conjugated  
 at is, the participle of a reflected verb agrees  
 regimen when preceded by it, but remains  
 in the direct regimen is placed after it, or  
 none. So we write with agreement—

nes <i>blessés</i> .		We have hurt ourselves.
te.		Lucretia killed herself.

participles *blessés, tuée*, are preceded by their direct

write without agreement—

onné la mort.		Lucretia destroyed herself.
---------------	--	-----------------------------

participle *donné* is followed by its direct regimen *la*  
 ample, *se* is an indirect regimen or dative, the French  
 literally: *Lucretia has given death to herself.*

(b) We write also without varying the participle—

Ils se sont écrit.

Nous nous sommes succédés.

| They have written to each other.

| We have succeeded one another.

Here the participles *écrit* and *succédés* have no direct regimen. It is as if it were: *Ils ont écrit à EUX: Nous avons succédé à NOUS.*

592. REMARKS.—(a) A number of verbs called *pronominal by nature* (see Rule 174) being but verbs (neuter in French) conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, their past participle *always agrees with the subject* in gender and number (according to Rule 586):—

*Nous nous sommes* ABSTENUS *de toute réflexion.*

*Mes amis, vous vous êtes* REPENTIS.

| We have abstained from all reflections.

| My friends, you have repented.

(b) The only exception to the above Rule among verbs *pronominal by nature* is *S'ARROGER* (to arrogate to one's self), which admits of a direct object:—

*Les privilèges qu'elle s'était* ARROGÉS *lui ont été retirés.*

| The privileges she had arrogated to herself have been taken away from her.

(c) Many active and neuter verbs are used *pronominally* with a meaning different from that which they have in the active or neuter voice, and their past participle follows Rule 592 (a) above. Such are—

*SE RIRE* (to make game of, to mock, to make light of), from *rire* (to laugh); *SE PLAINDRE* (to complain), from *plaindre* (to pity); *S'ATTAQUER* (to challenge, to set upon), from *attaquer* (to attack); *S'EN PRENDRE* (to find fault), from *prendre* (to take); *S'APERCEVOIR* (to notice, to observe, to descry), from *apercevoir* (to perceive); *SE TAIRE* (to be silent), from *taire* (to hush, to conceal); *SE PRÉVALOIR* (to profit by, to avail one's self), from *prévaloir* (to prevail); *SE DOUTER* (to surmise, to suspect), from *douter* (to doubt); *SE SAISIR* (to possess one's self), from *saisir* (to seize), &c., &c. Examples:—

*Elle s'est* DOUTÉE *de la fourberie.*

*Ils se sont* APERÇUS *du piège.*

*Elles s'en sont* PRISES *à vous.*

| She suspected the knavery.

| They descried the snare.

| They laid the blame on you.

[See also No. 537 (b), p. 296.]

#### EXERCISE CCXXX.

Madame de Sévigné *has rendered herself* celebrated by the  
*se rendre*

graces of her style.—She *perceived* herself in that glass.  
—m. *s'apercevoir* ind-4 *glace* f.

—Have your sisters subscribed to that review?—Have  
*s'abonner* *revue* f.

ceived the alterations made since their  
*recevoir de art. changement m. opéré depuis*

did the two agents (arrogate to themselves)  
 \* — m. 592 (b) ind-4

That lady has given herself fine dresses.—  
*robe f.*

our modern authors have imagined that they  
*s'imaginer*

cients.—They have spoken to one another.—  
*se parler*

ed one another.—Those boys have repented.—  
*se repentir*

seized the town.  
*s'emparer de*

the past participle of an *Impersonal* verb,  
 used *impersonally*, is always invariable :—


FAIT cet été.	The heat we have had this summer.
a EU l'hiver	The scarcity which there was last winter.
que je n'at-	There came a lady whom I did not expect.
anges choses.	Strange things have occurred here.
s instructions	The necessary instructions shall be given him.

st two examples above, the verbs *faire* and *avoir*  
 re signification, but simply express existence, and  
 les is not the object of any verb, for we do not say  
 we say *faire des pâtés* (to make pies). *Que* in this  
 s must be considered a *gallicism*.

The *Past Participle*, followed by an infinitive,  
 the antecedent noun, when that noun is  
 object of the participle, but it remains in-  
 e noun is the object of the infinitive ; as,

ai DONNÉE à	The letter which I have given him to copy.
ui ai DIT de	The letter which I have told him to copy.

hen or object is known to belong to the past par-  
 ecedent can be placed after the participle, as in the  
 may be turned, *Je lui ai donné la lettre à copier*.  
 y, *Je lui ai dit la lettre de copier*, but we may say,  
*Je lui ai dit la lettre*, it follows that the regimen, in this and  
 longs to the infinitive.

(a)  The past participle of the verb *faire* (when followed by an infinitive) never agrees. So we must write—  
*Les vêtements qu'il a FAIT faire ne lui vont pas bien.* | The clothes he has had made do not suit him.

(b) But, of course, when the past participle of *faire* is not followed by an infinitive, it agrees according to the rules given above (585 to 589):—

*Les habits que le tailleur a FAITS n'ont pas été FAITS pour moi.* | The coats which the tailor has made, have not been made for me.

(c) For the same reason, the participles *dû*, *owed*, *ought*; *pu*, *been able*; and *voulu*, *been willing*, remain invariable when an infinitive is understood after them:—

*Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai PU (lui rendre understood).* | *I have rendered him all the services that I have been able.*

(d) But if no infinitive is understood, the past participles *dû* and *voulu* agree when they have a direct object before them:—

*Voilà la somme qu'il vous a DUE si longtemps.* | Here is the sum he owed you so long.  
*Il veut fortement les choses qu'il a une fois VOULUES.* | He must have the things he has once wished for.  
*On leur a accordé toutes les faveurs qu'ils ont VOULUES.* | All the favours they wanted have been granted them.

(e) REMARK.—(1) When a past participle happens to be placed between the relative pronoun *QUE* and the conjunction *QUE*, or the relative pronoun *QUI*, it remains invariable, the relative pronoun *QUE* not being the object of the past participle; as,

*Les raisons QUE vous avez CRU QUE j'approuvais.* | The reasons which you thought I approved.  
*Il a obtenu la place QUE je vous avais DIT QUI vous serait refusée.* | He has obtained the situation which, I had told you, would be refused to you.

N.B.—These forms are inelegant, and we advise the student to avoid them as far as possible.

(f) (2) Sometimes the conjunction *que* and the clause following it are understood, and, of course, the past participle remains invariable, as if the clause was expressed: *Nous avons fait toutes les dépenses qu'il a VOULU (que nous fissions is understood) (we incurred all the expenses which he wished us to incur).*

## EXERCISE CCXXXI. .

which we *had* in the spring, have  
 f. \* *il faire* ind-4 77 (5)  
 many diseases.—That young lady sings well;  
*maladie* f.  
 singing.—That song is charming; I *heard* it  
 ind-4  
 ed all the endeavours I *could*.—He has  
*effort* m. † ind-4  
 yours he *wished*. —These are the answers  
*réponse* f. † *vouloir* ind-4 *Voilà*  
 they would give you.—The difficulties  
 † *faire* *embarras* m.  
 u were in have accelerated my departure.—  
*avoir* \* *départ* m.  
 y has had made (does not suit her).  
*éce* 594 (a) *faire* *ne lui va pas bien*.

## EXERCISE CCXXXII. (FIRST PART.)

has *fallen* has prevented me from going out  
*fait* *empêché* *sortir*  
 u finished the letter which I *gave* you to  
 ind-4  
 finished the letter which you had *begun* to  
 ind-2  
 u read the books which I *advised* you  
*conseiller* ind-4  
 the actress whom we *heard* sing?—Sing the  
*actrice* ind-4  
 rd her sing.—Imitate the virtues which you  
 ind-4 *lui*  
 d.—The dresses which your dressmaker has  
*robe* f. *couturière*  
 eces are very elegant.  
*èce* *très élégant*

## NOTES ON THE AGREEMENT OF THE PAST

participle used with the auxiliary *avoir*  
 ) only agrees when preceded by its object,  
 agreement or non-agreement points out a

great difference in its meaning, and should, therefore, be carefully attended to, especially when preceding an infinitive. Examples:—

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Les enfants QUE j'ai VUS dessiner.</i>  | The children I have seen drawing.  |
| 2. <i>Les paysages QUE j'ai vu DES-SINER.</i> | The landscapes I saw being drawn.  |
| 3. <i>Je LES ai LAISSÉS gronder.</i>          | I have allowed them to scold.      |
| 4. <i>Je LES ai laissé GRONDER.</i>           | I have allowed them to be scolded. |

*Note.*—The agreement of *vu* and *laissé* (sentences 1 and 3) shows that *que* and *les* are direct objects of the past participles, and subjects of the infinitives; and the non-agreement of the same participles (sentences 2 and 4) shows on the contrary that *que* and *les* are the direct objects of the infinitives, and therefore in both instances the participle indicates the real meaning of the sentence. Again—

*Elle s'est DITE riche.*

She said she was rich—she gave herself for rich.

*Elle s'est dit: je suis riche.*

She said to herself: I am rich.

*Note.*—The agreement of *dit* in the first instance shows that *se* is the direct object, and its non-agreement in the second sentence points out that *se* is indirect object, and therefore the past participle gives the real meaning in both cases.

## § I. OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE USED WITH THE PRONOUN *L'*.

(b) The pronoun *L'* stands for *LE* or *LA*. When it is used for *le* it may be in reference to a noun masculine singular, or to avoid the use or the repetition of a whole clause, in which cases the participle is in the masculine singular. Examples:—

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>Ce musée est très beau: je L'ai VU.</i>                       | This museum is very fine: I have seen it.                              |
| <i>Cette ville, ainsi que je L'ai DIT, est très grande.</i>      | This town, as I have said, is very large.                              |
| <i>Ces livres sont plus intéressants que je ne L'aurais CRU.</i> | These books are more interesting than I should have thought they were. |

*Note.*—In the last sentence there is ellipsis of the words *qu'ils étaient*, and *le (l')* is employed to avoid the use of that clause: *Ces livres sont plus intéressants que je n'aurais cru QU'ILS ÉTAIENT.* Again—

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Cette maison, comme je L'ai VUE, me conviendrait parfaitement.</i>                             | That house, in the condition I have seen it, would suit me perfectly well.  |
| <i>Cette maison, comme vous L'avez VU dans sa lettre, me conviendrait sous tous les rapports.</i> | That house, as you have seen in his letter, would suit me in every respect. |

*Note.*—In the first sentence *L'* stands for *LA* relating to *maison*, and therefore governs the past participle in the feminine. In the second sentence *L'* stands for *LE*, used to avoid the repetition of a foregoing statement, and therefore governs the past participle in the masculine singular—i.e., the latter remains invariable.

# THE PAST PARTICIPLE PRECEDED BY THE PRONOUN EN.

oun may be used as object of a past participle with or without an adverb of quantity. When used without itself it is considered as an indirect object, and the participle, therefore, remains invariable—singular. When *en* follows an adverb of quantity, it refers to a *plural noun expressed before*, and the participle agrees with that noun, which is then the direct object. Examples:—

<p><i>Heureux, et on lui en a donné.</i>  <i>As to flatterers, the more I have known, the fewer have I esteemed.</i></p>	<p>He was asking for flowers, and we have given him some.          As to flatterers, the more I have known, the fewer have I esteemed.</p>
--	--

ever, if the adverb of quantity expresses *intensity*, and not a number of objects, the participle does not agree:—

<p><i>Ils ont laissé de l'argent.</i>  <i>As much fortune as his parents left him, so much did he squander.</i></p>	<p>As much fortune as his parents left him, so much did he squander.</p>
---	--

When an adverb of quantity follows *EN*, or if the noun is in the *singular, masculine or feminine*, the participle does not agree—*i.e.*, it remains masculine. Example:—

<p><i>Ne lui en donnez plus.</i>  <i>Do not give him any more cherries, he has already eaten too many.</i></p>	<p>Do not give him any more cherries, he has already eaten too many.</p>
<p><i>Vous en parlez beaucoup.</i>  <i>You speak of energy: how much has this minister not shown!</i></p>	<p>You speak of energy: how much has this minister not shown!</p>

In the exceptional agreement of the past participle by *en* and an adverb of quantity should be observed the plural *if the noun is feminine*, according to respectable authorities: *Plus il a trouvé de livres, plus il en a ouvert.*

*EN*, when referring to a noun, does not prevent a participle agreeing with its direct object:—

<p><i>Je n'oublierai jamais les services que vous m'avez rendus.</i>  <i>I respect this man, and shall never forget the services that I received from him.</i></p>	<p>I respect this man, and shall never forget the services that I received from him.</p>
--	--

## THE PAST PARTICIPLE PRECEDED BY LE PEU.

*LE PEU* means either *absolute lack, want, absence*, or *small quantity*. In the first case its participle remains invariable, in the second it agrees with the noun.



LE PEU d'intelligence qu'il a MONTRÉ  
a empêché la réussite de l'affaire.

The lack of intelligence that he has  
shown has prevented the success  
of the affair.

Le peu de fortune QUE j'ai ACQUISE  
est le fruit d'un travail assidu.

The little fortune I have acquired  
is the result of steady work.

# EXERCISE CCXXXII. (SECOND PART.)

The orators we heard discussing this subject  
78 502 *entendre* ind-4 *discuter* sujet m.  
(brought us over) to their opinion whenever we  
<sup>1</sup>nous ind-4 <sup>2</sup>rallier à — f. toutes les fois que  
heard it maintained (by them).—The forest is just as  
<sup>3</sup>ind-4 <sup>1</sup>la <sup>4</sup>soutenir <sup>2</sup>leur forêt f. bien telle que  
the keeper has described it (to you).— Things have  
garde m. <sup>3</sup>décrire ind-4 <sup>2</sup>p' <sup>1</sup>vous art. choses f. 171  
become more serious than we (should have thought)  
*devenir* sérieux 50 ne <sup>2</sup>croire cond-2  
they would. — His death made more converts than  
<sup>1</sup>p' \* *supplie* m. ind-3 *plus de prosélytes*  
his preaching (had done). — Your greenhouse is  
*prédications n'en* ind-6 595 (c) *serre* f.  
tastefully arranged : I saw it the other day.— Entrance  
<sup>2</sup>avec goût <sup>1</sup>disposer <sup>2</sup>ind-4 <sup>1</sup>p' f. jour. art. entrée f.  
to the park, as I have said, is forbidden after ten  
du parc, \* je l'ind-4 586 *défendre* passé 585 (a)  
o'clock at night. — It is past ten o'clock now.—  
77 (6) du soir Il <sup>4</sup>f. pl. <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup>maintenant  
He had all the unpleasantnesses which we surmised  
ind-4 *désagrément* m. pl. *penser* ind-6  
(he would have).—The loss of the battle is attributed to  
594 (f) \* *perte* f. *bataille* f. *attribuer*  
the want of efficiency the general has shown. — The  
*peu de capacité* qu' 527 (4th) *montrer* ind-4 *Le*  
few troops he had assembled (stood their ground)  
*peu de troupes* f. 502 *rassembler* ind-6 *tenir* ind-4 bon  
against (far superior) forces. — Do not give any more  
*contre* 32 <sup>2</sup>bien supérieur <sup>1</sup>— f. pl. 153 (a)  
beer to the coachman ; he has already drunk (too much).  
*de bière* f. *cocher* en déjà <sup>2</sup>bu <sup>1</sup>trop  
— Idleness has marred more abilities than diligence  
art.  *paresse* f. *étouffer* plus de talents m. art. *activité* f.  
(has brought out).  
n'en *développer* ind-4 595 (d)

## CHAPTER VI. OF THE ADVERB.

verbs, in French, are generally placed after the *simple tenses*, and between the auxiliary and the *compound tenses*, but never between the verb, as is frequently the case in Eng-

à vous.		<i>I often think of you.</i>
pensé à vous.		<i>I have always thought of you.</i>

verbs, long adverbs of manner ending in *MENT*, the *ici* (here), *là* (there), *dessus* (above), *dessous* (under), for the object, and after the verb, or the past participle, when the verb has no object. Examples:—

s.		You come seasonably.
question SAVAM-		They have learnedly solved the question.
DESSOUS.		Put all these articles under.

ences, however, the ear alone is consulted; for we *ai fait oublié* (I had quite forgotten it).

The adverbs *AUJOURD'HUI* (to-day), *DEMAIN* (yesterday), *APRÈS-DEMAIN* (the day after to-morrow), *AVANT-HIER* (the day before yesterday), either before or after the verb, but never between the auxiliary and the participle; as,

*AUJOURD'HUI, il pleuvra* *DEMAIN*; or, *AUJOURD'HUI, il pleuvra* *DEMAIN* (to-day it is fine; it will rain to-morrow).

*LÀ* (there), may elegantly introduce a sentence in which the subject is generally inverted. Examples:—

<i>me du licencié</i>		Here is shut up the soul of the
(LE SAGE.)		graduate Peter Garcias.

Several adverbs accompany a verb, the adverb of manner ending in *MENT* precede the verb.

Example:—

rain.		I will do it here to-morrow.
oute.		He was there without doubt.
PROBABLEMENT		He will probably speak to you the day after to-morrow.

598. (III.) The adverbs BIEN (well), MIEUX (better), MAL (ill), PIS (worse), BEAUCOUP (much), TROP (too much), PEU (little), PLUS (more), ASSEZ (enough), TANT (so much), AUTANT (as much), may be placed either before or after an *Infinitive Present*; as,

BIEN *faire son devoir*, or *Faire BIEN son devoir* (to do one's duty well); TROP *parler nuit* (speaking too much is hurtful); *il dit BEAUCOUP devoir*, or *il dit devoir BEAUCOUP* (he says he owes much).

(a) But they are always placed after the verb in the simple tenses of the other moods; as, *Vous ferez BIEN*, *il fit MAL* (you will do well, he did ill).

(b) And, in the compound tenses, they are placed between the auxiliary and the participle; as, *Vous avez MAL fait* (you have done wrong); *il peut avoir BEAUCOUP perdu* (he may have lost much).

599. (IV.) The adverbs COMMENT, OÙ, COMBIEN, QUAND, POURQUOI, are placed before the verb in *interrogative* sentences, but may be placed after it in *affirmative* sentences:

<i>Comment se porte monsieur votre frère?</i>	How is your brother?
<i>Où allez-vous?</i>	Whither are you going?
<i>Il y en a beaucoup, mais je ne sais pas combien.</i>	There are many, but I do not know how many.
<i>Il faudra bien qu'il dise pourquoi.</i>	He shall have to say why.

#### *Remarks on some Adverbs.*

600. BEAUCOUP is not, as the English *much*, susceptible of being modified by any preceding adverb; thus, *très beaucoup*, *trop beaucoup*, *si beaucoup*, would be barbarisms.

601. BIEN before another adverb means *very*, *much*, *quite*, &c.; as, *Bien tard*, very late; *bien moins*, much less; *bien assez*, quite enough. After the adverb, it signifies *well*; as, *Assez bien*, pretty well; *moins bien*, not so well.

602. PLUS and DAVANTAGE both mean *more*, but they are not used indiscriminately.

(a) PLUS before a numeral, or any expression of quantity, takes either *de* or *que* (DE expresses number or quantity merely, QUE is besides a correlative of *comparison*):—

<i>J'ai fait PLUS DE quinze milles à pied.</i>	I have travelled <i>more than</i> fifteen miles on foot.
<i>Ce bœuf mange PLUS QUE deux chevaux.</i>	This ox eats <i>more than</i> two horses.
<i>Il a PLUS DE brillant QUE DE solide.</i>	He has <i>more</i> brilliancy <i>than</i> solidity.
<i>Il se fie PLUS à ses lumières QU'à celles des autres.</i>	He trusts <i>more</i> to his own intelligence than to that of others.

(b) **DAVANTAGE** is always used absolutely in connection with a verb, to express superiority, as adverb:—

Vous promettez beaucoup et donnez **DAVANTAGE**.—(CORNEILLE.) | You promise much and give *more*.

It is sometimes used in the sense of *plus longtemps*:—

*Ne restez pas davantage*.—(ACAD.) (do not stay any longer).

*Note*.—Formerly it was correct to say: *davantage heureux, davantage d'ennuis*. **DAVANTAGE** was also used in the sense of *de plus: rien davantage* (nothing more).—(LA BRUYÈRE.) Custom has, however, rendered all these expressions obsolete.

603. **PLUS TÔT** means *sooner*, and has for its opposite **PLUS TARD**, *later*. **PLUTÔT** signifies *rather*.

604. **ONLY, BUT**, are rendered by **NE . . . QUE**. *Ne* is placed as usual (153 (b)), and *que* before the word it is intended to affect, but always after the verb in simple tenses, and after the past participle in compound tenses; as,

<i>Il NE croit QUE ce qu'il voit.</i>	He only believes what he sees.
<i>Il NE rentre ordinairement QU'à sept heures.</i>	He generally comes in only at 7 o'clock.
<i>Je NE sors QUE rarement.</i>	I go out but seldom.
<i>Il N'a montré les lettres qu'il a reçues la semaine dernière QU'à son père et à son frère.</i>	He showed the letters he received last week only to his father and to his brother.

### EXERCISE CCXXXIII.

I *very seldom* go out.—Homer *sometimes* slumbers in the  
*sortir* *sommeiller à*

midst of his gods and heroes.—She has sung *very well*.—  
*milieu m.* *très*

Where hatred prevails, truth (is sacrificed).—That grieves  
*dominer* *fait naufrage.* *chagriner*

me *very much*.—This letter is *pretty well* written.—I would  
*f.*

like you *much more*, if you were reasonable.—He has arrived  
*bien* *ind-2* *est*

*sooner than usual*. — I will die *rather than* suffer it.  
*de coutume.* *de*

— We have gathered *more* apples *than* pears. — I  
*cueillir* *pomme* 602 (a) *poir*

(have been looking for) them for more than half an hour.  
 557 (2) *chercher* depuis 602 (a) 423 (b)

— Your sister (expresses herself) only imperfectly in  
*s'exprimer* 604 *imparfaitement*

French.—She prepared the exercise† she had to do,  
*préparer* ind-4 thème m. ind-2 à faire

only this morning before breakfast. — We see you but  
 604 *matin* déjeuner. 604

very seldom now.  
*bien rarement maintenant*

### Remarks on the Negatives.

605. The negative expressions *ne . . . pas*, *ne . . . point*, &c., form only one negation.

(a) ~~NE~~ NE is never used without a verb.

(b) *Not* is expressed by NON or by NON PAS when it modifies the complement of a verb without affecting the latter; as,

<i>The old man plants, NOT for himself, but for posterity.</i>		Le vieillard plante, NON pour lui, mais pour la postérité.
<i>Place yourself near him and NOT here.</i>		Placez-vous auprès de lui, et NON PAS ici.

(c) NON PAS is also used to deny strongly, and is, in this case, the equivalent of *no, certainly not, by no means, &c.* :—

<i>Vous l'avez dit.</i> —NON PAS.		You said so.—Certainly not.
-----------------------------------	--	-----------------------------

(d) When *not*, used without a verb, modifies an adverb, it is expressed by PAS only; as,

<i>Have you done?</i> —NOT yet.		Avez-vous fini?—PAS encore.
<i>Give me some fish, but NOT much.</i>		Donnez-moi du poisson, mais PAS beaucoup.

(e) NOT BECAUSE, introducing a clause, is rendered by NON QUE or NON PAS QUE followed by the *subjunctive*; as,

<i>I will do it, NOT BECAUSE I fear them, but because it is right.</i>		Je le ferai, <i>non que</i> je les craigne, mais parce que c'est juste.
<i>He does it, NOT BECAUSE he is willing, but because he is compelled.</i>		Il le fait, <i>non pas qu'il</i> le veuille, mais parce qu'il y est forcé.

N.B.—In any case NON may be used without PAS, which is only added to it for the sake of emphasis.

(f) IF NOT is expressed by the conjunction SINON.

606. *Point* denies more strongly than *pas*. *Pas* is used in preference to *point*—1st, Before *plus, beaucoup, moins, si, autant*, and other comparative words: as, *Milton n'est*

† Remember Rule 502 (a).

qu'*Homère*, Milton is not less sublime  
 , Before nouns of number ; as, *Il n'y a*  
 t six years ago.

nt may be suppressed after the verbs  
 ; to dare ; and *pouvoir*, to be able ; as,  
 onder.

*She does not cease scolding.*

*They dare not accost him.*

*I cannot be silent.*

; to know, when this verb is used to  
 uncertainty, it is better to omit *pas* and

ndre. | *I do not know where to find him.*  
 it. | *He does not know what he says.*

t must be used when *savoir* is employed  
 positively ; as, *Je ne SAIS pas le fran-*  
*French*).

on *Pouvoir* and *Savoir*, used with a negative,

nt are suppressed after the conjunction  
 the comparative adverbs *plus*, *moins*,  
 or equivalent ; as,

arle. | *He writes better than he speaks.*  
 iche qu'on | *He is less rich, richer than is be-*  
                   *lieved.*  
 ne croyais. | *It is different from what I thought.*

nt are omitted with a verb in the pre-  
 the conjunction *depuis que*, or by the  
 g a certain duration of time ; as,

ous porté | *How have you been since I saw*  
 ai vu ?     *you ?*  
 ne lui ai | *I have not spoken to him these six*  
               *months.*

not omitted when the verb is in the

s que nous | *How does he live now that we do*  
               *not see him ?*  
 us ne nous | *It is six months since we have*  
               *spoken to one another.*

(b) When two verbs come together, the negative particles may be placed either with the first or with the second, and modify the meaning accordingly. Thus: *Je NE puis PAS venir* means *I CANNOT come*; whilst *Je puis NE PAS venir* means *I may NOT come*; *Il NE faut PAS mentir* (we must not lie); *Il faut N'avoir PAS le sens commun pour parler de la sorte* (one must have no common-sense to speak so); *Je NE pense PAS qu'il vienne* (I do not think he will come); *Je pense qu'il NE viendra PAS* (I think he will not come).

(c) With an adverb of manner ending in MENT, the second part of the negative is elegantly placed after it. Examples:—

<i>Chien qui aboie ne mord généralement PAS.</i>	A dog that barks does not generally bite.
<i>Je ne le reverrai probablement JAMAIS.</i>	I shall probably never see him again.

## EXERCISE CCXXXIV.

There is *no* happiness without virtue.—The rich are *not*  
 154 *bonheur* m. *riche* 153  
 always happier than the poor.—There will *not* be *much*  
 pl.  
 fruit this year.—You will *not* find two of your opinion.—  
 pl. *année* f. *en* *avis* m.  
 You do *not* cease scolding me.—I *dare not* speak to him.—  
 ind-1  
 I *cannot* understand what he means. — I do *not* know  
*comprendre ce qu' vouloir dire.*  
 what to do.—She sings much *better* than she did.—  
*que* *ne* ind-2  
 He is richer *than* he was. — That child has grown  
*ne* ind-2 *grandir*  
 (very much) *since* I saw it.  
*bien* *ne* ind-4

## EXERCISE CCXXXV. (FIRST PART.)

Since the world has been a world, said Boileau, one  
*Depuis que* *est* \* \* *on*  
 has *not* seen a great poet, son of a great poet.—She does  
*de* *un*

atter her.)—Do you *not* believe what he  
*flatte.* *ce qu'*

worth *more* than a guinea.—Do *not* go  
 272 *d'*

I *know not* how many people at the  
 402

s proposed to Alexander to divide Asia  
 ind-3 *partager* 375

he answered : The earth *cannot* admit of  
 ind-3 *souffrir*

of two kings.

\*

SE CCXXXV. (SECOND PART.)

your brothers have studied their lessons.  
*étudier* subj-3 *leçon* f.

have *not* studied them.—I really  
 ind-4 588 f. *réellement*

l my letters.—(Would you *not* prefer) to  
*aimer mieux* 543 \*

us ?—We (would rather) *not* go without  
*aimer mieux* *y*

see him to-day, and you may *not* see  
*voir* 1 *pouvoir*

I am concerned, and *not* you.—  
*s'agir de* 185 605 (b) 612

me your album for little George ?—  
 1 — m. 393 *Georges ?*

he would soil it.—Our friend Ralph is  
*salir* m. *Raoul a*

t *not* always.—I shall go, *not that*  
 605 (d) *toujours.* 605 (e)

because (I must).—The house is, *if not*  
 622 *il le faut.* *maison* f.

very much damaged.  
*très* \* *endommagé.*

confound FOR (*pour*) preposition, with FOR (*car*) con-



## CHAPTER VII.

## OF THE PREPOSITION.

611. RULE I.—In French, the preposition is always placed immediately *before* its object, whereas in English it is sometimes placed *after* it; as,


À qui parlez-vous ?		Whom do you speak to?
DE quoi vous plaignez-vous ?		What do you complain of?

## EXERCISE CCXXXVI.

To whom does that house belong?—What house are you *appartenir*?  
 speaking of?—Of that white house.—It belongs to the ind-1  
 gentleman *with* whom we are going to dine.—He has two ind-1  
*monsieur*  
 footmen *behind* his carriage.—Tiberius was emperor *after* ind-3  
*laquais* *voiture* f. *Tibère*  
 Augustus.—The liberty of the Roman republic expired *under* ind-3  
*Auguste*. 435 (a)  
 Tiberius.—A serpent biting its tail was, *among* ind-2  
*qui se mord* art. *queue* f. *chez*  
 the Egyptians, the emblem of eternity.  
 art.

612. RULE II.—The prepositions *à*, *de*, and *en*, must be repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb which they govern, whether they are repeated or not in English; as,

Il dut la vie À la clémence et À la magnanimité du vainqueur.		He owed his life to the clemency and generosity of the conqueror.
Il tâche DE mériter et d'obtenir votre confiance.		He is endeavouring to merit and obtain your confidence.
J'ai été EN France et EN Suisse.		I have been in France and Switzerland.

 The other prepositions, especially those of one syllable, are repeated before words which have meanings totally different, but seldom before words that are nearly synonymous; as,

le verger.	In the garden and in the orchard.
adresse.	By force and by address.
ivivité.	In effeminacy and idleness.
nce.	By force and violence.

EXERCISE CCXXXVII.

from London to York and Edinburgh.—

f.  
etter either from my father or my brother.

\*

literary men keeps pace with that of  
*littéraire* \* *marcher de pair*

heroes: Homer and Alexander, Virgil  
*héros*

occupy the voice of fame. — We are  
*voix pl. renommée f.*

Germany.—He is a turner in wood and  
*Allemande. 399 tourneur*

back either by the railway or the  
\* *chemin de fer*

the safeguard and protection of the laws.  
*garde f.*

IDIOMATIC USE OF DE.

jective or a participle used adjectively  
mediately to the indefinite expressions

*quoi, personne, aucun, pas un, quelqu'un,*  
the preposition DE is required; as,

<i>nouveau ?</i>	Do you not know anything new?
<i>D'aussi heu-</i>	I know of no one so happy as this
—(ACAD.)	woman.

required before an adjective or participle  
al:—

<i>DE tués.</i>	There were a thousand soldiers killed.
<i>en France,</i> ( <i>OLTAIRE.</i> )	There is one free village in France, and it is mine.

se of DE occurs before adjectives or par-  
to the pronoun EN (No. 452) or to a noun  
verb of quantity:—

<i>DE pris ?</i>	Are there several caught?
<i>DE mauvais ?</i>	How many bad (or unsound) ones have you?
<i>D'argent DE</i>	Have you much money invested?

(4) In familiar style **DE** is used between a *qualifying* word (noun, adjective, or participle) and the substantive that follows ; as,

*Un fripon d'enfant.*  
*Des impertinents DE laquais.*  
*Un susnt homme DE chat.*—  
 (LA FONTAINE.)  
*Ce grand mal bâti DE Ro-*  
*main.*—(BOILEAU.)

A roguish child.  
 Impertinent lackeys.  
 A sanctimonious cat.  
 That tall ill-made Roman.

(5) **DE** in certain cases alters completely the meaning. For instance we say without **DE**: *Vous NE faites QUE vous plaindre* (you do nothing but complain); and with **DE**: *Vous NE faites QUE DE vous plaindre* (you have only just complained).

#### REMARKS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

614. (1) **EN** is used to express a vague and indeterminate sense ; as,

*J'ai vécu EN pays étranger.* | *I have lived in a foreign country.*

**DANS** is employed in a limited and determinate sense ; as,  
*Ce livre est DANS ma bibliothèque.* | *That book is in my library.*  
*J'ai lu cela DANS Buffon.* | *I have read that in Buffon.*

*N.B.*—The English prepositions **IN**, **INTO**, are expressed either by *dans* or by *en*.

(a) **DANS** is used before a noun preceded by a determinative word (such as a definite article or a possessive or demonstrative adjective) to indicate some *definite* place or space, or to mark the time from which something will happen ; as,

*Il demeure DANS la maison près du* | *He lives in the house near the*  
*parc.* | *park.*  
*Il y a du charme DANS sa société.* | *There is a charm in her society.*  
*Vous partirez dans DEUX jours.* | *You will start in two days.*  
*DANS une heure ils seront ici.* | *They will be here in an hour.*

(b) **EN** is used instead of *dans* before a noun used (generally without any determinative) in a general, unlimited sense ; also to mark either an *indefinite* place or space, or to express what time an action did or will take to perform ; as,

*L'armée est EN campagne.* | *The army is in the field—i.e., cam-*  
 | *paigning.*  
*EN paix et EN guerre.* | *In peace and in war.*  
*Nous arriverons EN deux heures.* | *We shall arrive within two hours.*  
*Il a écrit cette page EN dix* | *He was ten minutes writing this*  
*minutes.* | *page.*

(See Rule 376 (1))

(c) **EN** is used in many special phrases, besides being the only preposition which governs the present participle. Example: *Fondre EN larmes* (to melt into tears); *agir EN maître* (to act like a master); *marcher EN tête* (to head, to march at the head); *ouvrière EN robes* (dressmaker).

(d) The preposition **EN** is not placed before a noun preceded by the article, except in a few instances sanctioned by usage, but never with the plural articles *les*, only with *l'* or with *la*.

*EN la présence de Dieu.*  
*EN l'absence de son père.*  
*EN l'honneur du héros.*

In the presence of God.  
 In his (or her) father's absence.  
 In the hero's honour.

615. (2) **AUTOUR** and **ALENTOUR**, *around*, must not be confounded. *Autour* is a preposition which requires a complement; as,


*Autour d'un trône.*

*Around a throne.*

(a) *Alentour* is an adverb which admits of no complement; as,

Il était sur son trône, et les grands  
 étaient alentour.

*He was upon his throne, and the  
 grandees were around.*

(b)  *Autour*, *auprès*, *avec*, *contre*, *depuis*, *selon*, &c., although generally used as prepositions, sometimes appear as adverbs:—

*Je suis AUPRÈS.*  
*Je regarde tout AUTOUR.*  
*Je ne les ai pas vus DEPUIS.*  
*Elle a emporté ma corbeille et*  
*mes clefs AVEC.*  
*Réussiront-ils? C'est SELON.*

I am near it or them.  
 I am looking all round.  
 I have not seen them since.  
 She has taken away my basket  
 and my keys with it.  
 Will they succeed? That will  
 depend on circumstances.

(See Rules 475 and 476, p. 266.)

616. (3) **AU TRAVERS** is always followed by the preposition *de*, and **À TRAVERS** is not. We say—

*Au travers DE la foule.*  
*À travers la foule.*

} *Through the crowd.*

617. (4) **AVANT**, *before*, denotes priority of time; as,

Il est arrivé avant vous.

| *He arrived before you.*

It serves also to mark priority of order and place; as,  
*Mettez ce chapitre avant l'autre.* | *Put this chapter before the other.*

(a) **DEVANT**, *before*, is never used, nowadays, with reference to time. It is a preposition of place, and has the meaning of *in presence of, opposite to, in front of*; as,

Il a prêché *devant* le roi. | *He has preached before the king.*  
*Devant* la porte; *devant* l'église. | *Before the door; before the church.*

(b) *Devant* serves also to mark order; as,

C'est mon ancien, il marche *devant* moi. | *He is my senior, he goes before me.*

(c) **AVANT** is the opposite of **APRÈS**, and **DEVANT** is the opposite of **DERRIÈRE**.

<i>Partez</i> <b>AVANT</b> nous.		Set out before us.
<i>Marchez</i> <b>DEVANT</b> lui.		Walk before him.
<i>Nous partirons</i> <b>APRÈS</b> vous.		We shall start after you.
<i>Ils marcheront</i> <b>DERRIÈRE</b> lui.		They will walk behind him.

(d) These four prepositions are also used adverbially:—

<i>N'allez pas trop</i> <b>AVANT</b> .		Do not go too far in.
<i>Vous reviendrez</i> <b>APRÈS</b> .		You will come back afterwards.
<i>J'allais</i> <b>DEVANT</b> .		I was going in front (before).

(e) **AUPARAVANT** (before that time) is essentially an adverb:—

*Cinq ans* **AUPARAVANT**. | Five years before.

618. (5) *Près de* and *prêt à*, are not the same expressions.

(a) *Près* is a preposition which governs *de*; as,  
 Il est bien **PRÈS DE** midi. | *It is very near twelve o'clock.*

(b) But *Prêt* is an adjective which governs *à*; as,  
 Il est **prêt à** partir. | *He is ready to set out.*

### EXERCISE CCXXXVIII.

I was *in* France, *in* the department of the Côte-d'Or.—  
 ind-2 | *département* m. f. —

The glory of a sovereign consists less *in* the extent of  
*souverain* m. | *grandeur* f.

his states, than *in* the happiness of his people.—They  
*état* m. | *peuple* pl.

ranged themselves *around* him.—Here is a sad accident for  
*se ranger* ind-3 | *Voilà fâcheux* m.

said a Gascon officer, who had just received  
 ind-2 435 152 (4)

his body. — I saw that *before* you. — She  
 art. ind-4

re the house. — He was *near* dying. — I am  
 ind-2 inf-1

a my opinion, pen in hand, until the  
 art. à art. *jusqu'à*

y ink. — Let (not the children go) too *far* in,  
*Que* imper. *avant*

is very dark.  
*sombre.*

following prepositions require DE before  
 noun which they govern :—

<i>near.</i>	au-dessous,	<i>under, below.</i>
	autour,	<i>around.</i>
	le long,	<i>along.</i>
<i>above.</i>	vis-à-vis,	<i>opposite.</i>

DE *la poste* (near the post-office); *autour* DU *bras*

familiar style, and in conversation, the preposition DE  
 and after *près, proche, and vis-à-vis*; as, *Je loge PRÈS*  
*à nouvelle rue* (I dwell near the arsenal, opposite the

preposition QUANT, *as to, as for*, requires À  
 or pronoun which it governs: *quant à cela*  
*quant à nous* (as for us); *quant à votre frère*  
 (your brother); &c.

expression JUSQUE is always joined to  
 a (such as *à, dans, en, sur, sous, vers, &c.*)  
 of *time* or *place*.

À <i>Lyon.</i>	From Paris to Lyons.
<i>siège.</i> —(ACAD.)	He went as far as Africa.
<i>sombre.</i>	Even into my room.
	Even under the table.
	Even on the mountain.
<i>agne, &amp;c.</i>	How far? &c.

s sometimes written *jusques* before a vowel: *Vos*  
*JUSQUES aux siècles suivants*—(MASSILLON) (your  
 earth even to following ages).

## EXERCISE CCXXXIX.

I live *near* the gate Saint-Martin.—*Above* the door were  
*demeurer* *porte* f. *ind-2*  
 written these words.—In the ecclesiastical hierarchy,  
 586 *mot* m. *ecclésiastique* *hiérarchie* f. *h* asp.  
 the bishop is *below* the archbishop.—The queen had her  
*archevêque*.  
 daughters *around* her.—We came *along* the river side.—  
*ind-4* *rivière* f. \*  
 He lodges *opposite* my windows.—All fathers, *even* the most  
*art*.  
 grave, play with their children.—Let us go together *as far as*  
*jouer*  
 Oxford.—*As for* him, he (shall act) as he pleases.—He  
*en usera* *lui* *ind-7*  
 travelled *as far as* Lapland.—There were *piles*  
*voyager* *ind-3* 621 (8) *Laponie* f. 186 (e) *ind-2* 32 *monceau*  
 of books *in* every corner, *and even* upon the chairs.  
 614 (a) *tous les coins* *et jusque* *chaise*.

## EXERCISE CCXL.

Æsculapius (is represented) with a snake *in* his hand  
<sup>2</sup>*Esculape* <sup>1</sup>*on représente* \* *couleuvre* f. à 488  
 or *around* his arm, and a cock *near* him.—The Falls *of*  
*du* *coq* *cataracte* f. s.  
 Niagara are *near* the boundaries of the United States  
 — *se trouve* *limite* f. *États-Unis*  
 and Canada.—The Americans place Washington and  
 31 — m. —  
 Bolivar *above* Alexander and Cæsar.—The planets are  
 — *de* *planète* f.  
 opaque bodies which turn *around* the sun, from which they  
 — *tourner* *où*  
 derive light and heat.—There are forests of canes  
*tirer* *lumière* f. *chaleur* f. *forêt* f. *canne* f.  
 along the Ganges.—I will wait for you *till* two o'clock.  
*Gange* m. 151

## CHAPTER VIII.

## OF THE CONJUNCTION.

IN French, some conjunctions require the verb which follows them to be in the indicative, some in the subjunctive; but when the infinitive mood is required after a conjunction, *de* is added to it.

622. *The following Conjunctions, and Conjunctive Locutions, require the indicative mood:—*

Ainsi que,	<i>as, as well as.</i>	au lieu que,	<i>whereas.</i>
après que,	<i>after.</i>	depuis que,	<i>since.</i>
attendu que,	<i>considering that,</i>	lorsque,	<i>when.</i>
aussitôt que,	<i>as.</i>	parce que, †	<i>because.</i>
dès que,	<i>as soon as.</i>	pendant que,	<i>while, whilst.</i>
autant que,	<i>as much as.</i>	tandis que	
à ce que,	<i>as, as far as, from</i>	peut-être que,	<i>perhaps.</i>
à mesure que,	<i>what.</i>	puisque,	<i>since.</i>
	<i>as, in proportion as.</i>	tant que,	<i>as long as.</i>
		vu que,	<i>seeing that.</i>

They require the indicative, because the principal sentence, which they unite with that which is incidental, expresses affirmation in a direct and positive manner.

† *Observation.*—*Par ce que* (in three words) is not a conjunction, though sometimes mistaken for one. It signifies, *by that which, by what.*

## EXERCISE CCXLI.

*As soon as* the Khan of Tartary has dined, a herald cries  
*kan m.* *héraut*

that all the other princes of the earth may go and dine,  
*terre f. ind-l* \*

if (they please). — One ought not to give a thing to a  
*bon leur semble.* *ne doit pas* \* *chose f.*

child *because* he asks for it, but *because* he has need (of it).—  
\* *besoin en*

We must not judge of a man *by what* he (is ignorant of),  
*Il falloir* *ignore*



but *by what* he knows. — *Whilst* we are in prosperity,  
*savoir* *on* *art.*  
 we must prepare for adversity. — *As long as* I have  
*il* *se* *à art.* *ind-7*  
 money, you shall not want any.  
*manquer en*

623. *The following Conjunctions, and Conjunctive Locutions, require the subjunctive mood.*

Afin que,	{	that, in order	{	pour peu que,	{	however little.
pour que,		that.		si peu que,		
avant que,		before.		pourvu que,		provided that.
a moins que,†		unless.		quoique,	{	though, although.
au cas que,		in case that.		bien que,		
de crainte que,†	{	for fear, lest.		encore que,		
de peur que,†		till, until.		sans que,	without.	
jusqu'à ce que,				soit que,		whether.
non que,	{	not that.		supposé que,		supposing that.
non pas que,						

They require the subjunctive, as they always imply doubt, desire, uncertainty.

624. *Remark on the conjunction QUE.* Learners are often mistaken by supposing that QUE always requires the verb which follows it to be in the *subjunctive mood*; but QUE does not govern any particular mood. It is the positive or doubtful sense of the first verb that requires the second to be in the indicative or subjunctive.† There are, however, several cases in which QUE requires the subjunctive after it:—

(a) When QUE is used to avoid the use or the repetition of any conjunction, simple or compound, which itself would require the subjunctive.

(b) When QUE is used to avoid the repetition of the conjunction SI, although SI does not itself require the subjunctive.

<p>Approchez <b>QUE</b> je vous voie (<i>afin que</i>).          Attendez <b>QUE</b> la pluie ait cessé          (<i>jusqu'à ce que</i>).          Je le dirai <b>SI</b> j'y vais et <b>QU'</b>on me          reçoive.</p>	<p>Come near, that I may see you.          Wait until the rain is over.</p> <p>I will mention it if I go, and if they          receive me.</p>
--	--

† *À moins que, de crainte que, de peur que*, require *ne* before the verb which follows them, although not having a negative sense.

‡ See the syntax of this mood, p. 816.

ver, does not require the subjunctive when  
er conjunction that would not itself require  
ing an exception), for we say—

*sera rétabli et* | He will do it when he has re-  
covered and is able to go out.

EXERCISE CCXLII.

received the gift of tongues, *that* they  
ind-3 *don m.*

the Gospel to all the nations of the  
*Évangile m.*

other come *before* I am up show him  
ind-1 *levé faire entrer*

oom, and give him a newspaper to amuse  
I come down.—*Unless* you be useful, you  
*descendre*

t after.—Speak low, *for* fear anybody should  
*arché on*

though you are learned, be modest.—Get in  
*instruit Entrer*

you.—If you like this parasol and you  
*aimer ombrelle f. 624 (b)*

will make) you a present (of it).—*As soon as*  
ind-7 <sup>1</sup> \* <sup>2</sup>*présent en 622*

and I had noticed his  
5 586 624 (c) *remarquer ind-5*

d him a seat.  
3 <sup>1</sup>*lui siège m.*

wing Conjunctions, when followed by DE,  
ive :—

, in order to. before. unless.		au lieu de,	} instead of. for, or from fear of. rather than.
		de crainte de,	
		de peur de,	
		plutôt que de,	

s a correct expression ; but present usage is in

## EXERCISE CCXLIII.

He works *in order to* acquire riches and consideration.—  
*acquérir* f.

*Before* granting him my confidence, I shall examine if he  
*confiance* f.

is worthy of it.—*Instead* of studying, he does nothing but  
*ne* \* *que*

amuse himself. — *Far from* thanking me, he has scolded  
*se divertir* *gronder*

me.—Charles VII., king of France, abstained from eating,  
 ind-3

in fear of being poisoned, and allowed himself  
*dans* art. *crainte* f. *se laisser* ind-3

to die, *from fear of* dying. — *Rather* die *than* do a  
*peur* inf-1

dishonourable action. — If you come to-morrow, and *if*,  
*lâcheté* f. *qu'*

it be fine, we will go and see the lake. — When a pupil  
 624 (b) 403 (c) ind-7 \* *lac* m. *Quand* élève m.

has aptitude, and (is willing) to study, he makes  
 32 *dispositions* ind-1 543 32

rapid progress. — He did it *because* he wished to please  
<sup>2</sup>*rapide* <sup>1</sup>*progrès* pl. ind-4 *P* 622 *désirer* ind-2 543 <sup>2</sup>*plaire*

you and he thought it was his duty.  
<sup>1</sup> 624 (c) *croire* ind-4 502 *c'était* *devoir* m.

## OF THE INTERJECTION.

The INTERJECTIONS have been treated of in page 203: their construction is the same in French as in English; they require, therefore, no further explanation. The soul is the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the student, since they do not require any rules.

## DISCUOUS EXERCISES

TS OF SPEECH, AND ON THE PRINCIPAL  
 IFFICULTIES, AND IDIOMS OF THE  
 FRENCH LANGUAGE.

upon the silence of the Abbé Sieyès, said  
*garder*

lic calamity.—Saying of Peter the Great :  
*Mot*

s to deceive a Russian.—A Swiss proverb :  
 544

the paces from him who hates bread, and the

every Roman knight had a horse maintained  
 87 *entretenir*

the republic, and wore a gold ring as a mark  
 419

bequeath to surgeon Larrey, 100,000 fr. ;  
*lègue*

ous man I have known. (*Napoléon's Will.*)  
 1 subj-1

related of Alexander that he said of  
 ind-2

had not been Alexander, he (would have)  
*edt edt*

es.—It was at the battle of Cressy (1346)  
 106 (b)

the English made use of artillery.—Go,  
 s f.

poléon to his grenadiers, fear nothing ; the  
 293

l me is not yet cast. — The Spaniards  
*fondre*

. to Solomon for wisdom, to Cæsar for

s for good fortune.—Such was Sheridan !  
*bonheur m.*

ttorney ! There has been nothing like it  
 pheus.—(*Byron.*)

CCXLVI.—“Soldiers,” said Bonaparte, in one of his proclamations, “you have, in a fortnight, gained six victories, taken twenty-one standards, fifty pieces of cannon, several strong places, made fifteen hundred prisoners, killed or wounded more than ten thousand men. You have won battles without artillery, crossed rivers without bridges, performed forced marches without shoes, bivouacked without brandy and often without bread. Thanks be rendered to you, soldiers! The country has a right to expect great things from you. You have yet combats to wage, towns to take, rivers to cross.

Friends, be the liberators of the people, do not be their oppressors.”

CCXLVII.—The castle clock struck twelve. At that moment the buzzing of the crowd ceased, and a little man, dressed in a green uniform, white trousers, and wearing riding-boots, appeared all of a sudden, keeping on his head a three-cornered hat as fascinating as he was himself. The broad red ribbon of the Legion of Honour floated on his breast. A small sword was at his side. He was perceived by all eyes, and at once. Immediately, cries of, Long live the Emperor! were uttered by the

ind-2

remporter

drapeau m.

73

de

passer

faire

bivouaquer

Grâce f.

patrie f.

livrer

peuple pl.

en fléau m.

sonner

En

bourdonnement m.

251 d'

d'

chaussé de

à l'écuyère

en 146

à trois cornes

prestigieux

l'

ind-2

poitrine f.

apercevoir

334 (d)

pousser

enthousiasmer

f.

CCXLVIII.—Botanists assure us that corn is nowhere to  
 be found in its primitive state. This plant seems to have  
 been confided, by Providence, to the care of man, with the  
 use of fire, to insure him the sceptre of the earth. With  
 corn and fire, we can acquire all the other goods. Man, with  
 corn alone, can feed all the domestic animals that sustain  
 his life, and share his labours; the pig, the hen, the duck,  
 the pigeon, the ass, the sheep, the goat, the horse, the  
 cow, the cat, and the dog, which give him, in return, eggs,  
 milk, bacon, wool, services, and gratitude.

CCXLIX.—My dear Friend,—

Pray, apply yourself diligently to your exercises; (for  
 though the doing them well is not supremely meritorious,  
 the doing them ill is illiberal, vulgar, and ridiculous.)  
 I send you enclosed a letter of recommendation for Marquis  
 Matignon, which will at once thoroughly introduce you  
 into the best French company. Your character, and conse-  
 quently your fortune, absolutely depends upon the company  
 you keep and the course you take at Paris. I do not,  
 in the least, mean a grave turn; on the contrary, a gay, a  
 sprightly, but at the same time an elegant and liberal one.

Keep carefully out of all quarrels. Many young Frenchmen are hasty and giddy. But these young men, when mellowed by age and experience, very often turn out able men. The number of great generals and statesmen, as well as authors, that France has produced, is an undeniable proof of it.—(*Lord Chesterfield to his Son.*)

CCL.—Scotland is a picturesque country.—The country has its amusements and beauties, but I prefer town.—It is very fine weather.—That requires much time.—I saw him to-day for the first time.—I know him, but I do not know where he lives.—If your sisters are at home, bring them with you; we shall be delighted to see them.—Bring me a few French books well bound in calf.—There is some cold veal.—Here is a calf's head.—Cut some bread.—Give me the loaf.—The poorest of the Russians have a teapot and a copper teakettle, and take tea morning and evening.—It requires an iron hand in a silk glove.—Andrew was Simon Peter's brother.

CCLI.—Knock at the door.—There is no knocker.—She is always cross.—What a pretty gold cross she wears!—She reads better now, and better books.—If I had better paper and a better pen, I would write better.—She has married my brother.—It was our bishop that married them.—Look at this boy.—He looks well to-day.—I have called at your house.—Tell him to call again.—Call the waiter.—I am a bachelor.—They say the plague is at Smyrna.—Don't plague me.—When Cromwell gave half-a-crown a-day to every dragoon, he readily got recruits for the Parliamentary armies.

CCLII.—The sons of the emperors of Russia take the title of Grand-Duke.—Take my horse to the stable.—Take the saddle to the saddler.—If you are going to Canterbury, take me with you.—Take this bonnet to your sister.—I take a cup of coffee every morning.—It has rained all the morning.—I will go and see you on Friday evening; I shall spend the evening with you.—He has spent all his money.—I come from Paris, and I will return to-morrow.—I am going to Paris, and I will return next week.—Return me my money.—Have I not returned it to you?—Gardener, have you swept all the walks?—Good-bye, ladies; I wish you a pleasant walk.

---

## 626. OF ABBREVIATIONS.

There are certain French words which it is customary to abridge and represent by capital letters, as follows :—

J.C.	for	Jésus-Christ.
N.S.	„	Notre-Seigneur.
N.S.J.C.	„	Notre-Seigneur Jésus-Christ.
S.S.	„	Sa Sainteté.
S.M.	„	Sa Majesté.
LL. MM.	„	Leurs Majestés.
S.M.I.	„	Sa Majesté Impériale.
S.M.T.C.	„	Sa Majesté Très Chrétienne.
S.M.C.	„	Sa Majesté Catholique.
S.M.T.F.	„	Sa Majesté Très Fidèle.
S.M.B.	„	Sa Majesté Britannique.
S.M.S.	„	Sa Majesté Suédoise.
S.A.	„	Son Altesse.
S.A.R.	„	Son Altesse Royale.
S.A.I.	„	Son Altesse Impériale.
S.Ex.	„	Son Excellence.
S.Em.	„	Son Éminence.
M <sup>gr</sup>	„	Monseigneur.
M. or M <sup>r</sup> *	„	Monsieur.
MM. or M <sup>rs</sup> *	„	Messieurs.
M <sup>me</sup>	„	Madame.
M <sup>lle</sup>	„	Mademoiselle.
M <sup>d</sup>	„	Marchand.
M <sup>de</sup>	„	Marchande.
Nég <sup>t</sup>	„	Négociant.
C <sup>ie</sup>	„	Compagnie.

(*Encycl. méthod.—Gram des Gram.—Acad.*)

\* The first is more used in print, and the latter in writing. *Mess<sup>rs</sup>* is also a good abbreviation of *Messieurs*.

~~As~~ The words *Monseigneur*, *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, *Messieurs*, *Mesdames*, *Mesdemoiselles* should not be abridged when addressing the person or persons to whom we apply those titles, but only when we speak of such person or persons.



# FRENCH MEASURES, WEIGHTS, AND MONEYS,

## WITH THEIR ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.

\* \* The *unit* (or standard measure or weight) is in small capitals, the *multiples* in roman type, and the *sub-multiples* in italics.

# MESURES LINÉAIRES.

## Lineal Measure.

<b>MÈTRE</b> . . . . .		3.2808992 feet.
{ <b>Décamètre</b> (= <i>dix mètres</i> ) . . . . .		32.808992 "
{ <b>Hectomètre</b> (= <i>cent mètres</i> ) . . . . .		328.08992 "
{ <b>Kilomètre</b> . . . (= <i>mille mètres</i> ) . . . . .		1093.633 yards.
{ <b>Myriamètre</b> (= <i>dix mille mètres</i> ) . . . . .		6.2138 miles.
{ <b>Décimètre</b> . . . (= <i>dixième de mètre</i> ) . . . . .		3.937079 inches.
{ <b>Centimètre</b> . . . (= <i>centième de mètre</i> ) . . . . .		0.39371 inch.
{ <b>Millimètre</b> . . . (= <i>millième de mètre</i> ) . . . . .		0.03937 "

# MESURES DE SUPERFICIE.

## Superficial Measure.

<b>ARE</b> . . . (= <i>cent mètres carrés</i> ) . . . . .		0.098845 rood.
<b>Hectare</b> . . . (= <i>dix mille mètres carrés</i> ) . . . . .		2.471143 acres.
<b>Centiare</b> . . . (= <i>un mètre carré</i> ) . . . . .		1.196033 sq. yd.

# MESURES DE CAPACITÉ.

## Measures of Capacity.

<b>LITRE</b> . . . (= <i>un décimètre cube</i> ) . . . . .		1.760773 pint.
{ <b>Décalitre</b> . . . (= <i>dix litres</i> ) . . . . .		2.2009608 gallons.
{ <b>Hectolitre</b> . . . (= <i>cent litres</i> ) . . . . .		22.009608 "
{ <b>Kilolitre</b> . . . (= <i>mille litres</i> ) . . . . .		220.09608 "
{ <b>Décilitre</b> . . . (= <i>dixième de litre</i> ) . . . . .		0.17607 pint.
{ <b>Centilitre</b> . . . (= <i>centième de litre</i> ) . . . . .		0.017607 "

# MESURES POUR LES SOLIDES.

## Solid Measure.

<b>STÈRE</b> . . . (= <i>un mètre cube</i> ) . . . . .		1.31 cubic yard.
{ <b>Décastère</b> . . . (= <i>dix stères</i> ) . . . . .		13 cub. yds., 2 ft., 21 inches.
{ <b>Décistère</b> . . . (= <i>dixième de stère</i> ) . . . . .		3 cub. feet, 918.7 cub. inch.

# POIDS.

## Weights.

<b>GRAMME</b> . . . . .		15.432349 gra. troy.
{ <b>Déca gramme</b> . . . (= <i>dix grammes</i> ) . . . . .		5.6438 drams av.
{ <b>Hecto gramme</b> . . . (= <i>cent grammes</i> ) . . . . .		3.527 oz. avoird.
{ <b>Kilo gramme</b> . . . (= <i>mille grammes</i> ) . . . . .		2.204621 lb. av., or 2.679227 lb. troy.
<b>Quintal métrique</b> (= 50 kilogr.) . . . . .		110.231 lb. avoird.
<b>Millier (tonneau de mer)</b> (= 500 kil.) . . . . .		1102.31 "
<b>Tonne</b> . . . (= <i>mille kilogr.</i> ) . . . . .		2204.621 "
{ <b>Déca gramme</b> . . . (= <i>dixième de gramme</i> ) . . . . .		1.5432 grain.
{ <b>Centi gramme</b> . . . (= <i>centième de gramme</i> ) . . . . .		0.15432 "
{ <b>Milli gramme</b> . . . (= <i>millième de gramme</i> ) . . . . .		0.015432 "

# MONNAIE FRANÇAISE.

## ENGLISH MONEY.

Fr. c.	£	s.	d.	dec.
25 00	1	0	0	
*20 00	0	16	0	
19 00	0	15	2.4	
18 75	0	15	0	
17 50	0	14	0	
16 25	0	13	0	
15 00	0	12	0	
14 00	0	11	2.4	
13 75	0	11	0	
12 50	0	10	0	
11 00	0	8	9.6	
*10 00	0	8	0	
9 00	0	7	2.4	
8 75	0	7	0	
7 50	0	6	0	
6 25	0	5	0	
*5 00	0	4	0	
4 00	0	3	2.4	
3 75	0	3	0	
2 50	0	2	0	
*2 00	0	1	7.2	
1 25	0	1	0	
*1 00	0	0	9.6	
*0 50	0	0	4.8	
*0 20	0	0	1.92	
*0 10	0	0	0.96	
*0 05	0	0	0.48	
*0 01	0	0	0.096	

N.B.—The coins now recognised in France as legal currency are indicated by an asterisk (\*) before each amount they represent, viz.: 2 gold pieces (*vingt francs* and *dix francs*); 5 silver pieces (*cinq francs*, *deux francs*, *un franc*, *cinquante centimes*, and *vingt centimes*); the remaining three are bronze coins (*dix centimes*, *cinq centimes*, and *un centime*).

N.B.—The coins now recognised in France as legal currency are indicated by an asterisk (\*) before each amount they represent, viz.: 2 gold pieces (vingt francs and dix francs; 5 silver pieces (cinq francs, deux francs, un franc, cinquante centimes, and vingt centimes); the remaining three are bronze coins (dix centimes, cinq centimes, and un centime).

# APPENDIX.

## AND ETYMOLOGY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION— PHONETICAL LAWS.

##### § I.—HISTORY.

is a member of the group of languages known as the Indo-European, which belongs to the Græco-Latino-Germanic shoot of the north-western or European branch.

It has admitted words of Celtic, Greek, German,<sup>1</sup> Hebraic, Arabic, Italian, Spanish, Persian, American, and Eastern origin.

In prehistoric times by the descendants of the Celts, who came from Bactriana, in Central Asia, and spread over the British Isles, and spoke the Celtic language. The Gauls, who had been driven away from Fokia,<sup>2</sup> about 600 B.C., and settled in the south of France, called the Gauls.

Commercial intercourse by sea with the Romans, and the conquest of the latter to their country, and, 121 B.C., and the Gauls settled in the valley of the Rhône, and was called the Gauls.

The expression "Gaulish" applies to words of German origin imported into Gaul; whilst the expression "German" refers to German words introduced after the sixteenth century.

Its position. It is situated about twenty-five miles N.W.

soon followed by many others. This Roman immigration steadily increased until 50 B.C., when Cæsar, after a struggle of eight years, conquered the whole of the country and named it Gallia.

Wishing to impose their tongue, together with their religion and laws, upon the conquered race, the Romans made the knowledge of Latin the condition on which they conferred honours, dignities, and employments on the Gauls, and thereby induced the higher and cultivated classes of the latter to study, learn, and speak Latin.

The consequence of this policy was that all the public offices were filled either by Roman functionaries, who of course only spoke Latin, or by Gauls who knew and could speak this language; and through these means, Latin, which had been spread in the south by the first Roman colonists, very soon after the conquest achieved by Cæsar, extended over the whole of the country, and became the language of religion, law, and war. In the temples, the natives heard nothing but Latin; in the courts of law nothing but Latin was used, whether the litigants were Romans or not; in war, when the conquered had to sue for peace or for mercy, they were heard only if they spoke Latin.

Considering these facts, and coupling them with the natural and historical law according to which, when two nations blend together in consequence of conquest or otherwise, the language of the more civilized of the two soon prevails over the other and supersedes it, it will be easy to understand why the Kelts very soon spoke only Latin, and forgot their own language so completely that, at the end of the Roman dominion in Gaul, it had almost died out, being spoken solely in Armorica, a small province of the west, now called Brittany.

It must not be supposed that the Latin spoken in Gaul was the language of the great Roman writers and orators, or of the higher classes; it was and could be but the *lingua vulgaris*, the *lingua romana rustica*—i. e., vulgar Latin—such as was spoken in Rome itself by the lower classes of the Roman people, by the rural population, the slaves, the soldiers, and the sailors. Hence the language spoken in Gaul was that of the Roman peasants who had settled there, and of the Roman soldiery that occupied the country, and were in constant intercourse with the natives.

The Romans remained undisturbed masters of Gaul during 500 years. At the end of the fourth century began the inroads of those warlike Teutonic tribes, which finally, in the beginning of the fifth century, overthrew the Roman power in Gaul, and settled there; the West Goths occupying the south-west and the centre up to the Loire, the Burgundians the East, and the Franks all the rest of the country from the Loire to the English Channel.

After the Teutonic invasion and the expulsion of the Romans, complete anarchy prevailed in Gaul; all the political and social institutions perished, and literary Latin disappeared in the general wreck;

but vulgar Latin, the language of the million, survived and continued to be spoken.

Then, in obedience to the historical law mentioned above, the Teutonic tribes, the less civilized of the two races, gave up their own language and adopted that of the Gallo-Romans—i.e., vulgar Latin; and it is at this epoch, the beginning of the fifth century, that vulgar Latin commenced to undergo the process of phonetic decay which was to produce the French language.

At the time of the conquest by Cæsar, Gaul was inhabited by three nations—viz., the Belgæ in the north, the Kelts or Gauls in the centre, and the Aquitanians in the south.

The Belgæ and the Kelts were both of Aryan origin, and their languages did not differ greatly; but the Aquitanians seem to have belonged to the Iberian race, and their language was very different from that of the Belgæ and the Kelts.

Hence, vulgar Latin was differently affected in the various parts of Gaul, not only by the bad pronunciation of the natives, but also by the forms peculiar to their respective languages. However, so long as the Romans ruled, the language spoken in Gaul, in the south, and in the north, was vulgar Latin.

The presence of the Roman officials, colonists, and soldiers, and the knowledge of literary Latin which existed among the higher classes of the Gallo-Romans, operated as powerful checks to the degeneration of vulgar Latin into another language; but when the Romans had been expelled from, and the Teutonic tribes had settled in, Gaul, these checks disappeared, and consequently the phonetic decay—the bad pronunciation—of vulgar Latin, made worse by the presence of the Barbarians,<sup>1</sup> rapidly increased, and to such an extent, that in process of time it produced in Gaul no less than five languages.

In the south, which was inhabited by one people,<sup>2</sup> vulgar Latin,

<sup>1</sup> This does not apply to the Franks, for they had long supplied soldiers to the Roman armies, and had for a long time remained in Rome. Many of their chiefs had been all-powerful with the Roman emperors, and had even disposed of the Purple at their will. The Franks had remained faithful to the Romans; they had, as their allies, attempted to repulse the great invasion of the Barbarians in 406; and they took their share of the spoil in Gaul only after the complete expulsion of the Romans. Even after that time they joined them in wars against the Armoricans, the West Goths, the Saxons, and the Huns. The Franks, therefore, knew and spoke vulgar Latin better than any other Teutonic tribe, and their political and military superiority, by means of which they established their supremacy in Gaul, was due to their long and uninterrupted sojourn in Rome.

<sup>2</sup> The Vandals and the Suèves had, a very short time after their arrival, crossed the Pyrenees; and the West Goths, after the battle of Vouillé (near Poitiers), won over them in 507 by Clovis I., had only retained a small part of southern Gaul, which was called Septimanie, and consisted of about four of the present departments—viz., Gard, Hérault, Aude, and Eastern Pyrenees.

under the influence of a climate and a civilization resembling those of Rome, produced a supple, energetic, and harmonious language, rich in vowel sounds—viz., *the Langue d'oc*.<sup>1</sup>

In the north, on the contrary, on the soil where the Burgundians and the Franks had established themselves, and continued to remain with the Belgæ and the Kelts, vulgar Latin, influenced by a colder climate, an inferior civilization, and ruder manners, gave birth to four harsh and inferior languages, in which nasal sounds abounded—viz., the language of the Isle de France or *Langue d'oïl*,<sup>1</sup> and the *Burgundian*, the *Picard*, and, later on, the *Norman* dialects.

That small portion of the country, the Isle de France,<sup>2</sup> being at first possessed by the most powerful of the Frankish chieftains, and subsequently by the French kings, acquired by degrees a paramount influence in the north; and in proportion as its political importance increased, its language spread abroad, and became the only northern language *written*, whilst the other three dialects, *not being written*, never rose above the condition of *patois*, and remained confined to the provinces where they had been formed; and thus, in process of time, *one language* obtained in the north—viz., *the Langue d'oïl*.

The *Langue d'oc* was short-lived. It had a most brilliant period, and produced much valued poetry; but in the thirteenth century, the war against the Albigenses having broken out, the south was vanquished, and, in 1272, the province called Languedoc passed into the hands of the King of France. The south was consequently incorporated with the north, and thus the *Langue d'oc* received its death-blow; for the *Langue d'oïl* then crossed the Loire, and entirely superseded the *Langue d'oc*, which, *ceasing to be written*, perished, or rather degenerated, within the following century, into a still extant *patois* known as Provençal.

From this epoch, *the fourteenth century*, one language prevailed in France—viz., the *Langue d'oïl*, which was the early form, and the actual and immediate parent of modern French.

Considering now the various sources from which French enriched its vocabulary up to the fourteenth century, we find Keltic, Teutonic, Norman, the *Langue d'oc*, Arabic, and Hebraic.

The words of Keltic origin are few, and were introduced in consequence of their having been adopted by the Romans, and having thus assumed a Latin form.

<sup>1</sup> These two particles, "oc" and "oïl," mean both "yes." It was the custom of those times to use the affirmative particle to designate the language to which it belonged.

<sup>2</sup> The French province which bore this name consisted of Paris and the surrounding district; five of the modern departments have been made out of it—viz., Seine, Seine and Oise, Seine and Marne, Oise, and Aisne.

onic origin, numbering nearly 500, refer to war-hunting, and to the organization of the feudal introduced from the beginning of the fifth century to the fifteenth.

Of Norman origin are not numerous. They relate chiefly to the tenth century, after the conquest of the Normans and of their chief Rollo, to whom in 911 A.D. the province then called Neustria was given in end to their inroads, which had begun with the

from the *Langue d'oc*, mostly during the middle of the twelfth century, are many, and refer to the ideas; they are nautical terms, names of plants, abstract expressions, nouns applying to persons, arts, gardening, precious stones, &c.

Of Greek and Hebraic origin are few. They were introduced to the fourteenth century by the Crusaders and sacred writers and by the learned; a number of words of Greek origin; others refer to those sciences in which the Greeks excelled, viz., astronomy, mathematics, and alchemy.

In the fifteenth century, the period of the natural growth, the formation of the *Langue d'oïl* may be said to have terminated. Acquisitions from foreign languages still continued.

About 500 words of Italian origin introduced in consequence of the conquest of Italy during the fourteenth, the fifteenth, and the sixteenth centuries, and of the long stay of the French in that country.

Of the sixteenth century, the Thirty Years' War, the wars with Germany during the eighteenth, the adoption in French of a few score of German words in military affairs and mining.

The war, known by the name of "the League," having been brought into France in the last years of the sixteenth century, these troops remained in the country until the year 1643; and thus not a few Spanish words were introduced into the language.

Finally contributed, at various periods, a very few words of Indian and Chinese manners, one to religion, one to agriculture, and a few names of fruits.

Of classic Latin, which supplied French with nothing new, French literary and scientific men have introduced a number of words which to-day form a most important part of the French.

Many words have also been formed from the names of objects they designate; or, in like manner, from the

names of the towns where such objects are made, or from the names of writers, scientific men, &c. Such are *mansarde*, from the name of Mansard, the architect who first built that kind of window; *rouennerie*, from Rouen, the name of the town where that kind of cloth is made; *dahlia*, from the name of the Swedish botanist Dahl, &c.

Provençal has also in modern times supplied French with a few words.

Chinese, Turkish, Indic, the various languages spoken in America, Japanese, and the Slavonic tongues have also, at various times and from various reasons, such as trade, political intercourse, wars, &c., contributed a small number of words.

During the present century the English language has, in consequence of a more active commercial intercourse between the two countries, the construction of railroads, and the consequent development of industry, supplied the French tongue with a large number of words relating to railways, sport, equestrian exercises, trade, banking, travelling, manufactories, &c.

If to this we add a very few *onomatopœia*, and some six hundred words the origin of which is unknown, we shall have a complete enumeration of all the foreign elements which French has assimilated.

All these acquisitions, however, whilst considerably enlarging its vocabulary, had no perceptible influence on its structure, its development, or its syntax: the groundwork,—the origin, of French is Latin, and Latin exclusively.

Although derived from Latin, French is different from it in this, that the former is a *synthetic*, and the latter an *analytic* language—i.e., Latin expresses the relations that words bear to one another in a sentence by means of *inflections*, whilst French shows such relations by means of position and prepositions.

In Latin we can say *magister puerum laudat*, but in French we must say *le maître loue l'enfant*; for it is by placing *maître* before and *enfant* after the verb that French shows that the former is in the nominative, and the latter in the accusative case, thus pointing out by *position* what Latin expresses by *inflections*.

In Latin we say *bonitas Dei*, but in French we must say *la bonté de Dieu*; for it is only by introducing the preposition *de* between *bonté* and *Dieu* that French can show that *Dieu* is in the genitive case, thus expressing by a *preposition* what Latin points out by *inflection*.

But a language cannot, and does not suddenly, from being synthetic, become analytic, as is proved by the history of the passage into French of the Latin declension.

In the **FIRST STAGE**, extending from the Roman conquest to the end of the fourth century, the language spoken in Gaul was Latin; it had consequently *five* declensions and *six* cases.

This stage may be extended from the Teutonic invasion to the end of

the eighth century, during which, although the process of phonetic decay<sup>1</sup> had begun and actively progressed, the number of declensions and cases remained the same.

The whole of this stage—covering, therefore, a space of more than eight centuries—was entirely Latin, and we shall call it accordingly the *synthetic period*.

The SECOND STAGE, during which the language spoken in Gaul became the *Langue d'oïl*, must be divided into two parts. The first from the ninth to the twelfth century, during which the tendency of the language to become analytic so asserted itself, that two declensions out of five, and four cases out of six, disappeared; the second, from the twelfth to the fourteenth century, during which the analytic tendency continued, and two more declensions disappeared, although the number of cases did not change.

The whole of this stage, which covers six centuries, and at the end of which there was only one declension and two cases still in existence, we shall call the *half-synthetic period*.

In the THIRD STAGE, from the fifteenth century to this day, the last remaining declension, and one case, the nominative, disappeared out of the two which still existed at the end of the preceding period, and the language became completely analytic.

This third and last stage we shall accordingly call the *analytic period*. Modern French, which is nothing but the continuation and natural development of the *Langue d'oïl*, began, therefore, with the fifteenth century.

## § II.—GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

French is now spoken in France, in Belgium, in parts of Germany and Switzerland, and in the Channel Islands; in Algeria, Guiana, Senegal, New Caledonia, and a few other French settlements; and, finally, in Canada and the Mauritius.

As a set-off against this, it must be stated that about one-half of the inhabitants of Brittany speak a language called in French *Bas-Breton*, which considerably resembles Welsh, and, like it, is of Keltic origin; that about one-fifth of the inhabitants of the department of the North speak Flemish, a language derived from low German; that Catalanian, a Spanish dialect derived from vulgar Latin, is spoken in the department of the Eastern Pyrenees by more than two-thirds of its inhabitants; and finally, that Basque,<sup>2</sup> a very ancient language, the origin of

<sup>1</sup> Already mentioned in pages 362 and 363, which see.

<sup>2</sup> The structure of Basque is polysynthetic, like that of the aboriginal languages of America, and it resembles them in many other points.



which is unknown, is spoken in the department of the Lower Pyrenees by about one-fourth of its inhabitants.

It must also be added that four *patois*, derived from the Langue d'oc, called *Provençal patois*, and very different from French, are generally used and preferred to French in Southern France. These are *Gascon*, *Limousin*, *Languedocien*, and *Provençal*, the names of which sufficiently indicate the locality they occupy.

In the north we find also four *patois*, called *French patois*, from their close connection with, and their strong resemblance to, French—viz., *Normand*, *Picard*, *Lorrain*, and *Bourguignon*, the names of which also show clearly in what provinces they are employed; but these are only used by the rural population.

The existence of these languages and *patois* in France does not, however, prevent French from being spoken, read, written, and understood by everybody throughout the country.

### § III.—PHONETICAL LAWS ACCORDING TO WHICH FRENCH SPRANG FROM VULGAR LATIN.

The alteration of vulgar Latin which produced French is due to three causes: (1) the contraction of words; (2) the suppression of the case-endings; and (3) the confusion of the cases.

The first two of these causes of phonetic decay are the result of a bad pronunciation consequent upon a faulty hearing. In all languages there is, in every word, one syllable accented—i.e., pronounced with a stress of the voice—and one syllable, or more, unaccented. This stress of the voice is called *tonic accent*, and the accented part of the word the *tonic syllable*. Now it is perfectly easy to understand that the rude ear of the untutored Barbarians, the subjects of the Romans, was unable to catch either the delicate unaccented<sup>1</sup> inflections constituting the case-endings, or any other unaccented syllable, whilst it could seize and remember, however imperfectly, the tonic syllable. To this cause is due the important part performed by the Latin tonic accent in the modifications which produced the French language; indeed it is the main cause of them, and of the difference between the two strata of words which are distinguishable in French—viz., *words of popular formation* (i.e., words imperfectly heard and badly pronounced by the mass of the people), and *literary words* formed by the learned from reading.

In the former, the tonic accent lies invariably on the same syllable as it did in Latin; in the latter *not always*.

It must not, however, be inferred from this that the tonic accent

<sup>1</sup> In Latin the tonic accent has two places: it lies on the penult when it is long, and on the antepenult when the penult is short; hence the case-endings were never accented.

occupies in French the same place as it did in Latin : it lies on the same syllable ; but in French words the tonic syllable is the last, except in words ending in *e* mute, in which the tonic accent lies on the penult.

A few examples must be given to illustrate all this, and to show the differences that exist between popular and literary or learned words.

*Ministerium* has produced *métier* and *ministère*.

From the former, *métier*, which is of popular formation, all the unaccented Latin syllables but one, the first, have disappeared, the tonic accent lies on the same syllable as in Latin, but this syllable is protracted into *tier*. In the latter, *ministère*, which is of learned formation, the last Latin syllable only is suppressed, and replaced by the French termination *e* ; all the other Latin syllables are preserved intact, and the tonic accent lies on the same syllable as in Latin—viz., on *tè*.

*Blasphemium* has also produced two words : *blâme* and *blasphème*. From the former, *blâme*, which is of popular formation, all the unaccented Latin syllables have disappeared, and the accent lies in French as in Latin—viz., on the syllable *blâ*. In the latter, *blasphème*, of learned formation, the last Latin syllable alone is suppressed, and replaced by the French ending *e* ; all the others are preserved unaltered ; but the tonic accent, which lies on *phê*, is not on the same syllable as it was in Latin, in which it lay on *blas*.

These illustrations will suffice ; and from them we may derive the main phonetic laws of the formation of the French language as follows :—

In French words of popular formation, most of the unaccented Latin syllables have disappeared entirely, or been considerably shortened ; but the tonic Latin syllable is always preserved, and is generally represented in French by a broad and long sound—*soir* from *serus*. Besides this, the vowels and the consonants have suffered manifold changes : some have been suppressed or transposed, and others have been added.

Distinguishing, therefore, unaccented vowels into vowels preceding the accented syllable *immediately*, and vowels preceding it *mediately*, we find that the former are invariably preserved in French when they are long in Latin—*cimetière* from *cœmeterium* ; and always disappear when they are short—*clarité* from *claritatem* ; whilst the latter, whether long or short in Latin, are always preserved in French—*ornement* from *ornamentum*.

As to the unaccented vowels following the accented syllable, which, in Latin, can only be found in the penultimate or in the last syllable, the unaccented Latin penult invariably disappears in French—*oracle* from *oraculum* ; and so does the last unaccented vowel—*porc* from *porcus* ; or it is changed into *e* mute, which is equivalent to its disappearing—*coupe* from *cupa*.

The vowel *é* is added generally to the beginning of French words derived from Latin ones commencing with *ec*, *em*, *sp*, *et*, a combination

of consonants which, no doubt, the Gallo-Romans found difficult to pronounce, and which they made easier by prefixing *é*, and preserving or suppressing *s*. From this reason we have *escient* from *scientem*, *espérer* from *sperare*, *étude* from *studium*, *étable* from *stabulum*, *esprit* from *spiritus*, &c.

The most important changes affecting the consonants of Latin words upon their entrance into the Langue d'oïl, follow an almost invariable law—i.e., most frequently the permutation takes place between consonants of the same class, of the same vocal organ, and generally from a surd consonant to a sonant one. Thus, for instance, the Latin *t*, a surd dental, is replaced in French by *d*, a sonant dental, but not by a liquid or a labial.

It must be observed here that the northern dialects, although remaining in the condition of *patois*, did not as a consequence wholly disappear when the Langue d'oïl spread into northern Gaul. Many of their words passed into this language, in which they assumed significations differing from those they possessed in the *patois* to which they belonged, and so became coexistent in the Langue d'oïl, and subsequently in French, with other words, which the Langue d'oïl had formed from the same Latin root as that from which they came in the *patois* from which they had been taken. Thus, for instance, *charnier* a charnel-house, and *carrier* a game-bag, both from *carnarium*—the former belonging to the Langue d'oïl, the latter to Picard. The cause of the difference in the spelling is simply that in the former language the Latin *c* hard is represented by *ch*, and by *c* in the other; but both are now coexistent in French, although, as seen above, with a different signification and a different pronunciation.<sup>1</sup>

The addition of consonants generally took place either to avoid the meeting of certain consonants brought together by the suppression of a vowel, as in *humble* from *humilis*, in which *m* was brought close to *l* by the suppression of *i*, and to which *b* was added in the stead of *i*, to separate the *m* from the *l*, and thus make the pronunciation easier; or such addition was made at the end of a few words, from the consonant thus added being found in their Latin primitives—*lis* from *lilius*, used in vulgar Latin instead of *lilium*.

Consonants disappeared from words in consequence of the suppression of vowels—*orge* from *hordeum*; or because they were not pronounced—*tisane* from *ptisana*; or on account of their becoming final by the suppression of the final syllable—*feu* from *focum*.

It must not be supposed that any of these changes were studied and deliberately made; on the contrary, they sprang naturally, and are, one and all, the result of a bad pronunciation arising from imperfect hearing.

<sup>1</sup> *Ch* is generally sounded in French as *sh* in English (in *shop*, for instance); and *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, is sounded like *k*.

The third of the causes which turned vulgar Latin into French—viz., the confusion of the cases—arose also from the same imperfect hearing, which caused the case-endings not to be pronounced, and rendered it impossible for the Gallo-Romans—and, later, for the Teutons—to understand them. Hence the analytic tendency of the language, which produced not only the gradual suppression of the declensions and of the cases, but also the adoption of a non-Latin way of forming the degrees of comparison of adjectives and adverbs by means of the adverb *plus*; hence, also, the formation of adverbs from adjectives by affixing to the latter, instead of the Latin adverbial ending *ter*, the syllable *ment*, derived from *mente*, the ablative case of the Latin noun *mens*; of the passive voice by means of *être* and a past participle, instead of the Latin inflection; and of the future and conditional present by affixing to the infinitive present of verbs the endings of the present indicative, for the future—and of the imperfect indicative, for the conditional present—of the verb *avoir*.

The process of popular formation of the French language may be said to have ended when the remembrance of the Latin tonic accent died out about the end of the twelfth century. From this period, the words added to the language were formed by the *savans*, and no regard was paid in them to the Latin tonic accent. These words, easily recognisable, resemble much more closely their Latin primitives than those of popular formation; and the most important alterations in them chiefly consist in the suppression or modification of the Latin ending—thus *mobile* from *mobilis*, *comput* from *computum*, &c.

Modern French only began when the language had become completely analytic—that is, at the beginning of the fifteenth century, when, the nominative having disappeared, the accusative only remained, and did duty for both. That it was the accusative that remained is amply proved by such forms as *faucon* from *falconem*, *homme* from *hominem*, *femme* from *feminam*—for, had the nominative been preserved, these words would be in French, *fauc*, *home*, *feme*, as the nominative could not have given the *nn* of *homme* and *femme*, and still less the ending *on* of *faucon*.

#### NOTE.

*On the following page will be found an interesting specimen of the*  
 LANGUE D'OÏL *in the ninth century.*

SPECIMEN OF THE LANGUE D'OÏL IN THE  
NINTH CENTURY.

THE OATH TAKEN AT STRASBOURG IN MARCH 842 A.D.  
BY KING LOUIS THE GERMAN TO HIS BROTHER  
CHARLES II., KING OF FRANCE.

*Pro Deo amur, et pro christian poblo et nostro commun salvament, d'ist di in avant, in quant Deus savir et podir me dunat, si salvarai eo cist meon fradre Karlo, et in adjudha et in cadhuna cosa, si cum om per dreit son fradra salvar dist, in o quid il mi altre si fazet ; et ab Ludher nul plaid nunquam prindrai, qui, meon vol, cist meon fradre Karle in damno sit.*

TRANSLATION.

For the love of God, and for the Christian people's and our common safety, from this day forward, in so far as God gives me knowledge and power, I will support this my brother Charles, and in aid and in everything, as one should, in justice, support his brother, so long as he does the same for me ; and will never enter with Lothair into any engagement which, from my will, might be hurtful to this my brother Charles.

## CHAPTER II.

## ETYMOLOGY.

ORIGIN, DATE OF INTRODUCTION, AND USE OF  
THE ACCENTS, APOSTROPHE, DIÆRESIS,  
AND CEDILLA.

THE three accents,<sup>1</sup> acute, grave, and circumflex, the apostrophe,<sup>2</sup> and the diæresis,<sup>3</sup> were borrowed from Greek, and introduced into French by the grammarians of the sixteenth century.

No elision takes place either in the article or any other word, and therefore the apostrophe never appears before the words *ouate*, *oui* used substantively, *onze* and its derivatives; *yacht*, *yole*, *yatagan*, *yucca*, and a few others beginning with *y*; the initial vowels *ou*, *on*, *y*, being treated as consonants.

The same observation applies to the word *huit* and its derivatives, although beginning with mute *h*.

The cedilla<sup>4</sup> was introduced during the sixteenth century, and taken from Italian printing. Before its introduction the soft sound of *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, was indicated by *z* being placed after *c*; thus—*lecum*, now spelt *leçon*.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE LETTER H.

By prosthesis *h* has been added to many French words in the Latin primitives of which it did not exist; sometimes it is mute, as in *huitre* from *ostrea*, *huile* from *oleum*, *huit* from *octo*, &c.; sometimes it is aspirate, as in *haut* from *altus*.

In Latin *h* was strongly sounded, yet it was not pronounced in French; hence it is not found in many French words, although it existed in their Latin primitives: thus *orge* from *hordeum*, *on* from *homo*, *avoir* from *habere*, &c.

Nevertheless, it was added by French scholars about the fifteenth century to many words which had not it before, although they were derived from Latin ones in which it was found; but even then it was not pronounced in French, thus—*homme*, *heure*, *habit*, &c., from *hominem*, *horam*, *habitum*, which before the fifteenth century were spelt *ome*, *cure*, *abit*.

<sup>1</sup> They are used in Greek, but for a very different purpose.

<sup>2</sup> From Greek ἀποστροφος, that which turns away.

<sup>3</sup> In French *tréma*, from Greek τρήμα, a dot,—from τρέω, to pierce.

<sup>4</sup> From Italian *zediglia*, a small *z*.

## ARTICLES.

## § 1. DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The definite article in its several forms is derived from the Latin pronoun *ille, illa, illos, illas*,—1st, by apheresis of the first syllable *il*; 2nd, by the changes shown below:—

Mas. Sing.		Mas. Pl.	
Nom.	<i>il/le</i> has given <i>li.</i>	<i>il/li</i> has given <i>li.</i>	
Acc.	<i>il/lum</i> „ <i>le.</i>	<i>il/los</i> „ <i>les.</i>	
Fem. Sing.		Fem. Pl.	
Nom.	<i>il/la</i> has given <i>la.</i>	<i>il/læ</i> has given <i>li.</i>	
Acc.	<i>il/lam</i> „ <i>la.</i>	<i>il/las</i> „ <i>les.</i>	

The nominative case perished in the fourteenth century, leaving only the accusative form—viz., *le, la, les*.

Combined with prepositions, the following forms of the definite article are found in old French:—

Instead of <i>de le ...del</i>	Instead of <i>à le ...al</i>	Instead of <i>en le ...enl</i>
„ <i>de les...dels</i>	„ <i>à les...als</i>	„ <i>en les...enls</i>

*Del* became successively *deu* and *du*; <sup>1</sup> *dels* was changed into *des* by syncope of the *l*; *al* became *au*, and *als* *aux*, by the change of *l* into *u*; <sup>2</sup> *enl* has disappeared; while *enls* became *els* and *ès* by the successive syncope of *n* and of *l*. This last word *ès* is still in use, but only in such expressions as *bachelier-ès-lettres*, &c.

## § 2. INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

The indefinite article, *un, une*, is derived from the Latin *unus, una*, as shown in the following paradigm:—

Mas.		Fem.	
Nom.	<i>unus</i> has given <i>uns.</i>	<i>una</i> has given <i>une.</i>	
Acc.	<i>unum</i> „ <i>un.</i>	<i>unam</i> „ <i>une.</i>	

The accusative case alone survived, hence the present form *un—une*.

## § 3. PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

The partitive article is nothing but the French contracted article *du, &c.*, the derivation of which is given above, § 1, with a different meaning.

<sup>1</sup> By the permutation of *l* into *u* at first, and subsequently by syncope of the *e*.

<sup>2</sup> The change of *s* into *x* is explained in the Etymology of Nouns, formation of the plural, page 376.

## NOUNS.

## § 1. DERIVATION.

It has been shown in the first chapter that from the ninth to the twelfth century there were in the *Langue d'oïl* three declensions and two cases; that they were reduced during the twelfth century to one declension, without the number of cases changing; and to one case at the end of the fourteenth century, when modern French may be said to begin.

These declensions were the three first of Latin; the two cases were the nominative and the accusative; the oblique cases had disappeared and been replaced by the use of prepositions, and hence the name of *half-synthetic period* given to the space of time comprised between the ninth and the fifteenth century, during which the *Langue d'oïl* existed.

We will give the three paradigms of these declensions:—

Sing.	{ Nom. <i>ala</i>	} aile.	<i>amicus</i>	amis.	<i>pastor</i>	pâtre.
	{ Acc. <i>alam</i>		<i>amicum</i>	ami.	<i>pastorem</i>	pasteur.
Plur.	{ Nom. <i>alæ</i>	} ailes.	<i>amici</i>	ami.	<i>pastores</i>	pasteurs.
	{ Acc. <i>alas</i>		<i>amicos</i>	amis.	<i>pastores</i>	pasteurs.

At the end of the twelfth century, when the number of declensions was reduced to one, the inflections of the second were used for the two others, and hence a complication was created, for the second declension had in the nominative singular an *s* which did not exist in the two others; while in the third there were not a few nouns which had one form for the nominative and another for the accusative singular. The consequence was that, at the end of the fourteenth century, the distinction between nominative and accusative ceased to be made, and the French declension disappeared altogether.

The case which survived was, as already stated, the accusative.

However, a few nouns are derived from the nominative, viz.:—

<i>ancêtre</i>	from	<i>antecessor</i> .	<i>lacs</i>	from	<i>laqueus</i> .
<i>peintre</i>	„	<i>pictor</i> .	<i>lis</i>	„	<i>lilium</i> for <i>lilium</i> .
<i>traître</i>	„	<i>traditor</i> .	<i>rets</i>	„	<i>retis</i> for <i>rete</i> .
<i>legs</i>	„	<i>legatus</i> .	<i>puits</i>	„	<i>puteus</i> .
<i>sœur</i>	„	<i>soror</i> .	<i>queux</i>	„	<i>coquus</i> .
<i>filz</i>	„	<i>filius</i> .	<i>temps</i>	„	<i>tempus</i> .
<i>fonds</i>	„	<i>fundus</i> .	<i>corps</i>	„	<i>corpus</i> .

A few others have different forms and meanings according as they are derived from the nominative or from the accusative, viz.:—



Derived from the Nom.  
*cantor* *chantre* a chorister.  
*senior* *sire* sire.<sup>1</sup>  
*major* *maire* a mayor.  
*pastor* *pâtre* a shepherd.  
*minor* *moindre* smaller.

Derived from the Acc.  
*cantorem* *chanteur* a singer.  
*seniorem* *seigneur* a lord.  
*majorem* *majeur* a major.<sup>2</sup>  
*pastorem* *pasteur* a minister.<sup>3</sup>  
*minorem* *mineur* a minor.<sup>4</sup>

## § 2. NUMBER—FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

The extension of the inflections of the second French declension to the two others, and the disappearance of the nominative case, produced a remarkable change: the only case which remained, viz., the accusative, gave for the singular *ami*, from *amicum*; for the plural *amis*, from *amicos*; so that the *s*, which had previously been the sign of the nominative singular (*amis* from *amicus*<sup>5</sup>), disappeared, and became the sign of the plural. In this way the plural of French nouns generally was, from that time, and is still now, formed by adding an *s*.

Nouns forming their plural in *aux*:—

Acc. { Sing.—*caballum* has given *cheval*.  
 { Pl. —*caballos* has given *chevals*, old French.

Now *s*, *x*, *z*, were used indifferently,<sup>6</sup> and replaced each other as the mark of the plural, and even in the singular; however, *x* was generally preferred to form the plural of nouns ending in *l*; it has been stated, also, that *l* before a consonant was changed into *u*.<sup>7</sup> From these reasons are found in old French *chevals*, *chevalx*, or *chevaux*, or *chevaux*, which led to the formation of the plural of nouns in *AL* and *AIL* by softening these endings into *AU*, and adding *x*; and to nouns ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, not changing in the plural.

By analogy *x* was used also to form the plural of nouns ending in the singular with *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ou*, which accounts for its present use in this instance.

However, as already seen, old French was by no means so particular as the modern language is, and *s*, *x*, or *z*, were indiscriminately used to form the plural even of nouns ending in *u*; hence those few nouns ending in *ou* which nowadays form their plural regularly by adding *s*, such as *verrous*, *licous*, *sous*, &c.; although *hibou*, *chou*, *caillou*, &c., form their plural by adding *x*.

1 The title given to kings and emperors.

2 A person of full age.

3 A clergyman.

4 A person under age.

5 See paradigm of declensions, page 375.

6 We find in old French *vois*, *voiz*, *voiz*, *pais*, *paiz*, *paiz*; *nez* from *nasus*, &c.

7 *Paume* from *palma*, *aube* from *alba*, *autre* from *alter*, and so many others, are a proof of it.

## § 3. GENDER.

The Roman people soon forgot the reasons which had led to the adoption of the neuter gender for certain objects; they very early gave up the use of it, and, in consequence, misapplied the masculine and the feminine.

This mistake had become very frequent under the Empire; it was mentioned and blamed by grammarians; and it is proved by such forms as *templus* instead of *templum*, *membrus* instead of *membrum*, *brachius* instead of *brachium*, &c., which are found in inscriptions on medals, stones, monuments, and tombs, still extant.

It was this ignorance and this confusion that caused the Gauls to reject the neuter gender, which was beginning to disappear from vulgar Latin at the time of the conquest of Gaul by Cæsar, and to confine themselves to two genders alone—viz., masculine and feminine. This fact accounts for French having no neuter.

As to the gender of French nouns derived from Latin, the following broad rule may be laid down: most nouns which were masculine or neuter in Latin are masculine in French; most nouns which were feminine in Latin are feminine in French.

The exceptions are—

1st, Abstract Latin nouns in *or*, which are all masculine in Latin and end in *eur* in French, are all feminine in French, except *honneur* and *labour*.<sup>1</sup> and numerous technical names

2nd, A few feminine Latin nouns in *us* are masculine in French<sup>2</sup> from having been mistaken by the lower classes of the Roman people for masculine, in consequence of their termination in *us*, as—

<i>abîme</i> . . . from <i>abyssus</i> .	<i>aune</i> . . . from <i>alnus</i> .
<i>portique—porche</i> „ <i>porticus</i> .	<i>buis</i> . . . „ <i>bucus</i> .
<i>van</i> . . . „ <i>vannus</i> .	<i>synode</i> . . . „ <i>synodus</i> .
<i>dialecte</i> . . . „ <i>dialectus</i> .	<i>cyprès</i> . . . „ <i>cupressus</i> .
<i>saphir</i> . . . „ <i>sapphirus</i> .	<i>frêne</i> . . . „ <i>fraxinus</i> .
<i>dôme</i> . . . „ <i>domus</i> .	<i>pin</i> . . . „ <i>pinus</i> .
<i>diamètre</i> . . „ <i>diametrus</i> .	<i>platane</i> . . „ <i>platanus</i> .
<i>phare</i> . . . „ <i>pharus</i> .	<i>myrte</i> . . . „ <i>myrtus</i> .
<i>chêne</i> <sup>3</sup> . . . „ <i>quercus</i> .	<i>salut</i> . . . „ <i>salus</i> .

<sup>1</sup> This word was coined during the sixteenth century by the *savans*, who gave it the masculine gender, and endeavoured to restore to nouns in *eur* the gender they had in Latin; but they only succeeded in changing the gender of one word—viz., *honneur*, which had been feminine up to that time.

<sup>2</sup> Figue, yeuse, vigne, ronce, épine, ébène, yèble (or hièble), bourdaine, are feminine. In its dictionary, the French Academy gives *yèble* as mas., and *hièble* as fem., also *viorne* as fem.; but at the word *obier* it is said, “L’obier est un viorne.” Botanists make *hièble* fem. and *viorne* mas., and it is, no doubt, they who are right.

<sup>3</sup> Old French *cheene*, derived from *casnus*, met with in a law of 508, and itself

3rd, By a still greater mistake, a number of neuter nouns were used in the feminine, from their plural termination in *a* being mistaken for a feminine nominative singular, and hence they became feminine in French, as—

<i>arme</i> . . .	from <i>arma</i> .	<i>fête</i> . . .	from <i>festā</i> .
<i>corne</i> . . .	„ <i>cornua</i> .	<i>file</i> . . .	„ <i>fila</i> .
<i>joie</i> . . .	„ <i>gaudia</i> .	<i>graine</i> . . .	„ <i>grana</i> .
<i>idole</i> . . .	„ <i>idola</i> .	<i>enseigne</i> . . .	„ <i>insignia</i> .
<i>œuvre</i> . . .	„ <i>opera</i> .	<i>voile</i> . . .	„ <i>vela</i> .
<i>feuille</i> . . .	„ <i>folia</i> .	<i>merveille</i> . . .	„ <i>mirabilia</i> .
<i>lèvre</i> . . .	„ <i>labra</i> .	<i>paire</i> . . .	„ <i>paria</i> .
<i>tempe</i> . . .	„ <i>tempora</i> .	<i>poire</i> . . .	„ <i>pira</i> .
<i>muraille</i> . . .	„ <i>muralia</i> .	<i>pomme</i> . . .	„ <i>poma</i> .
<i>volaille</i> . . .	„ <i>volatilia</i> .	<i>mer</i> . . .	„ <i>maria</i> .
<i>dépouille</i> . . .	„ <i>spolia</i> .	<i>huile</i> . . .	„ <i>olea</i> .
<i>tourmente</i> . . .	„ <i>tormenta</i> .	<i>étable</i> . . .	„ <i>stabula</i> .
<i>épousailles</i> . . .	„ <i>sponsalia</i> .	<i>étude</i> . . .	„ <i>studia</i> .
<i>pécure</i> from <i>pecora</i> .			

4th, In the following group the first noun is masculine, and the others are feminine from low Latin forms *supposed* to have existed, or actually, but rarely, met with:—

<i>moulin</i> masculine,	from <i>molinus</i> <sup>1</sup> or <i>molinum</i> .
<i>fumée</i> feminine,	„ <i>fumata</i> .
<i>ramée</i> „	„ <i>ramata</i> .
<i>colline</i> „	„ <i>collina</i> . <sup>2</sup>

5th, *Amour* and *délíce* are both masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural,—*amour* in consequence of an attempt of the *savans* of the sixteenth century to restore to nouns in *eur* the same gender as they had in Latin; *délíce* because it has two genders in Latin.<sup>3</sup>

6th, Finally, *été* is masculine because it is derived from *æstus*, heat, not from *æstas*.

*hiver* is masculine because it is derived from *hibernus*, not from *hiems*.

*arbre* is masculine, though derived from *arbor*, perhaps from analogy with the names of trees, which are all masculine.

*sort* is masculine, though derived from *sors*, from analogy with *destin*.

---

derived from a *supposed* Latin form *quercinus*, contracted into *quercnus*. This etymology is plausible, and seems justified by the Italian *quercinò*.

<sup>1</sup> Some etymologists derive it from *molinus*, found in the *Salic law*; others from the Latin expression *molinum saxum*.

<sup>2</sup> *Collinum* has been found in *Columella*.

<sup>3</sup> *Orgue*, from *organum*, is also mas. in the singular and fem. in the plural.

7th, The following have the two genders either from a difference in their derivation, from referring to persons or to things, from the influence of the Latin and of the French endings, or of some word understood. In some cases, however, it seems impossible to discover any reason:—

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| <i>Aigle</i> .  | { eagle, from <i>aquila</i> ; masculine only when it means a male eagle.<br>standard, also a female eagle; feminine according to etymology.   |
| <i>Aune</i> .   | { alder tree, from <i>alnus</i> ; masculine, as the names of all trees (see page 377).<br>ell, from <i>alena</i> , low Latin for <i>ulna</i> ; feminine according to etymology.   |
| <i>Barbe</i> .  | { a Barbary horse, from low Latin <i>barbanus</i> ; masculine according to Latin ending.<br>the beard, from <i>barba</i> ; feminine according to etymology.   |
| <i>Couple</i> . | { a pair, male and female, from <i>copula</i> ; masculine, no reason except usage.<br>a brace, two, also from <i>copula</i> ; feminine according to etymology.  |
| <i>Crêpe</i> .  | { crape, from <i>crispus</i> ; masculine according to Latin ending.<br>pancake, feminine according to French ending; same derivation as above.  |
| <i>Enseigne</i> | { masculine, an ensign or standard bearer.<br>signboard, from <i>insignia</i> , plural neuter of <i>insignis</i> ; feminine from <i>apparent</i> Latin gender (see page 378).   |
| <i>Exemple</i>  | { example, from <i>exemplum</i> ; masculine according to etymology.<br>copy, feminine <sup>1</sup> according to French ending; same derivation as above.  |
| <i>Foudre</i> . | { masculine, a great orator, a great warrior.<br>a tun, from German <i>das fuder</i> ; masculine according to etymology.<br>thunder, <sup>2</sup> thunder-bolt, from <i>fulgur</i> ; feminine according to French ending. |
| <i>Greffe</i> . | { record office, from <i>graphium</i> ; masculine according to etymology.<br>graft, also from <i>graphium</i> ; feminine according to French ending. Was masculine in old French.   |

<sup>1</sup> The feminine is far from being generally admitted in this case, and there is no reason whatever to admit it.

<sup>2</sup> Even in this sense, *foudre* is often used in the masculine in dignified style.

- Guide* . { masculine, a guide.  
rein ; feminine according to French } Doubtful origin.  
ending.
- Hymne* . { an ode, from *hymnus* ; masculine according to etymology.  
hymn (church) ; feminine<sup>1</sup> according to French ending ;  
same derivation as above.
- Livre* . { a book, from *librum* ; masculine according to etymology.  
a pound, from *libra* ; feminine according to etymology.
- Manche* { a handle, from a supposed low Latin form *manicum*,  
and, accordingly, masculine.  
a sleeve, from *manica* ; feminine according to etymology.
- Mémoire* { a memorandum, a memoir, a bill, from *memoria* ; masculine ;  
no reason except usage.  
the memory, also from *memoria* ; feminine according to etymology.
- Mode* . { mood, mode, method, from *modus* ; masculine according to etymology.  
fashion, also from *modus* ; feminine according to French ending.
- Moule* . { a mould, from *modulus* ; masculine according to etymology.  
a mussel, from *musculus* ; feminine according to French ending.
- Mousse* . { masculine, a cabin-boy, from Italian *mozzo*, a lad.  
moss, froth, foam, from German *moos* ; feminine according to French ending.
- Œuvre* . { work of the hand, from *opera* ; feminine according to apparent Latin gender (see page 378).  
a term of architecture, a law term, collection of the works of an engraver or of a musician, the philosopher's stone ; masculine, being probably derived from *opere*, ablative case of *opus*.
- Office* . { duty, divine service, from *officium* ; masculine according to etymology.  
pantry, also from *officium* ; feminine according to French ending.
- Page* . { masculine ; a page, a young male servant ; origin unknown.  
a page of a book, from *pagina* ; feminine according to etymology.

<sup>1</sup> The feminine is far from being generally admitted in this case, and there is no reason whatever to admit it.

<i>Paillasse</i>	{ masculine ; a clown ; derived from clown's clothes being made of straw-bed ticking. a straw-bed, and, by extension, ticking for a straw-bed ; derived from <i>paille</i> by the addition of the affix <i>asse</i> (see page 387) ; feminine according to French ending.	
<i>Parallèle</i>	{ a comparison, from Greek <i>παράλληλος</i> ; masculine according to etymology. parallel lines, trenches ; feminine according to French ending ; same derivation.	
<i>Pendule</i>	{ pendulum, from <i>pendulum</i> , from <i>pendeo</i> ; masculine according to etymology. a timepiece, same derivation ; feminine according to French ending.	
<i>Période</i>	{ highest point, from <i>periodus</i> ; masculine from <i>apparent</i> Latin gender (see page 377). period, same derivation ; feminine according to etymology or French ending.	
<i>Personne</i>	{ a person, from <i>persona</i> ; feminine according to etymology. pronoun, <sup>1</sup> nobody, anybody ; masculine ; no reason except usage.	
<i>Pique</i>	{ spade at cards ; masculine ; no reason can be given, except, perhaps, the influence of the names of the other cards, which are masculine. a pike (weapon) ; feminine according to French ending.	{ Supposed to be derived from Kymric <i>pig</i> , a point.
<i>Poêle</i>	{ a pall, from <i>petalum</i> ; a stove, from <i>pensile</i> ; both masculine according to etymology. a frying-pan, from <i>patella</i> ; feminine according to etymology.	
<i>Poste</i>	{ post, situation, from Italian <i>posto</i> ; masculine accordingly. post (mail), from <i>posita</i> ; feminine according to etymology.	
<i>Relâche</i>	{ masculine ; rest, non-performance ; } both from French feminine ; putting into port ; } verb <i>relâcher</i> .	
<i>Remise</i>	{ masculine ; a fly, a cab ; } feminine form of past participle feminine ; a remittance ; } of French verb <i>remettre</i> .	
<i>Solde</i>	{ balance of an account, from <i>soldum</i> from <i>solidus</i> ; masculine according to etymology. pay of a soldier ; same derivation ; feminine according to French ending.	

<sup>1</sup> As a pronoun, *personne*, distinctly referring to a female, may, like *on*, govern in the feminine the word or words depending upon it : *Personne n'était plus belle que Cléopâtre* (Jullien).

	{ sleep, nap, doze, from <i>somnus</i> ; masculine according to etymology.
<i>Somme</i> .	{ a sum of money, total, from <i>summa</i> ; feminine according to etymology.
	{ a load, burden, from low Latin <i>salma</i> for <i>sagma</i> ; feminine according to etymology.
<i>Souris</i> .	{ a smile, from <i>subrisus</i> ; masculine according to etymology.
	{ a mouse, from <i>soricem</i> ; feminine; no reason can be given except usage.
<i>Tour</i>	{ a turn, a lathe, a tour, a trick, from <i>torvus</i> ; masculine according to etymology.
	{ a tower, from <i>turris</i> ; feminine according to etymology.
<i>Trompette</i>	{ masculine; a trumpeter.
	{ a trumpet, origin unknown; feminine according to French ending.
<i>Vase</i> .	{ a vase, from <i>vasum</i> ; masculine according to etymology.
	{ mud, mire, from low German <i>vase</i> ; Anglo-Saxon <i>vase</i> ; feminine according to French ending.
<i>Voile</i> .	{ a veil, from <i>velum</i> ; masculine according to etymology.
	{ a sail, from <i>vela</i> , plural of <i>velum</i> ; feminine according to apparent gender of <i>vela</i> (see page 378).

## § 4. MODERN FORMATION OF NOUNS.

Besides those nouns which have been derived from vulgar Latin, others have been, and are still, formed in several different ways, viz. :—

(A) By putting together several French words.

(B) By prefixing to French words various particles, derived from Latin, Greek, or any other language.

(C) By adding certain particles, called affixes, of French or foreign origin—1st, to the end of French nouns; 2nd, by replacing the endings of French verbs (especially that of the present participle) by such affixes; 3rd, by adding such affixes to the end of French adjectives.

(D) By using substantively the root of verbs.

(E) By using the infinitive present, the present, or the past participles of verbs as nouns.

(A) *New Nouns formed by putting together several French words.*

These are called compound nouns, and consist—

1st, of an adjective and a noun, as *petit-maitre*, a *coxcomb*.

2nd, of two nouns, as *chef-lieu*, *chief town*.

3rd, of two nouns united by a preposition, as *ver à soie*, *silkworm*.

4th, of a preposition and a noun, as *avant-propos*, *preface*.

5th, of a verb and a noun, as *réveille-matin*, *alarm*.

6th, of an adverb and a noun, as *arrière-garde*, *rear-guard*.

7th, of a verb and an adverb, as *passee-partout*, a *skeleton-key*.

8th, of two adjectives, as *douce-amère*, *bitter-sweet*.

*A List of the French Adverbs and Prepositions used as separable prefixes to form Compound Nouns.*

adverbs	{	arrière, as in <i>arrière-ban</i> , <i>arrière-ban</i> ; <i>arrière-pensée</i> , <i>mental reservation</i> .
		non, as in <i>non-intervention</i> , <i>non-existence</i> .
prepositions	{	après, as in <i>après-dinée</i> , <i>afternoon</i> .
		avant, as in <i>avant-train</i> , <i>fore-carriage</i> ; <i>avant-poste</i> , <i>outpost</i> .
		contre, as in <i>contre-temps</i> , <i>mishap</i> ; <i>contre-accusation</i> .
		entre, as in <i>entre-pont</i> , <i>between decks</i> .
		sans, as in <i>sans-gêne</i> , <i>impudence</i> .
		sous, as in <i>sous-commissaire</i> , <i>sub-commissioner</i> .
		sur, as in <i>sur-arbitre</i> , <i>sur-andouiller</i> .

(B) *New Nouns formed by means of prefixes of Latin, Greek, or French origin.*

These prefixes are either separable or inseparable :—

*Separable Prefixes.*

ex, Latin *ex*, as in *ex-officier*, *ex-ministre*, &c.

mi,<sup>1</sup> Latin *medius*, as in *mi-partition*, *mi-carême*, &c.

vice, Latin *vix*, *vicem*, as in *vice-president*, *vice-recteur*.

*Inseparable Prefixes.*

ante, anti, Greek *ἀντι*, as in *antechrist*, *antiaristocrate*.

anté, Latin *ante* : *antéoccupation*, *antépédicament*.

bis, bi, Latin *bis*, twice : *bisection*, *bivalve*.

circon, circum, Latin *circum* : *circonlocution*, *circumnavigation*.

co<sup>2</sup>, com, con, cor, Latin *cum* : *coassocié*, *compatriote*, *concitoyen*, *corrélation*.

dé (Latin negative prefix *dis*) : *déblucus*, *décarrelage*, *décentralisation*, &c.

inter, Latin *inter* : *interligne*, *interposition*, *interrègne*.

arch, archi, Greek *ἀρχω* : *archevêque*, *archange*, *archiprêtre*, *archichancelier*.

mé, més, Latin *minus* : *mésaventure*, *mésintelligence*, &c.

péri, Greek *περι* : *périmètre*, *périphrase*.

pré, Latin *præ* : *préexistence*, *prédetermination*.

mal, French *adverb* : *malaise*, *malformation*.

pour (the French preposition) : *pourboire*, *pourtour*.

re, ré, r, Latin prefix *red* : *rengagement*, *rebattage*, *réabsorption*.

<sup>1</sup> *Mi* is also used as inseparable prefix in *minuit* and *midt*.

<sup>2</sup> *Co* is used as separable prefix in *co-bourgeois*.



sub, Latin *sub* : subdélégué, subdivision.

super, Latin *super* : superposition.

sur (the French preposition) : surabondance, surcharge, &c.

il, im, in, ir,<sup>1</sup> Latin privative *in* : illibéralisme, illimitation ; immobili-  
sation, immansuétude, impeccabilité, imperméabilité ; inaction, in-  
capacité ; irréflexion, irrésolution.

im, in, Latin preposition *in* : immuration, invigoration.

(C) *New Nouns formed by means of affixes.*

1. *Simply added to Nouns.*

ade, <sup>2</sup> Latin ata, expresses	{	a collection of the objects represented by the simple noun : palissade, from palis.
		the actual use made of the primitive : canonnade, from canon.
ée, Latin ata, expresses	{	the object produced by the use made of the simple noun : limonade, from limon.
		used sometimes as a diminutive : bourgade, from bourg ; peuplade, from peuple.
at, Latin at- us, expresses	{	generally the quantity contained in the simple noun : cuillerée, a spoonful, from cuiller.
		duration of time : matinée, from matin ; soirée, from soir, &c.
é, Latin atus, expresses	{	dignity, office, estate : vicariat, from vicaire ; cardinal- at, from cardinal, &c.
		territory under the authority of the primitive : duché, from duc, &c.
age, <sup>3</sup> Latin aticum, agi- um, expres- ses	{	a collection of the objects expressed by primitive ; vitrage, from vitre, &c.
		a condition : esclavage, from esclave, &c.
		an action performed by primitive : langage, from langue, &c.
ain, en, an, aine, enne, ane, Latin anus, ana	{	used in the formation of nouns expressing nationality : Européen, Catalan, Européenne, Catalane, Napolitain, Napolitaine.
		in nouns expressing the status of persons, their profes- sion, trade, &c. : paysan, châtelain, <sup>4</sup> châtelaine, pays- anne.

<sup>1</sup> *Il, im, in, ir* are the same prefix ; *il* is used with words beginning with *l* ; *im* with words beginning with *b, m, or p* ; *in* with words beginning with a vowel or any consonant except *b, m, p, r* ; and *ir* with words beginning with *r*.

<sup>2</sup> Was introduced through Italian during the sixteenth century. The same Latin affix *ata* had previously produced the French affix *ée*.

<sup>3</sup> The shades of meanings of this affix are such as to baffle classification ; only the most important have been given.

<sup>4</sup> Derived from *chatel*, old French for *château*.

ien, ienne, Latin <i>ian-</i> <i>us, iana</i>	{	used like the preceding to form nouns expressing nationality, and referring to the status, trade, profession, &c., of persons, as <i>Autrichien</i> , <i>Autrichienne</i> , <i>Parisien</i> , <i>Parissienne</i> ; <i>pharmacien</i> , <i>opticien</i> , <i>historien</i> , <i>paroisien</i> , &c.
aie, Latin <i>eta-</i> <i>etum</i>	{	found in a small number of nouns chiefly referring to the place where the primitive is grouped or assembled; thus <i>chênaie</i> , a plantation of oaks, from <i>chêne</i> , &c.
aire, er, ier, ière, Latin <i>arius, ari-</i> <i>um</i>	{	nouns referring to persons, and their professions, trades, &c., the origin or result of which is found in the primitive, as <i>statuaire</i> , from <i>statue</i> ; <i>cocher</i> , from <i>coche</i> ; <i>linger</i> , from <i>linge</i> ; <i>jardinier</i> , from <i>jardin</i> , &c. also names of trees, <sup>1</sup> the primitive being the names of the fruit; <i>oranger</i> , from <i>orange</i> ; <i>pêcher</i> , from <i>pêche</i> ; <i>cerisier</i> , from <i>cerise</i> , &c. names of animals: <i>lévrier</i> , from <i>lièvre</i> , &c. names of places, of vessels, in which the primitive is kept: <i>colombier</i> , from <i>colombe</i> ; <i>sablier</i> , from <i>sable</i> ; <i>huilier</i> , from <i>huile</i> , &c. Many of the latter are feminine: <i>litière</i> , from <i>lit</i> ; <i>tourbière</i> , from <i>tourbe</i> , &c.
ais, <sup>2</sup> Latin <i>ensis</i>	{	chiefly found in nouns expressing nationality: <i>Français</i> , from <i>France</i> , &c.
tion, Latin <i>tio</i>	{	appears in some nouns expressing an action, the result of which is the primitive: <i>certification</i> , from <i>certificat</i> , &c.
esse, sse, La- tin <i>issa</i>	{	used chiefly with stem of verbs, as will be seen further. used to form the feminine of many nouns: <i>duchesse</i> , from <i>duc</i> ; <i>comtesse</i> , from <i>comte</i> ; <i>prophétesse</i> , from <i>prophète</i> ; <i>tigresse</i> , from <i>tigre</i> , &c.
erie, ie, rie, Latin <i>ia</i>	{	added to nouns referring to persons to express faults, professions, and trades: <i>espèglerie</i> , <i>frolicsomeness</i> , from <i>espègle</i> ; <i>étourderie</i> , heedlessness, from <i>étourdi</i> ; <i>boulangerie</i> , a baker's trade, from <i>boulangier</i> ; <i>cagoterie</i> , from <i>cagot</i> , &c. also places, as <i>lingerie</i> , <i>linen room</i> , from <i>linge</i> ; <i>laiterie</i> , a dairy, from <i>lait</i> ; also the names of manufactured products, as <i>argenterie</i> , <i>silver plate</i> , from <i>argent</i> ; <i>soierie</i> , silks, from <i>soie</i> , &c. also collective nouns: <i>infanterie</i> , <i>cavalerie</i> , &c. also territory under the authority of the primitive: <i>baronnie</i> , from <i>baron</i> , &c.

<sup>1</sup> *Laurier* and *peuplier* do not come from this derivation; *laurier* is derived from *laurus*, and *peuplier* from *populus*.

<sup>2</sup> Old French *eis*, *ois*.

ine, Latin <i>ina</i>	{	In the modern formation of French nouns, it is found chiefly in technical expressions, such as <i>fibrine</i> , <i>quinine</i> , &c.
iste, Latin <i>ista</i>		found in nouns applying to persons, and expressing professions, trades, business, political party, religious sect, and the like, such as <i>anatomiste</i> , <i>dentiste</i> , <i>herboriste</i> , <i>papiste</i> , &c.
isme, Latin <i>ismus</i> , Gr. <i>ισμός</i>		chiefly found in technical expressions: <i>idéisme</i> , <i>égoïsme</i> , &c.
ise, Latin <i>itia</i>	{	expresses the condition from which the primitive has sprung up: <i>bâtardise</i> , from <i>bâtard</i> ; <i>gaillardise</i> , from <i>gaillard</i> , &c.
		the thing in connection with the primitive: <i>marchandise</i> , from <i>marchand</i> , &c.
ard, old High German <i>hart</i>	{	refers to persons, animals, and things: <i>gueulard</i> , from <i>gueule</i> ; <i>canard</i> , from <i>cane</i> ; <i>billard</i> , from <i>bille</i> ; <i>brancard</i> , from <i>branche</i> , &c.
		<i>e</i> is added to it in <i>moutarde</i> , from <i>moût</i> ; and also, of course, in such of those words which admit of a feminine form: <i>gueularde</i> , from <i>gueulard</i> ; also found in names: <i>Bernard</i> , <i>Bayard</i> , &c.
ald, auld, ault, aut, Ger. <i>ald</i>	{	found in family names: <i>Arnauld</i> , <i>Marivault</i> , <i>Bonald</i> , &c.
quin, Ger. dim. <i>chen</i>		also as a diminutive: <i>levraut</i> , from <i>lièvre</i> , &c.
	{	used as a diminutive in <i>mannequin</i> .
		found also in <i>lambrequin</i> .
Called French affixes; origin unknown.	{	found only in <i>goujat</i> and <i>verrat</i> .
et, otte		generally used as a diminutive: <i>jardinot</i> , from <i>jardin</i> ; <i>maisonnette</i> , from <i>maison</i> ; <i>fillette</i> , from <i>fil</i> ; <i>agnellet</i> , <sup>1</sup> from <i>agneau</i> ; <i>mantelet</i> , <sup>1</sup> from <i>manteau</i> ; <i>ariette</i> , from <i>air</i> ; <i>chansonnette</i> , from <i>chanson</i> ; <i>historiette</i> , from <i>histoire</i> , &c.
elet, el-ette		used as a double diminutive, and consists of the same as above preceded by <i>el</i> : <i>corselet</i> , from <i>corset</i> ; <i>femmelette</i> , from <i>femme</i> ; <i>bandelette</i> , from <i>bande</i> , &c.
ot, otte		used as a diminutive in proper names and common nouns; <i>Margot</i> , for <i>Marguerite</i> ; <i>Pierrot</i> , from <i>Pierre</i> , &c.; <i>flot</i> , from <i>île</i> ; <i>hachotte</i> , from <i>hache</i> ; <i>ballot</i> , from <i>balle</i> , &c.
aille, Latin <i>lia</i>	{	used in forming collective nouns, and adding an idea of depreciation, disparagement: <i>ferraille</i> , from <i>fer</i> , <i>canaille</i> , rabble, from <i>canis</i> ; <i>valetaille</i> , from <i>valet</i> , &c.
		in <i>muraille</i> , from <i>mur</i> , it is used as augmentative.

<sup>1</sup> Old French *agnel*, *mantel*.

Latin <i>aceus, iceus, icus, oceus</i> .	{	as, asse	used in diminutives, and to express an idea of depreciation : <i>plâtras</i> , from <i>plâtre</i> ; <i>paperasse</i> , from <i>papier</i> , &c. also a collection of the primitive : <i>paillasse</i> , from <i>paille</i> .
			it appears as an augmentative in <i>coutelas</i> , from <i>coutel</i> , old French for <i>couteau</i> .
	{	ace . .	in collective nouns, adding an idea of disparagement : <i>populace</i> , from <i>peuple</i> ( <i>populus</i> ).
		ache . .	collection : <i>panache</i> , from <i>penna</i> .
	{	iche . .	found in <i>pouliche</i> , a filly, from <i>pullus</i> ; as a diminutive, in <i>potiche</i> , from <i>pot</i> , &c.
		isse . .	found in <i>pelisse</i> , a robe made of fur, from <i>peau</i> , derived from <i>pellis</i> .
	{	oche . .	diminutive : <i>sacoché</i> , from <i>sac</i> , a bag.
		uche . .	found in <i>peluche</i> , plush, from <i>pilus</i> .
âtre, Latin aster	{		expression of disparagement : <i>mardâtre</i> , from <i>mere</i> ; <i>gentillâtre</i> , from <i>gentilhomme</i> .
eau, elle, Latin ellus	{		diminutive added to the names of some animals, and expressing their young : <i>pigeonneau</i> , from <i>pigeon</i> ; <i>lionceau</i> , from <i>lion</i> ; <i>faisandéau</i> , from <i>faisan</i> ; <i>caillétéau</i> , from <i>caille</i> ; <i>louveteau</i> , from <i>loup</i> , feminine <i>louve</i> , &c.
			diminutive added to nouns expressing inanimate objects : <i>ormeau</i> , from <i>orme</i> ; <i>monceau</i> , from <i>mont</i> , &c. ; <i>tourelle</i> , from <i>tour</i> ; <i>ruelle</i> , from <i>rue</i> , &c.
			in some cases it is preceded by <i>iss</i> : <i>arbrisseau</i> , <sup>1</sup> from <i>arbre</i> ; <i>vermisseau</i> , <sup>2</sup> from <i>ver</i> , &c.
			found also in nouns applying to persons : <i>jouvenceau</i> , a youth ; <i>jouvencelle</i> , &c.
icule, Latin uculus	{		used to form diminutives : <i>monticule</i> , from <i>mont</i> ; <i>particule</i> , from <i>part</i> , &c.
			used to form nouns referring to persons and expressing their trades : <i>forgeron</i> , from <i>forge</i> ; <i>vigneron</i> , from <i>vigne</i> ; <i>bûcheron</i> , from <i>bûche</i> , &c.
on, Latin onem	{		as a diminutive in Christian feminine names : <i>Marion</i> , from <i>Marie</i> ; <i>Louison</i> , from <i>Louise</i> .
			as a diminutive in nouns applying to inanimate objects : <i>carafon</i> , from <i>carafe</i> ; <i>cruchon</i> , from <i>cruche</i> ; <i>jambon</i> , from <i>jambe</i> , &c.
			as a diminutive to form nouns applying to young animals : <i>brocheton</i> , from <i>brochet</i> ; <i>aiglon</i> , from <i>aigle</i> ; <i>ourson</i> , from <i>ours</i> .

<sup>1</sup> From a supposed Latin form *arboricellus*.<sup>2</sup> From *vermis*, a worm.

- on, Latin *onem* { in many diminutives it is often preceded by *ill*,<sup>1</sup> *er*, and *et*: *négrillon*, from *négre*; *moucheron*, from *mouche*; *feuilleton*, from *feuille*.
- in, Latin *inus* { in a few cases it has the force of an augmentative: *aiguillon*, from *aiguille*; *médailлон*, from *médaille*, &c.
- generally used as a diminutive with proper names: *Perrin*, from *Pierre*.

(C) 2. *Added to the stem of Verbs, or replacing the ending of Present Participles.*

- ade, Latin *ata* { expresses the action meant by the verb: *gourmade*, from *gourmer*.
- ail, Latin *aculus* { expresses objects intended for the performance of the action: *épouvantail*, from *épouvanter*; *éventail*, from *éventer*, &c.
- ance, Latin *antia* { the result of the action: *naissance*, from *naissant*; *obéissance*, from *obéissant*; *défiance*, from *défiant*.
- aison, ation, oison, ison, Latin *ation-em* { the performance of the action: *livraison*, from *livrer*; *légalisation*, from *légaliser*; *fanaison*, from *faner*; *garnison*, from *garnir*; *pendaison*, from *pendre*.
- a condition: *pâmoison*, from *pâmer*.
- ard, German *hart* { applied to persons as a depreciative expression: *pendard*, from *pendre*; *grognard*, from *grogner*; *bavard*, from *baver*.
- e, Latin *a* { expresses the result of the action: *amende*, from *amender*; *annonce*, from *annoncer*; *décharge*, from *décharger*; *blâme*, from *blâmer*, &c., &c.
- eur, euse, esse, trice, Latin *or, osa, issa, trix* { expresses the doer of the action: *menteur*, *menteuse*, from *mentant*; *polisseur*, *polisseuse*, from *polissant*; *danseur*, *danseuse*, from *dansant*; *receveur*, *receveuse*, from *recevant*; *vendeur*, *vendeuse*, *venderesse*, from *vendant*; *chanteur*, *chanteuse*, from *chantant*; *accusateur*, *accusatrice*, from the stem of *accuser*, &c.
- e-ment, Latin *mentum*<sup>2</sup> { denotes the action expressed by the verb: *aboiement*, from *aboyer*;
- or the thing necessary to perform the action: *vêtement*, from stem of *vêtir*;
- or the result of the action: *abrutissement*, from *abrutissant*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> From Latin diminutive *illus*, *illa*.

<sup>2</sup> See affixes added to nouns (page 386).

<sup>3</sup> *Mentum* is the same, but enlarged, Latin affix as *men*: *fragmen*, *fragmentum*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> It is to be noted that, with regular verbs of the 2nd conjugation, this affix

eur, Latin <i>or</i>	{	this affix is, in a few cases, added to present participles to form abstract nouns, thus: <i>pesanteur</i> , from <i>pesant</i> ; <i>puanteur</i> , from <i>puant</i> , &c.
is, Latin <i>ici-us, icium</i>		denotes the result of the action: <i>coloris</i> , from <i>colorer</i> ; <i>roulis</i> , from <i>rouler</i> , &c.
oir, oire, Latin <i>orius, oria, orium</i>	{	expresses the instrument by means of which the action is performed: <i>semoir</i> , from <i>semer</i> ; <i>arrosoir</i> , from <i>arroser</i> ; <i>miroir</i> , from <i>mirer</i> ; <i>mâchoire</i> , from <i>mâcher</i> ; <i>brunissoir</i> , from <i>brunissant</i> ; <i>rôtissoire</i> , from <i>rôtissant</i> . <sup>1</sup>
		the place where the action is performed: <i>parloir</i> , from <i>parler</i> .
on, Latin <i>o, onis, onem</i>	{	used to form nouns referring to persons, and expressing an idea of depreciation, as in <i>grognon</i> , from <i>grogner</i> , &c.
		also expressing objects: <i>jeton</i> , from <i>jeter</i> , &c.
ure, Latin <i>ura</i>	{	expresses action, as <i>allure</i> , from <i>aller</i> ;
		or the result of the action: <i>brûlure</i> , from <i>brûler</i> ; <i>moisissure</i> , from <i>moisissant</i> ; <i>flétrissure</i> , from <i>flétrissant</i> . <sup>2</sup>
ie, Latin <i>ia</i>	{	expresses the same action as the verb, or the result of such action, as <i>flatterie</i> , from <i>flatter</i> ; <i>causerie</i> , from <i>causer</i> ; <i>hâblerie</i> , from <i>hâbler</i> ; <i>tromperie</i> , from <i>tromper</i> ; <i>brusquerie</i> , from <i>brusquer</i> , &c.
et, ette, ot, French affixes—origin unknown		cachet, cachette, cachot, from <i>cacher</i> .

(C) 3. *Added to Adjectives.*

ain, aine, Latin <i>anus, ana</i>	{	in a few metrical nouns: <i>quatrain</i> , from <i>quatre</i> ; <i>sixain</i> , from <i>six</i> ; <i>dixain</i> , from <i>dix</i> .
		in collective numerals: <sup>3</sup> <i>vingtaine</i> , from <i>vingt</i> ; <i>huitaine</i> , from <i>huit</i> , &c.
ce, Latin <i>tia</i>	{	<i>constance</i> , from <i>constant</i> ; <i>décence</i> , from <i>décent</i> ; <i>prudence</i> , from <i>prudent</i> .

replaces the ending *ant* of the present participle, whilst it is simply added to the root of the verbs of the other conjugations, except such of the 4th as are derived from Latin verbs in *aco*, such as *connaissance*, from *connaissant*; *accroissement*, from *accroissant*, &c.

<sup>1</sup> This affix is added to the stem of all verbs except those of the 2nd conjugation, in which it replaces the ending *ant* of the present participle.

<sup>2</sup> See footnote 4, page 388.

<sup>3</sup> The others will be found in the chapter on Numeral Adjectives.

<p>té, ité, Latin <i>tas</i></p> <p>ie, Latin <i>ia</i></p> <p>ise, esse, Latin <i>itia</i></p> <p>on, Latin <i>on-em</i></p> <p>eur, Latin <i>or</i></p> <p>ard, German <i>hart</i></p> <p>aud, German <i>ald</i></p> <p>itude, Latin <i>tudo</i></p>	<p>{ <i>netteté</i>, from net (mas.), <i>nette</i> (fem.); <i>fermeté</i>, from ferme; <i>honnêteté</i>, from honnête; <i>porosité</i>, from poreux (mas.), <i>poreuse</i> (fem.); <i>frivolité</i>, from frivole; <i>supériorité</i>, from supérieur; <i>bonté</i>, from bon.</p> <p>{ found in the names of countries: <i>Normandie</i>, from Normand; <i>Picardie</i>, from Picard; <i>Turquie</i>, from Turc.<sup>1</sup></p> <p>{ in abstract nouns: <i>courtoisie</i>, from courtois; <i>jalousie</i>, from jaloux (mas.), <i>jalousie</i> (fem.).</p> <p>{ found in abstract nouns: <i>franchise</i>, from franc (mas.), <i>franche</i> (fem.); <i>bêtise</i>, from bête; <i>ainesse</i>, from aîné; <i>finesse</i>, from fin; <i>noblesse</i>, from noble; <i>tendresse</i>, from tendre; <i>hardiesse</i>, from hardi; <i>jeunesse</i>, from jeune; <i>sagesse</i>, from sage; <i>richesse</i>, from riche, &amp;c.</p> <p>{ to form expressions of depreciation: <i>grison</i>, from gris, &amp;c.</p> <p>{ found in abstract nouns: <i>laidéur</i>, from laid; <i>aigreur</i>, from aigre, &amp;c.; <i>blanchéur</i>, from blanche, fem. of blanc.</p> <p>{ found in nouns referring to persons, as <i>vieillard</i>, from vieil; and to animals: <i>grisard</i>, from gris.</p> <p>{ found in nouns applying to persons, implying disparagement: <i>lourdaut</i>, from lourd; <i>courtaud</i>, from court, &amp;c.</p> <p>{ found in abstract nouns: <i>platitude</i>, from plat; <i>promptitude</i>, from prompt, &amp;c.</p>
--	--

(D) *New Nouns formed by using substantively the stem of Verbs.*

l'accord	from accorder.	le pardon	from pardonner.
l'éveil	„ éveiller.	le présent	„ présenter.

(E) *New Nouns formed by using substantively—**The Infinitive Present of Verbs.*

le devoir	from verb devoir.	l'être	from verb être.
le pouvoir	„ pouvoir.	le savoir	„ savoir.
le baiser	„ baiser.	le sourire	„ sourire.
le souvenir	„ souvenir.		

*The Participle Present of Verbs.*

le levant	.	.	.	from verb lever.
le couchant	.	.	.	„ coucher.
le battant	.	.	.	„ battre.
le volant	.	.	.	„ voler.

<sup>1</sup> The c final of the adjective being changed into qu to preserve the hard sound.

le protestant (m.), la protestante (f.)	from verb	protester.
le combattant . . . . .	„	combattre.
la gouvernante . . . . .	„	gouverner.
la servante . . . . .	„	servir.
la constituante . . . . .	„	constituer, &c.

A few of these nouns have *e* instead of the *a* of the French present participle<sup>1</sup>—

adhérent, from verb adhérer. | équivalent, from verb équivaloir.

### *The Past Participle of Verbs.*

These are mostly feminine.

Fem.		Mas.	
l'allée	from verb aller.	le clos	from verb clore.
l'arrivée	„ arriver.	l'arrêté	„ arrêter.
l'avancée	„ avancer.	le reçu	„ recevoir.
la tranchée	„ trancher.	le fait	„ faire.
la sortie	„ sortir.	le réduit	„ réduire.

Some which have perished as past participles still subsist as nouns: such is *la chute*, the obsolete feminine form of the past participle of the verb *choir*.

Others are used as nouns, and even as past participles, although the verbs they come from no longer exist. Such are *l'issue*, feminine of the past participle of the obsolete verb *issir*, and *le tissu*, the masculine of the past participle of the obsolete verb *tistre*.

## ADJECTIVES OF QUALITY.

French qualifying adjectives passed into French from vulgar Latin, and followed the same laws of formation as the nouns. They were declined according to the same rules, had the same number of cases, which disappeared gradually, and they retained only one at the end of the fourteenth century. They agreed in gender, number, and case, as in Latin; but as there was no neuter gender in French, so there never was in French any equivalent for the neuter form of the Latin; and consequently, *as far as gender is concerned*, there were, and there are only in French, adjectives of one and of two terminations.

### § 1. DERIVATION.

French adjectives of *popular formation* are derived—

#### 1. *From Latin Adjectives of three terminations.*

Most Latin adjectives ending in *us*, *a*, *um*, have lost their case-end-

<sup>1</sup> This does not apply to *président*, which is derived from the Latin present participle *præsidentem*. In *fabricant*, the final consonant of the stem of the present participle *fabriquant* is changed into *c*.



ings, and, in the masculine, simply consist of the Latin root with or without changes: *plein*, from *plenus*; *noir*, from *nigrus*; *bon*, from *bonus*; *ron**d*, from *rotundus*.

However, many adjectives of this class, the Latin root of which ends with a dental, a guttural, or a liquid, not only lose their case-ending, but also add *e*. Many of these are adjectives ending in *arius*, *orius*, *icus*, *idus*, *imus*, &c., thus: *volontaire*, from *voluntarius*; *aratoire*, from *aratorius*; *fantastique*, from *fantasticus*; *aride*, from *aridus*; *infime*, from *infimus*; *ample*, from *amplus*, &c.

In the Latin adjectives ending in *er*, *era*, *erum*, the case-ending has also disappeared, and been replaced by *e*; and in the case of two liquids being brought together by the syncope of the last *e* of the Latin root, the consonant *b*, *d*, or *t*, is inserted, thus: *tendre*, from *tenerum*; *âpre*, from *asperum*, &c.

In the Latin adjectives ending in *er*, *is*, *e*, the same suppression of the case-ending occurs, together with the addition of *e*: *âcre*, from *acrem*, &c.

## 2. From Latin Adjectives of two terminations.

Many Latin adjectives ending in *is*, *e*, have lost their case-ending, and, in the masculine, simply consist of the root, with or without alteration: *fort*, from *fortem*; *fatal*, from *fatalem*; *meilleur*, from *melior-em*, &c. In some, the root of which ends in *al*, this *a* has been, besides, changed into *e*: *mortel*, from *mortalem*.

Most of the Latin adjectives of two terminations, however, not only lose their case ending, but add *e* to the Latin root: *triste*, from *tristem*; *fidèle*, from *fidelem*; *difficile*, from *difficilem*.

## 3. From Latin Adjectives of one termination.

Most of these adjectives lose their case-ending and add *e*: *vorace*, from *voracem*; *rapace*, from *rapacem*; whilst others simply lose their case-ending without adding *e*: *prudent*, from *prudentem*; *présent*, from *præsentem*, &c.

## § 2. FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

The feminine of French adjectives is formed by changing the Latin feminine termination, whatever it may be, into *e* mute. Hence, when the masculine ends in *e* mute no change occurs, and the feminine is like the masculine.

However, all adjectives of two terminations in Latin were common gender in old French—i.e., did not add *e* for the feminine. This lasted until the fourteenth century,<sup>1</sup> when, the cause of this deviation from the general rules of the language being no longer understood, *e* mute

<sup>1</sup> Up to that time we find *une grand femme*, *une maladie mortel*, *une robe vert*, &c., from *grandis*, *mortalis*, *viridis*, having only one form for the masculine and the feminine.

was added also to these adjectives when used with a feminine noun. This accounts for the forms *grand'route*, *grand'mère*, *grand'faim*, &c., which are but a remnant of the old spelling.

As to the apostrophe found in these compound nouns, it was added, during the seventeenth century, by the grammarian Vaugelas, who, in his ignorance of old French, thought that the *e* had been left out for the sake of euphony.

### § 3. IRREGULARITIES IN THE FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

The irregularities, more apparent than real, which occur in the formation of the feminine of French adjectives, are generally accounted for by their being derived from the Latin root.

Thus adjectives in *eux* form their feminine in *se*, from this *s* being the final consonant of the Latin root: *glorieux* (mas.), *glorieuse* (fem.), from *gloriosa*; *jalous* (mas.), *jalousie* (fem.), from *zelosa*; *amoureux* (mas.), *amoureuse* (fem.), from *amorsa*, &c. This rule has been extended to all adjectives ending in *eux*, whether or not coming from this Latin form, and also to adjectives in *eur*, derived from verbs (such as *menteuse*, from *menteur*), most of which are derived from Latin words in *or*.

Adjectives in *f* change *f* into *v*, from the latter being final of the Latin root:—

<i>actif</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>active</i> , from <i>activ us</i> , -a.		<i>bref</i> , <i>brève</i> , from <i>brev is</i> .
<i>neuf</i> , <i>neuve</i> , „ <i>nov us</i> , -a.		<i>vif</i> , <i>vive</i> , „ <i>viv us</i> , -a.

Adjectives in *x* and *s* have their feminine ending in *sse*, either from that double *s* already existing in the Latin root, or to preserve the hissing sound of it:—

<i>roux</i> , <i>rousse</i> , from <i>russ us</i> .		<i>bas</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>basse</i> , from <i>bass us</i> .
<i>faux</i> , <i>fausse</i> , <sup>2</sup> „ <i>fals us</i> .		<i>gros</i> , <i>grosse</i> , „ <i>gross us</i> .
<i>épais</i> , <i>épaisse</i> , „ <i>spiss us</i> .		<i>expres</i> , <i>expresse</i> , „ <i>express us</i> .
<i>profès</i> , <i>professe</i> , „ <i>profess us</i> .		<i>las</i> , <i>lasse</i> , „ <i>lass us</i> .
<i>gras</i> , <i>grasse</i> , from <i>grass us</i> (low Latin for <i>crass us</i> ).		

By a similar reason, *doux* has for feminine *douce* from *dulc|is*.<sup>4</sup>

Adjectives in *l* double that *l* in the feminine, from it being double in Latin:—

<i>belle</i> from <i>bell us</i> , -a.		<i>nouvelle</i> from <i>novell us</i> , -a.
<i>nulle</i> „ <i>null us</i> , -a.		<i>folle</i> „ <i>fol is</i> .
<i>molle</i> from <i>moll is</i> .		

<sup>1</sup> When *v* should be final in French by the suppression of a Latin termination, it is changed into *f*.


<sup>2</sup> The *s* is doubled to preserve its hissing sound.

<sup>3</sup> *Ras*, *rase*, from *rasus*, is regular.

<sup>4</sup> *Préfix* is the only adjective in *x* which forms its feminine regularly: *préfixe*, from *præfixus*-a.

Adjectives in *el* and *eil* double the final *l* in the feminine, although it is not doubled in Latin, perhaps from analogy with those which had *ll* in Latin, thus—

<i>quelle</i> ,	feminine of <i>quel</i> ,	from <i>qualis</i> .
<i>oruelle</i> ,	„ <i>cruel</i> ,	„ <i>crudelis</i> .
<i>mortelle</i> ,	„ <i>mortel</i> ,	„ <i>mortalis</i> , &c.
<i>pareille</i> ,	„ <i>pareil</i> .	
<i>vieille</i> ,	„ <i>vieil</i> . <sup>1</sup>	

 This applies also to those adjectives the masculine of which ends in *eau*, and terminated in old French in *el*, thus: *jumelle*, from *jumel*, old French for *jumeau*.

Adjectives in *ien* and *on* double their last consonant in order to restore to the *e* and *o* their opened sound in lieu of the nasal pronunciation of the masculine: *ancienne*, from *ancien*; *bonne*, from *bon*, &c.

Those in *er* have in the feminine a grave accent over the *e* preceding *r*, to indicate the broad sound that must be given it, in order to pronounce, in the feminine, the *r* which is silent in the masculine, in which *er* are sounded together as *é*<sup>2</sup>—e.g., *légère*, from *léger*; *première*, from *premier*, &c.

Adjectives in *et* or *ot* double *t* when this form is purely French, or when that *t* is found in Latin after *c* or close to *d* by the syncope of a vowel, thus—

<i>brunette</i> <sup>3</sup>	from <i>brunet</i> .	<i>vieillotte</i>	from <i>vieillot</i> , dim. from <i>vieil</i> .
<i>muette</i>	„ <i>muet</i> .	<i>bellotte</i>	„ <i>bellot</i> „ <i>bel</i> .
<i>sujette</i> ,	feminine of <i>sujet</i> , from <i>subjec</i>   <i>tus</i> .		
<i>nette</i>	„ <i>net</i> , „ <i>nit</i>   <i>i</i> <i>us</i> .		

But if in Latin *t* follows *e* or *o*, it is not doubled in French, hence—

<i>complète</i> ,	feminine of <i>complet</i> , from <i>completus</i> .
<i>concrète</i> ,	„ <i>concret</i> , „ <i>concretus</i> .
<i>discrète</i> ,	„ <i>discret</i> , „ <i>discretus</i> .
<i>inquiète</i> ,	„ <i>inquiet</i> , „ <i>inquietus</i> .
<i>replète</i> ,	„ <i>replet</i> , „ <i>repletus</i> .
<i>secrète</i> ,	„ <i>secret</i> , „ <i>secretus</i> .
<i>dévôte</i> ,	„ <i>dévo</i> t, „ <i>devotus</i> .

*Caduc*, *turc*, *public*, and *franc*,<sup>4</sup> change *c* into *que* in their feminine, *caduque*, *turque*, *publique*, *franque*, to preserve the hard sound of *c*.

<sup>1</sup> This adjective has two forms for the masculine—viz., *vieux*, from the nominative *veclus*, and *vieil*, from the accusative *veclum*, vulgar Latin for *vetulus*, *vetulum*.

<sup>2</sup> This does not apply to monosyllabic adjectives in *er*, in which *r* is pronounced both in the masculine and in the feminine, yet they also have a grave accent over the *e* in the feminine.

<sup>3</sup> Diminutive of *brun*, which is derived from high German.

<sup>4</sup> The name given by Eastern people to the inhabitants of Western Europe;

For the same reason *grec* adds *que*: *grecque*; and *long* inserts *u* before *e* to preserve the hard sound of *g*: *longue*.

Two adjectives in *c* form their feminine in *che*, from this letter *c* being changed into *ch* at the time of the passage of the Latin words into French<sup>1</sup>—

*sèche*, feminine of *sec*, from *siccus*.

*franche*, „ „ *franc*, „ „ *francus*.<sup>2</sup>

*Fraiche*, from *frais*, is derived from the German *frisch*.

*blanche*, „ *blanc*, „ „ „ high German *blanch*.

In other adjectives, we find in the feminine some letters which do not exist in the masculine, and this again comes from the Latin form; thus we have—

*coite*, feminine of *coi*, from *quie*|*t*|*us*.

*favorite*, „ „ *favori*, „ „ *favori*|*t*|*us*.

*bénigne*, „ „ *bénin*, „ „ *beni*|*g*|*nus*.

*maligne*, „ „ *malin*, „ „ *mali*|*g*|*nus*.

*tierce*,<sup>3</sup> „ „ *tiers*, „ „ *ter*|*t*|*us*.

#### § 4. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

In Latin the comparative of adjectives was formed by adding the affix *ior*, and the superlative by adding the affix *issimus*, *-a*, *-um* to the positive after taking away the ending of the genitive singular; and when the adjective ended with a vowel, the adverb *magis* was placed before the positive to form the comparative, and *maxime* to form the superlative.

The latter form passed into French in consequence of the tendency of this language to become analytic; only, instead of the same adverb being used in French, *plus* was chosen to form the comparative, and replaced *magis*, whilst the newly formed article was placed before *plus* to form the superlative.

Nevertheless, in old French there were a great many adjectives which formed their comparative in *or* and their superlative in *ime*, and several of them are still extant in modern French: *meilleur*, from *meliozem*; *pire*, from *pejor*; *moindre*, from *minor*. Some adjectives in *érieur* have the same origin, and without being actual comparatives, yet express an idea of comparison: *supérieur*, *ultérieur*, *antérieur*, &c., and also *majeur* and *mineur*.

---

also the name of the Franks, the Teutonic tribe which conquered a part of Gaul during the fifth century.

<sup>1</sup> Compare *mouche*, from *musca*; *bouche*, from *bucca*; *cheval*, from *caballus*; *charnier*, from *carnarium* (see page 370).

<sup>2</sup> Supposed to be low Latin, and derived from the Teutonic word *Frank*, a free man.

<sup>3</sup> The change of Latin *ti* into *c* in the corresponding French word is very frequent.

In the same manner have been formed a number of words, which are used as marks of respect, by adding to nouns or adjectives expressing dignity, rank, title, the affix *issime*, which gives them the force of a superlative absolute: such are *excellentsissime*, *révérentissime*, &c. This affix is also used sometimes with many adjectives, to give them additional force or emphasis—e.g., *rarissime*, *grandissime*, &c. It is also found in the noun *généralissime*.

Some adjectives, expressing the quality in a very high degree, are derived from Latin superlatives: such are *extrême*, Latin *extremus* for *exterimus*, comparative of *exterus*; *infime*, from *infinus*, comparative of *inferus*, &c.

### § 5. MODERN FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES OF QUALITY.

Besides those adjectives which have been derived from vulgar Latin, other adjectives have been, and are still formed, in various ways:—

(A) By putting together several adjectives.

(B) By prefixing to them certain particles or words of foreign or French origin.

(C) By adding certain particles called affixes, of French or foreign origin, 1st, to the end of French nouns; 2nd, to the stem of French verbs; 3rd, to the end of French adjectives.

(D) By using adjectively French present and past participles.

(A) *New Adjectives formed by putting together several Adjectives.*

Of these there are very few; they consist of two adjectives, as in *aigre-doux*, *grand-ducal*, &c.

(B) *New Adjectives formed by prefixing words or particles which modify the meaning of the simple Adjectives.*

These prefixes are either separable or inseparable.

#### *Separable Prefixes.*

*demi*, half, from French: *demi-lucide*, *demi-transparent*, *demi-fin*, *demi-méchant*.

*extra*,<sup>1</sup> from Latin: *extra-fin*, *extra-légal*, *extra-oculaire*.

*sous*, under, from French: *sous-jacent*, *sous-ligneux*, *sous-marin*.

*ultra*, from Latin: *ultra-libéral*, *ultra-réglementaire*, *ultra-royaliste*.

#### *Inseparable Prefixes.*

*anté*, Latin *ante*: *antédiluvien*, *anténuptial*, &c.

*anti*, Greek *ἀντι*, against: *antiseptique*, *antisocial*, *antiraisonné*.

*dé*, *dés*, *dis*, Latin negative prefix *dis*: *déloyal*, *discourtois*, *déshonnête*, &c.

<sup>1</sup> *Extra* is also used as an inseparable prefix in *extraordinaire* and *extrajudiciaire*.

archi,<sup>1</sup> from Greek *ἀρχει* : archiducal, archiépiscolal, archifaux, archi-bon.

circum, circum, Latin *circum* : circompolaire, circumsolaire, &c.

bien, from French, *well* : bienveillant, bienvenu, bienséant, bienaimé, &c.

co, Latin *cum* : coégal, coéternel, coexistant, coindicant, &c.

il, im, in, ir,<sup>2</sup> Latin privative *in* : illégitime, illabourable, illégal, illicite, imbuvable, impayable, immanquable, immobilier, incroyable, inoffensif, irrésolu, irréparable.

inter, from Latin : interlinéaire, interocéanique.

mal, from French, *ill* : malhabile, malgracieux, malfaisant, malsain.

super, from Latin : superfin, supersensible, &c.

sur, from French : surfin, surnaturel, surabondant, &c.

uni, from French : unilatéral, unilobé, unidenté, univalve.

(C) *New Adjectives formed by means of affixes.*

1. *Added to Nouns.*

from Latin <i>anus, aneus</i>	{	an . .	{ mahométan, from Mahomet ; persan, from Perse, &c.
		ané . .	{ instantané, from instant, &c.
		ain . .	{ républicain, from république ; mondain, from monde ; Africain, from Afrique, &c.
		en, ien	{ Italien, from Italie ; Athénien, from Athènes ; Prussien, from Prusse, &c.
from Latin <i>arius</i>	{	aire . .	{ parlementaire, from parlement ; réglementaire, from réglement.
		er . .	{ potager, from potage ; ménager, from ménage.
		ier . .	{ nourricier, from nourrice ; rancunier, from rancune ; minier, from mine.
from Latin <i>atus</i>	{	é . .	{ rusé, from ruse ; perlé, from perle ; gradé, from grade ; âgé, from âge.
from Latin <i>alis</i>	{	el . .	{ industriel, from industrie.
from Italian <i>esco</i>	{	esque .	{ romanesque, from roman.
from Latin <i>osus</i>	{	eux . .	{ dangereux, from danger ; amoureux, from amour. <sup>3</sup>
from Latin <i>icus</i>	{	ique . .	{ apathique, from apathie ; sympathique, from sympathie ; also in technical expressions, nitrique, from nitre, &c.

<sup>1</sup> *Archi*, when prefixed to adjectives, is invariable, but loses its *i* when prefixed to nouns beginning with a vowel (see page 383).

<sup>2</sup> See footnote<sup>1</sup>, page 384.

<sup>3</sup> There is also *morose* from *morosus*.

from Latin	{	in . .	{	enfantin, from enfant.
inus				
from Latin	{	u . .	{	branchu, from branche; pointu, from pointe; tête, from tête.
utus				

## (C) 2. Added to the stem of French Verbs.

if, Latin ivus	{	craintif, from craindre; plaintif, from plaindre; pensif, from penser. <sup>1</sup>
able, ible, Latin bilis	{	concevable, from concevoir; recevable, from recevoir; mangeable, from manger; saisissable, from saisissant, present participle of saisir; serviable, from servir; flexible, from flexibilis, derived from flexum, supine of flectere; indicible, from dicere; exigible, from exiger; corrigible, from corriger.
ard, German hart	{	nasillard, from nasiller; trainard, from trainer.

## (C) 3. Added to Adjectives.

âtre, Latin aster	{	found chiefly, as a diminutive, in adjectives expressing colour, bleuâtre, bluish, from bleu; also as a depreciative, as in bellâtre, from bel; doucétre, sweetish, from douce; also as a diminutive, folâtre, from fol, &c.
asse, Latin acus	{	expresses depreciation, as in bonasse, from bon; mollasse, from mou, mol, &c.
et, elet, ot, ette, elette, otte; origin unknown	{	aigret, aigrelet, from aigre; grandet, grandelet, from grand; vieillot, from vieil; bellot, from bel, &c.; <sup>2</sup> and their feminine: aigrette, aigrette, grandette, grandelette, vieillotte, bellotte, &c.

## (D) Present and Past Participles used adjectively.

## Present Participles.

Many present participles are used adjectively, and they are inflected as real adjectives: *un enfant aimant, une fille aimante, des enfants aimants, des filles aimantes.*

Some present participles are only used as adjectives, and are derived from verbs which have perished. Such are—

*galant*, from old French verb *galer*.

*béant*, „ „ *béer, baer, or bayer.*

*nonchalant*, „ „ *chaloir, and the prefixed negative non.*

The spelling of the following is different, when they are used adjectively, from that of the present participle; thus—

<sup>1</sup> There is also *maladif* from *malade*, and *oisif* from *otium*.

<sup>2</sup> These affixes are all diminutives.

as a present participle *intriguant*, as an adjective *intrigant*.

„	„	<i>fatigant</i> ,	„	„	<i>fatigant</i> .
„	„	<i>extravagant</i> ,	„	„	<i>extravagant</i> .

In a few others *e* is found instead of *a*, owing to their deriving from Latin present participles.

<i>excellent</i> from <i>excellens</i> .		<i>différent</i> from <i>differentem</i> .
<i>négligent</i> „ <i>négligentem</i> .		<i>précédent</i> „ <i>precedentem</i> .

### Past Participles.

A large number of past participles are used adjectively, and are, of course, inflected as adjectives.

<i>un homme réfléchi.</i>		<i>des hommes réfléchis.</i>
<i>une femme réfléchie.</i>		<i>des femmes réfléchies.</i>

## § 6. NUMERALS.

### Cardinal Adjectives.

With the exception of zero (0), which came into French from the Arabic *cifrum* or *cifron*, through the Italian *zero*, itself an alteration of the early word *zefiro*, which was used in Italian before the fifteenth century, all the numbers are derived from Latin, thus:—

<i>un, une</i> . . . from <i>unum, unam</i> .		<i>six</i> . . . from <i>sex</i> .
<i>deux</i> . . . „ <i>duo</i> .		<i>sept</i> . . . „ <i>septem</i> .
<i>trois</i> . . . „ <i>tres</i> .		<i>huit</i> . . . „ <i>octo</i> .
<i>quatre</i> . . . „ <i>quatuor</i> .		<i>neuf</i> <sup>1</sup> . . . „ <i>novem</i> .
<i>cing</i> . . . „ <i>quinque</i> .		<i>dix</i> . . . „ <i>decem</i> .

*Octo* became *huit* by the regular change of *c* into *i*,<sup>2</sup> which gave the old French *oit*, and by the subsequent softening of *o* into *u*, and the prosthesis of the *h*, which produced the present form.

*Onze, douze, treize, quatorze, quinze, and seize* were respectively formed from *undecim, duodecim, tredecim, quatuordecim, quindecim, and sedecim*, by the regular suppression of the short *e* following *d*, and of the final syllable *im*, and the regular change of *c* into *z*.

*Dix-sept, dix-huit, dix-neuf*<sup>3</sup> are derived from the Latin forms *decem et septem, decem et octo, decem et novem*, which the Roman people preferred to the classic form *septemdecem, duodeviginti, undeviginti*.

*Vingt*,<sup>4</sup> *trente*,<sup>4</sup> *quarante*,<sup>4</sup> *cinquante*,<sup>4</sup> *soixante*,<sup>4</sup> come respectively from *viginti, triginta, quadraginta, quinquaginta, sexaginta*.

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 1, page 393.

<sup>2</sup> See footnote, page 423.

<sup>3</sup> Until the thirteenth century these numbers were the exact reproduction of the Latin—viz., *dix et sept, dix et huit, dix et neuf*; the conjunction *et* disappeared only in the second half of that century.

<sup>4</sup> In old French those numbers were *vinz, vint, véint; tréante, quaréante, cingéante, seisante, sessante, sizante*.



As to the forms *soixante-dix*, *quatre-vingts*, *quatre-vingt-dix*, it is necessary to explain that the Kelts used to reckon by the score (a form still found in Welsh, in Highland Scotch, in Manx, in Bas-Breton); they used to say, for instance, *vingt et dix* instead of 30. When, after the Roman conquest, they were compelled to adopt the Roman system, they managed to preserve a remnant of their own method, which has come down to us in the numbers from 70 to 99.

Until the eighteenth century it was the custom to use this way of reckoning: thus in the works of Racine, Voltaire, &c., *sept vingts* for 140; *six vingts mille hommes* for 120,000 men, and the like, are constantly used instead of the present form.

St Louis having, in the thirteenth century, founded an asylum for 300 blind men, it was, and *is still*, called *Quinze-Vingts*. ( $15 \times 20 = 300$ ).

During the French Revolution, when the decimal system was established, there was an attempt made to reintroduce the old Roman words *septante* for seventy, *octante* for eighty, and *nonante* for ninety, but it failed. However, those expressions are used in a part of Italy, in Belgium, and in the south of France.

*Cent* comes from *centum*.

For 1000 there are two words—viz., *mil*, which is derived from *mille*, which means one thousand; and *mille*, derived from *millia*, the plural of the Latin *mille*. *Mil* was used in old French until the fourteenth and even the fifteenth century; thus *mil hommes*, 1000 men. It is now obsolete except in expressing dates of the Christian era, but it must disappear altogether when the year 2000, *deux mille*, arrives.

These two different forms show why *mille* never takes the mark of the plural, as *vingt* and *cent* do.

*Million* and *milliard* are derived from the French *mille* by the epithesis of the affixes *on*, taken from the Italian *millione*, and *ard*, which had been imported by the Teutonic tribes.

*Ambe*, from *ambo*, is now obsolete as a numeral adjective, but it is still used as a noun; it is a gambling expression.

### Ordinal Adjectives.

In old French the ten first ordinal numbers were derived from Latin as follows:—

<i>prime</i> . . .	from <i>primus</i> .	<i>sixte</i> . . .	from <i>sextus</i> .
<i>second</i> . . .	„ <i>secundus</i> .	<i>setme</i> . . .	„ <i>septimus</i> .
<i>tiers</i> . . .	„ <i>tertius</i> .	<i>oitave</i> . . .	„ <i>octavus</i> .
<i>quart</i> . . .	„ <i>quartus</i> .	<i>none</i> . . .	„ <i>nonus</i> .
<i>quint</i> . . .	„ <i>quintus</i> .	<i>dime</i> . . .	„ <i>decimus</i> .

They disappeared about the fifteenth century, but not without leaving some traces of their existence in the language.

Thus *prime* is still used as a fencing term; also in the expressions *prime-abord*,<sup>1</sup> *prime-saut*,<sup>2</sup> *prime-sautier*,<sup>2</sup> *prime-face*.<sup>3</sup>

*Second* is still in use together with *deuxième*.

*Tiers* is still used in the expressions *un tiers* ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ), *deux tiers* ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ); *un tiers*, a third person; *tiers-arbitre*, umpire; *tiers-état*; <sup>4</sup> *tiers-parti*; <sup>5</sup> *tiers-saisi*, law term; *le tiers et le quart*, all sorts of people; *être en tiers avec quelqu'un*, to go thirds with any one; *tiers-point*, tierce-point, also a saw-file; in *tierce*, musical and fencing term, and at cards; *fièvre tierce*, tertian ague; *main tierce*, *maison tierce*, the hand, the house of a third person; *tierce personne*, third party.

*Quart* is found in *un quart* ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), *trois quarts* ( $\frac{3}{4}$ ); La Fontaine (seventeenth century) still used it as an ordinal adjective: *un quart voleur*, a fourth thief; *quart*, in naval affairs, watch; *le tiers et le quart*, all sorts of people; in *fièvre quarte*, quartan ague; and in *quarte*, musical and fencing term.

*Quint* is now used only in the following expressions: *Charles-quint*,<sup>6</sup> *Sixte-quint*; <sup>7</sup> in *quinte*, musical term; in *quintessence*,<sup>8</sup> sometimes spelt *quinte essence*; the word *quinte* means also a prolonged and violent fit of coughing; *quintefeuille*, cinq foil; in *quinte*, at cards,—also a kind of fever or ague returning every fifth day.

*Sixte* is now used only as a musical term.

*Setme* and *oitave* have disappeared, but *oitave* has given *octave*.

*None* has disappeared from general use; it is only found now in the breviary of the Roman Catholic Church, together with *prime*, with the meaning of ninth and first hour of the day, from the ancient way of naming the hour by means of the above-mentioned ordinal adjectives.

*Dime* is now used only as a noun; it is the name of an old tax, and its English equivalent is *tithe*.

At the time of the disappearance of these words, new ordinal adjectives were made from French cardinal adjectives by affixing to the latter the syllable *iesme*, which was derived from *esimus*:<sup>9</sup> subsequently the *s* was suppressed and replaced by a grave accent. But *premier* was derived from *primarium*, and *second* continued together with *deuxième*. Likewise *unième* was formed from *un*. The ordinal adjectives so formed were the following: *Premier*, *première*, *unième*, first; *second*, *seconde*, *deuxième*, second; *troisième*, third; *quatrième*, fourth, &c.

<sup>1</sup> At the very first; at first.

<sup>2</sup> Inconsiderately, inconsiderate.

<sup>3</sup> At first sight.

<sup>4</sup> Third estate, the Commons.

<sup>5</sup> Middle party.

<sup>6</sup> The Emperor Charles V., King of Spain and Emperor of Germany.

<sup>7</sup> Pope Sixtus the Fifth.

<sup>8</sup> *Quintessence*, from low Latin *quinta essentia*.

<sup>9</sup> This affix was used in the same manner in Latin (*vicesimus*, *sexagesimus*, &c.).

*Fractional Expressions. Collective Nouns.*

With the exception of *demi* ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ), which comes from *dimidium*, of *tiers* ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ) and *quart* ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), which are old ordinal numbers, the fractional expressions are formed by means of the ordinal numbers as in English—thus,  $\frac{1}{6}$ , *un sixième*.<sup>1</sup>

Collective nouns are formed by adding *ain* or *aine*<sup>2</sup> to cardinal adjectives, thus:—

<i>sixain</i> , <sup>3</sup> . . . from <i>six</i> , 6.	<i>vingtaine</i> , from <i>vingt</i> , 20.
<i>huitaine</i> , . . . „ <i>huit</i> , 8.	<i>trentaine</i> , . „ <i>trente</i> , 30.
<i>neuvaine</i> , <sup>4</sup> . . . „ <i>neuf</i> , 9.	<i>quarantaine</i> , „ <i>quarante</i> , 40.
<i>dizain</i> , <sup>5</sup> <i>dizaine</i> , „ <i>dix</i> , 10.	<i>cinquantaine</i> , „ <i>cinquante</i> , 50.
<i>douzaine</i> , . . . „ <i>douze</i> , 12.	<i>soixantaine</i> , „ <i>soixante</i> , 60.
<i>quinzaine</i> , . . . „ <i>quinze</i> , 15.	<i>centaine</i> , . „ <i>cent</i> , 100.

However, *millier* is derived from *millarium*.

To these must be added the following, which refer to persons:—

<i>quadragénaire</i> , a person 40 years old, from Latin <i>quadragenarius</i> .	
<i>quinquagénaire</i> , a person 50 years old, . „ . <i>quinquagenarius</i> .	
<i>sexagénaire</i> . . . <i>sexagenarian</i> . . . „ . <i>sexagenarius</i> .	
<i>septuagénaire</i> . . . <i>septuagenarian</i> . . . „ . <i>septuagenarius</i> .	
<i>octogénaire</i> . . . <i>octogenarian</i> . . . „ . <i>octogenarius</i> .	
<i>nonagénaire</i> . . . <i>nonogenarian</i> . . . „ . <i>nonogenarius</i> .	
<i>centenaire</i> . . . <i>centenarian</i> . . . „ . <i>centenarius</i> .	

Also the following: *quadragesime*,<sup>6</sup> *quinquagesime*,<sup>6</sup> *sexagesime*,<sup>6</sup> *septuagesime*,<sup>6</sup> which are derived from the Latin *quadragesima dies*, *quinquagesima dies*, *sexagesima dies*, *septuagesima dies*.

The words *double*, *triple*, *quadruple*, *quintuple*, *sextuple*, *décuple*, are also derived from the Latin *duplum*, *tripulum*, *quadruplum*, *quintuplex*, *sextuplum*, *decuplum*. The word *fois* (Latin *vices*) is also used with the cardinal adjectives, thus: *une fois*, once; *deux fois*, twice; *trois fois*, thrice; *quatre fois*, four times; *cinq fois*, five times, &c.

## § 7. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

<i>Meum</i> has given <i>mon</i> . <i>Meam</i> has given <i>ma</i> . <i>Meos</i> , <i>meas</i> have given <i>mes</i> .	
<i>tuum</i> „ <i>ton</i> . <i>tuam</i> „ <i>ta</i> . <i>tuos</i> , <i>tuas</i> „ <i>tes</i> .	
<i>suum</i> „ <i>son</i> . <i>suam</i> „ <i>sa</i> . <i>suos</i> , <i>suas</i> „ <i>ses</i> .	

<sup>1</sup> This form is derived from Latin—e.g.,  $\frac{1}{6}$ , *sexta pars*.

<sup>2</sup> See for the origin of this affix page 397.

<sup>3</sup> A stanza of six verses.

<sup>4</sup> In English, *neuvaine*—prayers offered up during nine days—(Roman Catholic religion).

<sup>5</sup> A decastich.

<sup>6</sup> *Quadragesima Sunday*, *Quinquagesima Sunday*, *Sexagesima* or *Second Sunday* before Lent, *Septuagesima* or *Third Sunday* before Lent.

*Nostrum, nostram* have given *notre*, once spelt *nostre*, which has given the plural *nos*.

*Vestrum, vestram* have given *votre*, once spelt *vostre*, which has given the plural *vos*.

*Il|lor|um* has given *leur* (in old French, *lor*). This pronoun is common gender; up to the fifteenth century it was also common number; but from that time the mark of the plural (*s*) began to be added to it. All these words had a distinct form for the nominative; it disappeared at the same time as that of the nouns (see page 375).

### § 8. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

*Ecce hoc*, which became *ico* and *co*, has given *ce*.<sup>1</sup>

*Ecciste* became *icist*, then *icest*, and *cest* by apheresis of the *i*; finally by syncope of the *s* it gave *cet*, and the feminine was formed from it by doubling the final *t* and adding *e*: *cette*.

The plural, by analogy with the definite article, was formed by adding *s* to the masculine singular, which thus gave *ces*.

### § 9. INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

*Quisque* became *chesque*, then *chasque*, which gave *chaque*.

*Aliquis unus* became *alques uns*; contracted into *alquns*, it became *alcun*, which gave *aucun*.<sup>2</sup>

*Certus*, by means of the adjective derivation *an*, became *certanus*,<sup>3</sup> which gave *certain*.

*Qualiscunque* has given *quelconque*.

*Plusieurs* is derived from the French *plus*, to which the modified ending of *pluri|ores* (*eurs*) was added.

*Nullum* . . has given *nul*, and *nullam*, *nulle*.

*Totum* . . . „ . *tout*, „ *totam*, *toute*.

*Unum* . . . „ . *un*, „ *unam*, *une*.

*Qualisquam* . „ . *quelque*.

*Alter* . . . „ . *autre*.

*Talis* . . . „ . *tel*, *telle*.

*Qualis* . . . „ . *quel*, *quelle*.

*Metipsissimus*, contracted in *metipsimus*, has given *medisme*, which became *medesme*, then *meesme*, shortened into *mesme*, which gave *même*.

*Maint, mainte, maints, maintes*, is derived from German *mancher*.

*Quantus* has given *quantes*.

*Pareil* can only be traced to a supposed Latin diminutive, *pariculus*, coming from *par*.

<sup>1</sup> It is used also as a demonstrative pronoun, as subject of *être*, to be, or of other verbs when followed by *être*, and before relative pronouns.

<sup>2</sup> *Alque* had an affirmative meaning.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *Rom|an|us*, *Rom|ain*.

## PRONOUNS.

## § 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

<i>Ego</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>eo</i> , <i>to</i> , <i>jo</i> has given	<i>je</i> .	<i>tu</i> . . . has given	<i>tu</i> .
<i>me</i> . . . . .	<i>me</i> .	<i>te</i> . . . . .	<i>te</i> .
<i>mihi</i> . . . . .	<i>moi</i> .	<i>tibi</i> . . . . .	<i>toi</i> .
<i>nos</i> . . . . .	<i>nous</i> .	<i>vos</i> . . . . .	<i>vous</i> .
<i>il</i> / <i>le</i> <sup>2</sup> . . . . .	<i>il</i> .	<i>illa</i> <sup>6</sup> . . . . .	<i>elle</i> .
<i>il</i> / <i>lo</i> / <i>s</i> <sup>3</sup> . . . . .	<i>ils</i> and <i>eux</i> . <sup>4</sup>	<i>illas</i> <sup>6</sup> . . . . .	<i>elles</i> .
<i>illi</i> <i>huic</i> , con- tracted in } <i>il</i> / <i>lui</i> / <i>c</i> , <sup>5</sup> }	<i>lui</i> .	<i>il</i> / <i>lor</i> / <i>um</i> <sup>7</sup> . . . . .	<i>leur</i> .
		<i>esse</i> . . . . .	<i>se</i> .
		<i>sibi</i> . . . . .	<i>soi</i> .

*Le*, *la*, *les* have been studied (see articles, page 374).

The pronoun *il*, used as subject of impersonal verbs, is derived from *illud*; it has no plural, and must not be confounded with the personal pronoun of the 3rd person masculine, which is derived from *ille*.

## § 2. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>Le mien</i>	<i>la mienne</i>	<i>les miens</i>	<i>les miennes</i>	{ These are but a softened form of the possessive adjectives to which the article is added.
<i>le tien</i>	<i>la tienne</i>	<i>les tiens</i>	<i>les tiennes</i>	
<i>le sien</i>	<i>la sienne</i>	<i>les siens</i>	<i>les siennes</i>	
<i>Le nôtre</i>	<i>la nôtre</i>	<i>les nôtres</i>	{ These are but the possessive adjectives to which the article is added.	
<i>le vôtre</i>	<i>la vôtre</i>	<i>les vôtres</i>		
<i>le leur</i>	<i>la leur</i>	<i>les leurs</i>		

## § 3. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Eccille* became *icelui*,<sup>8</sup> which, by apheresis of the *i*, gave *celui*.

<i>eccilla</i>	„	<i>icelle</i>	„	„	<i>celle</i> .
<i>eccillos</i>	„	<i>iceux</i>	„	„	<i>ceux</i> .
<i>eccillas</i>	„	<i>icelles</i>	„	„	<i>celles</i> .

<sup>1</sup> *Ego* has become *eo* by syncope of the *g*; then *e* has become *i*, and *i*, *j*; and finally, *o* has been softened into *e*.

<sup>2</sup> *Ille* has given *il* by apocope of the last syllable.

<sup>3</sup> *Illos* has become *ils* by syncope of *lo*.

<sup>4</sup> *Eux* comes also from *illos*. In old French it was *els*, which became *eux* by the regular change of *l* into *x* and of *s* into *x* (see page 376).

<sup>5</sup> *Illic* has become *lui* by apheresis of the first syllable *il*, and apocope of the final *c*.

<sup>6</sup> *Ilia* has given *elle* by the regular change of *i* initial into *e*, and of final *a* into *e*.

<sup>7</sup> *Illorum* has given *leur* by apheresis of the first syllable *il*; the softening of *o* into *eu*, and the regular apocope of the Latin ending.

<sup>8</sup> Old French *icil*, then *cel*, *cil*, the accusative of which was *celui*.

*Ceci* and *cela* are but the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, to which the adverbs *ci*<sup>1</sup> and *là* have been added.

As to the etymology of *ce*, see page 403.

#### § 4. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Qui* is derived from *qui*, *que* from *quam*,<sup>2</sup> *quoi* from *quid*, *dont* from *de unde*.<sup>3</sup>

*Lequel* consists of the article *le* and the adjective *quel* from *qualis*.

*Inde* gave in the ninth century *int*; it became *ent* in the tenth, and, by apocope of the *t*, it attained, in the twelfth, its present form, *en*.

*Ibi* became *iv* by apocope of the final *t*, and the regular change of *b* into *v*; subsequently *v*, having been suppressed, *i* was changed into its present form, *y*.

*Ubi*, by apocope of the last syllable, became *u*, subsequently attaining by a regular change its present form, *où*.

#### § 5. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.<sup>4</sup>

*Quisque unus* has given *chascun* *uns*, which became *chacun*.

*Homo* has given *hom*, which became *om* before it reached its present form *on*, which is sometimes spelt *l'on*.<sup>5</sup>

*Alter-huic* has given *autrui*.<sup>6</sup>

*Personam* . . . , *personne*.

*Rem* . . . , *rien*.

*Qualisque unus* . . . , *quelqu' un*, *quelqu' une*, *quelques-uns*, *quelques-unes*.

*Quicumque* . . . , *quiconque*.

### VERBS.

#### § 1. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

Although French verbs are derived from Latin verbs, yet they differ from them in several important features—1st, the absence of a French form equivalent to the Latin passive<sup>7</sup> voice; 2nd, the peculiar formation of the future; 3rd, the existence in French of a conditional mood

<sup>1</sup> *Ci* is a contraction of the adverb *ici*.

<sup>2</sup> This etymology is disputed; some authors derive it from *quæ* plural. The fact is, it seems impossible to determine it, for it may as well be derived from the masculine singular as from the feminine.

<sup>3</sup> *Unde* gave *ont*, which meant *where*; the preposition *de* was joined to it, and it formed *dont*, which in old French meant *whence*.

<sup>4</sup> Those not given here will be found in the etymology of the indefinite adjectives (page 403).

<sup>5</sup> This *l'* is the definite article.

<sup>6</sup> This word may be considered as the oblique case of *autre*.

<sup>7</sup> The passive voice is formed in French as in English.

which did not exist in Latin; 4th, the absence from French verbs of the Latin supine and gerund; 5th, the French compound tenses which did not exist in Latin.

1. On the absence of a French passive voice, and on its being replaced by the verb *être* (to be), followed by a past participle, it will be observed that the verb *sum* and a past participle *was*, as early as the sixth century, already used in vulgar Latin instead of the classic Latin passive voice; and at the same epoch the deponent verbs began to assume an active form: *arbitrare*, for instance, instead of *arbitrari*.

2. The French future does not come from the Latin inflectional form; it was formed by means of the present indicative of *avoir* (to have), placed after the leading verb, which was then used in the infinitive. This construction had been taken from Latin, in which it was sometimes found, and coexisted, at the time of the Empire, with the regular inflectional forms of this tense, and thus it passed into the Romanic languages which adopted it. For a very long time the French future was written in two words: *j'aimerai*.

3. The conditional, which did not exist in Latin, was formed by analogy, and on the same principle as the future—i.e., by placing the imperfect indicative of *avoir* (to have) after the infinitive of the leading verb, thus: *j'aimerais*, contracted into *j'aimerais* by apheresis of the stem of the auxiliary verb.

4. The compound tenses formed in French by means of *avoir* or *être* did not exist in Latin verbs, all the tenses of which were formed by inflections. However, that compound, or rather analytic form, was sometimes employed even in classic Latin, from which it passed into vulgar Latin, which transmitted it to the Romanic languages.

In passing into French the Latin verbs underwent manifold changes besides those already explained; new endings were formed, the roots were more or less modified, even the tonic accent<sup>1</sup> was displaced; hence entirely new conjugations were formed, differing more or less from the Latin conjugations from which they had sprung. Some of these alterations are peculiar to certain conjugations; others are regularly found in all, and in order to avoid endless repetitions the latter will be explained here, and the other under the head of each of the conjugations to which they refer.

## § 2. CHANGES COMMON TO ALL THE FRENCH CONJUGATIONS.

In early French the 1st person singular had not a final *s*, that *s* not existing in Latin; and so are found in old French, *je croi*, *je sui*, &c. That *s* was added to this person only in the fourteenth century, ex-

---

<sup>1</sup> The cause of this displacement of the tonic accent is found in this, that the French tonic accent has two places—viz., the last syllable when the word does not end in *e* mute, the penult when it does (see page 369).

cept, however—1, in the present indicative of *avoir*; 2, in the present and in the past indicative of the 1st conjugation; 3, in the future<sup>1</sup> indicative, and in the present<sup>2</sup> and imperfect subjunctive of all verbs.

Final *s* is found in all verbs in all tenses in the 2nd person singular, and has been taken from Latin; the only exceptions are found in the imperative of *avoir*, of the verbs of the 1st conjugation, and of a few irregular verbs<sup>3</sup> of the 2nd and of the 3rd.

Final *t* is found in the 3rd person singular, and was taken from Latin. However, it has been suppressed—1, from the present indicative of *avoir*; 2, from the same tense of the first conjugation; 3, from the future of all verbs, it being formed from the present indicative of *avoir*. This *t* is not found either—1, in the present indicative of those verbs of the 4th conjugation the root of which ends in *d* or *c*; 2, in the past indicative of the 1st conjugation; 3, in the present subjunctive of any verb, except *avoir* and *être*.

A remnant of the use of this *t* is still found in the language—viz., when a verb ending with a vowel is used interrogatively, in which case *t* is inserted between the verb and the pronoun subject: *parle-t-il ?* *avança-t-elle ?* *aura-t-on ?* &c.

The Latin verbal endings have given the following French terminations: *amus, emus, imus* were changed at first into *omes*,<sup>4</sup> which became *oms* and *ons*; *atis, etis, itis* were contracted into *et's*, which, probably through Teutonic<sup>5</sup> influence, became *ez*; *ant, ent, unt* were changed into *ent*, and, in a few instances, into *ont*.

The final syllables *ons* and *ez*<sup>6</sup> are replaced respectively in the past indicative by *mes, tes*, derived from the Latin forms *imus, istis*, and the vowel preceding them has a circumflex accent.<sup>7</sup>

The present participle is derived from the accusative of the same Latin tense by apocope of the last syllable: *aimant* from *amant|em*, and always finishes with *ant*.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This tense being derived, as stated, from the present indicative of *avoir* (to have).

<sup>2</sup> The verb *être* is an exception; its present subjunctive, 1st person singular, has an *s*: *que je sois*.

<sup>3</sup> *Cueillir* and its derivatives; *assaillir, tressaillir, couvrir, souffrir*, and others ending in *vrir* and *frir*, and *savoir*.

<sup>4</sup> The only remnant of this form now existing in the language is found in the present indicative of *être*: *nous sommes*.

<sup>5</sup> In German, *s* is sounded like *ts*.

<sup>6</sup> The final *tes* is still found in the present indicative 2nd person plural of a few French verbs—viz., *être, dire*, and its derivative *redire*; *faire* and its derivatives: *vous êtes; vous dites; vous redites; vous faites*.

<sup>7</sup> Most often several persons of this tense are derived from contracted Latin forms: *tu aimas*, from *amasti*; *vous aimâtes*, from *amastis*; *ils aimèrent*, from *amarunt*, and not from *amavisti, amavistis, amaverunt*.

<sup>8</sup> It is sometimes used as an adjective, and agrees accordingly, and sometimes also as a noun.



The past participle is derived from the Latin perfect participle—*amē* from *amatus*, &c., and is extensively used as a noun, and often as an adjective, as already stated in the chapters on the etymology of the noun and of the adjectives.

Such are the general changes which have affected Latin verbs as they passed into French: bearing these changes in mind, the rest will be easily understood.

### § 3. AUXILIARY VERBS.

There are in French two auxiliary verbs—*avoir* and *être*.

#### AVOIR (to have)

is derived from *habere*, by the regular apheresis of the *h*,<sup>1</sup> the change of *b* into *v*,<sup>2</sup> and the apocope of the final *e*, which gave the old French *aver*, which, by the change of accented *e* into *oi*,<sup>3</sup> became *avoir*.

The present participle *habentem*, by the syncope of *b*<sup>4</sup> and the apocope of the last syllable, gave *aient*, which subsequently became *ayant*.

The past participle *habutum* (vulgar for *habitum*) gave *avut*, which became successively *ait*, *eu*, and finally *eu*.

The present indicative is derived from the corresponding Latin tense:

<i>habeo</i>	has given <i>ai</i> .
<i>habet</i>	„ <i>as</i> .
<i>habet</i>	„ at first <i>at</i> , which became <i>a</i> .
<i>habemus</i>	„ 1, <i>avomes</i> ; 2, <i>avoms</i> ; and finally <i>avons</i> .
<i>habetis</i>	„ 1, <i>avetis</i> ; 2, <i>avet's</i> ; and finally <i>avez</i> .
<i>habent</i>	„ <i>ont</i> .

The imperfect indicative comes from the same Latin tense:

<i>habebam</i>	became—1, <i>aveie</i> ; 2, <i>avoi</i> ; 3, <i>avois</i> ; and finally <i>avais</i> .
<i>habebas</i>	„ 1, <i>aveies</i> ; 2, <i>avois</i> ; and finally <i>avais</i> .
<i>habebat</i>	„ 1, <i>aveiet</i> ; 2, <i>avoit</i> ; and finally <i>avait</i> .
<i>habebamus</i>	„ 1, <i>avoimes</i> ; 2, <i>avioms</i> ; 3, <i>avions</i> .
<i>habebatis</i>	„ 1, <i>avietis</i> ; 2, <i>aviet's</i> ; 3, <i>aviez</i> .
<i>habebant</i>	„ 1, <i>aveient</i> ; 2, <i>avoient</i> ; 3, <i>avaient</i> .

The past indicative is derived from the same Latin tense:

<i>habui</i>	gave <i>eu</i> , which became <i>eus</i> .
<i>habuisti</i>	„ <i>eus</i> .
<i>habuit</i>	„ <i>eut</i> .
<i>habuimus</i>	„ <i>eûmes</i> .
<i>habuistis</i>	„ 1, <i>eûstes</i> , which became <i>eûtes</i> .
<i>habuerunt</i>	„ <i>eurent</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Compare *on* from *homo*, *orge* from *hordeum*, &c., and see page 378.

<sup>2</sup> Compare *couver* from *cubare*, *seve* from *faba*, *février* from *februarius*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *avoine* from *avena*, *soir* from *serus*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Compare *taon* from *tabanus*.

The future was formed, as explained, from the infinitive and the present indicative: *habere habeo*, which has given *aver ai*; this contracted into *aurai* gave finally *aurai*; <sup>1</sup> and the other persons were formed in the same manner.

The conditional present was formed, as stated, by placing the imperfect indicative after the infinitive: thus *habere habebam* has given 1, *aver eie*; 2, *aver oi*, which, contracted into *avroi*, became *avrois*, and finally *aurais*; and the other persons were formed in the same manner.

The imperative is derived from the present subjunctive, which comes from the corresponding Latin tense:

<i>habeam</i>	has given	<i>aie</i> .
<i>habeas</i>	„	<i>aies</i> .
<i>habeat</i>	„	<i>ait</i> .
<i>habeamus</i>	„	1, <i>aiomes</i> ; 2, <i>aioms</i> ; 3, <i>ayons</i> .
<i>habeatis</i>	„	1, <i>aietis</i> ; 2, <i>aiet's</i> ; 3, <i>aiez</i> ; 4, <i>ayez</i> .
<i>habeant</i>	„	<i>aient</i> .

The imperfect subjunctive comes from the Latin pluperfect:

<i>habuissem</i>	has given,	1, <i>aüsse</i> ; 2, <i>eusse</i> .
<i>habuisses</i>	„	1, <i>aüsses</i> ; 2, <i>eusses</i> .
<i>habuisset</i>	„	1, <i>aüst</i> ; 2, <i>eust</i> ; 3, <i>éât</i> .
<i>habuissemus</i>	„	1, <i>aüssiomes</i> ; 2, <i>aussions</i> ; 3, <i>eussions</i> .
<i>habuissetis</i>	„	1, <i>aüssetis</i> ; 2, <i>aüsset's</i> ; 3, <i>eüsset's</i> ; 4, <i>eüssiez</i> .
<i>habuisissent</i>	„	1, <i>aüssent</i> ; 2, <i>eussent</i> .

### ÊTRE (to be)

comes from three Latin verbs—viz., 1, *esse*; 2, *stare*; 3, *fuō*.

*Esse* was defective in Latin, and borrowed no less than six tenses from *fuō*—viz., *fui*, *fuero*, *fuera*, *forem*, *fuero*, *fuisse*.

To Latin defective verbs such as *velle*, *inferre*, &c., vulgar Latin added the syllable *re*, and passed those verbs thus modified into old French. *Esse*, modified in the same manner, was in old French *essere*; this was contracted into *ess're*, which, in consequence of the *s* and the *r* being brought together, soon changed into *estre* by the regular permutation of *s* into *t*; and, finally, by the syncope of the *s*, replaced by a circumflex accent, *estre* became what it is to-day—viz., *être*.<sup>2</sup>

*Status*, from *stare*, has given the past participle *été*, which became *été*; and *standum*, *stantem*, has given the present participle *étant*, which in process of time became *étant*.

*Fuo* has given the past indicative *fus* from *fui*, and the imperfect subjunctive *fusse* from *fuisse*; and *esse* has given the other tenses.

<sup>1</sup> Compare the future of *savoir*, which is *saurai*.

<sup>2</sup> This verb is still in Italian *essere*; in Spanish and Portuguese *ser*; and in Provençal *esser*.

The present indicative comes from the same Latin tense:

<i>sum</i>	became—1, <i>sui</i> ; 2, <i>suis</i> .
<i>es</i>	„ <i>es</i> .
<i>est</i>	„ <i>est</i> .
<i>sumus</i>	„ <i>sommes</i> . <sup>1</sup>
<i>estis</i>	„ 1, <i>estes</i> ; 2, <i>êtes</i> . <sup>2</sup>
<i>sunt</i>	„ <i>sont</i> .

The imperfect<sup>3</sup> is derived, not from Latin, but from the French present participle, by changing *ant* into *ais*, *ait*, *ions*, *iez*, *aient*.

The past indicative comes from the same Latin tense:

<i>fui</i>	has given—1, <i>fui</i> ; 2, <i>fus</i> .
<i>fuisti</i>	„ 1, <i>fuis</i> ; 2, <i>fus</i> .
<i>fuit</i>	„ <i>fut</i> .
<i>fuimus</i>	„ 1, <i>fusmes</i> ; 2, <i>fâmes</i> .
<i>fuistis</i>	„ 1, <i>fustes</i> ; 2, <i>fâtes</i> .
<i>fuérunt</i>	„ <i>furent</i> .

The future<sup>4</sup> was formed, as stated, from the infinitive of *essere* and the present indicative of *habeo*—i.e., the old vulgar Latin form *essere habeo*, which became in old French *essere ai*, then *esterai*, *esser ai*, and *serai*, by the aphesis of the first syllable.

The conditional<sup>5</sup> was formed in the same manner, but from the imperfect instead of the present indicative of *habeo*—i.e., *essere habebam*, which gave *essere cie*, *esser oi*, *serois*, *serais*, &c.

The imperative is taken bodily from the present subjunctive, which is derived from the corresponding Latin tense:

<i>sim</i>	has given—1, <i>soi</i> ; 2, <i>sois</i> .
<i>sis</i>	„ <i>sois</i> .
<i>sit</i>	„ <i>soit</i> .
<i>siamus</i> <sup>6</sup>	„ 1, <i>soiomes</i> ; 2, <i>soioms</i> ; 3, <i>soions</i> ; 4, <i>soyons</i> .
<i>siatis</i> <sup>6</sup>	„ 1, <i>soiet's</i> ; 2, <i>soiez</i> ; 3, <i>soyez</i> .
<i>sint</i>	„ <i>soient</i> .

The imperfect subjunctive is derived from the Latin pluperfect:

<i>fuissem</i>	has given <i>fusse</i> .
<i>fuiesses</i>	„ <i>fusses</i> .
<i>fuisset</i>	„ 1, <i>fuiet</i> ; 2, <i>fust</i> ; 3, <i>fût</i> .

<sup>1</sup> The only existing remnant of the old French form (see page 407, footnote 4).

<sup>2</sup> See footnotes 5, 6, page 407.

<sup>3</sup> There was another form of this tense in the old language, which was derived from the Latin *eram*, *eras*, &c.—viz., *j'ère*, *tu ères*, *il eret*, &c.; it was superseded in the fifteenth century by the more recent form derived from the present participle *j'estois*, which became *j'estois*, and finally *j'étais*.

<sup>4</sup> The future had also another form in the old language—viz., *ere*, or *iere*, &c.; and the conditional also—viz., *astreie*, &c.

<sup>5</sup> See page 406, and imperfect of *avoir*, page 408.

<sup>6</sup> Vulgar for *simus*, *siitis*.

*fuissemus* has given—1, *fuißiomes*; 2, *fuißioms*; 3, *fussioms*; 4, *fusions*.

*fuissetis* „ 1, *fuißet's*; 2, *fuißiez*; 3, *fussiez*.

*fuisſent* „ 1, *fuißent*; 2, *fussent*.

#### § 4. DERIVATION OF THE FRENCH CONJUGATIONS.

The French verbs are divided into four conjugations, which are distinguished chiefly by the ending of the present infinitive.

The ending of the present infinitive of the 1st is *er*; of the 2nd, *ir*; 1 of the 3rd, *oir*; of the 4th, *re*.

##### 1st Conjugation.

It is derived from the 1st Latin conjugation in *are* by the change of *ar* into *er*, and the apocope of the *e* final.

To this conjugation have been added, during the fourteenth century, some verbs formed from Latin ones in *ēre* and in *ēre*, such as *persuader*, from *persuadēre*; *affliger*, from *affligēre*, and many others.

Two in *ire* belong also to this conjugation—viz., *tousser*, from *tussire*, which was formed in the seventeenth century from the old French *tussir*; and *paver*, from *pavire*.

The inflections of this conjugation, as well as those of the three others, are regularly derived from the Latin forms in the same manner as stated for every tense and every person of the auxiliary verbs, and they have undergone exactly the same changes, therefore there is no need to enter into any detailed explanations about them.

##### 2nd Conjugation.

contains verbs derived, 1st, from Latin inchoative<sup>2</sup> verbs in *esco* or *isco*; 2nd, from verbs in *ire*, such as *finir*, from *finire*; *servir*, from *servire*; 3rd, from verbs in *erre*, such as *offrir*, from *offerre*; <sup>3</sup> *souffrir*, from *sufferre*.<sup>3</sup>

The present participle of this conjugation has *ss* inserted after *i*, the actual ending of the root, and before *ant*, the usual and regular termination of this tense: this *ss*, which is derived from the Latin inchoative verbs in *e|sc|o*, *i|sc|o*, is added in the same place to the tenses and persons derived from the present participle—viz., the plural of the present indicative, the imperfect indicative, and the present subjunctive.

This form has been extended to some verbs derived from Latin verbs in *are*, such as *crépir*; in *ire*, such as *finir*; in *ere*, such as *avertir*; to a few of unknown origin, such as *bâtir*; to others derived from German, such as *brandir*, or from French nouns and adjectives, such as

<sup>1</sup> It would be more accurate to say that the root ends in *i* and the ending is *r*, for this *i* is found in every tense and in every person.

<sup>2</sup> Also called *inceptive*.

<sup>3</sup> Vulgar Latin, *offerre*, *sufferre*.

*croupir, grossir*; and, with those derived from Latin inceptive verbs, they have formed the regular second conjugation.

But some other verbs derived from Latin ones in *ire* or *erre*, as *servir, offrir, ouvrir*, &c., which follow the Latin conjugation, are irregular in French—i.e., as compared with the class of French verbs we have just studied.

The reason of this is that the verbs of the former class preserve throughout the roots unaltered, whereas in the others the root is more or less modified.

Moreover, there are more than 300 verbs in this conjugation which are derived, or conjugated as if derived, from Latin inceptive verbs, whereas there are but about thirty which are not.

### 3rd Conjugation

contains verbs derived from Latin verbs in *ēre*, as *devoir*, from *debere*; and in *īre*, as *savoir*, from *sapere*.

There are only about thirty verbs in this conjugation, more than twenty of which are irregular.

### 4th Conjugation

contains about sixty verbs, which are derived from Latin verbs in *īre*, as *lire*, from *legere*; and *ēre*, as *répondre*, from *respondere*.

The regular verbs of this conjugation end in *andre, attre, endre, ordre, ondre, ordre, ompre*. The peculiarities to notice in it are that its regular verbs in *ompre* add *t* to the third person singular of the present indicative, whereas the others do not; and that verbs in *attre* lose one of the *t*'s of the root in the singular of the present indicative, and in the 2nd person singular of the imperative.

## § 5. MODERN FORMATION OF VERBS.

Besides those verbs which have been formed, as explained, from vulgar Latin, others have been, and are still, formed in various ways, viz. :—

(A) By prefixing to French verbs words or particles of French or foreign origin.

(B) By adding to French nouns a verbal ending, with or without a prefix.

(C) By adding to French adjectives a verbal ending with or without a prefix.

(D) By inserting some affix of French or foreign origin between the root and the ending of French verbs.

### New Verbs formed—

(A) By prefixing to French verbs words or particles of French or foreign origin. These prefixes are separable or inseparable.

*Separable Prefixes*

consist of French prepositions which, according to their meaning, modify the sense of the simple verb. These prepositions are *contre*, *entre*, *sous* :

from *contre* : *contre-assaillir*, *contre-assiéger*, *contre-balancer*.

„ *entre* : *entre-croiser*, *s'entre-dévorer*, *s'entr'aider*, *entre-bâiller*.

„ *sous* : *sous-fréter*, *sous-entendre*, *sous-affirmer*, *sous-traiter*.

*Inseparable Prefixes*

consist of nouns, adverbs, prepositions, and particles, either French or foreign, which, prefixed to the simple verb, modify its meaning according to their own signification.

*Nouns.*

Of these there are very few : *maintenir*, from *main* and *tenir* ; *col-porter*,<sup>1</sup> from *col* and *porter*.

*Adverbs.*

From *mal* : *maltraiter*, *malmener*, *malverser*.

*Prepositions.*

The prepositions so used are : *contre*, *en*, *entre*, *inter* (Latin), *par*, *pour*, *sur*.

From *contre* : *contredire*, *contremander*, &c.

„ *en* :<sup>2</sup> *endormir*, *embarbouiller*, *embrouiller*, *emmener*, *emporter*.

„ *entre* : *entre-couper*.<sup>3</sup>

„ *inter* : *interjeter*, *interposer*, &c.

„ *par* :<sup>4</sup> *parachever*, *parfaire*, *parsemer*, &c.

„ *pour* (Latin *pro*, *per*) : *poursuivre*, *pourchasser*, *poursuivre*, &c.

„ *sub* : *subdéléguer*, *subordonner*, &c.

„ *sur* : *suraccabler*, *surajouter*, *surbaissier*, *surmonter*, *surmener*.

*Particles.*

From *a* (*ac*, *af*, *ap*) : *abaisser*, *abattre*, *accourir*, *affaiblir*, *amener*, &c.

„ *co* (*com*, *con*) : *coïndiquer*, *combattre*, *comparattre*, *contourner*.

„ *dé* (*dés*, *dis*) : *découdre*, *décroître*, *desceller*, *désobéir*, *disconvenir*, &c.

<sup>1</sup> This etymology is not admitted by all etymologists : Mr Littré observes that it does not agree with old French, which is *conporter* and *contreporter*.

<sup>2</sup> This prefix, which is changed into *em* before *b*, *p*, *m*, has most often the force of *away*, and is not seldom added to verbs, but kept separated from them : thus *aller*, to go ; *s'en aller*, to go away, &c.

<sup>3</sup> The Academy does not separate this verb from its prefix, although it separates *entre* from all the other verbs to which it is prefixed (see separable prefixes at the beginning of this page).

<sup>4</sup> *Par* as a prefix is mostly used in the superlative sense of Latin *per*.

From *s* (for *es*, Latin *ex*): *debourrer*, *debouter*, *échauffer*, &c.

„ *mé, mes*: *mépriser*, *se méfier*, *méconnaître*, *méjuger*, *mésinter-préter*, &c.

„ *pré*: *précompter*, *préconnaître*, *prédéterminer*, &c.

„ *re, r, ré*: *reconstruire*, *recourber*, *rengager*, *réédifier*.

„ *sou* (from French *sous*): *soupeser*, *soutirer*, &c.

(B) By adding to French nouns a verbal ending with or without prefix.

The affixes thus added are *oyer*, *eler*, *ller*, *iser*, *ir*, *er*.

*Without Prefix.*

oyer, Latin	{	<i>côtoyer</i> , from <i>côte</i> ; <i>coudoyer</i> , from <i>coude</i> ; <i>guerroyer</i> , from <i>guerre</i> .
icare <sup>1</sup>	{	
ler, ller, iller,	{	<i>botteler</i> , from <i>botte</i> ; <i>bosseler</i> , from <i>bosse</i> ; <i>fourmillier</i> ,
Latin <i>ilare</i> ,	{	from <i>fourmi</i> ; <i>verrouiller</i> , from <i>verrou</i> (old French
ulare	{	<i>verrouil</i> ).
iser, Latin <i>is-</i>	{	<i>économiser</i> , from <i>économie</i> , &c.
sare, izare	{	
	{	<i>couder</i> , from <i>coude</i> ; <i>entourer</i> , from <i>entour</i> , from <i>tour</i> ;
	{	<i>maîtriser</i> , from <i>maîtrise</i> ; <i>palissader</i> , from <i>palissade</i> ;
er, Latin <i>are</i>	{	<i>voyager</i> , from <i>voyage</i> ; <i>bavarder</i> , from <i>bavard</i> ; <i>tasser</i> ,
	{	from <i>tas</i> ; <i>grimacer</i> , from <i>grimace</i> ; <i>essaimer</i> ,
	{	from <i>essaim</i> ; <i>ramer</i> , from <i>rame</i> ; <i>boiser</i> , from <i>bois</i> ;
	{	<i>clouer</i> , <i>clouter</i> , from <i>clou</i> ; <i>abriter</i> , from <i>abri</i> ;
	{	<i>coffrer</i> , from <i>coffre</i> , &c.
ir, Latin <i>es-</i>	{	<i>croupir</i> , from <i>croupe</i> ; <i>garantir</i> , from <i>garant</i> , &c.
cere, ire	{	

*With a Prefix.*

These prefixes are the same as stated in page 53, and the affixes the same as mentioned in the preceding paragraph; thus *encadrer* from *cadre*; *aguerir*, from *guerre*; *entasser*, from *tas*; *encoffrer*, from *coffrer*, from *coffre*; *encaisser*, from *caisse*; *s'accroupir*, from *croupir*, from *croupe*; *enorgueillir*, from *orgueil*, &c.

Most of the verbs formed from nouns belong to the 1st conjugation; yet a few belong also to the 2nd.

Prefixes and affixes considerably modify the meaning of a verb: thus *coudoyer* means to elbow somebody, *couder* to give something an angular shape, and *s'accouder* (from *ad cubitare*) to support one's self on the elbow; *clouer* means to fix something, to join things together with nails, and *clouter* to stud something with nails, without joining it to anything; *guerroyer* means to make war, *aguerir* to inure to war, &c.

<sup>1</sup> In the popular formation the affixes derived from *icare* are—*iquer*, *cher*, *ger*, *gner*.

(C) By adding to French adjectives a verbal ending with or without prefix.

Most verbs thus formed belong to the 2nd conjugation ; yet many of them belong to the 1st.

The affixes added to adjectives to form verbs are *er*, *iser*, *ir*, *cir*, *iler*.

*Without Prefix.*

er, Latin <i>are</i>	{	<i>égaler</i> , from <i>égal</i> ; <i>folâtrer</i> , from <i>folâtre</i> ; <i>contrarier</i> , from <i>contraire</i> ; <i>diligenter</i> , from <i>diligent</i> ; <i>patienter</i> , from <i>patient</i> ; <i>jalouser</i> , from <i>jalouse</i> ; <sup>1</sup> <i>activer</i> , from <i>active</i> ; <sup>2</sup> <i>bossuer</i> , from <i>bossu</i> ; <i>violenter</i> , from <i>violent</i> ; <i>légitimer</i> , from <i>légitime</i> , &c.
iser, Latin <i>is-sare, izare</i>	{	<i>centraliser</i> , from <i>central</i> ; <i>fertiliser</i> , from <i>fertile</i> ; <i>brutaliser</i> , from <i>brutal</i> ; <i>ridiculiser</i> , from <i>ridicule</i> ; <i>utiliser</i> , from <i>utile</i> ; <i>franciser</i> , from <i>français</i> ; <i>tranquilliser</i> , from <i>tranquille</i> ; <i>diviniser</i> , from <i>divin</i> ; <i>égaliser</i> , from <i>égal</i> , &c.
ir, <i>cir</i> , Latin <i>escere, is-cere, ire</i>	{	<i>durcir</i> , from <i>dur</i> ; <i>noircir</i> , from <i>noir</i> ; <i>jaunir</i> , from <i>jaune</i> ; <i>bleuir</i> , from <i>bleu</i> ; <i>brunir</i> , from <i>brun</i> ; <i>obscurcir</i> , from <i>obscur</i> ; <i>vieillir</i> , from <i>viell</i> .
iter, Latin <i>it-are</i>	{	<i>faciliter</i> , from <i>facile</i> , &c.

*With a Prefix.*

These prefixes and affixes are the same as those studied in the preceding chapters ; thus *affoler*, from *fou*, *fol* ; *dépareiller*, from *dépareil*, from *pareil* ; *affaiblir*, from *faiblir*, from *faible* ; *éclaircir*, from *clair* ; *attendrir*, from *tendre* ; *enjoliver*, from *joli* ; *embellir*, from *beau*, *bel* ; *rajeunir*, from *jeune*, &c.

In the verbs formed from adjectives, as already stated in reference to those derived from nouns, the prefixes and affixes have considerable influence on the meaning of the verb ; thus, e.g., *égaler* and *égaliser*, both from *égal*, the former signifying to equal, the latter to equalize, in which the English student will have no difficulty in recognising the affix *ize* being used in English for the same purpose as *iser* in French, and having the same origin—viz., *izare*.

(D) By inserting some affix of French or foreign origin between the root and the ending of French verbs.

These affixes are *aill*, *ill*, *onn*, *ot*, *et*, *ass* ; their origin is given in the chapter on the etymology of the nouns and adjectives, pages 384 to 390

<sup>1</sup> Feminine of *jalous*.

<sup>2</sup> Feminine of *actif*.



and 397, 398. They are used to form frequentatives, or to add to the simple verb an idea of diminution, depreciation: thus *répétailleur*, from *répéter*; *criailleur*, from *crier*; *tirailleur*, from *tirer*; *grappiller*, from old French *grapper*, from *grappe*; *chantonner*, from *chanter*; *trembloter*, from *trembler*; *cachoter*, from *cacher*; *marqueter*, from *marquer*; *rêvasser*, from *rêver*; and others.

It follows from what precedes that, in the modern formation of French verbs, either from verbs, nouns, or adjectives, *no new verbs have been added either to the third or to the fourth conjugation.*

#### ON THE NEGATIVE.

The French negative is essentially *ne*. Its meaning is, however, vague, indefinite, and requires to be completed; hence *pas*, *point*, *jamais*, *rien*, &c., as the case may be, are placed after the verb preceded by *ne*. (For etymology see page 430).

#### ON THE INTERROGATIVE CONSTRUCTION.

The complex construction of an interrogative sentence having for subject any other word than *ce*, *on*, or a personal pronoun, arises from the fact that French is an analytic language—i.e., pointing out by position and prepositions the part performed in the sentence by every word (see page 366). Now, as French names and nouns, demonstrative, possessive, and indefinite pronouns, are not inflected, they must be placed before the verb when used as subjects, and after it when used as objects, and whether the sentence is interrogative or not; whilst the personal pronouns being inflected, and *ce* and *on* being employed only as subjects, it is sufficient to place them after the verb of which they are subjects, to show that the sentence is interrogative; hence when an interrogative sentence has for subject any other word than *ce*, *on*, or a personal pronoun, such subject is put before the verb, after which is placed a personal pronoun of the 3rd person, of the same gender and number as the real subject, and this pronoun points out that the sentence is interrogative.

#### ON THE PASSIVE AND REFLEXIVE VOICES.

*Why French Reflexive Verbs are conjugated with être in their compound tenses.*

In Latin the passive voice was often used with a reflexive meaning: *amor* for *amo me*; *amatus sum* for *amavi me*.

As early as the tenth century two separate forms appeared in the Gallo-Romanic languages—viz., a passive voice, consisting of the verb *être*, followed by a past participle: *je suis aimé*, in imitation of the

Latin form *amatus sum*; and a reflexive voice which, in its compound tenses, is a blending of both the passive and the reflexive voice of Latin, consisting of a pronoun object superadded to the former: *je me suis aimé*, literally *me amatus sum*—i.e., the Latin passive voice with reflexive power: *amatus sum* for *amavi me*, with the Latin pronoun *me* superadded.

This form has been extended to many neuter verbs in early French, in which are found *se demeurer*, *se dormir*, &c. Many of these, however, subsequently lost the reflexive pronoun; while others, such as *s'en aller*, *s'en fuir*, *s'en retourner*, *se repentir*, &c., preserved it; and it was even added to some impersonal verbs: *s'agir*, *s'ensuivre*, &c.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE DERIVATION AND ETYMOLOGY OF A FEW IRREGULAR<sup>1</sup> VERBS.

*Pleuvoir*, from *pluere*; *v* inserted to avoid the hiatus. In past participle, in preterite indicative, and its derivative, root mutilated and reduced to *pl*.

*Y avoir* = *il y a* = Latin *illud habet*. In old French the pronoun *y* was not used; it was added in the thirteenth century only.

*Falloir*, from *fallere*. It is the same verb as *faillir* (see page 419), which is yet becoming more and more distinct from it. This verb exists also in English and in German, with meanings more or less different: cf. Latin *fallere*; French *falloir*, *faillir*; German *fallen*; English, *to fall*, *to fail*; Greek *σφαλλειν*; Sanscrit *sphul*.

*Bénir*. Two past participles *béni*, *bénit*; old French *benet*, *benett*. In the fourteenth century *t* was suppressed from the past participles of the 2nd conjugation; but the past participle of *bénir* preserved its *t* in the expressions *pain bénit*, *eau bénite*. The difference in the meaning of *béni* and *bénit* is quite modern.

*Fleurir*. Two forms of present participle and imperfect indicative—viz., *fleurissant*, *florissant*; *fleurissait*, *florissait*. Etymologists do not agree. Some derive it from a supposed Latin form *florisco*, others from the French noun *fleur*.

It is very difficult to see why it should not be derived from *florescere*, since the absence in French words of the unaccented Latin penultimate and last vowels may be said to be a regular law in the formation of the language, as is proved by other verbs of the 2nd conjugation; *abolir*, from *abolescere*.

*Hâir*. The irregularity only bears on the use of the diæresis, and is simply a matter of pronunciation.

*Battre*. Its only irregularity, the suppression of the final *t* of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Except in cases in which derivative verbs have been formed from French verbs now dead, no derivative verbs have been mentioned, the observations concerning the primitives holding good for the derivatives.

root in the singular of the present indicative and 2nd person singular of the imperative, is accounted for by its being derived from *batere*, low Latin for *batuere* or *battuere*.

*Rompre*, from *rumpere*. Its only irregularity consists in the preservation of Latin *t* in the 3rd person singular of the present indicative (see page 412).

#### THE IRREGULAR<sup>1</sup> VERBS :

*Their etymology, with an account of their irregularities. and the causes.*

##### 1st Conjugation.

*Aller*, derived from three Latin verbs : *vadere*, *ire*, and *ad nare*. *Vadere* has given the singular and the 3rd person plural of present indicative, and the 2nd singular of imperative ; *ire* the future and the conditional present ; and *ad nare* all the other tenses. In the subjunctive present, the root is strengthened by *i* being placed before *l* in the three persons singular and in the 3rd plural, the tonic accent lying on the root.

*Envoyer*, from *indēviare*. Old French *entveier*, which accounts for its irregularity in the future and conditional present.<sup>2</sup> In French of the twelfth century, the future was *enveierai*. Both the future and conditional present were much used in the regular form during the seventeenth century.

##### 2nd Conjugation.

~~None~~ None of the irregular verbs of this conjugation has *ss* either in the present participle or in its derivatives.

*Acquérir*, from *acquirere*. In past participle the root is mutilated and reduced to *acqu*, to which *is* is added, taken from Latin past participle ; same irregularity in preterite ind. and its derivative, and suppression of Latin unaccented termination *ivi*. In the singular of present ind. and its derivative, *i* precedes *e* instead of following *r*, tonic accent lying on the root : same irregularity in present subjunctive. The irregularity, more apparent than real, in future and conditional present, is simply a contraction which has produced the suppression of *i*.

*Conquérir*, from *conquirere* ; *requérir*, from *requirere* ; *s'enquérir*, from *inquirere*. (See above.)

*Querir*, from *quaere*, old French *querre*.

*Assaillir*, from *assalire*. Has in the singular and in the 3rd person plural of present indicative the ending of the 1st conjugation, the tonic accent lying on the root.

<sup>1</sup> Except in cases in which derivative verbs have been formed from French verbs now dead, no derivative verbs have been mentioned, the observations concerning the primitives holding good for the derivatives.

<sup>2</sup> See footnote, page 420, for the change of *oy* into *e*.

*Saillir*, from *salire*. *Tressaillir*, from *très* and *saillir*. (See *assaillir*, above.)

*Bouillir*, from *bullire*. In the singular of the indicative present the three last letters of the root and the *i* of the endings of the regular conjugation are left out, the tonic accent lying on the root.

*Cueillir*, from *colligere*. Endings of the 1st conjugation in the singular of the present indicative, the tonic accent lying on the root. This irregularity is extended to the future and present cond.

*Courir*, from *currere*. In the past participle, in the preterite ind., and in its derivative, *u* instead of *i* in the endings. In the singular of the present indicative and its derivative, the *i* of the regular conjugation suppressed, the tonic accent lying on the root; in the future and conditional present, a contraction which has produced the suppression of the *i*.

<i>Dormir</i> , from <i>dormire</i> .	} In the singular of the present indicative and its derivative, the last consonant of the root is suppressed, as well as the <i>i</i> of the regular conjugation, the tonic accent lying on the root.
<i>Partir</i> , „ <i>partiri</i> .	
<i>Sentir</i> , „ <i>sentire</i> .	
<i>Servir</i> , „ <i>servire</i> .	
<i>Sortir</i> , „ <i>sortiri</i> .	

*Faillir*. See *falloir*, page 417.

*Fêrir*, from *ferire*.

*Fuir*, from *fugere*. Irregular only in the present participle and its derivatives, in which *i* is changed into *y*, except before *e* mute.


*Gésir*, from *jacere*. The *é* of the root changed into *i*. Circumflex accent in 3rd person sing. present ind. to replace *s* of old French *gist*, which came from Latin *c, jacet*.

*Isir*, from *exire*. Past participle ending in *u*.

*Mourir*, from *moriri* for *mori*. Past participle from Latin *mortuus* by the suppression of the final vowels. In the singular, and in 3rd person plural of present indicative of the subjunctive and of the imperative, *o* of the root is changed into *e*, and the *i* of the regular conjugation is suppressed, the tonic accent lying on the root. In the endings of preterite indicative and its derivative, *u* instead of *i*. In the future and conditional present, a contraction which has produced the suppression of *i*.

*Oûir*, from *audire*.

*Ouvrir*, from *aperire*. In past participle *ert*, from Latin ending *ertus* (*apertus*) added to the root. In the singular of the present indicative and its derivative, the endings of the 1st conjugation, the tonic accent lying on the root.

 The observations above apply to all verbs ending in *vrir* and *frir*.

*Tenir*, from *tenere*. Past participle ending in *u*. In the singular and in the 3rd person plural of present indicative of the subjunctive and of the imperative, *i* placed before *e* instead of after *n* to strengthen

the root, on which the tonic accent lies, as it does also in the preterite indicative and its derivative, which consist both of the root in which *e* is changed into *i*. In the future and in the conditional present, *d* is inserted to separate the two liquids *n* and *r*, and *i* is added to the root and placed before *e*.

**V** The observations above apply to all verbs ending in *enir*.

*Vêtir*, from *vestire*. Circumflex accent placed on *e* in the root to replace Latin *s* suppressed in the seventeenth century. Past participle ending in *u*. The present indicative singular has not the *i* of the regular ending, the tonic accent lying on the root. Same irregularity in 2nd person singular of imperative.

### 3rd Conjugation.

*Asseoir* (*s'*), from *assido*. In present participle and derivatives *y* is inserted between the root and the ending, except before *e* mute. In past participle the root loses its final *e*, and adds *is* by analogy with that of *seoir*, *q.v.* In singular of present indicative and its derivative, the tonic accent lying on the root, its final *e* is preceded by *i* to strengthen it, and *d* from Latin is added; *i* also added before *e*, and *oi* suppressed in future and conditional present; final *e* suppressed from root and replaced by *i* in preterite indicative and in its derivative from Latin *assedi*.

*Choir*, from *cadere*.

*Déchoir*, from *choir*. In plural of present indicative and subjunctive *i* changed in the endings into *y* except before *ent*; in future and conditional present *oi* changed into *e*<sup>1</sup> and *r* doubled.

*Echoir*,<sup>1</sup> from *choir*. In present participle *oi* changed into *é*. For the rest, see *déchoir* above.

*Mouvoir*, from *movere*. In past participle, in the preterite indicative and its derivative, the root mutilated and reduced to *m*. In present indicative singular and its derivative, the *v* final of the root is suppressed, the tonic accent lying on the root, and *o* is changed into *e*; the change of *o* into *e* takes place also in every person where *v* precedes *e* mute.

*Pouvoir*, from *providere*. No peculiarity to be mentioned.

*Pouvoir*, from *potere*, for *posse*. In past participle, in the preterite indicative and its derivative, root mutilated and reduced to *p*. In the singular of the present indicative *o* changed into *e*, the *v* final of the root suppressed, the tonic accent lying on the root; in the two first

---

<sup>1</sup> *Déchoir* and *échoir* have both in the present indicative a second form for the 3rd person singular—viz., *il déchet*, *il échet*. The change of *oi* into *e* in the verbs of this conjugation, wherever it occurs, is due to the Norman pronunciation.

persons sing. of same tense  $x$  replacing final  $s$ .<sup>1</sup> The change of  $o$  of the root into  $e$  takes place wherever  $v$  precedes  $e$  mute. In the future and conditional present the  $v$  of the root and  $oi$  suppressed, and  $r$  doubled.

*Savoir*, from *sapere*. In the present participle, in the imperative and in the present subjunctive,  $v$  final of the root is changed into  $ch$ ; the root is mutilated and reduced to  $s$  in past participle, in the preterite indicative and in its derivative. In the sing. of present indicative, the tonic accent lying on the root,  $v$  is replaced by  $i$ . This  $v$  reappears in the plural and also in the imperfect indicative. In the future and conditional present the  $v$  of the root is changed into  $u$ . (For a similar change see *aurai*, *aurais*, from *avoir*.)

*Seoir*, from *sedere*. Present participle from *sedentem* by the suppression of  $d$ . In the past participle the root reduced to  $s$ , to which is added  $is$ , derived from *sessum*. In singular of present indicative root strengthened, the tonic accent lying on it, by  $i$  being placed before  $e$ , and, after it,  $d$  added, taken from Latin root. For the rest, see *asseoir*, page 420.

*Surseoir*, from *supersedere*. Present participle and derivatives lose  $e$  of the root, preserve  $o$ , and add  $y$  before endings except before  $e$  mute. For past participle, preterite indicative and its derivative, see *seoir* above. Present indicative singular and its derivative lose the  $e$  of the root.

*Valoir*, from *valere*. In singular of present indicative and derivative the tonic accent lies on the root,  $l$  is changed into  $u$ , and in the two 1st persons singular the ending is  $x$  instead of  $s$ .<sup>1</sup> In the future and conditional present  $d$  was inserted to separate the two liquids  $l$  and  $r$ , and therefore  $l$  was subsequently changed into  $u$  (see page 16). In subjunctive present the tonic accent lies on the root, which is strengthened by  $i$  being placed before  $l$ , which is doubled.

*Voir*, from *videre*. In the present participle and its derivatives  $i$  is changed into  $y$  except before  $e$  mute. In preterite indicative and its derivative  $i$  in the endings instead of  $u$ . In future and conditional present  $oi$  is changed into  $e$ <sup>2</sup> and  $r$  doubled.

*Vouloir*, from *volere*, derived from *volle* for *velle*. In present indicative singular  $l$  final of the root suppressed,  $o$  changed into  $e$ , and the tonic accent lies on the root. The ending is  $x$ <sup>1</sup> instead of  $s$  in the two first persons singular. In the future and conditional present,  $l$  is changed into  $d$  to avoid the meeting of the two liquids  $l$  and  $r$ . In the singular and in the 3rd person plural of present subjunctive  $o$  of the root is changed into  $e$ , and the root, on which lies the tonic accent, is strengthened by  $i$  being put before  $l$ , which is doubled.

<sup>1</sup> For the change of  $s$  into  $x$  see page 376.

<sup>2</sup> See footnote, page 420.

## 4th Conjugation.

*Absoudre*,  
from *absol-*  
*vere*.

*Dissoudre*,  
from *dissol-*  
*vere*.

*Résoudre*,  
from *resol-*  
*vere*.

In infinitive and its derivatives *ve* suppressed, not being accented, and *d* introduced to separate *l* from *r*, and, therefore, *l* changed into *u* (see page 16). In present participle and its derivatives *lv* of the Latin root reappear. The past participle (*absous*, *dissous*, *résous*, derived from Latin *absolutus*, *dissolutus*, *resolutus*), by the disappearance of the unaccented Latin syllables—final *s* being, however, preserved, as is often the case, cf. *fil*, from *filius*, &c.—in the feminine (*absoute*, *dissoute*), *t* instead of *s* taken from the Latin form of the feminine (*absoluta*, &c.) These three past participles have another form coming from the same Latin participles—viz., *absolu*, *-e*, *dissolu*, *-e*, and *résolu*, *-e*, the two former of which are only used adjectively. In present indicative singular and its derivative *d* final of the root is suppressed, and in the 3rd person singular<sup>1</sup> replaced by *t*. In *résoudre* the preterite indicative and its derivative lose *ud* final of the root, which are replaced by *l* from Latin root, and the endings have *u* instead of *i* of regular conjugation.

*Attirer*, from *attrahere* (see *traire*). Its present participle *attirant* is chiefly used adjectively.

*Boire*, from *bibere*. In the present participle and its derivatives *oi* is changed into *u*, except however before *e* mute. This *v* comes from the second Latin *b*. The root mutilated and reduced to *b* in the past participle, and also in the preterite indicative and its derivative, in which the endings have *u* instead of *i* of the regular conjugation.

**25** This verb has nothing in common with the 4th conjugation except the final *e* of the infinitive, without which it would belong to the 3rd conjugation, in which its only irregularity would be the change of *oi* into *u*.

*Braire*. Origin unknown.

*Bruire*. Origin unknown.


*Conclure*, from *concludere*. The past participle has no ending added to the root; the 3rd person sing. of present indicative has *t* added to the root; the preterite indicative and its derivative have not in their endings the *i* of the regular conjugation (see *clorre*, page 425).

*Exclure*, from *excludere*. See *conclure* above, and *clorre*, page 425.

*Inclure*, from *includere*. The past participle ends in *s*, Latin *inclusum*. For the rest see *conclure* above, and *clorre*, page 425.

<sup>1</sup> **25** With the exception of *coudre*, *moudre*, and their derivatives, of *prendre*, and of all verbs ending in *prendre*, the 3rd person singular present indicative of *ll* irregular verbs of the 4th conjugation ends with *t*.


*Conduire*, from *conducere*. In present participles and its derivatives *s* is added to the root, and comes from the *c* final of the Latin root; this *s* is also found in the preterite indicative and its derivative, but comes from the *x* of Latin *conduxi*. In the past participle *t* is added to the root, and is taken also from Latin *conductus*.<sup>1</sup>

 This applies to all verbs in *uire* derived from *ducere*.

*Luire*, from *lucere*. Same irregularities as if derived from *ducere*, but no *t* in past participle, and no preterite indicative, and therefore no imperfect subjunctive.

*Nuire*, from *nocere*. Same irregularities as if derived from *ducere*, but no *t* in past participle.


*Instruire*, from *instruere*. In present participle and its derivatives *s* added to the root to avoid hiatus, and by analogy with verbs derived from *ducere*. In preterite indicative and its derivative *s* added to the root, but coming from *s* of Latin *instruxi*. In the past participle *t* is added to the root, and comes from *t* of Latin *instructus*.<sup>1</sup>

 This applies to all verbs derived from *struere*—viz., *détruire*, *construire*, &c.

*Confire*, from *conficere*. In present participle and its derivatives *s* added to the root from the second *c* of the Latin primitive; in past participle *t* added to the root, coming also from Latin *confectum*; in preterite indicative and its derivative the *i* of the regular conjugation is not added to the root.

*Suffire*, from *sufficere*. See *confire* above, from which it differs only in having no *t* in past participle.

*Connaitre*, from *cognoscere*. In infinitive present and in its derivatives circumflex accent over *i*, to replace suppressed *s* coming from Latin root, and *t* added to separate *s* from *r*, old French *conoistre*; circumflex accent also to replace suppressed *s* in 3rd person singular of present indicative. In preterite indicative and its derivative *u* added to the root instead of *i*. In the present participle and its derivatives *ss* added to the root, and coming from Latin *sc*. In the two first persons singular of present indicative, and in the 2nd singular of imperative, the *t* final of the root is suppressed.

 The addition of *ss* in present participle and derivatives occurs in all verbs ending in *aitre* and *oitre*, derived from Latin verbs ending in *sco*.

*Coudre*, from *consuere*. In infinitive present and its derivatives the *s* of the Latin primitive is changed into *d* to avoid the meeting of *s* and *r*. The *s* of the Latin primitive reappears and replaces the final *d* of the French root in the present participle and its derivatives, in the past participle, in the preterite indicative and in its derivative.

---

<sup>1</sup> When in Latin *c* precedes *t*, it is changed into *t* in the corresponding French words; cf. *fruit* from *fructum*; *nuit* from *noctem*, &c.



*Contraindre*, from *contringere*. In the infinitive present and its derivatives the *g* of the Latin root is replaced by *d*. In the present participle and its derivatives the *g* of the Latin root reappears, but is inserted between *i* and *n*, and the *d* final of the French root is suppressed. This occurs also in the preterite indicative and its derivative. In the past participle, *d* final of the French root is suppressed, and replaced by *t* taken from the Latin supine. In the sing. of the present indicative the final *d* of the root is suppressed, and it is replaced by *t* in the 3rd person singular; this *d* is suppressed also from the 2nd person singular of the imperative.

These observations apply to all verbs ending in *aindre*, *eindre*, *oindre*, even to *craindre*, although derived from *tremere*.

*Croire*, from *credere*. In the present participle and its derivatives, *i* is changed into *y* except before *e* mute. In the past participle the root is mutilated and reduced to *cr*; so it is also in the preterite indicative and in its derivative, in the endings of which *u* replaces *i* of the regular conjugation.

This verb has nothing in common with the 4th conjugation except the final *e* of the infinitive present, without which it would belong to the 3rd conjugation, in which it would be a regular verb.

*Croître*, from *crescere*. Old French *croistre*. Circumflex accent in the infinitive present and its derivatives to replace *s* suppressed, and *t* added previously to this suppression to separate *s* from *r*. Circumflex accent also in past participle, but to replace suppressed *e*, old French *creu*, Latin *cretum*; also in the 3rd person singular of present indicative to replace *s* suppressed: old French *il croist*. In the other persons and tenses in which this accent is found it serves to distinguish the forms of *croître*, which are similar to those of *croire*. In the past participle the root is mutilated and reduced to *cr*; so it is also in the preterite indicative and in its derivative, in the endings of which *u* replaces *i* of the regular conjugation. As to *ss* in present participle and its derivatives, see *connaitre*, page 423. In the two 1st persons sing. of the present indicative and 2nd singular of the imperative, the *t* final of the root is suppressed.

*Dire*, from *dicere*. In the present participle and its derivative, *s*<sup>1</sup> coming from Latin *c* is added to the root. In the past participle *t* is added to the French root, and comes from Latin supine. In the present indicative and its derivative the 2nd person plural ends in *tes*, from Latin ending *tis* (see page 407). In preterite indicative and its derivative *i* of the regular conjugation is not added to the root.

With the exception of *redire*, the verbs derived from *dire* are regular

<sup>1</sup> This *s* appeared only in the thirteenth century, and from that time the two forms, with and without *s*, are met with, especially in the present subjunctive, until the latter end of the seventeenth century.

in the 2nd person plural of the present indicative and of its derivative. This difference, however, is recent; it dates only from the latter end of the seventeenth century.

*Maudire*, from *maledicere*. In this verb the *l* of Latin is changed into *u* through the suppression of *e*, which brought it close to *d* (see page 376). In the present participle and its derivatives Latin *c* is changed into *ss*. For the rest see *dire*, page 424.

*Clôre*, from *claudere*. Irregularities easily traced to its Latin primitive (see *conclure* and others derived from the same Latin root, page 422).

*Écrire*, from *scribere*. By prosthesis *e* added to Latin root: old French *escrire*.<sup>1</sup> This *s* suppressed in the seventeenth century, when an acute accent was placed over *e* initial. In the present participle and its derivatives *v* added to the root, and comes from Latin *b*; *v* is also found in the preterite indicative and its derivative. In the past participle *t* is added to the root, and comes from Latin supine.

These observations apply to all verbs ending in *crire*, except, of course, the prosthesis of *e*.

*Faire*, from *facere*. In the present participle and its derivatives *s*, coming from Latin *c*, is added to the root. In the present indicative and its derivative the 2nd person plural ends in *tes*, from the Latin ending *tis* (see *dire*, page 424, and also page 407). In the 3rd person plural of the same tense the root is reduced to *f*, to which is added *ont*, from Latin *unt* (cf. *sont* from *sunt*, &c.) In the past participle *t* from Latin supine is added to the root.<sup>2</sup> In the preterite indicative and its derivative the *a* of the root is suppressed, and *i* of the regular conjugation is not added to it. In the future and conditional present *ai* of the root is changed into *e* mute for the sake of euphony. In the present subjunctive the *i* final of the root is suppressed, and the *s* of the present participle is doubled.

*Frîre*, from *frigere*. In the past participle *t* from Latin supine is added to the root.

*Joindre*, from *jungere*. See *contraindre*, page 424.

*Lire*, from *legere*. In present participle and its derivatives Latin *g* is changed into *s*, which is added to the root; root mutilated and reduced to *l* in past participle, also in preterite indicative and its derivative, in the endings of which *u* replaces *i* of the regular conjugation.

*Luire*. See page 423.

*Mettre*, from *mittere*. In past participle root mutilated and reduced

<sup>1</sup> This prosthesis of *e* is frequent with *s* followed by a consonant. It was done to facilitate the pronunciation of this combination of letters, which the Kelts found difficult to articulate—cf. *étude*, old French *estude*, from *studium*; *espérer*, from *sperare*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> As to the change of Latin *c* into *t*, see footnote, page 423.

to *m*, and *is* added to it from Latin *missum*; same irregularity in preterite indicative and in its derivative from Latin *missi*. In the singular of the present indicative, and in the 2nd person singular of imperative the final *t* of the root is suppressed.

*Moudre*, from *molere*: old French *molre*, then *moldre*. In infinitive present and derivatives *d* added to separate *l* from *r*, and therefore *l* subsequently changed into *u* (see page 376). In present participle and its derivatives Latin *l* reappears and replaces *d* final of the French root; also in the past participle; also in the preterite indicative and its derivative, in the endings of which *u* replaces *i* of the regular conjugation: Latin *molui*.

*Naitre*, from *nascere*, low Latin for *nasci*. Past participle *né*,<sup>1</sup> from *natus*. In infinitive present and derivatives *t* inserted to separate *s* from *r* (old French *nestre*), and circumflex accent added subsequently to replace *s* suppressed from these tenses and from the 3rd person sing. of the present indicative. In preterite indicative and its derivative *qu* replaces *c* hard of the low Latin form *nascere*.<sup>2</sup> As to *ss* in present participle and derivatives, see *connaître*, page 423. In the two 1st persons singular of present indicative, and in the 2nd singular of imperative, *t* suppressed from the root.

*Paitre*, from *pascere*, for *pasci*.<sup>2</sup> Circumflex accent added to the infinitive, to its derivatives, and to the 3rd person singular of present indicative to replace *s* suppressed; *t* added previously to this suppression to separate *s* from *r*: old French *pestre*, *paistre*. As to *ss* in present participle and derivatives, see *connaître*, page 423. In the two 1st persons singular of present indicative, and 2nd singular of imperative, *t* suppressed from the root.

*Peindre*, from *pingere*. See *contraindre*, page 424.

*Plaire*, from *placere*. In present participle and derivatives *s* added to the root from Latin *o*; circumflex accent in 3rd person singular of present indicative to replace *c* or *s* suppressed: old French *placet*, *plaist*; root mutilated and reduced to *pl* in past participle; also in preterite indicative and in its derivative, in the endings of which *u* replaces *i* of the regular conjugation: Latin *placui*.

*Prendre*, from *prendere*, for *prehendere*. In present participle and its derivatives the *d* final of the root is suppressed. The root is mutilated and reduced to *pr*—1st, in the past participle, the ending of which is *is*, from Latin *prensum*, old French *prins*; 2nd, in preterite indicative and its derivative, the endings of which have *i* of the regular conjugation.

*Résoudre*. See page 422.

*Rire*, from *ridere*. The past participle consists simply of the root.

<sup>1</sup> The change of *atus* into *é* is frequent, see page 384, and cf. *chanté*, from *cantatus*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Vulgar and low Latin gave the active form to many deponent verbs,

In the preterite indicative and its derivative the vowel *i* of the regular conjugation is not added to the root.

*Suivre*, from *sequere* or *sequire*, low Latin for *sequi*. In infinitive present and its derivatives Latin *q* is suppressed in consequence of *u* being changed into *v*.<sup>1</sup> In the singular of present indicative and its derivative the *v* final of the root is suppressed.

*Taire*, from *tacere*. In present participle and derivatives Latin *c* changed into *s*, which is added to the French root. Root mutilated and reduced to *t* in past participle, also in preterite indicative and in its derivative, the endings of which have *u* instead of *i* of the regular conjugation.

*Traire*, from *trahere*. In present participle and derivatives *i* final of the root changed into *y* before a vowel except *e* mute. In past participle *t* added to the root, Latin *tractum* (for the change into *i* of *c* when it precedes *t*, see page 423, footnote).

*Vivre*, from *vivere*. The past participle, the preterite indicative and its derivative, extremely deviate from Latin primitive. No account can be given of this strange irregularity. The old French preterite was *vescus* and *vesqui*. This was *perhaps* the result of a wrong pronunciation of the *x* of *vixi*—i.e., *vesqui* instead of *vixi* (?).

In the singular of the present indicative the *v* final of the root is suppressed as well as in the 2nd person singular of the imperative.

## ETYMOLOGY OF A FEW RARELY USED IRREGULAR VERBS.

*Apparoir*, to be evident, from *apparere*.

*Advenir*, *avenir*, to happen, from *advenire*. See *tenir*.

*Chaloir*, to care for, from *calere*.

*Circoncire*, to circumcise, from *circumcidere*.

*Comparaître*, to appear (law term), from *comparere*.

*Condouloir* (*se*), to sympathize with any one, from *condolere*.

*Courre*, to run, to hunt (hunting term), from *currere*.

*Déclorer*, to remove a fencing, to throw open, from negative prefix *dé* and *clorer*, which see page 425.

*Forclorer*, to foreclose (law term), from old French *fors* for *hors*, and *clorer*, which see page 425.

*Démouvoir*, to overrule, to cause any one to desist, from negative prefix *dé* and *mouvoir*, which see page 420.

*Dépourvoir*, to take away what is necessary, from negative prefix *dé* and *pourvoir*, which see page 420.

*Duire*, to please, from *ducere*. See *conduire*, page 423.

<sup>1</sup> The change into *v* of Latin *u* preceding a vowel occurs in several words: *januarius* has given *janvier*; *veuve* comes from *vidua*, &c.

*Emboire*, to imbibe (a term used in painting), to coat with oil or wax, from *en* and *boire*, which see page 422.

*Honnir*, to blame, to shame, from old high German *honjan*; modern German *höhn*.

*Occire*, to slay, to kill, from *occidere*.

*Reclure*, to shut up, from *recludere*, in low Latin, to shut up, from *re* and *claudere*. See *clorre*, page 425.

*Retraire*, to redeem (law term), from *retrahere*. See *traire*, page 427.

*Soudre*, to solve, from *solvere*.

*Sourdre*, to spring out, to ooze out, from *surgere*, contraction of *surrigere*.

## ADVERBS.

### § 1. OF MANNER.

The Latin affixes *e*, *ter*, which served to form those adverbs, did not pass into French on account of their not being accented, so that to create these adverbs the French language had recourse to another affix, and adopted the Latin noun *mens*, which, among the writers of the Empire, had already assumed the sense of *manner*, *fashion*.

The case that was chosen was the ablative, as it was so used in Latin,<sup>1</sup> but it was shortened into *ment* by the regular apocope of the final *e*, and, so modified, was affixed to the *feminine* of adjectives, first because of the gender of *mens*, and last, but not least, for the sake of euphony; hence *bonnement*, from *bonne*, feminine of *bon*, &c.

Of course adjectives which had but one termination for both genders—and among them those ending in *ant* and *ent* from Latin participial forms in *antem* and *entem*—formed their adverbs by simply adding *ment*, and such were *loyalment*, *fortement*, *grandement*, *prudemment*, &c. But during the fourteenth century the general rule, according to which the feminine is formed by adding *e*, having been extended to these adjectives, their adverbs were also formed from the feminine, and became accordingly *loyalement*, *fortement*, *grandement*, *prudemment*, &c.

However, adverbs derived from adjectives in *ant* and *ent* did not long preserve this spelling, for as early as the fifteenth century the archaic form reappeared, and has continued to this day, but with a slight modification, *n* final of the adjective being changed into *m* in the adverb—e.g., *prudemment* from *prudent*, *constamment* from *constant*, &c.

As to the three adverbs *lentement*, *présentement*, and *véhémentement*, they are old French forms, the two former appearing in the thirteenth century, the latter in the fourteenth, and they have been preserved unaltered, most likely on account of their being more euphonic than the ending in *ment*.

<sup>1</sup> "Devota mente tuentur."—Claudianus.

The origin of the three following requires to be mentioned:—

*notamment*, chiefly, principally, from *notant*, the present participle of the verb *noter*;

*nuitamment*, nightly, from a fictitious adjective *nuitant*. There is *nuitentre* in old French;

*sciemment*, knowingly, from the old French adjective now dead, *scient*, from *scientem*.

In this place must be mentioned the few adverbs of manner which are not so derived: *ensemble*, from *in simul*; *mal*, from *male*, the comparative of which, *pis*, is derived from *pejus*; *bien*,<sup>1</sup> from *bene*, comparative *mieux* (old French *melz*, *mielz*), from *melius*.

## § 2. OF QUANTITY AND INTENSITY.

*Assez*,<sup>2</sup> from *ad satis*.

*autant*, ,, *aliud tantum*.

*bien*, ,, *bene*.

*beaucoup* (old French *grand coup*),<sup>3</sup> from the two French words *beau* and *coup*. *Coup* is derived from old French *colp*, which comes from *colpus* or *colphus*, vulgar Latin for *colaphus*.

*plus*, from Latin *plus*. It is the comparative of *beaucoup*.

*combien*, ,, the two French words *comme* and *bien*.

*peu*, ,, *paucum*.

*moins*, ,, *minus*. It is the comparative of *peu*.

*tant*, ,, *tantum*.

*trop*, ,, (low Latin *troppus*) old high German *drupo*.

*si*, ,, Latin *sic*.

*très*, ,, *trans*.

*aussi*, ,, *aliud sic*.

*ainsi* (old French *issi ensi*), from Latin *in sic*.

*partant*, from Latin *per tantum*, or from the French equivalent *par* and *tant*.

*tellement*, formed as an adverb of manner from *telle* and *ment*.

*presque*, from French *près* and *que*.

*comment*, formed as an adverb of manner from French *comme* (old French *com*, from *quomodo*), and the affix *ment*.

*davantage*, formed from *de*, contracted into *d*, with the meaning of *par*, and the noun *avantage*.

*guère* or *guères*, from old German *weigaro*, modern German *gar*.

<sup>1</sup> *Bien* is also used as an adverb of quantity.

<sup>2</sup> In old French it meant much, a great deal.

<sup>3</sup> *Grand coup* appeared about the thirteenth century, and *beaucoup* about the fourteenth. Before that time *moult*, from *multum*, was used.

## § 3. OF AFFIRMATION AND NEGATION.

<i>Si</i> , <sup>1</sup> . . . from <i>sic</i> .	<i>ne</i> , . . . from <i>non</i> .
<i>volontiers</i> , . . . „ <i>voluntariis</i> .	<i>pas</i> , . . . „ <i>passus</i> .
<i>oui</i> (old F. <i>oïl</i> ), „ <i>hoc illud</i> .	<i>point</i> , . . . „ <i>punctum</i> .
<i>non</i> , . . . „ <i>non</i> .	<i>goutte</i> , <sup>2</sup> . . . „ <i>gutta</i> .
<i>certes</i> , . . . „ <i>a certis</i> .	

## § 4. OF PLACE.

*alentour*, from *à l'entour*.

*amont*<sup>3</sup> (uphill), from *ad montem*.

*aval*<sup>3</sup> (downhill), „ *ad vallem*.

*ça*, from *ecce hac*; derivative *delà*.

*céans* (old F. *caiens*, *ca ens*), from the Latin *ecce hac intus*.

*avant*,<sup>4</sup> from *ab* and *ante*.

*dedans*, „ *de* and *dans*.

*devant*,<sup>4</sup> „ *de* and *avant*.

*derrière*<sup>4</sup> (old French *riere*), from Latin *de* and *retro*.

*léans*<sup>5</sup> (old French *laiens*, *la ens*), from *illac intus*.

*environ*, from *en* and old French *viron*, from the low Latin form *virare*.<sup>6</sup>

*y* (old French *iv*), from *ibi*.

*ici*, from *ecce hic*.

*ailleurs*, „ *aliorum*.

*là*, „ *illac*; derivative *dela*.

*partout*, „ Latin *per totum*.

*proche*, „ *propius*.

*loin*, „ *longe*.

*auprès*,<sup>4</sup> „ *au* and *près*.

*dessus*, „ the prefix *de*<sup>7</sup> and *sus* for *sur*.

*dessous*, „ the prefix *de*<sup>7</sup> and *suos*.

*où*, „ old French *u*; derived from *ubi*.

*dehors*, „ *de* and *hors*.

*nulle part*, adverbial phrase from *nulle* and *part*.

<sup>1</sup> *Si*, in answering a negative, is used instead of *oui*.

<sup>2</sup> Obsolescent; used only in the expressions, *je n'y vois goutte*; *je n'y entends goutte*—I don't see at all; I don't understand it at all.

<sup>3</sup> *Amont* and *aval* are nouns, but often used adverbially. The verb *avaler* (to swallow) is derived from *aval*.

<sup>4</sup> Also used as preposition.

<sup>5</sup> Obsolete; given only to show the opposite of *céans*.

<sup>6</sup> To turn.

<sup>7</sup> The *s* being doubled that it should keep its hissing sound.

## § 5. OF TIME.

*Maintenant* (the hand still holding), from French *main* and present participle *tenant*.

*d-présent*, from *ad præsentem*.

*hui*, „ *hodie* ; *aujourd' hui* (*au jour d' hui*).

*hier*, „ *heri*.

*parfois*, „ French *par* and *fois*.

*demain*, „ *de* and *mane*.

*toujours*, contraction of *tous les jours*.

*encore* (old French *anc ore*), from *hanc horam*.

*soudain*, from *subitaneus*.

*déjà*, „ French *dès* and Latin *jam*.<sup>1</sup>

*jadis*, „ *jam* and *dies*.

*jamais*, „ *jam* and *mais*, from *magis*.

*long-temps*, „ French *long* and *temps*.

*ensuite*, „ French *en* and *suite*.

*enfin*, „ French *en* and *fin*.

*puis*, „ Latin *post*.

*depuis*, „ French *de* and *puis*.

*lors* (old French *l'ore* or *l'ores*), from *hora*.

*tard*, from Latin *tarde*.

*souvent*, „ *subinde*.

*tandis*, „ *tantos dies*.

*tôt*,<sup>2</sup> supposed to be from *tostus*.

*désormais* (from *des ore mais*), from *de ex hora* and *magis*—from this hour forward.

*auparavant*, from French *au par avant*.<sup>3</sup>

*dorénavant*<sup>4</sup> (old French *d'ore en avant*).

*alors* (old French *à l'ore* or *à l'ores*), from French *à* and *lors*.

*avant*, from Latin *ab* and *ante*.

*naguères* or *naguère*, from old French *n'a guères*, for *il n'y a guères*: literally there is not much (time understood), meaning it is not long since. In the old language “there is” was not expressed as it is to-day by *il y a*, but by *il a*, from *illud habet* (see page 417).

<sup>1</sup> *Jam* is for *diam-diem*: *dī* is frequently changed even in Latin into *j*: *Jovis*, *Janus*, for *Diovis*, *Dianus*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Rarely used by itself, but often found joined to other adverbs: *aussitôt bientôt*, *tantôt*, &c.

<sup>3</sup> In old French it is found in two words; *au* was added only in the fifteenth century.

<sup>4</sup> From this hour forward.



## PREPOSITIONS.

Most of the Latin prepositions have passed into French ; they are generally very easy to trace. The most frequently used are given here and classified according to the relations or connections they express.

## § 1. PLACE.

*Après*, from French *au* and *près*.

*autour*, „ French *au tour*.

*chez*, „ Latin *casa*.

*dans* (old French *de ins, dens*), from Latin *de* and *intus*.

*devant*, from French *de* and *avant*.

*derrière* (old French *riere*), from Latin *de* and *retro*.

*entre*, from Latin *inter*.

*en*, „ Latin *in*.

*hors*<sup>1</sup> (old French *fors*), from Latin *foris*.

*sous*, from Latin *subtus*.

*sur* (old French *sour*), from Latin *super* or *supra*.

*jusque*, from Latin *de*<sup>2</sup> and *usque*.

*lez*,<sup>3</sup> „ Latin *latus*.

*parmi*, „ French *per* and *mi*, derived both from Latin *per* and *medium*.

*près*, „ Latin *pressum*.

*proche*, „ Latin *propius*.

*rez*,<sup>4</sup> „ Latin *rasus*.

*au ras de*,<sup>5</sup> „ French *au* ; *ras*, from Latin *rasus* ; and *de* from French.

*vers*, „ Latin *versus*.

*vis-à-vis*, „ old French *vis*, which meant face.<sup>6</sup>

*voici*,<sup>7</sup> imperative of French verb *voir*, with adverb *ci* affixed to it.

*voilà*,<sup>7</sup> imperative of French verb *voir*, with adverb *là* affixed to it.

## § 2. ORDER, TIME.

*Avant*, from Latin *ab* and *ante*.

*après*, „ French *d* and *près*.

*depuis*, „ French *de* and *puis*.

*dès*, „ Latin *de* and *ex*.

<sup>1</sup> By the permutation, rare in French, of *f* into *h*.

<sup>2</sup> For the change of *d* into *j*, see footnote 1, page 71.

<sup>3</sup> This word is used only with geographical names, as in *Plessis-les-Tours*, from its having been so used in low Latin instead of *juxta*: *Plexitium latus Turonem*; in English, "Plessis by Tours."

<sup>4</sup> Little used; *au ras de* is now preferred; found in the compound noun *rez-de-chaussée*, ground-floor.

<sup>5</sup> Or simply *d* *ras*.

<sup>6</sup> Face to face; opposite.

<sup>7</sup> *Voici* for *Vois ici*; *Voilà* for *Vois là*. Also used as prepositions of place.

## § 3. UNION.

*Avec*, from Latin *apud* and *hoc*.

*durant*, present participle of French verb *durer*.

*pendant*, „ „ „ *pendre*.

*outré*, from Latin *ultra*.

*selon* (old French *selonc*, *soulonc*), from Latin *sub longum*.

*suivant*, present participle of French verb *suivre*.

## § 4. SEPARATION, OPPOSITION.

*Contre*, from Latin *contra*.

*excepté*, past participle of French verb *excepter*.

*faute de*, from French noun *faute*, derived from Latin *fallere*.

*hormis*, „ French *hors* and *mis*.<sup>1</sup>

*hors* (see prepositions of place).

*malgré*, from Latin *malum gratum*.

*nonobstant*, „ Latin *non* and *obstare*.

*sans*, „ low Latin *sinis*.<sup>2</sup>

## § 5. END, CAUSE, MEANS, DESTINATION.

*Concernant*, present participle of French verb *concerner*.

*à*, from Latin *ab* and *ad*.

*attendu*, past participle of French verb *attendre*.

*de*, from Latin *de*.

*envers*, „ French *en* and *vers*.

*moyennant*, present participle of French verb *moyenner*.

*par*, from Latin *per*.

*pour*, „ Latin *pro*.

*touchant*, present participle of French verb *toucher*.

*vu*, past participle of French verb *voir*.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

They are also very easy to trace. The ones most often used, divided into simple and compound,<sup>3</sup> are given here.

<sup>1</sup> *Mis* is the past participle of *mettre*, to put.

<sup>2</sup> Some etymologists derive it from *sine*, which does not account for the final *s*. *Sans* in its present form appears in the twelfth century; it was *seins* in the eleventh.

<sup>3</sup> "Compound"—i.e., those formed by means of several Latin or French words united in one.

## § 1. SIMPLE.

<i>Car</i> , <sup>1</sup> from Latin <i>quare</i> .	<i>donc</i> , from <i>de unquam</i> . <sup>2</sup>
<i>comme</i> (old French <i>cum</i> ), from Latin <i>quomodo</i> .	<i>quand</i> , „ <i>de quando</i> .
<i>et</i> , from <i>et</i> .	<i>mais</i> , „ <i>magis</i> .
<i>ou</i> , „ <i>aut</i> .	<i>or</i> , „ <i>hora</i> .
<i>ni</i> , „ <i>nec</i> .	<i>que</i> , „ <i>qued</i> , for <i>quod</i> .
	<i>si</i> , „ <i>si</i> (archaic <i>sci</i> ).

## § 2. COMPOUND.

<i>Cependant</i> , from French <i>ce</i> and <i>pendant</i> .	
<i>encore</i> , „ Latin <i>hanc horam</i> .	
<i>ainsi</i> (old French <i>issi-ensi</i> ), from Latin <i>in sic</i> .	
<i>aussi</i> (old French <i>alsi</i> ), from Latin <i>aliud sic</i> .	
<i>lorsque</i> , from French <i>lors</i> and <i>que</i> .	
<i>puisque</i> , „ <i>puis</i> and <i>que</i> .	
<i>toutefois</i> , „ <i>toute</i> and <i>fois</i> .	
<i>plutôt</i> , „ <i>plus</i> and <i>tôt</i> .	
<i>quoique</i> , „ <i>quoi</i> and <i>que</i> .	
<i>néanmoins</i> , „ <i>néant</i> <sup>3</sup> and <i>moins</i> .	

## INTERJECTIONS,

being nearly alike in the two languages, need not be mentioned here. However, there are two which must be noticed—viz., *hélas* ! and *dame* !

*Hélas* comes from the interjection *hé* and the adjective *las* :<sup>4</sup> *las* in old French meant *unhappy*. This interjection was spelt in two words, *hé* ! *las* ! until the fifteenth century, when they were united in one, which from that time lost the primitive signification to assume the present one. *Hé* ! *las* *que* *je* *suis* ! for “How unhappy I am !” is often found in old French.

*Dame* ! from the Latin *Domine Deus*, which became in French *Dame Dieu*. In old French the expression *Dame Dieu nous aide* ! “The Lord God help us !” is often met with. Very often the second word was dropped, and the expression *Dame* ! “Lord !” used by itself. But although it is still in use, the remembrance of its signification has disappeared, and it is now meaningless.

<sup>1</sup> In old French it meant *why*.

<sup>2</sup> Some etymologists derive it from *ad tunc*.

<sup>3</sup> *Néant*, from Latin *ne entem*, and *oins*, from *minus* ; it means, not the less, nevertheless.

<sup>4</sup> *Las* means at present tired.

# INDEX.

<b>A</b> ; with and without accent, . . .	Page 8
English indef. art., 13, 212, 220, 374	
Preposition, { 8, 14, 15, 195, 232	233, 344, 433
Verbs requiring a, . . .	297
<i>A</i> ( <i>ac</i> , <i>af</i> , <i>ap</i> ); prefix, . . .	418
Abbreviations in the Exercises, . . .	6
<i>Able</i> , <i>ible</i> ; affix, . . .	398
<i>Absténir</i> ( <i>s'</i> ), to abstain, . . .	148
ACCENT, tonic, where laid in	
French and in Latin, . . .	368, 369
Accents, their introduction, num-	
ber, and use, . . .	8, 373
ACCIDENCE, . . .	13-204
<i>Ace</i> , <i>ache</i> ; affixes, . . .	387
<i>Ade</i> ; affix, . . .	384, 388
ADJECTIVES, . . . 25-50, 237-256, 391-403	
Formation of the feminine, { 25-28	392-395
Plural of adjectives, . . .	29
Complement of, . . .	248-252
Concord of, . . .	237-240
Degrees of comparison, { 30-35, 255	395, 396
Demonstrative, . . .	44, 403
Indefinite, . . .	45-50, 403
Numeral, Cardinal, 35, 253, 399, 400	
— Ordinal, 35, 38, 253, 400, 401	
Possessive, . . .	43, 402, 403
Of Quality, . . .	25-35, 391-399
Derivation from Latin adjectives	
of three, two, and one ter-	
minations, . . .	391, 392
Modern formation of adj., . . .	396-399
Participles used as adj., 243, 398, 399	
Used adverbially, . . .	238
Of dimension, . . .	254
ADVERBS, . . . 187-194, 337-343, 428-431	
How formed from adjectives, . . .	193
Of manner, . . .	193, 194, 428, 429
Of quantity and intensity, . . .	189, 429
Of affirmation, negation, &c., 188, 430	
Of place, . . .	191, 430
Of time, . . .	192, 431

	Page
<i>Age</i> , <i>aie</i> , <i>ail</i> , <i>aïlle</i> ; affixes, { 384, 385	386, 388
<i>Aïeul</i> ; its plurals, . . .	20
<i>Aïll</i> ; verbal affix, . . .	415
<i>Ain</i> , <i>aine</i> , <i>an</i> , <i>ance</i> , <i>ane</i> , <i>en</i> , <i>enne</i> ;	
affixes, . . .	384, 388, 389, 397
<i>Aïre</i> , <i>er</i> , <i>ier</i> , <i>ière</i> , <i>aïs</i> ; affixes, 385, 397	
<i>Aïson</i> , <i>atïon</i> , <i>oïson</i> , <i>ison</i> ; affixes, . . .	388
<i>Aïd</i> , <i>aïld</i> , <i>aïult</i> , <i>aut</i> ; affixes, . . .	386
<i>All</i> , . . .	29, 47, 65
<i>Aller</i> ; <i>s'en aller</i> , . . .	132, 133
Alphabet, . . .	7
<i>Although</i> , <i>quoique</i> , . . .	352, 434
<i>Always</i> , <i>toujours</i> , . . .	192, 431
<i>Ante</i> , <i>anté</i> , <i>anti</i> ; prefixes, . . .	383, 396
<i>Antecedent</i> ; its meaning, . . .	58
<i>Any</i> , <i>some</i> ; how expressed, . . .	16, 374
<i>Apostrophe</i> , its origin and use, { 8, 9	373, 394
<i>Appartenir</i> , see <i>tenir</i> , . . .	148
<i>Après</i> , <i>arrière</i> , <i>arch</i> , <i>archi</i> ; pre-	
fixes, . . .	383, 397
<i>Ard</i> , <i>as</i> , <i>ass</i> ; affixes, . . .	386, 390, 398
<i>Are</i> (superfic. measure), . . .	360
<i>Around</i> , . . .	847
ARTICLES, . . . 13-17, 205-224, 374	
Contraction of, . . .	14, 374
Derivation of, . . .	374
Partitive, . . .	16, 70, 211
Use and omission of, . . .	205-223
<i>Ass</i> ; verbal affix, . . .	415
<i>At</i> , affix; Latin, 384; French, . . .	386
<i>Âtre</i> ; affix, . . .	387, 398
<i>Aucun</i> , <i>aucune</i> , none, . . .	46, 65, 403
<i>Aud</i> ; affix, . . .	390
<i>Autrui</i> , others, . . .	63, 405
<i>Avant</i> , <i>devant</i> , <i>aparavant</i> , . . .	348, 383
<i>Avoir</i> , to have, . . .	67, 408, 409
— idiomatically used, . . .	113, 222

<i>Barefooted</i> , . . .	238
<i>Battre</i> , . . .	131, 417
<i>Beaucoup</i> ; Remark on, . . .	388



	Page
<i>En</i> ; preposition, . . .	199, 250, 344
— governs the Pres. participle, . . .	199
<i>En, dans</i> ; how used, . . .	346, 432
<i>En, em</i> ; prefix, . . .	413
<i>Endings</i> of verbs, . . .	69
<i>Ent</i> , instead of <i>ant</i> , in some adj., . . .	399
<i>Entre</i> ; when written <i>entr</i> , . . .	9
— prefix, . . .	383, 413
<i>Er</i> ; verbal affix, . . .	414, 415
<i>Er, erie, ie, rie</i> ; affixes, . . .	385, 397
<i>Erieur</i> ; origin of adjectives in, . . .	395
<i>Es</i> (old contracted article), . . .	374
<i>Esse, ese, esque</i> ; affixes, 385, 388, 390, 397	
<i>Et</i> ; verbal affix, . . .	415
<i>Et, ette</i> ; French affixes, . . .	386, 389, 398
<i>Êté</i> , gender of, . . .	10, 378
<i>Être</i> (to be), its conjugation, . . .	72
— its derivation, . . .	409-411
<i>Eur, euse, esse, trice</i> , affixes, . . .	388-390
<i>Eux</i> ; pronoun, . . .	63, 404
— affix, . . .	397
<i>Everybody</i> , 62; <i>eye, eyes</i> , . . .	20
<i>Ex, extra</i> ; prefixes, . . .	383, 396

<i>F</i> ; feminine of adjectives ending in, . . .	26, 393
<i>Faire</i> (to do, to make), . . .	171, 425
<i>Falloir</i> (to be necessary), . . .	116, 417
<i>Fleurir</i> (to flourish), . . .	130, 417
<i>Foresee</i> (to), see <i>Voir</i> , . . .	158
FORMATION OF TENSES, . . .	76
Of the fem. of adj., . . .	25-29, 392, 393
Modern, of adjectives, . . .	396-399
— of nouns, . . .	382, 391
— of verbs, . . .	412-416
Fractional expressions and collec- tive nouns, . . .	38, 402
<i>Franc</i> (coin), . . .	360
<i>Future</i> ; how formed, . . .	76, 406

<i>G</i> ; feminine of adj. ending in, . . .	395
GENDER, by meaning, . . .	10, 225
— by terminations, . . .	11
— derivation, . . .	377, 378
— double, . . .	379, 382
<i>Gent, gens</i> , . . .	18, 227
GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE LANGUAGE, . . .	367, 368
<i>Give</i> (to), <i>donner</i> , . . .	78
<i>Go</i> (to), <i>aller</i> , . . .	132
— out (to), <i>sortir</i> , . . .	147
<i>Gramme</i> (weight), . . .	360
<i>Grand</i> , in compound feminine nouns, . . .	230, 293
<i>Guère</i> , . . .	189, 429

<i>H</i> ; observations on letter, . . .	15, 373
<i>Half</i> (demi); its Syntax, . . .	238, 402
<i>Hair</i> (to hate), . . .	130, 417

	Page
<i>Hélas</i> ; origin of, . . .	434
<i>He who, she who</i> , . . .	278
<i>Hectolitre</i> (100 litres), . . .	360
<i>Hectomètre</i> (100 mètres), . . .	360
<i>Her, him</i> , . . .	43, 53, 261
HISTORY OF THE FRENCH LAN- GUAGE, . . .	361-367
<i>Hyphen</i> , . . .	9, 95, 265

<i>I</i> ; when cut off, . . .	9
<i>Ible, iche, icule</i> ; affixes, . . .	387, 398
IDIOMATICAL TENSES, . . .	90
<i>Je, ième</i> ; affixes, . . .	385, 389, 390, 401
<i>Jen, ienne, ter, ière</i> ; affixes, . . .	385, 397
<i>If</i> (si); Remarks on, . . .	9, 314
— affix, . . .	398
<i>Il, im, in, ir</i> ; prefix, . . .	384, 397
<i>Il, ils</i> ; pronoun, . . .	404
<i>Ill, iller</i> ; affixes, . . .	414, 415
<i>Illon</i> ; affix, . . .	388
<i>Imperfect</i> ; when used, . . .	309, 314
<i>Impersonal verbs</i> , . . .	114
<i>In, ine</i> ; affixes, . . .	386, 388, 398
<i>In, into</i> ; how rendered, . . .	346
<i>Indefinite adjectives</i> , . . .	45
— pronouns, . . .	62, 284
<i>Inter</i> ; prefix, . . .	383, 397, 434
INTERJECTIONS, . . .	203, 433
INTERROGATIVE CONSTRUCTION, . . .	416
<i>Ique</i> ; affix, . . .	397
<i>Ir, cir</i> ; affixes, . . .	415
<i>Ir</i> ; prefix, . . .	384, 397
Irregularities in the formation of the feminine of adjectives, . . .	393-395
IRREGULAR VERBS, . . .	132-186, 417-423
<i>Is, iée, esse</i> ; affixes, . . .	386, 389, 390
<i>Iser</i> ; affix, . . .	414, 415
<i>Ième, iée, iéon</i> , . . .	386, 387, 388
<i>Iste, ité, tier, itude</i> ; affixes, 386, 390, 415	
<i>It</i> , . . .	53, 56, 266, 276, 278
<i>Its, their</i> , . . .	43, 54, 271, 274

<i>Je</i> ; pronoun, . . .	51, 404
— the <i>e</i> cut off in, . . .	9

<i>Kilogramme</i> (1000 grammes), . . .	360
<i>Kilolitre</i> (1000 litres), . . .	360
<i>Kilomètre</i> (1000 mètres), . . .	360
<i>Know</i> (to), <i>savoir</i> , 154; <i>connaître</i> , 155, 165	

<i>L</i> ; why doubled in the feminine of some adjectives, . . .	393
<i>La; là</i> , . . .	8, 9, 13
<i>La, le, les</i> ; articles, . . .	9, 13, 374
<i>La, le, les</i> ; pronouns, . . .	9, 53, 261, 268, 404
LAWS, PHONETICAL, WHICH PRO- DUCED FRENCH, . . .	363-371
<i>Least</i> , 34; <i>less</i> , 34; <i>little</i> , . . .	34

<i>Ler, Uer, Uller; affix,</i>	Page 414
<i>Leur, leurs,</i>	403
<i>Leur; pronoun,</i>	404
<i>Litre (measure of capacity),</i>	360
<i>L'on,</i>	415
<i>Long, adj., 28, 395; long, adv.,</i>	192, 431
<i>Loss (to), perdre,</i>	99
<i>Lui,</i>	53, 404
<i>L'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre,</i>	65, 288

<i>Ma,</i>	43, 402
<i>Main; prefix,</i>	413
<i>Make (to), faire,</i>	171, 425
<i>Mal; prefix,</i>	383, 397, 413
<i>Many,</i>	189, 429
<i>Me,</i>	51, 404

<b>MEASURES, WEIGHTS, AND COINS,</b>	360
<i>Mé, mts; prefix,</i>	383, 414
<i>Même,</i>	46, 403
<i>Mes,</i>	43, 402
<i>Mètre (lineal measure),</i>	360
<i>Mi; prefix,</i>	23
<i>Mille, mil,</i>	39, 400

<b>MODERN FORMATION of Adjectives,</b>	396-399
Of nouns,	382-391
Of verbs,	412-416
<i>Moi,</i>	51, 404
<i>Moise; its pronunciation,</i>	10
<i>Mon,</i>	43, 402
<i>Monsieur,</i>	275, 359
<b>MOODS AND TENSES,</b>	74, 308
<i>More, 338; no more,</i>	92, 188
<i>Much, very much, too much,</i>	189, 338
<i>Mur, mûr,</i>	8

<b>Names (proper),</b>	18
<i>Ne, observations on,</i>	92, 340, 416
<i>Near,</i>	347
<b>NEGATIVES,</b>	92, 310, 416
<i>Neither,</i>	288
— <i>the one nor the other,</i>	288
<b>NEUTER VERBS,</b>	103
— <i>Remarks on,</i>	827
<i>Never, no, not,</i>	92, 340, 416
<i>Nobody, 63; no more,</i>	92
<i>Non; prefix,</i>	383
<i>Nothing, 64; nor,</i>	288
<i>Notre, nos,</i>	43, 403
<b>NOUNS,</b>	18-24, 225-236, 375-391
Derivation,	375, 376
Formation of the plural, { 18-20, 228-232, 376	
Gender of, 10-12, 21-24, 225-227, 377-382	
Modern formation of,	382-391
<i>Nous,</i>	51, 404
<i>Nowhere,</i>	92
<i>Nul, nulle,</i>	40, 65, 393, 403
<b>Numerals—</b>	
Cardinal, ordinal,	85, 253, 399-401

<b>Obtain (to), obtenir, like tenir,</b>	Page 148
<i>Oche; affix,</i>	387
<i>Œil; its plurals,</i>	20
<i>Of it (en),</i>	60, 274
<i>Oir, oïre; affix,</i>	389
<i>Oïson; affix,</i>	388
<b>OLD FRENCH (Langue d'Oïl) specimens of the ninth century,</b>	372
<i>On; pronoun,</i>	62, 285, 405
<i>On; feminine of adjectives in,</i>	394
<i>On, onn; affixes, 387, 388, 389, 390,</i>	415
<i>Only (but),</i>	92
<i>Ot; feminine of adj. ending in,</i>	394
<i>Ot; verbal affix,</i>	415
<i>Ot, otte; French affixes,</i>	386, 389, 398
<i>Ou and où,</i>	8, 60, 415, 434
<i>Out,</i>	373
<i>Owe (to), devoir,</i>	86, 91
<i>Oyer; affix,</i>	414

<b>Par; prefix,</b>	413
<i>Parce que, and par ce que,</i>	351

<b>PARTICIPLES—</b>	
Present,	323
Past,	101, 324
<i>Partir, to set out,</i>	147, 419
<i>Partitive article,</i>	16, 211, 374
<i>Parts of speech,</i>	13
<i>Pas, point,</i>	92, 340
<i>Passive verbs,</i>	101
Voice, observations on,	416, 417
<i>Péri; prefix,</i>	383
<i>Personal pronouns,</i>	51, 257, 404
<i>Personne,</i>	63, 405

<b>PHONETIC LAWS WHICH PRODUCED</b>	
FRENCH,	303-371
<b>Plural of Nouns,</b>	18, 228, 235, 376
— of compound Nouns,	230
— of Adjectives,	29
<i>Plus, davantage,</i>	338, 339
<i>Plusieurs, several, many,</i>	47, 65, 403
<i>Plus tôt, plutôt,</i>	339
<b>Possessive adjectives,</b>	43, 402
— case,	232
— pronouns,	54, 271, 404
<i>Pour, before a verb,</i>	307
<i>Pour; prefix,</i>	383, 413
<i>Pourvoir, to provide,</i>	152, 420
<i>Pouvoir, to be able,</i>	153, 420
<i>Pré; prefix,</i>	383, 414
<i>Prendre, to take,</i>	179, 426
<b>PREPOSITIONS, 10, 195, 211, 297, 432, 433</b>	
Require the Infinitive,	200
Some require <i>de</i> or <i>à</i> ,	349
Of end, means, cause, destination,	433
Of order, time, place,	432
Of separation, opposition, union,	433
<b>Present Indicative used for a past,</b>	308
— for a future,	308
<i>Près de, prêt à,</i>	348
<b>Preterite definite,</b>	310

	Page
<i>Preterite indefinite</i> , . . . . .	312
<i>Primitive Tenses</i> , . . . . .	76
<i>Pronominal verbs</i> , . . . . .	105
<i>PRONOUNS</i> ; how divided, . . . . .	51
<i>Personal</i> , . . . . .	51-404
Place of <i>Personal pronouns</i> , . . . . .	51
Syntax of <i>Personal pronouns</i> , . . . . .	257-271
<i>Demonstrative</i> , 55-57, 270-279, 404, 405	
<i>Possessive</i> , . . . . .	54, 55, 271-276, 404
<i>Relative</i> , . . . . .	58-61, 279-284, 405
<i>Indefinite</i> , . . . . .	62-66, 284-286, 405
<i>Proper names</i> ; definition of, . . . . .	18
Names of states, provinces, towns, . . . . .	12, 208
— of <i>Sovereigns</i> , . . . . .	39
— ending in <i>a</i> , . . . . .	42
— which take the article, 208, 217	
— when they take the sign of plural, . . . . .	228
<i>Proportional nouns</i> , . . . . .	38

<i>Quatre-vingts, quatre-vingt-dix</i> , . . . . .	
origin of, . . . . .	400
<i>Que</i> ; when it loses the <i>e</i> , . . . . .	58
Remark on the conjunction <i>que</i> , . . . . .	352
<i>Quel, quelle</i> , . . . . .	48, 394, 403
<i>Quelconque</i> , whatever, . . . . .	48, 403
<i>Quelque, quel que</i> , . . . . .	48, 49, 403
<i>Quelqu'un</i> , somebody, . . . . .	63, 405
<i>Qui</i> ; who (whom), . . . . .	58, 59, 405
<i>Quiconque</i> , whoever, . . . . .	63, 405
<i>Quin</i> ; affix, . . . . .	386
<i>Quint</i> , . . . . .	39, 401
<i>Quinte</i> , and its derivatives, . . . . .	401
<i>Quoi</i> , . . . . .	58, 59, 405

<i>R, re, ré</i> ; prefixes, . . . . .	383, 414
<i>Radical letters, root, or stem</i> , . . . . .	75
<i>Railway or railroad</i> , . . . . .	345
<i>Rain (to)</i> , pleuvir, . . . . .	115, 417
<i>Read (to)</i> , lire, . . . . .	178, 425
<i>REFLEXIVE VOICE</i> , observations on, . . . . .	416, 417
<i>Reflected verbs</i> , . . . . .	105, 109, 113
<i>Regimen</i> , . . . . .	225, 295
<i>Regular verbs</i> , . . . . .	75, 113
<i>Relative pronouns</i> , . . . . .	58, 279, 405
<i>Repentir (se)</i> , see <i>Sentir</i> , . . . . .	145
<i>Request (to)</i> , prier, . . . . .	128
<i>Résolu</i> ; <i>Résous</i> , . . . . .	180
<i>Rie</i> ; affix, . . . . .	385
<i>Rien</i> , . . . . .	64, 405
<i>Rire</i> , . . . . .	180, 181, 426
<i>Romp</i> , . . . . .	181, 418

<i>S</i> ; feminine of adj. ending in, . . . . .	393
<i>Sa, son, ses</i> , . . . . .	43, 44, 402
<i>Sans</i> ; prefix, . . . . .	23

	Page
<i>Savoir</i> , to know, . . . . .	154, 421
Without <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i> , . . . . .	341
<i>Say (to)</i> , dire, . . . . .	168, 424
<i>Se</i> , . . . . .	54, 269, 404
<i>See (to)</i> , voir, . . . . .	158, 421
<i>Sell (to)</i> , vendre, . . . . .	87
<i>Send (to)</i> , envoyer, . . . . .	127, 418
— <i>back (to)</i> , renvoyer, . . . . .	127, 418
<i>Serve (to)</i> , to help to, servir, . . . . .	146, 419
<i>Set out (to)</i> , partir, . . . . .	144, 419
<i>Several</i> , plusieurs, . . . . .	47, 65, 403
<i>She who, he who</i> , . . . . .	278
<i>Si, if</i> ; <i>si</i> , whether, . . . . .	9, 314, 434
<i>Sing (to)</i> , chanter, . . . . .	78, 416
<i>Sire, seigneur</i> ; derivation of, . . . . .	376
<i>Slight irregularities</i> of certain verbs, . . . . .	120-131
<i>Sœur</i> ; derivation of, . . . . .	375
<i>Soi</i> , . . . . .	54, 269, 404
<i>Soixante dix</i> , origin of, . . . . .	400
<i>Some, any</i> ; how expressed, . . . . .	16, 211
<i>Something</i> , . . . . .	48, 227
<i>Sometimes</i> , . . . . .	192
<i>Sou</i> ; prefix, . . . . .	414
<i>Sous</i> ; prefix, . . . . .	383, 396, 413
<i>Sovereigns</i> , . . . . .	39, 218
<i>See</i> ; affix, . . . . .	385
<i>Sub, super</i> ; prefix, . . . . .	384, 397
<i>Speak (to)</i> , parler, . . . . .	77
<i>Steam-engine</i> ; how translated, . . . . .	198
<i>Stère</i> (solid measure), . . . . .	360
<i>Subjunctive mood</i> ; when used, . . . . .	316
<i>SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS</i> , { 18-24, 225-236, 375-391	
Derivation, . . . . .	375, 376
Formation of the plural, { 18-20, 228-232, 376	
Gender of, 10-12, 21-24, 225-227, 377-382	
Modern formation of, . . . . .	382-391
<i>SUPERLATIVE DEGREE OF ADJECTIVES</i> , . . . . .	33, 395, 396
<i>Sur and sûr</i> , . . . . .	8
<i>Sur</i> ; prefix, . . . . .	383, 384, 397, 413
<i>Surseoir</i> , . . . . .	156, 421
<i>Synode</i> ; gender of, . . . . .	377
<i>SYNTAX</i> , . . . . .	205-358

<i>Ta, ton, tes</i> , . . . . .	43, 44, 402
<i>Table of contents</i> , . . . . .	1
<i>Take (to)</i> , prendre, . . . . .	179, 426
<i>Te</i> , . . . . .	52, 404
<i>Té, ité</i> ; affix, . . . . .	390
<i>Te</i> , a feminine ending of adj., . . . . .	395
<i>Te, telle</i> , such, . . . . .	50, 65, 403
<i>Tell (to)</i> , dire, . . . . .	168, 424
<i>Tempe</i> ; gender of, . . . . .	378
<i>Temps</i> ; derivation of, . . . . .	375
<i>Tenir</i> , to hold, . . . . .	148, 149, 419
<i>Tenses</i> ; formation of, . . . . .	76
Syntax of, . . . . .	308-322
<i>Their, its</i> , . . . . .	43, 54, 271, 274



	Page		Page
<i>Thousand</i> , mille, mil, . . .	89, 400	Modern formation of verbs, . . .	412-416
<i>Tiers</i> and its derivatives, . . .	401, 402	By prefixes, . . .	412-414
<i>Tion</i> ; affix, . . .	385	By adding affixes to nouns, . . .	414
<i>To</i> ; how translated, . . .	14, 297	By adding affixes to adjectives, . . .	415
— expressed by <i>pour</i> , . . .	307	By adding affixes to the stems of verbs, . . .	415, 416
TONIC ACCENT in French and in Latin, . . .	368, 369	VOICES, PASSIVE AND REFLEXIVE, . . .	416, 417
<i>Tout</i> , . . .	29, 47, 65, 403	Agreement of the verb, . . .	287
<i>Traire</i> , . . .	182, 183, 427	Place of the subject, . . .	292
<i>Travail</i> ; its plurals, . . .	20	Government of verbs, . . .	295
<i>Tréma</i> , or <i>diérèse</i> , . . .	10, 373	Verbs requiring <i>à</i> , . . .	297
<i>Très</i> , . . .	83	— requiring <i>de</i> , . . .	300
<i>Trice</i> ; affix, . . .	388	— requiring no prep., . . .	303
<i>Tu</i> , . . .	52, 53, 404	<i>Very</i> , . . .	33, 338
<i>Ture</i> ; feminine of, . . .	28, 394	<i>Vice</i> ; prefix, . . .	383
<i>U</i> ; affix, . . .	398	<i>Vingt</i> ; when it takes <i>s</i> , . . .	38
<i>Uche</i> ; affix, . . .	387	<i>Vivre</i> , . . .	184, 427
<i>Ultra</i> ; prefix, . . .	396	<i>Voici, voilà</i> ; origin of, . . .	432
<i>Un, unième</i> , . . .	253, 374, 403	<i>Voir</i> , . . .	158, 421
<i>Uni</i> ; prefix, . . .	397	<i>Voire, vos</i> , . . .	43, 44, 403
<i>Ure</i> ; affix, . . .	389	<i>Vouloir</i> , . . .	159, 421
		<i>Vous</i> , . . .	52, 404
		<i>Vowels</i> , . . .	7-9
<i>Valoir</i> , . . .	157, 421	<i>W</i> ; when used, . . .	7
<i>Venir</i> , . . .	149	<i>Wait (to)</i> , <i>wait for</i> , <i>attendre</i> , . . .	89
VERBS, . . .	67-186, 287-336, 405-428	<i>Whether</i> , <i>si</i> , . . .	314
Auxiliary <i>avoir</i> , . . .	67, 68, 408, 409	<i>Who, which</i> , . . .	279
— <i>être</i> , . . .	72-74, 409-411	<i>Whom, which</i> , . . .	279, 282
Endings of verbs, . . .	47, 68, 69	— (of), . . .	279, 283
Interrogative conjugation, . . .	95-98, 416	<i>Whose, of whom, of which</i> , . . .	282
Negative conjugation, . . .	92, 93, 416	<i>Words made French from English</i> , . . .	42
Negative and interrog. conj., . . .	99	<i>Worse, worst</i> , . . .	34
Active verbs, . . .	77-101	<i>Write (to)</i> , <i>écrire</i> , . . .	170, 425
Passive voice, . . .	101-103, 416	<i>X</i> ; feminine of adj. ending in, . . .	393
Neuter verbs, . . .	103-105	<i>Y</i> ; pronoun, . . .	61, 405
Pronominal reflexive voice, { . . .	105-114	<i>Y</i> ; adverb, . . .	191, 430
Impersonal verbs, . . .	114-119	<i>Y avoir</i> (there to be), . . .	116, 417
Preliminary obs. on, . . .	74-76, 405, 406	<i>Yacht, yatagan, yoga, yole, yucca</i> , . . .	9, 373
Derivation of the conj., . . .	411, 412		
— of the irregular verbs, . . .	57, 68		

FINIS.

# STANDARD EDUCATIONAL BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

CROSBY LOCKWOOD & SON,

7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LONDON, E.C.

---

**LESSONS IN COMMERCE.** By Professor R. GAMBARO, of the Royal High Commercial School at Genoa. Edited and Revised by JAMES GAULT, Professor of Commerce and Commercial Law in King's College, London. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

"The publishers of this work have rendered considerable service to the cause of commercial education by the opportune production of this volume."—*Chamber of Commerce Journal*.

"An invaluable guide in the hands of those who are preparing for a commercial career, and, in fact the information it contains on matters of business should be impressed on every one."—*Counting House*.

## THE FOREIGN COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT

Being Aids to Commercial Correspondence in Five Languages—ENGLISH, GERMAN, FRENCH, ITALIAN and SPANISH. Containing Forms of Correspondence such as are required for daily use in a Merchant's Office. By C. E. BAKER. Second Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d., cloth.

"If a good use is made of this book the student will very soon have sufficient knowledge to fit him for conducting such a correspondence in these languages as is required by ordinary commercial routine."—*Civil Service Gazette*.

"An English student, bent on success in his business life, will find this volume his vade-mecum."—*Publishers' Circular*.

**A HISTORY OF ROME**, from the Earliest Times to the Death of Commodus, A.D. 192. By Dr. LEONHARD SCHMITZ, F.R.S.E., late Principal of the London International College. 25th Thousand. With upwards of 100 Engravings, small 8vo, 6s. cloth.

"While the difficulties of Dr. Schmitz's subject are fairly grappled with, the discussion is not overlaid with a needless display of abstruse learning—useless, and therefore mischievous, in a work designed for schools. . . . To the complete success of this effort to render intelligible to boys this important, if not very attractive part of Roman history, we can testify from our own experience."—*Educational Times*.

**LECTURES ON THE HISTORY OF ROME**, from the Earliest Times to the Fall of the Western Empire. By B. G. NIEBUHR. Edited by Dr. LEONHARD SCHMITZ, F.R.S.E., late Principal of the London International College. Fourth Edition. With Portrait. In One Vol., post 8vo, 6s. cloth.

**A HANDY BOOK OF ENGLISH SPELLING.** With ample Rules and carefully arranged Exercises. Adapted for the use of Schools, and of Candidates for the Services. By E. S. H. BAGNOLD. Third Edition, Revised. Fcap. 8vo, 1s. 3d. cloth.

"A very handy, carefully written, and complete little book."—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

# DR. DE FIVAS' FRENCH CLASS BOOKS.

*'The works of M. de Fivas are among the best that we possess for the means of acquiring a knowledge of the French language. If any proof were needed of this assertion, we should only have to point to the fact that they have gone through so many editions and still retain their popularity. This is a certain index to real worth.'*

CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

## DE FIVAS' NEW GRAMMAR OF FRENCH GRAMMARS;

comprising the substance of all the most approved French Grammars extant, but more especially of the standard work 'La Grammaire des Grammaires,' sanctioned by the French Academy and the University of Paris. With numerous Exercises and Examples illustrative of every Rule. By DR. V. DE FIVAS, M.A., F.R.S., Member of the Grammatical Society of Paris, &c. &c. Fifty-second Edit., Revised and Enlarged. With an Appendix on the HISTORY and ETYMOLOGY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE. 2s. 6d. strongly bound.

••• Key to the same, 2s. 6d. bound.

The addition of an Appendix on the History of the French Language, compiled from the best authorities, gives a new value to this old-established school book. —ATHENÆUM.

'The best and most complete grammar of the French language ever prepared for the use of English students.' —BOOTSMAN.

'It would be difficult to name a grammar better suited for instilling a sound knowledge of the French language.' —SCHOOLMASTER.

## DE FIVAS' ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR: based

upon the Accidence of the 'New Grammar of French Grammars.' By DR. V. DE FIVAS, M.A., F.R.S. To which is added a FRENCH READER; or, Selections in Prose and Verse from Standard Authors, with a FRENCH-ENGLISH VOCABULARY of all the Words used. Third Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo, price 1s. 6d. strongly bound.

*'It is intended to prepare the younger students and Junior Classes for the study of the more advanced work.'*

'The elementary rules of the subject are explained in a clear and coherent system, and the main work is supplemented by a selection of extracts in prose and verse admirably well adapted for the study of junior classes.' —BOOTSMAN.

'One of the particularly good points in this little book is the full and clear manner in which the irregular verbs are conjugated.' —SCHOOLMASTER.

'As a thoroughly practical and workmanlike text-book we give it our warmest recommendation.' —TEACHERS' AID.

## DE FIVAS' NEW GUIDE TO MODERN FRENCH CON-

VERSATION; or, The Student and Tourist's French Vade-Mecum; containing a Comprehensive Vocabulary, and Phrases and Dialogues; with Models of Letters, Notes, and Cards; Comparative Tables of the British and French Coins, Weights and Measures, &c. Thirty-first Edit., thoroughly revised, 18mo, 2s. 6d. strongly half-bound.

'Has the advantage over other French conversation books of indicating the *liaisons* and giving other helps to pronunciation.' —ACADEMY.

'Compiled with great labour and care, and modernised down to the latest changes in the custom of ordinary French speech.' —SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

## DE FIVAS, INTRODUCTION À LA LANGUE FRAN-

ÇAISE; ou, Fables et Contes Choisis; Anecdotes Instructives, Faits Mémorables, &c. Avec un Dictionnaire de tous les Mots traduits en Anglais. À l'usage de la jeunesse, et de ceux qui commencent à apprendre la langue Française. Twenty-eighth Edition, 2s. 6d. bound.

'By far the best first French reading-book, whether for schools or adult pupils.' —

TAIT'S MAGAZINE.

'We strongly advise students to read this excellent book, and they will soon find their knowledge of the language enlarged and, to a great extent, perfected.' —PUBLIC OPINION.

## DE FIVAS, BEAUTÉS DES ÉCRIVAINS FRANÇAIS,

Anciens et Modernes. Quinzème Édition, augmentée de Notes Historiques, Géographiques, Philosophiques, Littéraires, Grammaticales et Biographiques. 2s. 6d. bound.

A convenient reading-book for the student of the French language, at the same time affording a pleasing and interesting view of French literature. —OBSERVER.

## DE FIVAS, LE TRÉSOR NATIONAL; or, Guide to the

translation of English into French at sight. Seventh Edition, 1s. 6d. bound. (A Key to the same, 2s.)

# LOCKWOOD'S CIVIL SERVICE HANDBOOKS.

**THE ESSAY WRITER:** being Hints on Essays and How to Write Them. With Outlines of Eighty Essays, Designed for Examination Candidates, Public Schools, and Students generally. By HENRY SKIPTON. Second Edition. Fcp. 8vo, 2s. 6d., cloth.

'The outlines present a great variety and a judicious selection of subjects. The introductory remarks are much to the point, and the book is altogether a good one.'—SCHOOLMASTER.

'To those preparing for examinations in which essays are an element, this work will prove invaluable.'—CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

**THE PRÉCIS BOOK;** or, Lessons in Accuracy of Statement and Preciseness of Expression. For Civil Service Students, Self-Education, and use in Schools. By W. COSMO MONKHOUSE, of the Board of Trade. New Edition. Fcp. 2s. 6d. cloth. (A KEY to the same, 2s. 6d. cloth).

'Mr. Monkhouse has done intending candidates for appointments under the Crown real service. It is an excellent book.'—CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

**THE CIVIL SERVICE COACH:** a Practical Exposition of the Civil Service Curriculum, and Guide to the Lower Division of the Service and its Competitive Examinations. By STANLEY SAVILL, of H.M. Civil Service. Second Edition, Revised. Fcp. 8vo, 2s. 6d. cloth.

Gives many valuable hints and much good advice.'—ATHENÆUM.

**A HANDBOOK OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.** By H. A. DOBSON, Board of Trade. Second Edition. Fcp. 3s. 6d. cloth.

'For truth of criticism, it is about the best book of the kind.'—WESTMINSTER REVIEW.

'An excellent hand-book of English Literature.'—ATHENÆUM.

**THE CIVIL SERVICE GEOGRAPHY,** General and Political. By L. M. D. SPENCE. Revised by THOMAS GRAY, of the Board of Trade. Tenth Edition, Revised and Corrected. With Six Maps. Fcp. 2s. 6d. cloth.

'A good manual for practical purposes, adapted to the present state of knowledge. The most recent political changes of territory are noticed, and the latest statistics inserted from authoritative sources.'—ATHENÆUM.

**THE CIVIL SERVICE HISTORY OF ENGLAND:** being a Fact-Book of English History. By F. A. WHITE, B.A. Seventh Edition, Corrected and Extended by H. A. DOBSON, Board of Trade. 2s. 6d. cloth.

'We do not remember to have seen anything of the kind so compendious, complete, accurate, and convenient for use.'—ATHENÆUM.

**THE CIVIL SERVICE FIRST FRENCH BOOK:** being a Practical First Course of French Grammar, with Exercises combined. By ACHILLE MOTTEAU. Fcp. 1s. 6d. cloth. (A KEY to the same, 2s. 6d.)

A clear and compact little treatise.'—CIVILIAN. | 'Its arrangement is admirable.'—STANDARD.

**THE CIVIL SERVICE ENGLISH GRAMMAR:** being Notes on the History and Grammar of the English Language. By W. V. YATES, C.M. Second Edition, Revised, with Appendix containing Questions from Civil Service Examinations, with Model Answers. Fcp. 1s. 6d. cl.

'We cannot call to mind any single work which would render so much assistance to the student preparing to undergo examination.'—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

**THE CIVIL SERVICE BOOK-KEEPING;** or, Book-keeping No Mystery: Its Principles Popularly Explained and the Theory of Double Entry Analysed. Fifth Edition. Fcp. 1s. 6d. cloth.

'It is clear and concise, and exactly such a text-book as students require.'—QUARTERLY JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

**THE CIVIL SERVICE CHRONOLOGY OF HISTORY,** ART, LITERATURE, AND PROGRESS, from the Creation of the World to the Present Time. New Edition, with Continuation by W. D. HAMILTON, F.S.A., of H.M. Public Record Office. Fcp. 3s. 6d.

'Accurate, wide, and thorough. Most useful to those who are reading up for examination.'—ENGLISH CHURCHMAN.

# LOOKWOOD'S ELEMENTARY SCHOOL SERIES.

18mo, price 1s. each, strongly bound.

*\* \* The works in this cheap Elementary Series are designed to meet the requirements of Beginners, and are especially adapted to the capacities of the Young.*

**THE ELEMENTS OF GEOGRAPHY.** By the Rev. B. G. JOHNS. New Edition, greatly Enlarged and Revised throughout. 1s.

**A SHORT AND SIMPLE HISTORY OF ENGLAND.** By the Rev. B. G. JOHNS. New Edition, Enlarged and Corrected. 1s.

**THE FRENCH LANGUAGE:** An Easy and Practical Introduction to. By JOHN HAAS. (First Course.) Fifteenth Edition. 1s.

**THE FRENCH LANGUAGE:** An Easy and Practical Introduction to. By JOHN HAAS. (Second Course.) Tenth Edition. 1s. *Key to the Second Course. 1s. \* \* The First and Second Courses bound together, 2s.*

**THE GERMAN LANGUAGE:** The Little Scholar's First Step in. By Mrs. FALCK LEBAHN. 1s.

**GERMAN READING:** The Little Scholar's First Step in. By Mrs. FALCK LEBAHN. 1s.

**THE GERMAN PREPOSITIONS, AND THE CASES THEY GOVERN:** Exemplified in 2,500 Useful Colloquial Phrases. By S. GALINDO. 1s.

**GERMAN COLLOQUIAL PHRASEOLOGY:** Ememplifying all the Rules of the German Grammar, in more than 2,500 Phrases, with English Translations. By S. GALINDO. 1s.

**OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF ROME.** By the Rev. B. G. JOHNS. With Appendix. By the Rev. T. H. L. LEARY, D.C.L. 1s.

**THE FIRST BOOK OF POETRY.** By the Rev. B. G. JOHNS. 1s.

## McHENRY'S SPANISH COURSE.

**McHENRY'S SPANISH GRAMMAR.** Containing the Elements of the Language and the Rules of Etymology and Syntax Exemplified; with Notes and Appendix, consisting of Dialogues, Select Poetry, Commercial Correspondence, Vocabulary, &c. New Edition. By A. ELWES. 12mo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

*'The most complete Spanish Grammar for the use of Englishmen.'*—BRITISH HERALD.

**McHENRY'S EXERCISES ON THE ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, IDIOMS, &c.** of the Spanish Language. New Edition. By A. ELWES. 12mo, 3s. bound. *\* \* Key to the EXERCISES, 4s.*

*'Unquestionably the best book of Spanish Exercises which has hitherto been published.'*—GENTLEMAN'S MAGAZINE.

**McHENRY'S SYNONYMS OF THE SPANISH LANGUAGE EXPLAINED.** 12mo, 4s. bound.

*'Anxious to render the work as interesting as possible, the Author has expended considerable time and labour in making a selection of characteristic extracts from the most approved writers, which, while they serve to exemplify or elucidate the particular synonyms under consideration, may at the same time recommend themselves to the learner by their intrinsic value.'*—EXTRACT FROM THE PREFACE.

## A NEW SPANISH GRAMMAR.

**THE COMMERCIAL AND CONVERSATIONAL SPANISH GRAMMAR AND READER.** A New and Practical Method of Learning the Spanish Language. By OSWALD KORTH, Professor of Languages, &c. Fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d. cloth. *[Just published.]*

*'By means of the method Mr. Korth adopts, a student will be able in a very short time to obtain a thorough grasp of the Spanish language.'*—CITY PRESS.

# DR. LEBAHN'S POPULAR GERMAN SCHOOL BOOKS.

*'As an educational writer in the German tongue, Dr. Lebahn stands alone; none other has made even a distant approach to him.'*—BRITISH STANDARD.

---

## LEBAHN'S GERMAN LANGUAGE IN ONE VOLUME.

Seventh Edition. Containing—I. A PRACTICAL GRAMMAR, with Exercises to every Rule. II. UNDINE: A Tale. By DE LA MOTTE FOUQUÉ. With Explanatory Notes of all Difficult Words and Phrases. III. A VOCABULARY OF 4,500 WORDS, synonymous in English and German. Crown 8vo. 8s. cloth. With Key, 10s. 6d. Key separate, 2s. 6d.

*'The best German Grammar that has yet been published.'*—MORNING POST.

*'Had we to recommence the study of German, of all the German Grammars which we have examined—and they are not a few—we should unhesitatingly say, Falck Lebahn's is the book for us.'*—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

## LEBAHN'S FIRST GERMAN COURSE. New and Cheaper Edition (the Fifth). 12mo. 2s. cloth.

*'It is hardly possible to have a simpler or better book for beginners in German.'*—ATHENÆUM.

## LEBAHN'S FIRST GERMAN READER. New and Cheaper Edition (the Sixth). 12mo. 2s. cloth.

*'An admirable book for beginners, which indeed may be used without a master.'*—LEADER.

## LEBAHN'S EXERCISES IN GERMAN. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. cloth. Key to ditto, crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. cloth limp.

*'A volume of "Exercises in German," including in itself all the vocabularies they require. The book is well planned; the selections for translation from German into English, or from English into German, being sometimes curiously well suited to the purpose for which they are taken.'*—EXAMINER.

## LEBAHN'S SELF-INSTRUCTOR IN GERMAN. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

*'One of the most amusing elementary reading-books that ever passed under our hands.'*  
JOHN BULL

## LEBAHN'S EDITION OF SCHMID'S HENRY VON EICHENFELS. With Vocabulary and Familiar Dialogues. New and Cheaper Edition (the Eighth). Fcp. 8vo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

*'The Dialogues are as perfectly adapted to render the student a speaker of this interesting language as is the Vocabulary for making him a reader.'*—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

## LEBAHN'S GERMAN CLASSICS, with Notes and Complete Vocabularies. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. each, cloth.

William Tell. A Drama, in Five Acts. By SCHILLER.

Goetz von Berlichingen. A Drama. By GOETHE.

Pagenstreiche: A Page's Frolics. A Comedy. By KOTZEBUE

Emilia Galotti. A Tragedy, in Five Acts. By LESSING.

Undine. A Tale. By FOUQUÉ.

Selections from the German Poets.

*'With such aids, a student will find no difficulty in these masterpieces.'*

ATHENÆUM.

## WORKS BY THE LATE JOSEPH PAYNE,

Of the College of Preceptors, &c.

**PAYNE'S SELECT POETRY FOR CHILDREN**, with brief Explanatory Notes, arranged for the use of Schools and Families. Twenty-first Edition. With fine Steel Frontispiece. 18mo, 2s. 6d. cl.  
 "We could wish for no better introduction to the study of poetry to place in the hands of our little ones."—*Schoolmaster*.

**PAYNE'S STUDIES IN ENGLISH POETRY**, with Biographical Sketches, and Notes Explanatory and Critical, a Text-Book for the Higher Classes of Schools. 9th Edition. Post 8vo, 3s. 6d.  
 "The selection is both extensive and varied, including many of the choicest specimens of English poetry."—*Eclectic Review*.

**PAYNE'S STUDIES IN ENGLISH PROSE**. Specimens of the Language in its various stages, with Notes Explanatory and Critical. Second Edition. Post 8vo, 3s. 6d. cloth.  
 "It is difficult to imagine a more useful manual."—*Scotsman*.

**PAYNE'S STUDIES IN ENGLISH PROSE AND POETRY**. Being the above two Books in 1 vol. 7s. 6d. half-bound.

## FRENCH FOR VERY YOUNG BEGINNERS.

**MOTTEAU'S ILLUSTRATED FRENCH AND ENGLISH TALK-BOOK**; or, *Petites Causeries*: Being Elementary French and English Conversations. For Young Students and Home Teaching. With Models of Juvenile Correspondence. Fully Illustrated. By A. MOTTEAU. In Two Parts, 9d. each; or One Vol., 1s. 6d.

"For the admirable way in which it leads on young beginners, step by step, it would be impossible to surpass it."—*Civil Service Gazette*.

**LA BAGATELLE**; Intended to Introduce Children of Five or Six Years of Age to some Knowledge of the French Language. Revised by Madame N. L. Cheaper Edition. 18mo, 2s. bound.  
 "It is, indeed, French made very easy for very little children."—*The School*.

**BARBAULD, LECONS POUR DES ENFANTS** de l'Age de Deux Ans jusqu'à Cinq. Traduites de l'Anglais de Mme. BARBAULD par M. PASQUIER. Suivies des "Hymnes en Prose pour les Enfants." Nouvelle Edition, avec un Vocabulaire complet Français-Anglais. 18mo, 2s. cloth.

**VOCABULAIRE SYMBOLIQUE ANGLO-FRANÇAIS**—A SYMBOLIC FRENCH AND ENGLISH VOCABULARY, for Students of every age in all classes; in which the most Useful Words are taught by Illustrations. By L. C. RAGONOT. Twelfth Edition, with 850 Woodcuts and 9 full-page Copperplates. 4to, 3s. 6d. cloth.

## CAMBRIDGE LOCAL EXAMINATIONS.

**FRENCH EXAMINATION PAPERS** set from 1881 to 1890, and the French Papers set for Commercial Certificates from 1888 to 1890. Edited, with Vocabularies and Explanatory Notes, by O. BAUMANN, B.A., Senior Modern Language Master at Wolverhampton Grammar School. Fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d. cloth.

**FRENCH SENTENCES AND SYNTAX**. For Students entering the Oxford and Cambridge Local Examinations, College of Preceptors Examinations, Army Preliminary, &c. By O. BAUMANN, B.A. Fourth Edition, much Enlarged. Fcap. 8vo, 1s. cloth.

## BOOKS ON THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE, etc.

**ENGLAND, OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF;** more especially with reference to the Origin and Progress of the English Constitution. A Text Book for Schools and Colleges. By WM. DOUGLAS HAMILTON, F.S.A., of H.M.'s Public Record Office. Fourth Edition, Revised. Maps and Woodcuts. 5s.; cloth boards, 6s.

**THE SYNOPTICAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND.** With the Contemporaneous Sovereigns and Events of General History, from the Earliest Records to the Year 1874. By L. C. BURT, Barrister-at-Law. Second and Cheaper Edition, oblong 4to, 5s. cloth.

"The book forms, probably, the most comprehensive and compact manual of English history ever published."—*Morning Post*.

**WHEN TO DOUBLE YOUR CONSONANTS: THE WRITER'S ENCHIRIDION.** A List of all the Verbs that Double their Consonants, on taking ed, est, ing, &c. By J. S. SCARLETT. 18mo, 1s. cloth limp.

**MIND YOUR H's AND TAKE CARE OF YOUR R's.** Exercises for Acquiring the Use and Correcting the Abuse of the letter H; with Additional Exercises on the letter R. By C. W. SMITH, Author of "Clerical Elocution." 1s. cloth limp.

**THE YOUNG REPORTER:** A Practical Guide to the Art and the Profession of Shorthand Writing, with a Dictionary of Latin Quotations, &c. Fcap., 1s. cloth.

**EVENTS TO BE REMEMBERED IN THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND.** A Series of Interesting Narratives of the most Remarkable Occurrences in each Reign. By CHARLES SELBY. Twenty-eighth Edition, Revised, with Additions. Crown 8vo, 350 pp. and 8 Plates, 2s. 6d. cloth.

**TECHNICAL MEMORY:** The Historical Lines of Dr. Grey's Technical Memory; with various Additions, chiefly as they apply to Modern History, arranged for General Use. Ninth Edition. 1s.

**TRUTHS ILLUSTRATED BY GREAT AUTHORS:** A Dictionary of nearly Four Thousand Aids to Reflection, Quotations of Maxims, Metaphors, Counsels, Cautions, Aphorisms, Proverbs, &c. &c. Compiled from Shakespeare and other Great Writers. Sixteenth Edition. Small crown 8vo, 564 pp., 3s. 6d. cloth.

"The quotations are perfect gems; their selection evinces sound judgment and an excellent taste."—*Dispatch*.

"We know of no better book of its kind."—*Examiner*.

**COBWEBS TO CATCH FLIES;** or, Dialogues in Short Sentences. Adapted for Children from the Age of Three to Eight Years. In Two Parts. Part I. Easy Lessons in Words of Three, Four, Five, and Six Letters, suited to Children from Three to Five Years of age. Part II. Short Stories for Children from Five to Eight Years of age. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 1s. cloth.

**CHICKSEED WITHOUT CHICKWEED:** Being very Easy and Entertaining Lessons for Little Children. Beautiful Frontispiece by ANELAY. 12mo, 1s. cloth.



**DR. LARDNER'S MUSEUM OF SCIENCE AND ART.**

**THE MUSEUM OF SCIENCE AND ART.** Edited by DIONYSIUS LARDNER, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy in University College, London. With upwards of 1,200 Engravings on Wood. In Six Double Volumes, £1 1s., in a new and elegant cloth binding; or handsomely bound in half-morocco, 31s. 6d. \* \* OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"This series, besides affording popular but sound instruction on scientific subjects, with which the humblest man in the country ought to be acquainted, also undertakes that teaching of "Common Things" which every well-wisher of his kind is anxious to promote."—*Times*.

"A cheap and interesting publication, alike informing and attractive. The papers combine subjects of importance and great scientific knowledge, considerable inductive powers, and a popular style of treatment."—*Spectator*.

"The 'Museum of Science and Art' is the most valuable contribution that has ever been made to the Scientific Instruction of every class of society."—Sir DAVID BREWSTER, in the *North British Review*.

"Whether we consider the liberality and beauty of the illustrations, the charm of the writing, or the durable interest of the matter, we must express our belief that there is hardly to be found among the new books one that would be welcomed by people of so many ages and classes as a valuable present."

*Examiner.*

\* \* *Separate books formed from the above, suitable for Workmen's Libraries, Science Classes, &c.*

**COMMON THINGS EXPLAINED.** Containing Air, Earth, Fire, Water, Time, Man, the Eye, Locomotion, Colour, Clocks and Watches, &c. 233 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 5s.

**THE MICROSCOPE.** Containing Optical Images, Magnifying Glasses, Origin and Description of the Microscope, Microscopic Objects, the Solar Microscope, Microscopic Drawing and Engraving, &c. 147 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s.

**POPULAR GEOLOGY.** Containing Earthquakes and Volcanoes, the Crust of the Earth, &c. 201 Illustrations, cloth gilt 2s. 6d.

**POPULAR PHYSICS.** Containing Magnitude and Minuteness, the Atmosphere, Meteoric Stones, Popular Fallacies, Weather Prognostics, the Thermometer, the Barometer, Sound, &c. 85 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s. 6d.


**STEAM AND ITS USES.** Including the Steam Engine, the Locomotive, and Steam Navigation. 89 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s.

**POPULAR ASTRONOMY.** Containing How to Observe the Heavens—The Earth, Sun, Moon, Planets, Light, Comets, Eclipses, Astronomical Influences, &c. 182 Illustrations, 4s. 6d.

**THE BEE AND WHITE ANTS:** Their Manners and Habits. With Illustrations of Animal Instinct and Intelligence. 135 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s.

**THE ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH POPULARISED.** To render intelligible to all who can Read, irrespective of any previous Scientific Acquirements, the various forms of Telegraphy in Actual Operation. 100 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 1s. 6d.

A SELECTION FROM THE LIST OF  
**Weale's Series,**  
EDUCATIONAL AND SCIENTIFIC.

 *These Popular and Cheap Series of Books, now comprising nearly Three Hundred and Fifty distinct works in almost every department of Science, Art and Education, are recommended to the notice of Literary and Scientific Institutions, Colleges, Schools, Science Classes, &c. &c.*

*N.B. Full lists will be forwarded on application.*

**NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, etc.**

**CHEMISTRY.** By Professor GEORGE FOWNES, F.R.S. With an Appendix on the Application of Chemistry to Agriculture. 1s.

**NATURAL PHILOSOPHY,** Introduction to the Study of. By C. TOMLINSON. Woodcuts. 1s. 6d.

**MECHANICS,** Rudimentary Treatise on. By CHARLES TOMLINSON. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.

**ELECTRICITY.** Showing the General Principles of Electrical Science, and the Purposes to which it has been Applied. By Sir W. SNOW HARRIS, F.R.S., &c. With Additions by R. SABINE, C.E., F.S.A. 1s. 6d.

**GALVANISM.** By Sir W. SNOW HARRIS. New Edition by ROBERT SABINE, C.E., F.S.A. 1s. 6d.

**MAGNETISM :** Being a Concise Exposition of the General Principles of Magnetical Science. By Sir W. SNOW HARRIS. New Edition, Revised by H. M. NOAD, Ph.D. With 165 Woodcuts. 3s. 6d.

**PNEUMATICS,** for the Use of Beginners. By CHARLES TOMLINSON. Fourth Edition, Enlarged. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.

**MANUAL OF THE MOLLUSCA :** A Treatise on Recent and Fossil Shells. By Dr. S. P. WOODWARD, A.L.S. Fourth Edition. With Appendix by RALPH TATE, A.L.S., F.G.S. With numerous Plates and 300 Woodcuts. 7s. 6d., cloth boards.

**ASTRONOMY.** By the late Rev. ROBERT MAYNE, M.A. Third Edition, by WILLIAM THYNNE LYNN, B.A., F.R.A.S. 2s.

**STATICS AND DYNAMICS,** the Principles and Practice of ; embracing also a Clear Development of Hydrostatics, Hydrodynamics and Central Forces. By T. BAKER, C.E. 1s. 6d.

**PHYSICAL GEOLOGY.** Partly based on Major-General PORTLOCK's "Rudiments of Geology." By RALPH TATE, A.L.S., &c. Woodcuts. 2s.

**Natural Philosophy, etc.—continued.**

**HISTORICAL GEOLOGY.** Partly based on Major-General PORTLOCK'S "Rudiments." By RALPH TATE, A.L.S., &c. Woodcuts. 2s. 6d.

**RUDIMENTARY TREATISE ON GEOLOGY,** Physical and Historical. Partly based on Major-General PORTLOCK'S "Rudiments of Geology." By RALPH TATE, A.L.S., F.G.S., &c. In One Volume. 4s. 6d.

**ANIMAL PHYSICS,** Handbook of. By Dr. LARDNER, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy in University College, London. With 520 Illustrations. In One Vol. 7s. 6d. cloth boards.

**ARITHMETIC, MATHEMATICS, etc.**

**MATHEMATICAL INSTRUMENTS.** By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Fourteenth Edition, Revised, with Additions by A. T. WALMSLEY, M.I.C.E. Original Edition, in One Vol. 2s.

\*.\* In ordering the above, be careful to say, 'Original Edition,' or give the number in the Series (32) to distinguish it from the Enlarged Edition in 3 vols.

**LAND AND ENGINEERING SURVEYING.** By T. BAKER, C.E. Revised by Professor J. R. YOUNG. Illustrated with Plates and Diagrams. 2s.; cloth boards, 2s. 6d.

**READY RECKONER FOR THE ADMEASUREMENT OF LAND,** including Tables showing the Price of Work from 2s. 6d. to £1 per Acre, and other useful Tables. By A. ARMAN. Third Edition, Corrected and Extended by C. NORRIS. 2s.

**DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY:** with a Theory of Shadows and of Perspective, extracted from the French of G. MONGE. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Illustrated with 14 Plates. 2s.

**PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY.** By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. With 215 Woodcuts. 2s.

**COMMERCIAL BOOK-KEEPING.** With Commercial Phrases and Forms in English, French, Italian, and German. By JAMES HADDON, M.A. London. 1s. 6d.

**ARITHMETIC.** By Professor J. R. YOUNG. Tenth Edition Corrected. 1s. 6d.

A KEY to the above, containing Solutions in full to the Exercises, together with Comments, Explanations, and Improved Processes, for the Use of Teachers and Unassisted Learners. By J. R. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.

**EQUATIONAL ARITHMETIC,** applied to Questions of Interest, Annuities, Life Assurance, and General Commerce; with various Tables. By W. HIPSLEY. 2s.

**ALGEBRA, THE ELEMENTS OF.** By JAMES HADDON, M.A. 2s.

A KEY AND COMPANION to the above Book, forming an extensive repository of Solved Examples and Problems in Illustration of the various Expedients necessary in Algebraical Operations. Especially adapted for Self-Instruction. By J. R. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.

**Arithmetic, Mathematics, etc.—continued.**

**EUCLID:** with many Additional Propositions and Explanatory Notes; to which is prefixed an Introductory Essay on Logic. By HENRY LAW, C.E. 2s. 6d.; cloth boards, 3s.

*\*\* Sold also separately, viz:*

**EUCLID.** The First Three Books. By HENRY LAW, C.E. 1s. 6d.

**EUCLID.** Books iv., v., vi., xi., xii. By HENRY LAW, C.E. 1s. 6d.

**ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS.**

By JAMES HANN. Revised by Professor J. R. YOUNG. 2s.; cloth boards, 2s. 6d.

**PLANE TRIGONOMETRY.** By JAMES HANN. 1s. 6d.

**SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY.** By JAMES HANN. Revised by CHARLES H. DOWLING, C.E. 1s.

*\*\* Or with "The Elements of Plane Trigonometry," in One Vol., 2s. 6d.*

**MENSURATION AND MEASURING.** By T. BAKER, C.E. Revised by E. NUGENT, C.E. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.

**INTEGRAL CALCULUS.** By HOMERSHAM COX, B.A. 1s.

**DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS, Elements of the.** By W. S. B. WOOLHOUSE, F.R.A.S., &c. 1s. 6d.

**ARITHMETIC.** By JAMES HADDON, M.A. Revised by ABRAHAM ARMAN. 1s. 6d.

**A KEY TO HADDON'S ARITHMETIC.** By A. ARMAN. 1s. 6d.

**THE SLIDE RULE, and How to Use It.** By C. HOARE, C.E. With a Slide Rule in tuck of cover. 2s. 6d.; cloth boards, 3s.

**DRAWING AND MEASURING INSTRUMENTS.** By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.

**OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS.** By J. F. HEATHER. 1s. 6d.

**SURVEYING AND ASTRONOMICAL INSTRUMENTS.**

By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.

*\*\* The above Three Volumes form an Enlargement of the Author's original work, "Mathematical Instruments: their Construction, Adjustment, Testing, and Use," the Fourteenth Edition of which is on sale, price 2s. (See No. 32 in the Series.)*

**MATHEMATICAL INSTRUMENTS.** By J. F. HEATHER. Enlarged Edition, for the most part entirely Re-written. The Three Parts as above in One thick Volume. With numerous Illustrations, 4s. 6d.; cloth boards, 5s.

**THE COMPLETE MEASURER.** Compiled for Timber-growers, Merchants, and Surveyors, Stonemasons, Architects, and others. By RICHARD HORTON. Fifth Edition. 4s.; leather, 5s.

**THEORY OF COMPOUND INTEREST AND ANNUITIES.** With Tables of Logarithms. By FEDOR THOMAN, of the Société Crédit Mobilier, Paris. 4s.

**Arithmetic, Mathematics, etc.—continued.**

**THE COMPENDIOUS CALCULATOR**; or, Easy and Concise Methods of Performing the various Arithmetical Operations required in Commercial and Business Transactions. By DANIEL O'GORMAN. Corrected and Extended by Professor J. R. YOUNG. Twenty-seventh Edition. Carefully Revised by C. NORRIS. 2s. 6d.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d.

**MATHEMATICAL TABLES**, for Trigonometrical, Astronomical, and Nautical Calculations; to which is prefixed a Treatise on Logarithms. By HENRY LAW, C.E. Together with a Series of Tables for Navigation and Nautical Astronomy. By Professor J. R. YOUNG. New Edition. 4s.; cloth boards, 4s. 6d.

**LOGARITHMS**. With Mathematical Tables for Trigonometrical, Astronomical, and Nautical Calculations. By H. LAW, C.E. Revised Edition (forming part of the above work). 3s.

**MEASURES, WEIGHTS AND MONEYS OF ALL NATIONS**, and an Analysis of the Christian, Hebrew, and Mahometan Calendars. By W. S. B. WOOLHOUSE, F.R.A.S., F.S.S., &c. Seventh Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 2s. 6d.; cloth boards, 3s.

**MATHEMATICS AS APPLIED TO THE CONSTRUCTIVE ARTS**. Illustrating the various processes of Mathematical Investigation, by means of Arithmetical and Simple Algebraical Equations and Practical Examples; also the Methods of Analysing Principles and Deducing Rules and Formulæ, applicable to the Requirements of Practice. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. 3s.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d.

**ENGLISH LANGUAGE, etc.**

**GRAMMAR OF THE ENGLISH TONGUE**. By HYDE CLARKE, D.C.L. Fourth Edition. 1s. 6d.

**DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE**. Containing above 130,000 Words. By HYDE CLARKE, D.C.L. 3s. 6d.; cloth boards, 4s. 6d.; complete with the GRAMMAR, cloth bds. 5s. 6d.

**COMPOSITION AND PUNCTUATION**. By JUSTIN BRENNAN. Seventeenth Edition. 1s. 6d.

**DERIVATIVE SPELLING-BOOK**. By J. ROWBOTHAM. F.R.A.S. Improved Edition. 1s. 6d.

**THE ART OF EXTEMPORE SPEAKING**: Hints for the Pulpit, the Senate, and the Bar. By M. BAUTAIN. Translated from the French. Eighth Edition. 2s. 6d.

**PLACES AND FACTS IN POLITICAL AND PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY**. By the Rev. EDGAR RAND, B.A. 1s.

**LOGIC, Pure and Applied**. By S. H. EMMENS. 1s. 6d.

**HISTORY.**

**ENGLAND, OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF;** more especially with reference to the Origin and Progress of the English Constitution. By WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, F.S.A. Fourth Edition. Maps and Woodcuts. 5s.; cloth boards, 6s.

**GREECE, OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF.** By W. DOUGLAS HAMILTON, F.S.A., and EDWARD LEVIEN, M.A. 2s. 6d.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d.

**ROME, OUTLINES OF THE HISTORY OF.** By EDWARD LEVIEN, M.A. Map, 2s. 6d.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d.

**CHRONOLOGY OF HISTORY, ART, LITERATURE, AND PROGRESS,** from the Creation of the World to the Present Time. New Edition, with Continuation by W. D. HAMILTON, F.S.A. 3s. cloth boards, 3s. 6d.

**DATES AND EVENTS IN ENGLISH HISTORY.** By the Rev. E. RAND. 1s.

**LATIN.**

**LATIN GRAMMAR.** By the Rev. THOMAS GOODWIN, M.A. 1s. 6d.

**LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.** By the Rev. THOMAS GOODWIN, M.A. 2s.

**ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.** By the Rev. THOMAS GOODWIN, M.A. 1s. 6d.

**LATIN DICTIONARY** (as above). Complete in One Vol., 3s. 6d.; cloth boards, 4s. 6d.

\* \* Or with the Grammar, cloth boards, 5s. 6d.

**LATIN CLASSICS.**

*With Explanatory Notes in English.*

**LATIN DELECTUS.** By H. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.

**CÆSARIS COMMENTARII DE BELLO GALLICO.** With Notes and Geographical Register. By H. YOUNG. 2s.

**CICERONIS ORATIO PRO SEXTO ROSCIO AMERINO.** By the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 1s. 6d.

**CICERONIS ORATIONES IN CATILINAM, VERREM, ET PRO ARCHIA.** By Rev. T. H. L. LEARY, D.C.L., Oxford. 1s. 6d.

**CICERONIS CATO MAJOR, LÆLIUS, BRUTUS SIVE DE SENECTUTE, DE AMICITIA, DE CLARIS ORATORIBUS DIALOGI.** By W. SMITH, M.A., F.R.G.S. 2s.

**CORNELIUS NEPOS.** By H. YOUNG. 1s.

**HORACE: ODES, EPODES, AND CARMEN SÆCULARE** By H. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.

**HORACE: SATIRES, EPISTLES, and ARS POETICA.** By W. BROWNRIGG SMITH, M.A., F.R.G.S. 1s. 6d.

**Latin Classics—continued.**

**JUVENALIS SATIRÆ.** By T. H. S. ESCOTT, B.A. 2s.

**LIVY: HISTORY OF ROME.** By H. YOUNG and W. B. SMITH, M.A. Part 1. Books i., ii., 1s. 6d.

Part 2. Books iii., iv., v., 1s. 6d.

Part 3. Books xxi., xxii., 1s. 6d.

**SALLUSTII CRISPI CATALINA ET BELLUM JUGURTHINUM.** By W. M. DONNE, B.A. Trin. Coll. Cam. 1s. 6d.

**TERENTII ADELPHI, HECYRA, PHORMIO.** Edited by the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 2s.

**TERENTII ANDRIA ET HEAUTONTIMORUMENOS.** By the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 1s. 6d.

**TERENTII EUNUCHUS, COMÆDIA.** By the Rev. J. DAVIES, M.A. 1s. 6d.

**VIRGILII MARONIS BUCOLICA ET GEORGICA.** The Bucolics by W. RUSHTON, M.A., and the Georgics by H. YOUNG 1s. 6d.

**VIRGILII MARONIS ÆNEIS.** By H. YOUNG and Rev. T. H. L. LEARY, D.C.L. 3s.

Part 1. Books i.-vi., 1s. 6d.

Part 2. Books vii.-xii., 2s.

**LATIN VERSE SELECTIONS** from CATULLUS, TIBULLUS, PROPERTIUS, and OVID. By W. B. DONNE, M.A. 2s.

**LATIN PROSE SELECTIONS** from VARRO, COLUMELLA, VITRUVIUS, SENECA, QUINTILIAN, FLORUS, VELLEIUS, PATERCULUS, VALERIUS MAXIMUS, SUETONIUS, APULSIUS, &c. By W. B. DONNE, M.A. 2s.

**GREEK.**

**GREEK GRAMMAR.** By HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON. 1s. 6d.

**GREEK LEXICON.** By HENRY R. HAMILTON. Vol. 1. Greek-English, 2s. 6d.; Vol. 2. English-Greek, 2s. Or the Two Vols. in One, 4s. 6d.; cloth boards, 5s.

**GREEK LEXICON** (as above). Complete, with the GRAMMAR, in One Vol., cloth boards, 6s.

**GREEK CLASSICS.**

*With Explanatory Notes in English.*

**GREEK DELECTUS.** By H. YOUNG and JOHN HUTCHINSON, M.A., of the High School, Glasgow. 1s. 6d.

**ÆSCHYLUS. PROMETHEUS VINCTUS.** By the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 1s.

**ÆSCHYLUS. SEPTEM CONTRA THEBES.** By the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 1s.

**ARISTOPHANES. ACHARNIANS.** By C. S. T. TOWNSHEND, M.A. 1s. 6d.

**Greek Classics—continued.****EURIPIDES: ALCESTIS.** By JOHN MILNER, B.A. 1s. 6d.**EURIPIDES: HECUBA AND MEDEA.** By W. BROWN-RIGG SMITH, M.A., F.R.G.S. 1s. 6d.**HERODOTUS, THE HISTORY OF,** chiefly after the Text of GAISFORD. By T. H. L. LEARY, M.A., D.C.L.

Part 1. Books i., ii. (The CLIO and EUTERPE), 2s.

Part 2. Books iii., iv. (The THALIA and MELPOMENE), 2s.

Part 3. Books v.-vii. (The TERPSICHOE, ERATO, and POLYHYMNIA), 2s.

Part 4. Books viii., ix. (The URANIA and CALLIOPE) and Index, 1s. 6d.

**HOMER, THE WORKS OF.** By T. H. L. LEARY, M.A., D.C.L.**THE ILIAD.**

Part 1. Books i. to vi., 1s. 6d.

Part 2. Books vii. to xii., 1s. 6d.

Part 3. Books xiii. to xviii., 1s. 6d.

Part 4. Books xix. to xxiv., 1s. 6d.

**THE ODYSSEY.**

Part 1. Books i. to vi., 1s. 6d.

Part 2. Books vii. to xii., 1s. 6d.

Part 3. Books xiii. to xviii., 1s. 6d.

Part 4. Books xix. to xxiv. and Hymns, 2s.

**LUCIAN'S SELECT DIALOGUES.** By H. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.**PLATO'S DIALOGUES: The Apology of Socrates, the Crito, and the Phædo.** By the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 2s.**SOPHOCLES. ŒDIPUS TYRANNUS.** By H. YOUNG. 1s.**SOPHOCLES. ANTIGONE.** By the Rev. JOHN MILNER, B.A. 2s.**THUCYDIDES. HISTORY OF THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR.** By H. YOUNG. Book 1. 1s. 6d.**XENOPHON'S ANABASIS.** By H. YOUNG. Part 1. Books i. to iii., 1s. Part 2. Books iv. to vii., 1s.**XENOPHON'S AGESILAUS.** By LL. F. W. JEWITT. 1s. 6d.**DEMOSTHENES: The Oration on the Crown and the Philippics.** By Rev. T. H. L. LEARY. 1s. 6d.**FRENCH.****FRENCH GRAMMAR.** By G. L. STRAUSS, Ph.D. 1s. 6d.**FRENCH-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.** By ALFRED ELWES. 1s. 6d.**ENGLISH-FRENCH DICTIONARY.** By ALFRED ELWES. 2s.**FRENCH DICTIONARY** (as above). Complete in One Vol., 3s.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d.

\*.\* Or with the GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 4s. 6d.

**FRENCH AND ENGLISH PHRASE BOOK.** Containing Introductory Lessons, with Translations, for the convenience of Students, several Vocabularies of Words, a Collection of suitable Phrases, and Easy Familiar Dialogues. 1s. 6d.



**GERMAN.**

**GERMAN GRAMMAR.** By Dr. G. L. STRAUSS. 1s. 6d.

**GERMAN READER:** A Series of Extracts, carefully culled from the most approved Authors of Germany. By G. L. STRAUSS, Ph.D. 1s.

**GERMAN TRIGLOT DICTIONARY.** By NICHOLAS ESTERHAZY S. A. HAMILTON. In Three Parts. Part 1, German-French-English. Part 2, English-German-French. Part 3, French-German-English. 3s., or cloth boards, 4s.

**GERMAN TRIGLOT DICTIONARY** (as above), together with German Grammar (No. 39), in One Volume, cloth boards, 5s.

**ITALIAN.**

**ITALIAN GRAMMAR.** By ALFRED ELWES. 1s. 6d.

**ITALIAN TRIGLOT DICTIONARY.** By ALFRED ELWES. Vol. 1. Italian-English-French. 2s. 6d.

**ITALIAN TRIGLOT DICTIONARY.** By ALFRED ELWES. Vol. 2. English-French-Italian. 2s. 6d.

**ITALIAN TRIGLOT DICTIONARY.** By ALFRED ELWES. Vol. 3. French-Italian-English. 2s. 6d.

**ITALIAN TRIGLOT DICTIONARY** (as above). In One Volume, cloth boards, 7s. 6d.

\*.\* Or with the ITALIAN GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 8s. 6d.

**SPANISH AND PORTUGUESE.**

**SPANISH GRAMMAR.** By ALFRED ELWES. 1s. 6d.

**SPANISH-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-SPANISH DICTIONARY.** By ALFRED ELWES. 4s.; cloth boards, 5s.

\*.\* Or with the GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 6s.

**PORTUGUESE GRAMMAR.** By ALFRED ELWES, Author of "A Spanish Grammar," &c. 1s. 6d.

**PORTUGUESE-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-PORTUGUESE DICTIONARY.** By ALFRED ELWES. Second Edition Revised. 5s.; cl. bds., 6s.

\*.\* Or with the GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 7s.

**HEBREW.**

**HEBREW GRAMMAR.** By Dr. BRESSLAU. 1s. 6d.

**HEBREW AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY, BIBLICAL AND RABBINICAL.** By Dr. BRESSLAU. 6s.

**ENGLISH AND HEBREW DICTIONARY.** By Dr. BRESSLAU. 3s.

**HEBREW DICTIONARY** (as above), in Two Vols. Complete with the GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 12s.



# DR DE FIVAS' FRENCH CLASS-BOOKS.

## De Fivas' Introduction to French Reading.

Twenty-eighth Edition, 12mo, price 2s. 6d. handsomely bound.

### INTRODUCTION À LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE;

ou, Fables et Contes Choisis. Anecdotes instructives, Faits mémorables, etc. Avec un Dictionnaire de tous les Mots traduits en anglais. À l'usage de la jeunesse, et de ceux qui commencent à apprendre la langue française. By VICTOR DE FIVAS, M.A., LL.D.

*Review.* In the present Edition of this well-known work, it has been the Author's endeavour to render it still more deserving of its established popularity. Appended to it is a copious and well-digested Dictionary, French and English, of all the words contained in the volume.

As the Pieces contained in this volume comprehend a great variety of subjects, and are generally of an amusing and familiar style, the phrases will serve as elements of conversation, and enable the student to read with facility other French books. Although the work is designed for the use of Schools, the Author has borne in mind that many learners of French are adults; therefore, while adapting his book to youthful students, he has endeavoured to make it also acceptable to those of more advanced age.

#### OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"We strongly advise students who have read carefully a good French Grammar to read this excellent book, and they will soon find their knowledge of the language enlarged, and, to a great extent, perfected."

PUBLIC OPINION.

"Besides its suitability for the learner, we do not know a book better adapted than this for brushing up the neglected French of those whose school-days, like ours, have been over for some little time past."

SCOTSMAN.

"By far the best first French Reading Book, whether for schools or adult pupils."

TAIT'S MAGAZINE.

## De Fivas' Guide to Translation into French.

Seventh Edition, 12mo, price 1s. 6d. handsomely bound.

LE TRÉSOR NATIONAL; or, Guide to the Translation of English into French at Sight. By V. DE FIVAS, M.A., LL.D., Corresponding Member of the Grammatical Society of Paris; Author of "The New Grammar of French Grammars," etc.

\* \* \* The volume consists of idiomatical and conversational phrases, anecdotes told and untold, and scraps from various English writers.

*Review.* LE TRÉSOR NATIONAL is especially intended to produce by practice, in those who learn French, a facility of expressing themselves in that language. This book may also be advantageously used for written as well as vivâ voce translation, according to the discretion of the instructor.

From Professor AUGUSTE DE NEUVILLY,—"Je trouve que le 'Trésor National' est un livre de beaucoup de mérite; je le préfère à tout autre; il y a plus de vivacité, plus d'instruction, et c'est un excellent instrument entre les mains d'un maître actif pour questionner ses élèves en français."

"If to some readers the finger-post should appear to be occasionally erected where the road was plain enough without it, they will be pleased to recollect that there is a class of persons who have not yet attained the stature of their prodigious learning."

EDINBURGH REVIEW.

Price 2s. bound.

## CLEF; ou Partie française du TRÉSOR NATIONAL.

CROSBY LOCKWOOD & SON, 7 Stationers' Hall Court, London, E.C.

# DR DE FIVAS' FRENCH CLASS-BOOKS.

*"The works of M. de Fivas are among the best that we possess for the means of acquiring a knowledge of the French language. If any proof were needed of this assertion, we should only have to point to the fact that they have gone through so many editions and still retain their popularity. This is a certain index to real worth."*

CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

## De Fivas' Second French Reading Book.

Fifteenth Edition, 12mo, price 2s. 6d. handsomely bound.

### BEAUTÉS DES ÉCRIVAINS FRANÇAIS,

Anciens et Modernes. Ouvrage Classique à l'usage des Collèges et des Institutions. By VICTOR DE FIVAS, M.A., LL.D. Quinzième Édition, augmentée de Notes Historiques, Géographiques, Philosophiques, Littéraires, Grammaticales, et Biographiques.

#### \*.\* OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"A better book for advanced students it would be difficult to have." TEACHER.

"Exceedingly good samples of the French style, and of elegance and purity of language. We recommend the work as both amusing and instructive."

LITERARY GAZETTE.

"An elegant volume, containing a selection of pieces both in prose and verse, which, while it furnishes a convenient reading book for the student of the French language, at the same time affords a pleasing and interesting view of French literature."

OBSERVER.


"It is gratifying to find this neat little work in a new edition. The specimens from the most popular of the French writers, which have been collected by Dr de Fivas, exhibit the modern literature of France in a very favourable light, and are exceedingly creditable to the judgment and taste of the compiler."

SCOTTISH TIMES.

## History and Etymology of the French Language.

\*.\* NOTE.—THE APPENDIX to the FRENCH GRAMMAR is published separately, fcap. 8vo, price 1s. cloth, under the title

**THE FRENCH LANGUAGE;** a complete Compendium of its History and Etymology. For the Use of Colleges, Public and Private Schools, and Students. By E. ROUBAUD, B.A. Paris, Professor of the French Language, author of "The French Pronunciation" and other works, and editor of "CASSELL'S FRENCH DICTIONARY."

 This book is based upon the works of the following eminent writers:—J. J. AMPÈRE, E. LITTRÉ, J. DÉMOGÈTE, BOURGUIGNON, F. G. EICHOFF, A. BRACHET, MAX MÜLLER, W. D. WHITNEY, F. DIEZ, SCHUCHARDT, DR BOLTZ.

#### \*.\* OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"A most desirable, indeed a necessary, book for students who wish to perfect themselves in a scientific knowledge of French."

SCHOOL GUARDIAN.

"A serviceable introduction to French etymology and a useful companion to French accidence."

JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

"Supplies just the information which modern examinations demand, and which most Grammars fail to afford."

LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

"The work reveals the hand of one who is master of his subject. Students who master its contents will find a valuable addition to their store of knowledge, and a most useful and interesting source of information."

EDUCATIONAL GUIDE.

CROSBY LOCKWOOD

London, E.C.

